

DD126
.T47
v.1

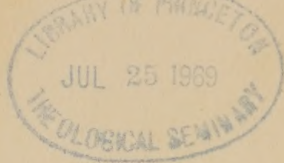
FEUDAL GERMANY

James Westfall Thompson

VOLUME I



FREDERICK UNGAR PUBLISHING CO.
New York



Republished 1962

First published 1928

Second printing, 1966

Printed in the United States of America

Library of Congress Catalog Card No. 62-17093

TO MY WIFE
IN MEMORY OF GOLDEN DAYS
IN GERMANY

PREFACE

IN ONE of those matchless prefaces which Ranke knew so well how to write he has said:

Great peoples and states have a double character—one national, the other pertaining to the destinies of the world. Their history, in a similar manner, presents a double aspect. In so far as it forms an essential ingredient in the development of humanity generally, or records a prevailing influence impressed upon that development, it awakens an intelligent interest which extends far beyond the limits of nationality; it attracts the attention and becomes a subject of study even to those who are not natives of the land whose history is narrated.

Much has been written by German historians upon the history of this epoch, yet it seems to me that an American scholar may still add something to the interpretation of it.

The history of medieval Germany is not merely profitable to study for itself; it is profitable for the light it casts upon the history of other European countries. Yet valuable as the subject is, it has been singularly neglected by French, English, and American historians. The late Viscount Bryce's *Holy Roman Empire*, admirable as it is, is but the history of a great political idea, and it were difficult for one to visualize the real history of feudal Germany from a reading of its chapters. The only book in the English language which does justice to the history of medieval Germany is Mr. Herbert Fisher's *The Mediaeval Empire*, to whose virtue I am glad to pay homage. But the reader who will examine its pages and then turn to those which follow, I think, will discover that both in matter and in method the two volumes are very different. Mr. Fisher's viewpoint is the empire, not Germany; and he has been far less interested in the subject of economic and social history than I have been.

I have not endeavored, even had I the ability, to write a complete history of Germany during the feudal period. Such a work would require a lifetime devoted to uninterrupted study of the subject. My object has been to select certain subjects in the history of feudal Germany whose significance

has been of major historical importance. The heart of the feudal age was the epoch lying between the ninth and the twelfth centuries inclusive. But I have sometimes, as the exigency of the subject required, ranged forward of the former century and beyond the term of the latter. By closer construction the book may be said to deal with that period of the history of medieval Germany lying between the accession of Henry the Fowler in 919 and the fall of Henry the Lion in 1181 and the transference of the Hohenstaufen seat of power to Southern Italy and Sicily in 1190. The epoch is almost exactly broken in twain by the reign of Henry IV, the conflict with the papacy under Gregory VII and his successors, and the great rebellion of Saxony—separate yet inseparable subjects which are pivotal both for time and importance in the history of medieval Germany.

The history of medieval Germany is more complex than the history of any other country in the Middle Ages, and almost inexhaustible, less because of its extent than because of its depth. This condition, plus the fact that there is so little in English upon the subject, has been the reason why the notes which I have appended to almost every page are sometimes long and voluminous. They are not put there with any vain desire to make a parade of erudition, but to help the reader search farther and to investigate more deeply if he so wish. In a work covering so large a field as is embraced in this book I have necessarily had to abridge much and to suppress more. I trust, however, that the notes may make partial amends for this abridgment. I have relegated to them consideration of numerous subjects which are germane to the theme of the chapter, yet of subordinate importance.

In the search for material I have taken heavy toll of many libraries, but I am most indebted to the authorities of Harvard University for large use of the magnificent Hohenzollern Collection of German history there, one of the greatest in the world upon the subject, which contains an almost complete set of the local historical periodicals of Germany. When the exigencies of teaching prevented me from remaining in Cambridge, the liberality of Harvard has permitted me to borrow volume after volume from this collection. Without

such generosity the completion of this book would have been almost impossible. Needless to say, there is a long list of modern German scholars to whom my homage is due, foremost among whom are Waitz, Nitzsch, Gerdes, Holder-Egger, and Lamprecht. One living scholar has earned my special gratitude—Professor Bernhard Schneidler, whose masterly editions of Adam of Bremen and Helmold have been of immense service to me. Several of the chapters herein have appeared in part or in whole in the *American Historical Review*, the *Proceedings of the American Historical Association*, the *American Journal of Theology*, the *American Journal of Sociology*, the *Journal of Political Economy*, the *History Teachers' Magazine*, the *Slavonic Review*, and the *Revue Belge de philosophie et d'histoire*.

Among many in the University of Chicago Press who have come in contact with this book in various stages of its preparation, I wish to thank Mr. Gordon J. Laing and Miss Anabel Ireland of the editorial department, Mr. A. C. McFarland of the manufacturing department and Miss Mary D. Alexander of the proofroom. My former student, Mr. R. Clinton Platt, has proved his friendship and his scholarship by compiling the Index. Finally, I am indebted beyond measure to my wife, Martha Landers Thompson, for many patient hours spent in reading the manuscript, the galley proofs, and the page proofs with me.

The device on the cover is reproduced from a thirteenth-century illustration to be found in *Monumenta Germaniae Historica, Scriptores*, XVIII, 5.

JAMES WESTFALL THOMPSON

August 15, 1927

INTRODUCTION

ANCIENT GERMANY, the Germany of the time of Caesar and Tacitus and of the Roman Empire, was a square bounded on the north by the North Sea and the Baltic, on the east by the Oder and the mountains of Bohemia, on the south by the Danube, and on the west by the Rhine. In the fourth and fifth centuries, under the tremendous pressure of the migrations (*Völkerwanderung*), the German race surged southward over the Danube and westward across the Rhine, the vanguard tribes penetrating far into and settling within the Roman Empire, where the first barbarian kingdoms were established in Italy, in Gaul, in Spain, and even in Africa. Germany, like an overturned vessel, saw her nations seeping away out of the motherland and ever flowing toward the west and the south. There was real danger in the fifth century of the German race being lost to history through absorption and assimilation by the deeply Romanized and more highly civilized populations of Italy, Gaul, and Spain. By the end of the sixth century both nations of the Goths, the Vandals, the Burgundians, the Lombards, and half of the Frankish nation had abandoned the ancient *Heimland* forever. Only five important tribes yet remained there. The East Franks were in the valleys of the lower Rhine and Meuse; the Saxons in North Germany with the small Thuringian tribe wedged in between them and the Franks; the ancient Suevi, now called Swabians, were spread over the angle made by the upper waters of the Danube and the Rhine and were settled even upon the flanks of the Alps and the Jura; the Bavarians lay along the middle Danube between the Lech and the Inn rivers and bridged the great stream.

But as the Germans had enlarged their borders toward the south and west there had been a corresponding shrinkage along the east and northeast. For when the Goths and Vandals and Lombards had moved out of their ancient seat be-

tween the Oder and the Elbe rivers, the evacuated territory was slowly filled in from the east by Slavonic incomers, so that by 600 the Elbe had become the frontier between the German and the Wendish world. Even the upper reaches of the Elbe had been crossed by the Wends, and in Central Germany the Saale was the dividing-line between the races. The future was to see the recovery and recolonization of these lost lands. But it is important to observe that a vital distinction must be made in the history of medieval Germany between this "Old Germany," the Germany of the great "stems" or tribes (East Frank, Saxon, Thuringian, Swabian, Bavarian), and the "New Germany" beyond the Elbe and the Saale rivers.

Physiography and natural resources have ever profoundly conditioned peoples, and a study of the physical map of Germany is important for an understanding of German history. North Germany, or Lower Germany, is a broad, flat plain across which the Ems, the Weser, the Elbe, and the Oder flow to either the North Sea or the Baltic. South, or Upper Germany, is composed of mountain and upland and valleys. The core of Germany and the heart of the German race are in Thuringia and Hesse, the territory between the Thuringian Forest and the Rothaar Mountains, the Harz, the Vögelberg, the Rhön, and the Teutoburger Forest. Neither Roman nor Frenchman nor Slav has ever made any impression upon this region, which has "always held the balance and controlled the natural routes between north and south Germany." If one will lay his right hand upon a map of Germany he may be interested to discover how remarkably the human hand reflects the physiography of the land. The area under his outspread fingers will answer to the plain of North Germany, his thumb will be the Rhine, his index finger the Weser, his longest finger will coincide with the Elbe (the longest river of Germany), the fourth finger will be the Oder, and the little finger the Vistula. His knuckles will represent the mountainous ridges extending across Central Germany, the massif of Thuringia corresponding to the largest knuckle. Across the back of his hand the Main will flow westward and the Eger eastward, forming a natural horizontal trough al-

most on the line of the fiftieth parallel, and stretching straight across Germany from Mainz to Prague. Across his wrist the Danube will make a blue line from west to east. Under the palm will lie Upper Germany as under the fingers will spread the plain of Lower Germany with its rivers winding northward to the sea. And just as the thumb and the great knuckle clinch the hand, so does the Rhine clinch and Thuringia-Hesse articulate together Northern and Southern Germany.

The tribal ingredients which formed the German race were as varied as the physical features of the land which it inhabited. As the occupants of the former Roman province of Lower Germany, and the first of the Germans remaining in the fatherland to become Romanized—at least partially so—and Christianized, the Franks of the middle and lower Rhinelands became the first important historical factor in the formation of medieval Germany. The conquest of the Swabians by the Franks in 496 and that of the Bavarians in 552 incorporated these other Germanic tribes into the Frankish state of the Merovingians. But the complete union of the five great German tribes, Franks, Swabians, Bavarians, Thuringians, and Saxons, was the work of the Carolingian dynasty, especially of Charlemagne. With this union the particular history of feudal Germany begins.

But it was tribal union, never tribal consolidation. The particularism which has characterized German history finds its root in the important fact that no ruling house in Germany has ever succeeded in overcoming this original and primordial heterogeneity of the German race. A common blood, a common speech, and a common body of institutions have never canceled this sense of separate tribal identity among the German peoples. And these differences have been accentuated by differences of material and moral culture and were given added fixity by difference of religion in the sixteenth century. Every dynasty that has ruled Germany has had to compromise with or surrender to this inflexible and determined particularism inherent in the German peoples. In the Middle Ages the Saxon kings, the Salian kings, and the Hohenstaufen kings had each their own policy of rule and

plan of solution, and each one differed from that of the other. None wholly succeeded, and finally the Habsburgs in the thirteenth century flatly surrendered to conditions beyond their control.

Otto the Great and the Saxon rulers generally sought to use the institutions and the authority of the church as a binding force to unite the state and overcome the incorrigible particularism of the duchies. As in a Gothic cathedral the buttresses are designed to neutralize the thrust and to sustain the weight of the roof, so in the government of Saxon Germany the episcopate was utilized to check the centrifugal thrust of the duchies and to sustain the weight and authority of the crown. But with the rise of the new papacy in the eleventh century with its ambitious plan to subordinate secular authority to that of the church, the Saxon policy, effective as it was in some degree, manifestly carried with it a danger which an independent state could not brook. The Salian emperors abandoned the perilous policy of their predecessors and Henry III and Henry IV labored to establish an absolute monarchy in Germany by drastic coercion and even extinguishment of the duchies, the end of which would have been a centralized Germany in which the ancient duchies would have been reduced to mere administrative divisions. This design—so identical with that which the French kings achieved—was frustrated by the great rebellion of the Saxons against Salian absolutism and the struggle between Gregory VII and Henry IV. This double and simultaneous movement ruined the Salian dream. Feudal and tribal particularism again escaped control by the crown.

The Hohenstaufen in the twelfth century, blood heirs and political heirs alike of the Salian house, again struggled to realize the aspiration of Henry III and Henry IV. But with Frederick I and Henry VI the pernicious effect of the union of Germany and Italy together to form the Holy Roman Empire terminated in disaster both to the Hohenstaufen house and to Germany. Neither Saxon nor Salian had ever permitted the interest of the German kingdom to be sacrificed to imperial prestige and aggrandizement. But Frederick Barbarossa, imbued with the revived ideas of Roman law, with

his head full of vague and grandiose conceptions of imperialism which were partly of Roman and partly of ecclesiastical origin, endeavored to out-Caesar Caesar, and to establish an empire of a politico-ecclesiastical nature piered upon Germany and Italy as its foundation, but bending like a mighty arch over the whole of Christendom.

The majestic ridge of Barbarossa's ambition was the summit over which he fell. In striving to grasp both Germany and Italy in the grip of absolutism he failed to clutch either completely, and both Germany and Italy partially slipped through his fingers. Forces beyond his comprehension to understand or to measure baffled and frustrated him. These forces were very different in nature and spirit, but operated simultaneously and sometimes directly worked together against him.

In Germany by the twelfth century the former incoherent and heterogeneous elements embodied in feudal particularism and the duchies, under Saxon leadership, had been brought into alignment and given a constructive intention and interpretation. The genius of Lothar of Saxony and Henry the Proud at last discovered that there was a principle below all the *Sturm und Drang* of feudal and ducal resistance, and formulated that principle into a policy. This principle was that of local sovereignty and state rights to be reserved for and preserved by the various duchies whose union—loose or strong—formed the German kingdom. In a word, the Guelf house worked for the creation of feudal monarchy resting on a federation of the German duchies; for a form of government that would strike a just balance between the rights of the crown and the rights of the several ducal states under the crown. This form of government, if it had ever been realized, would have given simultaneous and due expression to both union and severalty, and would have been a form of government intermediate between the intense particularism of the tenth century and the strongly centralized Germany which the Salian and the Hohenstaufen strove to create.

The conflict between the Hohenstaufen and the Guelf culminated finally in the destruction of the great feudal duchies and the exhaustion of the crown at the same time,

with the result that the real victors in the bitter struggle were the lesser feudatories and the feudalized bishops. The partition of Saxony in 1181 marks the passing of the last great German duchy and tolled the knell of the Guelf design of a federated German kingdom. But as when Samson bowed himself between the columns of the temple of the Philistines in Gaza and pulled down the whole structure upon their heads, so when Henry the Lion fell, the fall of Saxony dragged down the German kingdom with it into wreck. The dissolution of the once splendid duchy of Swabia, the shredding of Franconia, the severance of Brandenburg from Saxony and of Austria from Bavaria, the rise of newly formed and sovereign states within the body of the old duchies immediately preceded or followed the collapse of Saxony. The tragic result was the conversion of the once strong and magnificent German kingdom into a rope of sand, a confused and jarring chaos of small and warring states ruled by petty dynasts neither materially able to accomplish great things nor morally capable of understanding that high things are to know, that deep things are to feel.

In brief, this is the sum of the history of feudal Germany between the tenth and the twelfth centuries. In the intricate evolution and transformation every important element of medieval German life was involved—state and church, ducal territories and crown lands, bishop and abbot, baron and burgher and peasant. The moral factors never absent from the history of any great society, institutions of a national or local nature and those more intimate customs and mores of the people which have to do with daily family life and association, material development like commerce and trade and the sturdy labor of millions of industrious peasants in field and forest, schools and education, the cultivation of literature and the arts (especially in quiet cloisters)—all these separate and mingled strands form the complex warp and woof of the history of feudal Germany. It is a noble history, splendid in idealism and achievement and gravely beautiful even in those portions of it which suffered ruination.

No other field of medieval history presents so rich and varied a history as that of Germany in the Middle Ages, nor

is any other more profitable to study. Germany was the first state to establish ordered and settled government after the collapse of Central and Western Europe in the ninth century. When England was sinking into the lees under the spineless rule of the last representatives of the house of Alfred the Great and Edward the Elder, from which the iron hand of William the Conqueror rescued her, when France was in the throes of feudal anarchy and the Capetian kings in Paris could see from its walls the towers of robber barons too strong to be broken silhouetted against the sky, when Italy was "a mere geographical expression," torn by dissension and basely and brutally governed when governed anywhere at all, when the temporal power of the papacy was a byword and a hissing, when in Spain the only government worthy of the name was not Christian but Mohammedan, Germany was a great country ruled by a dynasty of strength and ideas. Violent as the history of Germany in the feudal age sometimes was, the violence was usually a struggle for rights which redeems it from the vice inherent in the violence of France in the tenth and eleventh centuries.

In the invention and application of administrative institutions, while in the eleventh century there are certain provinces, Normandy, Anjou, Norman Italy, in which efficient administration prevailed, nowhere else in Continental Europe except Germany may one find effective administration upon a broad, national scale. In the realm of political theory the Salian monarchs anticipated France in formulation and application of the principles of absolute monarchy, and the Guelfs in like manner anticipated England in the formulation of the principles of constitutional monarchy and attempted to give them realization a generation before the time of Henry Plantagenet. Political principles are never to be wholly approved because they are successful, or condemned because they fail. Both Salian and Guelf failed to achieve their purpose owing to a combination of forces beyond their control and stronger, but no better—indeed, not so good as theirs. It was left to France to win through to efficient absolute monarchical government, and for England to win through to successful constitutional government. But feudal

Germany was a pioneer in both these political ideas. What defeated both issues in Germany was the untoward, even disastrous fact that the destiny of the German nation by an ill freak of fortune was tied up with the history of Italy and the Empire. This made Germany's problem an infinitely complex one, whereas that of France and England was a relatively simple one. The German kings as emperors, especially the Hohenstaufen, wasted untold blood and treasure of the German people beyond the Alps under the malign tyranny of the idea of medieval imperialism. The end spelled the ruin of feudal Germany. But for this medieval Germany would have won through, too, to a great and strong national monarchy. Yet even if failure overcame her, the ideal and the sacrifice were magnificent.

Finally, it is to be noted that in one conspicuous endeavor medieval Germany was splendidly successful. "The great deed of the German people in the Middle Ages," Lamprecht has justly written, "was the recovery of three-fifths of modern Germany from the Slavs." The wars in Italy and along the French border, or even the Crusades never diverted the eyes of the German people away from the great territory beyond the Elbe and the Inn which their forebears had once dwelt in and ruled over. The deep determination in the hearts of the German people to recover these lands from the Slavs, the resolute, though often ruthless way in which the event was achieved, is one of the most stirring stories in the annals of history. The grandeur of the design was matched by the completeness of the conquest. The only thing comparable to this achievement in modern annals is the history of the expansion of the American people westward from the Atlantic seaboard over the Alleghanies, down the rivers and across the great plains. In both instances the work was the work of the common people and independent of governmental initiative, the work of the pioneer and the settler subjugating the forest with the ax, the fields with the plow, and driving Slav or redman, as the case may be, before him by his prowess in arms. What the New West meant to young America that the New East meant to medieval Germany. Each region beckoned the pioneer, the young and lusty of every genera-

tion, who sought for cheap lands and new freedom in the wilderness. What Jackson and Clay, Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois meant to the history of the United States between 1815 and 1850, that Albrecht the Bear and Leopold of Babenberg, Brandenburg and Austria, meant to Germany in the twelfth century. When old, west, feudal Germany was falling into dissolution a new frontier, colonial Germany, arose in the east to counterbalance the loss. Without the adventure of knight errantry, without the romanticism of the Crusades, this history of the expansion of a great people has a simplicity and a dignity all its own. But for this splendid achievement Germany today would be a narrow strip of territory wedged in between the Rhine and the Elbe, and the German nation and Germanic culture would exist in the reduced dimension of a minor European state and people.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I. OLD WEST FEUDAL GERMANY

I. THE CHURCH IN THE CAROLINGIAN AND SAXON GOVERNMENTS	3
II. THE GERMAN CHURCH AND THE SALIAN MONARCHY; SPREAD OF THE CLUNY REFORM IN ITALY AND GERMANY	68
III. THE WAR OF INVESTITURE; THE CONFLICT BETWEEN HENRY IV AND GREGORY VII	125
IV. OLD SAXONY	167
V. THE REBELLION OF SAXONY	185
VI. SECTIONALISM AND PARTY STRIFE IN THE WAR OF INVESTITURE	217
VII. POLITICAL THEORIES AND CONSTITUTIONAL PROGRESS DURING THE WAR OF INVESTITURE (1075-1139)	241
VIII. GUELF AND Ghibelline	266
IX. GERMAN FEUDALISM	292
X. THE CROWN LANDS IN FEUDAL GERMANY	338
XI. THE SENTIMENT OF EUROPE TOWARD THE GERMANS IN THE MIDDLE AGES	360

VOLUME II. NEW EAST FRONTIER COLONIAL GERMANY

XII. THE GERMAN CHURCH AND THE CONVERSION OF THE SLAVS OF THE ELBE	387
XIII. THE EXPANSION AND COLONIZATION OF THE GERMAN PEOPLE BEYOND THE ELBE; THE CONFLICT OF SAXON AND SLAV . .	451
XIV. EARLY TRADE RELATIONS BETWEEN THE GERMANS AND THE ELBEAN AND BALTIC SLAVS	529

XV. DUTCH AND FLEMISH COLONIZATION IN MEDIEVAL GERMANY	545
XVI. GERMAN SOUTHEASTWARD EXPANSION AND THE FORMATION OF AUSTRIA	580
XVII. MEDIEVAL GERMAN EXPANSION IN BOHEMIA AND POLAND .	612

APPENDIX

TABLE OF POPES AND EMPERORS, 800-1273	659
THE WELF AND BILLUNGER FAMILIES	663
THE WELF AND HOHENSTAUFEN FAMILIES	664
THE ABODRITE AND WAGRIAN DUKES	665
THE SLAVONIC DUKES OF WAGRIA (LATER MECKLENBURG) . . .	666
PRINCES OF MORAVIA, BOHEMIA, AND POLAND	667

INDEX

INDEX	671
-----------------	-----

LIST OF MAPS

	FACING PAGE
ARCHBISHOPRICS AND BISHOPRICS IN MEDIEVAL GERMANY	125
GERMAN EASTWARD EXPANSION (IN COLOR)	451
BONIFACIAN MISSION STATIONS IN HESSE	467
SLAVONIC TRIBES ALONG EASTERN FRONTIER IN THE TENTH AND ELEVENTH CENTURIES	480
PRINCIPAL GERMAN <i>Burgwärde</i>	483
GROUND PLAN OF A SLAVONIC <i>Runddorf</i> OR ROUND VILLAGE	485
GROUND PLAN OF A TYPICAL "STREET" VILLAGE	509
GROUND PLANS OF "NEW" TOWNS IN EAST GERMANY	524
FRONTIER TRADING POSTS WITH SLAVS IN THE TIME OF CHARLE- MAGNE	532
DISTRIBUTION OF MARSHLAND SETTLEMENTS MADE BY DUTCH AND FLEMISH COLONISTS	545
AUSTRIA UP TO THE HAPSBURG CONQUEST	611

VOLUME I
OLD WEST FEUDAL GERMANY

CHAPTER I

THE CHURCH IN THE CAROLINGIAN AND SAXON GOVERNMENTS

IN THE Middle Ages the church was much more than a religious institution. It was a political, civil, social, economic institution of portentous power and of vast dimension. Its proprietary nature involved it in the network of the feudal régime to a degree which requires some effort of historical imagination to realize. Bishops and abbots were feudal lords, and the machinery of the church was intricately interwoven with the machinery of feudal government. Bishoprics and abbeys were lordships like lay seigneuries and subject to almost identical laws and practices.

By the eighth century the conditions and obligations governing landed proprietorship, whether lay or clerical, had become conventionalized, and, with the transformation of land ownership into benefices in the time of Karl Martel, the church, like secular society, passed completely into the feudal régime. Such a state of things for the church was perfectly adapted both to the ideas and to the practices of a feudal age. There was nothing incongruous or unseemly in the arrangement, however strange it may seem to us today, when fighting abbots and the blazon of episcopacy have vanished. Like every other institution the system was capable of great abuse, and it gave rise to grievous conditions within the church. But we must free our minds from preconceived notions and avoid judging the medieval church by modern conditions. The church was a historical institution, a part of the organic, human life of the medieval epoch. As it functioned in that society it must be studied and judged. Because in its best moments the church taught a quality of life and cherished an ideal above the world, that did not separate it from the world. To have been less human than it was, the medieval church would have had to func-

tion in a vacuum or lived in a world of the fourth dimension.

The legislation of Pepin and Charlemagne was particularly instrumental in combining the church with the state. Pepin introduced the bishops into the national Frankish assembly (Marchfeld, Champ de Mars) not only as proprietors but as prelates, in order to counterbalance the power of the lay feudality. Henceforth the councils inclined to supersede the former national assemblies, and civil and ecclesiastical legislation tended to fuse together.¹ It was even within the prerogative of the king to fix dogma (both Childebert and Charlemagne did so), and from Pepin's time forward the state required the *credo* and the *pater noster* as law, and legislated in its capitularies upon the things of the church as well as upon secular matters. The Frankish church was ruled by and for temporal interests.² Charlemagne treated the bishops and abbots of his empire exactly as he treated secular dignitaries, and was as cautious in dispensing favors to them as he was to the great lay nobles.

He would never give more than one county to any of his counts unless they happened to live on the borders or marches of the barbarians; nor would he ever give a bishop any abbey or church that was in the royal gift unless there were very special reasons for so doing. When his counsellors or friends asked him the reason for doing this, he would answer: "With

¹ Nitzsch, *Gesch. d. deutschen Volkes*, I, 249; Viollet, *Inst. polit. de la France*, I, 356-771; Lesne, *La propriété ecclési., en France*, pp. 424-38. In 755 the Marchfeld was changed to May in order that there might be more pasturage for the horses of those attending (Schröder, *Rechtsgesch.*, p. 155; cf. Einhard, *Ann.*, 820: "... ut primum herba pabulum jumentis praeberere potuit"). The councils of the church ceased to be purely ecclesiastical bodies, but performed a large amount of civil legislation. See Harzheim, *Concilia Germaniae*, III, 187. Fisher, *Medieval Empire*, II, 92, gives some interesting examples of this fusion of secular and ecclesiastical affairs. "Every bishop and abbot governs his territory by the aid of a little parliament of nobles and ministeriales." From the time of Otto I German bishops had the rank of princes (Hauck, *Kirchengesch.*, III, 28).

² The Carolingian policy with reference to church offices may be defined as a sort of right of control and of veto, without, in theory, opposing the free choice of the bishop by the people and the clergy. Louis the Pious went farther and claimed the right to authorize episcopal elections, and under Charles the Bald this practice became so general as to have the force of law, in spite of the influence of the Pseudo-Isidorean decretals and the contentions of Nicholas I (Georg Weise, *Königtum und Bischofswahl im fränkischen und deutschen Reich vor dem Investiturstreit*, Berlin, 1912).

that revenue or that estate, with that abbey or that church I can secure the fidelity of some vassal, as good a man as any bishop or count, and perhaps better."¹

After Charlemagne everything melted away. The political system established by him was impotent before the power of the revolutionary forces of the time. In the tumultuous laboratory of the ninth century the old order of things was broken up and a new civilization came out of the crucible. Feudalism emerged as a complete political, economic, and social polity, and the feudal states of France, Germany, and Italy came into being.² In the anarchy of the times the lands of bishops and abbots were given by the rulers to dukes and counts as the price of their military service, or were seized by the latter and more or less assimilated with their own feudal holdings.³

With the break-up of the Carolingian empire in the ninth century, the relations of state and church began to be reversed. Hitherto the state had controlled the church. Now the church began to control the state. The amalgamation of church and state became more complete than before,⁴ and the church saw to it that it was well repaid for its services to the government. By the end of the ninth century the dilapida-

¹ Monachus S. Galli, *De vita Caroli*, Book I, chap. xiii; cf. Carlyle, *Med. Polit. Theory*, I, 262-79. Guilhaumez, *L'origine de la noblesse en France au moyen-âge*, p. 126, n. 5, has amassed the evidence to illustrate the Carolingian handling of church offices for political purposes. All abbeys were in the gift of the crown. "Abbatibus quoque et laicis specialiter jubemus ut in monasteriis quae ex nostra largitate habeat," etc. (Cap. Lud. Pii, 823, c. 8).

² On the nature and significance of the dissolution of the Carolingian empire see Bourgeois, *Le capitulaire de Kiersey*, esp. pp. 271-83; Prou, *De ordine palatii*, Introd.; Ellendorf, *Die Karolinger und die Hierarchie*; Lavissee, *Histoire de France*, II, Part I, Book 3, and bibliographies there given.

³ Lesne, *La propriété ecclési. en France*, I, 439-52; Waitz, IV, 165-73; Parisot, *Royaume de Lorraine sous les Carolingiens*, p. 31, n. 5; p. 81 nn.; pp. 185, 331, 687; Poupardin, *Royaume de Provence sous les Carolingiens*, p. 337, n. 6; pp. 373-76, 384; Kurth, *Notger de Liège*, p. 28; Pirenne, *Hist. de Belgique*, I, 39-41. Pope Nicholas I approved the diversion of abbey revenues for the support of Queen Teutberge of Lorraine, Parisot (*op. cit.*, p. 308). Charles the Bald sold the abbey of St. Bertin for thirty gold pieces (*op. cit.*, p. 358).

⁴ On this process see Lea, *Studies in Church History*, pp. 326-42; Viollet, I, 370-71; Prou, *De ordine palatii*, Introd.; Ellendorf, *Die Karolinger und die Hierarchie*, Vol. II, chap. iv; Bourgeois, *Capitulaire de Kiersey*, pp. 271-83.

tion of the royal domain, owing to lavish, gratuitous, or forced donations to the church, seriously impoverished the monarchy. It is true that few of them were outright grants. Most of them were in the form of benefices which, at least theoretically, reserved for the crown the right to exact feudal services of the holders thereof. But a crown so weak that it was unable to refuse the demands of the church for more land was too weak to enforce the actual terms of the grant.

The church, however, was not long in discovering that a peril was attached to this rapid acquisition of landed wealth, which, like the shirt of Nessus, was destined to poison the wearer. For its increasing proprietorship entangled the church more and more in the coil of feudalism. The rivalry between the high clergy and the great lay feudality for possession of the crown lands was intense, and the church, in order to sate the land hunger of the feudal nobles, was often compelled to effect an accommodation with them by enfiefing its lands to them. In an age of blood and iron such an arrangement was frequently of mutual advantage. The bishop or abbot did not give or the baron get something for nothing. The baron might have bullied the bishop into making the enfiefment, but he was subject to the feudal contract which always required the rendering of military service by the vassal to the suzerain. Thus originated that class of *milites ecclesiae* which played so great a part in the period of the Crusades; thus the church entered more deeply than ever into the feudal polity. The art of war was not long in becoming an important episcopal accomplishment. The fighting bishop, helmed and hauberked, was a development of the late ninth century.

But it was impossible for any government with a remnant of self-respect to let the church wholly escape from secular control without a struggle, and the kings of the ninth century, weak as they were, had recourse to an expedient which in part recouped their waning material fortune and partially compensated them for the compulsory alienation of their domains to the church. This was the institution of the "advocate" (Fr. *avoué*; Ger. *Vogt*), an outgrowth of the highly feudalized organization of society. The office, in its narrower

functions, was almost as old as the church's landed proprietorship. It grew up in the early Middle Ages as a product of the violence of the times. Canon law followed the precept of Paul: "Nemo militans Deo implicat se negotiis secularibus." The bishops and abbots found it desirable, even necessary, to have some secular person to represent them in political, military, and judicial matters as the authority of the state waned and the power of feudalism increased. Before the time of Charlemagne the institution of *advocatus* was an irregular one. But this ruler by law required the permanent presence of such an official in every ecclesiastical establishment, both bishopric and abbey. The spread of immunities gave an enormous extension to the office. For the advocate was first of all a judge in the name of the ecclesiastic whom he represented, and only later, with the dissolution of the Carolingian empire, a defender and protector. But in the disorder of the times the advocate soon became more powerful than his lord. He became a minor pillar in the social edifice of the feudal system, a noble enfiefing the lands of the church which he was once engaged to defend, without any reminiscence of the ecclesiastical title vaguely attached to them. Fiefs *d'avouerie* became insensibly hereditary like other fiefs. The *advocati* became like other feudal nobles, given to war and pillage as they, and blackmailing and bulldozing bishops and abbots like lay barons, so that the restraints of the peace of God became as applicable to them as to others. The office became a menace to the church worse than the evils which it was originally designed to remedy, and the legislation of the synods and the councils of the feudal age involve *advocati* in common condemnation with all other robber barons.

Once become a hereditary fief, the *avouerie* was a terrible weapon in the hands of an ambitious baron, who could mercilessly appropriate the property of the church under guise of "protecting" it. In France the abuse of churches they were supposed to protect drove the episcopate to support the monarchy as a means of relief and to substitute the protection (*gardiennat*) of the crown for the abusive practices of this class of the feudality. The advocate represented his ecclesiastical superior in the administration of the purely

secular affairs which fell to the bishop or the abbot to perform in pursuance of his double rôle of an ecclesiastic and a landed proprietor. He pleaded the causes of the bishop or abbot in the courts of the count or suzerain; he administered justice in their name among the church's vassals; he represented his principal in the judicial duel, participation in which was forbidden to ecclesiastics; he presided over cases of trial by battle between the bishop's or abbot's vassals, and, most important of all, he commanded the *milites ecclesiae* when the church was called upon to do military service.

In the anarchy of the ninth century, when the monasteries began to wall their houses,¹ the office of advocate acquired great extension. Protection was the crying need of the time. Often, though, the bishop or abbot had no choice in selecting the incumbent. The post was eagerly coveted by the lay feudality, since it gave the holder control of certain ecclesiastical revenues and the use of certain church vassals for military purposes. As a consequence, in practice the bishop or abbot had frequently to appease the greed of a neighboring noble by purchasing his protection, for otherwise his lands were likely to be pillaged by the noble. Under this form of blackmail the remedy became worse than the disease.² The

¹ "Tunc quoque domus ecclesiarum per Gallias universas, preter quas municipia civitatum vel castrorum servarunt" (Rod. Glaber [ed. Prou], Book I, chap. v, sec. 9). For the effect of the Norse invasions in the ninth century and the anarchy of the tenth upon the walling of monasteries, villages, towns, granges, and the erection of castles, first of wood (block houses), later of stone, see Favre, *Eudes, roi de France*, pp. 220-21; Lavissee, *Hist. de France*, II, Part II, 14-16 (bib.); Flach, *Les Origines de l'ancienne France*, II, 312-27, 329-42; Waitz, IV, 629; Parisot, p. 55, n. 2; p. 458, n. 4; pp. 461, 499; Poupardin, p. 337, n. 6; Fagniez, *Documents relatifs à l'histoire du commerce ... de la France*, Vol. I, Introd., p. xli; Lefranc, *Hist. de Noyon*, pp. 12-14; Mortet, *Recueil de Textes relatifs à l'histoire de l'Architecture*, Introd., pp. xlii-lit. Cf. also the Index under the words *donjons*, *mottes de donjons*, *tours*, *maisons fortes*, *fermes*, *palissades*. In Germany, Henry the Fowler was the first to require monasteries and nunneries to be inclosed (Sommerlad, *Die wirtschaftliche Tätigkeit der Kirche in Deutschland*, II, 234-35; Nitzsch, I, 288). Gorze, Hersfeld, St. Gall, etc., were walled ca. 900 as protection against the Hungarians (Hauck, *Kirchengeschichte*, III, 227).

² On the institution of the advocate see Waitz, IV, 409 f.; Brunner, *Rechtsgesch.*, II, 320 f.; Bethmann-Hollweg, *Civilprozess*, III, 161 f.; Pischek, *Die Vogtei in den geistlichen Stiftern des fränkischen Reiches* (1886); Hauck, *op. cit.*, II, 598 f.; Sackur, *Die Cluniacenser*, I, 29 f.; Below, *Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters*, p. 149; Flach,

Capetian kings of France made themselves "lay" abbots of half a dozen of the richest abbeys in France. The counts of Flanders so built up their power. In Germany the practice was carried to an extreme by Frederick Barbarossa, whose Italian campaigns were largely fought with church vassals.

Under these conditions the hierarchy tended more and more to become a military caste like the feudality. Bishops and abbots became dukes and counts. Miter and mace, crosier and coat-of-mail, became interchangeable insignia of the high clergy, who increasingly were recruited from among the powerful families of the feudal noblesse, which put cadets of the house in church preferments, so that bishoprics and abbeys often became dependencies of the feudality.¹ Bishops and abbots became centers of feudo-territorial groups, exercising a temporal sovereignty analogous to the powers they had long practiced within their ancient immunities. In the name of churches and monasteries they granted fiefs, ruled vassals, distributed tenures, and governed serfs. Side by side with the secular feudatories grew up an ecclesiastical nobility composed of archbishops and bishops, who were at the same time dukes or counts, and cathedral chapters and abbeys which as corporations controlled immense territorial possessions. From all sides the weak had recourse to the church's stronger protection, offering it their persons and their prop-

Les origines de l'anc. France, I, 437-44; Viollet, *Inst. pol. de la France*, pp. 372-74; Senn, *L'institution des avoueries eccles. en France* (1903); *L'institution des vidames en France* (1907); Heilmann, *Die Klostervogtei im rechtsrheinischen Teil der Diözese Konstanz bis zur Mitte des 13. Jahrhunderts* (1908); Otto Lerche, *Die Privilegierung der deutschen Kirche durch Papsturkunden bis auf Gregor VII* (Göttingen, 1910), pp. 29-32; Blumenstock, *Der päpstliche Schutz im Mittelalter* (1890); Hüfner, "Das Rechtsinstitut der klösterlichen Exemption in der abendländischen Kirche," *Archiv für Kirchenrecht*, LXXXVI (1906), 302 f.; Walter Kraaz, *Die päpstliche Politik in Verfassungs- und Vermögensfragen deutscher Kloster* (Leipzig diss., 1902); Gerdes, *Gesch. des deutschen Volkes*, I, 539-40. Much other literature in Holtzmann, *Französische Verfassungsgesch.*, p. 138, and Luchaire, *Manuel des institutions françaises*, secs. 153-55. For a desperate instance, Richeri, *Gesta eccles. Senon*, I, 17 (MGH, SS. XXV). Fisher, I, 319, has a vivid account of the practical working of the advocate's office.

¹ See Schulte, *Der Adel und die deutsche Kirche* (1910). The classic document in the militarization of the bishops is Ep. 112 of the *Letters of Fulbert of Chartres*.

erty. Its tribunals were often preferred to the secular courts of the lay lords, and the church's sway was not only exercised over all ecclesiastical matters, but extended jurisdiction over a host of civil and criminal affairs which primarily were of secular origin and incidence. Gradually the practice of infodation penetrated the whole body of ecclesiastical offices and functions. The church's lands, offices, altars, prebends, tithes, became feudalized.¹

Aloys Schulte² has shown with a wealth of evidence that before the twelfth century the monasteries were almost wholly groups of freeborn inmates (*freiständische Stifter und Klöster*). From the time of Charlemagne onward the unwritten rule of the kings was that the bishop's office was to be filled by men of free or noble birth, and the German episcopate was emphatically *hocharistokratisch*, even though one sometimes comes upon instances like Benno II of Osnabrück, who was of servile birth. The breakdown of aristocratic control of the German houses began in the eleventh century with the rise of the *ministeriales*, who introduced a non-noble and non-free—in other words, servile—element for the first time into the monasteries, notably at Hirsau. The social decay is still more manifest in the twelfth century, and with it went also the decadence of learning and literary culture in the monasteries. The very catalogues of the monastic libraries, many of whose manuscripts went back to the ninth and tenth centuries, illustrate this intellectual decline, for eleventh-century manuscripts are rare. The subjoined figures from Schulte (pp. 237-39) show it. They are taken from two representative monasteries.

¹ Koeniger, *Burchard I von Worms*, pp. 48-52. For France see Viollet, I, 416-17, and Lesne, pp. 131-42. Walafriid Strabo's ninth-century treatise, *De ecclesiasticarum rerum exordiis et incrementis*, chap. xxxi, has a real value for the historian, for it institutes a striking comparison between ecclesiastical and secular dignities. Thegan, of noble Frank ancestry and biographer of Louis the Pious (*Vita Ludovici imperatoris*, chap. xx), inveighs against the entrance of men of base birth into the church: "De incongrua ignobilium ad ecclesiasticas dignitates promotione et vitiis." Elsewhere we read: "Turpissimam cognationem eorum a iugo debitaie servitutis nituntur eripere et libertatem imponi." The occasion of this invective was the conduct of Ebbo of Rheims (who was of servile birth) toward Louis the Pious (cf. chap. xli).

² *Der Adel und die deutsche Kirche im Mittelalter* (Stuttgart, 1910).

	Reichenau	St. Gall
Eighth century.....	44	21
Ninth century.....	100	237
Tenth century.....	29	86
Eleventh century.....	7	49
Twelfth century.....	4	54
Thirteenth century.....	11	50

The breakdown was further increased by the rapid extinction of the older, noble families in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, which gave room for the entrance of men of base blood and parvenu position. The long civil war into which Germany was plunged in the reign of Henry IV hastened this rapid decay of the older houses. Celibacy also had its influence. It was always detrimental, and sometimes fatal to the survival of a feudal house when one of its members entered the church. When Henry II's brother became bishop of Augsburg it doomed the Saxon dynasty to extinction, for Henry II was childless. From calculations necessarily imperfect, yet significant, Schulte has concluded that in the space of three hundred years 12 per cent of the high feudal families of Germany, 36 per cent of the counts, and 80 per cent of lesser noble families failed to perpetuate themselves owing to so many members of the families having entered holy orders. This was birth control to the point of extinction of many of them, and resulted in actual "race suicide" of some of the greatest feudal families. In 1050 the nobility still had the preponderance in the German church, but not a monopoly. The invasion of the lower classes already was in full swing. Benno II of Osnabrück was the son of a *ministerialis*, and so far as I know, the first German bishop of that status. After 1122 the elevation of men of common origin to episcopal and abbatial dignity becomes frequent. Before that date most of the German bishops were of noble birth. After that date low-born bishops and abbots are often met with.¹

But neither in Germany nor in France did the king's ecclesiastical sovereignty, conveyed in the term *regale*, become so mutilated and dispersed as his political authority. Some remnants of the complete supremacy over the church,

¹ See Schulte's table, *op. cit.*, pp. 67-68.

formerly enjoyed by the Carolingian monarchy, still remained in the great fiefs, which otherwise had escaped the crown's control. In these areas the vassals and revenues of the church were regarded as part of the military and fiscal resources of the crown and used by the king at his discretion. The bishop or abbot (if the abbey were "royal") was as much the choice of the king as a local priest was the creature of his lord, and the conduct of the hierarchy was assimilated to the condition, if not the status, of the secular feudatories. Bishops and abbots were held to the performance of *auxilia* in the same way and to as great—or even greater—a degree as dukes and counts.

The domain of a bishop or abbot in the Middle Ages was rarely, if ever, a compact, contiguous area. On the contrary, it was composed of a vast ensemble or complex of scattered parcels which had been acquired by gift or purchase during years of time, and was therefore widely located.¹ The unity of the whole was not a physical but a moral one. The bishop or abbot was the proprietor thereof, whose legal position was guaranteed by the immunity which exempted him from any lay jurisdiction or authority save that of the king. Unless feudal usurpation had canceled the theory of the law, no duke nor count could enter within this circumscription, which, in spite of the agglomerated nature of the lands, nevertheless formed a closed circle. Within and on his own lands a bishop or abbot was a royal official. The abbey of Lobbes in Flanders is a good illustration of the feudal com-

¹ For example, Corvey had lands in Lorraine, the archbishopric of Magdeburg owned lands in Deventer (Gerdes, I, 536). Outside of Metz proper the bishop had estates in Epinal, Moyen, Marsal, Vic, Habondage, Rambervillers, Conflans, Varnesberg, Radonville, St. Trond, etc. (Klipfel, *Metz, cité épiscopale et impériale* [1866], p. 26). The archbishop of Rheims, though a French subject, owned lands in Lorraine (Parisot, *Le royaume de Lorraine sous les Carolingiens*, p. 37, n. 4; p. 176, n. 3). A Roman papyrus discovered by Kehr in the archives of Marburg (pub. in *K. Gesellschaft d. Wiss. zu Göttingen* [N.F.], I, No. 1 [1896]) shows that Hersfeld owned landed property in Rome. For an extended and particular study see Friedrich Hülsen, *Die Besitzungen des Klosters Lorsch in der Karolinger Zeit* (Berlin diss., 1911). Fulda, Corvey, and Werden owned manors in Frisia (Bunte, *Jahrb. d. Gesellschaft . . . zu Emden*, X, No. 1 [1892]). The bishopric of Bamberg had holdings as far as the Danube and the Alps, while the cloister of St. Trudo in Liège had possessions along the middle Mosel and even along the coasts of Holland and Frisia. Prüm had holdings in one hundred and eighteen localities, some of them comprising only a few *mansi*.

plications into which a great monastery might fall. Juridically it was situated in the diocese of Cambrai, but feudally the bishop of Liège was its suzerain. The abbot enjoyed high rank among the feudality. His extensive though scattered possessions, being early safeguarded by royal and papal privileges, were settled with a dense population whose labor enriched the abbey.¹

Both in law and in practice these ecclesiastical lands were regarded as a particular kind of barony or fief which the incumbents held immediately of the king as overlord. This was the view of the church as well as of the state, and neither party looked upon the relation as either incongruous or unusual. Vacant sees and vacant abbeys were treated as knight's fees. After the analogy of lay fiefs the king attached the incomes of ecclesiastical office in the interval between two occupations; the new appointee paid what answered to a "relief" in the secular world in order to qualify for the office; the lands and offices of the church were let to farm, enfiefed, or sold exactly as in the case of secular property.

It is important to appreciate how closely state and church were united in the Middle Ages. The church, not content with regulating faith and morals, actively mingled in politics, inspiring the kings to perform most of the legislative work which they did, and securing the kings' support and defense of their spiritual and temporal interests. As a consequence, however, of this intimate relation the church paid by loss of liberty for the influence and riches which it enjoyed.

In the principle the clergy and people preserved the right of electing the bishop. But it was necessary to have the authorization of the crown in order to exercise the right, and the king might refuse to permit it or might appoint the incumbent himself. Sometimes he outwardly respected the forms, permitting election, but taking care in advance to designate the candidate of his choice. When election had taken place secular confirmation still remained, and only after this formality had been complied with could the metropolitan instal the new bishop.

¹ Koeniger, pp. 52-53; Kurth, p. 16; Pirenne, I, 127-30; Warichez, *L'abbaye de Lobbes depuis les origines jusqu'en 1200* (Tournai, 1909).

No bishop could qualify without the consent of the king. Formal approval was absolutely necessary unless the throne were vacant at the time of election of the bishop. Often the election was a mere formality. Usually the local church authorities and the people placidly accepted the king's choice, for it was desirable that the bishop stand well at court.

In the episcopate heredity could not obtain as in civil functions. But the influence of the feudal tendency toward hereditability of offices was shown in the church also, where nepotism was a common evil. The passage of a vacated see from uncle to nephew was common. Thus, while on the one hand the sovereigns endeavored to keep the bishoprics and the bishops under their control, on the other the prelates themselves were disposed, like all the feudality, to make themselves as independent as possible of any exterior authority. This tendency was all the more pronounced because many of the bishops were of noble families. It is a fair statement that the feudality everywhere in Europe predominantly filled the offices of the hierarchy.

Abbeys no less than bishoprics were dependencies of the crown or of the feudality. Certain of them which had been founded by one of the Merovingian or Carolingian princes, and in general all those monasteries which had been taken under the king's protection, were denominated "royal" abbeys.¹ These belonged completely to the king, who disposed of their revenues as he pleased. Theoretically the abbot was chosen by the monks, as the bishop was chosen by clergy and people. But few abbeys preserved the right of local self-government. If the king were complacent he might approve the selection of the monks. Frequently he brusquely filled the office, even riding down former privileges and immunities. Many abbeys, deprived of liberty by the kings, were united

¹ H. Feierabend, *Die polit. Stellung d. deutschen Reichsabteien während d. Investiturstreites* (Breslau, 1913). Upon these "royal" abbeys see Waitz, IV, 153 f.; VII, 189 f.; Lamprecht, *Deutsches Wirtschaftsleben*, I, 682; Parisot, *Histoire du royaume de Lorraine sous les Carolingiens*, pp. 708-9; Fisher, *Mediaeval Empire*, I, 256-57. For Italy, see Karl Vogt, *Eigenklöster im Langobardenreich* (Gotha, 1909). The earliest were patrimonial abbeys of the Lombard kings. Generally these monasteries had been founded by kings and queens, but some by lesser personages, e.g., Farfa, first a private, then ducal, then royal monastery (pp. 50-51).

to a bishopric or another monastery; or, more unfortunate still, fell into the hands of the feudal aristocracy, who usually handled them without any reminiscence of their religious character.

Just as the laity early discovered that it was often a lucrative thing to found monasteries, so did the bishops. Many abbeys were "episcopal" abbeys, having been originally founded by a bishop who controlled them and disposed of their revenues (which arose from the enrichment of the monastery by pious benefactions) as he pleased, exactly as the king did in the case of "royal" abbeys. This condition was particularly common in Lorraine and Swabia, where ecclesiastical feudalism had progressed farther than elsewhere in Germany. Here Cornelimünster and Werden belonged to Cologne; Prüm to Trier; Remiremont to Toul; Saint Stephen, Andlau, Erstein, Honau, and Hohenburg to Strasburg; Münster and Murbach to Basel. A monastery might depend upon a bishopric whether it was within or without the diocese to which it was attached; it might depend upon another monastery; it might depend upon the king or some other lord, even a foreign sovereign or noble; and finally it might depend immediately upon the pope. Abbeys created by laymen were the hereditary property of the founders' descendants, and their revenues formed part of his estate.¹

Archbishops, bishops, abbots, constituted a body of government officials like the counts, for they were servants of the state as well as of the church.² In virtue of immunities which may have been granted them, many bishops and abbots had the powers of a count within the domains of their church. They were constrained to some sort of personal service to the king, as to attend assemblies, to go on missions, to act as ambassadors to Rome or to a foreign court. Under the

¹ The historical poem of Hroswitha, the Saxon poetess, *De primordiis coenobii Gandersheimensis*, SS. IV, 306 f., throws interesting light upon how a monastery was founded and grew during this age. For an abstract of the poem see Ebert, *Gesch. d. mittelalterlichen Litteratur*, III, 313-14.

² In 871 Charles the Bald denied the competence of the Roman curia over French bishops in these words: "Reges Francorum . . . non episcorum vicedomini, sed terrae domini hactenus fuimus computati" (*H. F.*, VII, 542-45 [letter of Hincmar]).

form of "gifts" they were required to make certain contributions to the king's needs, apart from the revenues proper of the bishopric or monastery.

We know more about the political and military obligations of bishops and abbots than about their financial relations to the secular government. As great landed proprietors, in a time when military service was everywhere in Europe dependent upon landed possession, the clergy naturally, as the greatest of such proprietors, were called upon for service of themselves and their vassals, i.e., those who held church lands in fief.¹

Bishops and abbots had also to aid the king with their counsel like ordinary vassals. Sometimes they sat in general assemblies with the nobles, sometimes in particular ecclesiastical assemblies, as synods and councils. Here too the authority of the king over the church is manifest. For until the Gregorian reform synods could not convene without royal consent.

We have seen that the high clergy was largely recruited from the nobility. Nevertheless, in spite of identical origin, rivalry and even bitter hostility existed between the nobility and the clergy, the former usually being extremely jealous of the landed wealth and exemptions which the clergy enjoyed. In consequence private war accompanied by spoliation of lands and destruction of crops, the driving away of the peasantry, etc., were common features of everyday life; even the kings sometimes despoiled rich ecclesiastics. Yet generally royalty and the hierarchy got along fairly well together. The nobles menaced both the church and the crown, and common interest forced crown and clergy to co-operate.

Ideally the relation of church and state in the Middle Ages, at least before the Gregorian formulation of the dictum of church supremacy obtained, was one of mutual accom-

¹ The two documents which have most to do with this subject in Germany are the *Notitia de servitio monasteriorum*, which dates from Louis the Pious, and the *Numeri loricatorum a principibus partim mittendorum, partim ducendorum* (Jaffé, V, 471-72) of the reign of Otto II.

modation. But the relation was capable of great abuse by either party. Neither party was wholly innocent or wholly guilty, and no complete determination of relative responsibility can be made. But one fact is clear: the root of the whole medieval controversy between church and state, the fundamental source of friction, the real bone of contention, was the church's land. If the church had been less secular and more spiritual, if it had been willing to resign, or at least largely to abridge, its temporalities and material possessions, if it had been less devoted to the "royalty of Peter" and the Petrine supremacy and more devoted to the teaching of Jesus that his Kingdom was not of this world, the issue between church and state would probably never have got beyond the limits of doctrinaire discussion.

The land hunger of the church—the most pronounced form of avarice in a day when land was almost the sole source of the production of wealth, the only form of capital, the strongest basis of material power—is a fact calculated to appal and dismay one accustomed to interpret religion in spiritual terms.¹

Even in the eighth century the enormous monopoly of land enjoined by the church had become a menace to the government and a prejudice to society.² Charlemagne complained that gifts to the church were so frequent that free-men were reduced to poverty and compelled to take to a life of crime.³ "In 817 Louis the Pious was obliged to legislate to prevent clerks from taking gifts which might disinherit the children or near relations of the giver, and the enactment was re-enacted by Lewis II in 875."⁴

As early as 816 the standardization of ecclesiastical

¹ For the church's "working" of the pious for gifts of land and endowments see Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 670-73

² Boretius, *MGH, Leges*, I, 163.

³ For estimates of the extent of clerical wealth in the Carolingian epoch see Waitz, VII, 186; Inama-Sternegg, *DWG*, I, 291, and his *Grossgrundherrschaft*, p. 32; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 703; Sommerlad, *Die wirtschaftliche Tätigkeit der Kirche in Deutschland*, I, 301-16, Werminghoff, *Verfassungsgesch. der deutschen Kirche im Mittelalter*, sec. 8 and bibliography given there.

⁴ Boretius, I, 163, 277. The quotation is from Fisher, II, 64.

foundations was attempted.¹ The Council of Aachen divided the clergy into three strata according to wealth. Those possessed of from 3,000 to 8,000 manors were classified as rich; those possessed of from 1,000 to 2,000 manors were classified as medium; those with only 200 to 300 manors were denominated poor. There were a few very wealthy bishoprics whose riches soared into five figures, and it is obvious that there must have been a considerable intermediate class between the first and the second group, and between the second and the third.

Even the terrible anarchy of the ninth century, owing to civil wars within and the invasions of the Norsemen from

¹ Mansi, *Concilia*, Vol. XIV, cols. 232-33; ordo canon. 818, c. 122. Cf. Kötzschke, *Deutsche Wirtschaftsgesch.*, p. 60; Abel-Simson, *Jahrb. Ludwigs d. Fr.*, I, 93; *Cart. de N-D. de Paris*, I, Intro., sec. 14. The genesis of these wonderful surveys of church property made in the ninth century and later certainly goes back as far as the time of Pepin the Short, who instituted such an inventory as a part of the partial restoration of the church's property which Karl Martel had seized for military use after 732. Susta, *K. Akad. d. Wiss. zu Wien*. CXXXVIII, No. 4, has a valuable article upon the origin and historical importance of these polyptichs; he finds their probable origin in the *cadastres* of Rome and Byzantium. There is an interesting mention of such a survey ordered by Emperor Lothar I of the manors of Lobbes: "Quarto decimo igitur regni sui [Lothar I] anno redditus villarum nostrarum describere jussit quod polipticum vocant" (*De gestis abbatum Laub.*; Migne, CXXXVII, col. 557). Polyptichs of lay nobles for private lands may be inferred but no example has been preserved (Dopsch, I, 299-300). The best-known example is the famous *Polyptique* of the abbot Irminon, first edited by Guérard and later by Longnon (cf. Viollet, I, 366-67, 374-75). Other French examples are Piot, *Cartulaire de l'abbaye de St. Trond* (2 vols., 1870-75); Pirenne, *Polyptique et comptes de l'abbaye de St. Trond* (1896); Hansay, *Etude sur la formation et l'organisation économique du domaine de l'abbaye de St. Trond* (1899). The archbishop of Cambrai made a survey of the abbey of Lobbes in 868-69 (Parisot, p. 283, n. 1). The chief examples in Germany are the *Traditiones* of Corvey; Jaffe, *Monumenta Corb* (1886); Wigand, *Gesch. von Corvey* (Höxter, 1819); the *Traditiones Wizentsurgenses* (Wolf, *Erwerbs und Verwaltung des Klostervermögens in der Trad. Wiz.* [Berlin diss., 1883]); and the *Register of the Lands of Prüm*, which may have been modeled upon a similar survey of Ferrières-Lamprecht, *DWL*, II, 84, n. 1. There is a bibliography of German *cartulaires* by Oesterly, *Wegweiser durch die Literatur der Urkundensammlungen* (2 vols.). On these polyptichs in general see *Polyptique d'Irminon* (ed. Longnon), II, 363 f.; *Polyptique de Saint Remy de Reims* (ed. Guérard), pp. 93 f.; Coulanges, *L'alleu et le domaine rural*, chaps. i-iii; and Nitzsch, I, 255, 271, who makes an instructive comparison between the culture east and west of the Rhine. Cf. Melchior, *Beiträge zur Kulturgesch. der Rheinlande im 8. und 9. Jahrhundert* (Darmstadt, 1904). For the importance of these inventories of the wealth of the church in the treaties of partition in the ninth century see Meyer von Knonau, *Ueber Nithards vier Buecher Geschichten. Der Bruderkrieg der Söhne Ludwigs d. Fr. und sein Geschichtschreiber* (Leipzig, 1886), pp. 41, 106, n. 235; Richter, *Annalen*, I, 419-22; Mühlbacher, *Deutsche Gesch.*, I, 51.

without, was turned to advantage by the church. What I have elsewhere written may be quoted here:

It is undeniable that the distress of the monasteries was frequently deliberately misrepresented in order to prevail upon the crown to enlarge their possessions. Hardship and misery the monks doubtless often endured, but it was a misery wholly relative. They suffered less than ordinary people and were amply compensated for their discomfort. Bourgeois has pointedly said that "the clergy with aid of false charters in general got more than they lost."¹

The complete separation of the eastern and western kingdoms, i.e., Germany and France, was reached in 870 at the partition of Meersen, and we may take this date as the point of departure for a study now of the proprietary interests of the German church, having cleared the ground for an understanding thereof in the preceding pages, in which the endeavor has been made to explain how the church and feudalism became so closely identified.

The German monasteries, like the Gallican, enjoyed to a high degree the liberality of popular piety. Not infrequently they were enormously endowed at the time of foundation. The nunnery of Gandersheim, the favorite foundation of the Liudolfinger, in the bishopric of Hildesheim was started in 856 with an indowment of 11,000 manors;² Hersfeld in the space of thirty years accumulated 2,000 large and small estates scattered in 195 different localities;³ Tegernsee, in Bavaria, just prior to the secularization of Duke Arnulf (907-37) owned 11,866 manors; Benediktbeuren, which suffered the same fate, possessed 6,700.⁴ We have no record of the landed wealth of twenty-five other Bavarian monasteries whose enrichment dates from the Carolingian period. But at the termination of that epoch Fulda possessed 15,000 manors; Lorsch, 2,000; St. Gall, 4,000.⁵

¹ See my article on "The Commerce of France in the Ninth Century," *Journal of Political Economy* (November, 1915), pp. 873-74; but cf. Parisot, *op. cit.*, p. 31, n. 5.

² Inama-Sternegg, I, 406.

³ Hauck, III, 195.

⁴ Sommerlad, II, 38 f.

⁵ The Swiss monasteries were notoriously rich. The rapid growth of the landed wealth of the monasteries is well illustrated by St. Gall. The *Traditiones* show that before 700 it had not more than 50 *Hufen*; in the eighth century the number rose to 110, in the ninth to 550; by the year 1000 it had about 4,000 manors. Other figures

Statistics of the extent of episcopal lands have not been preserved so fully as those pertaining to the monasteries. But there is ground to believe that the bishoprics were not as rich as the monasteries. The secular clergy did not appeal as interestingly to the imagination of men as the monks; perhaps the fact that church discipline was administered through the secular clergy, who also mingled more with the outside world, deprived the hierarchy of that bloom of romantic piety which the monks possessed in the eyes of the faithful.

The total number of recorded grants to bishoprics made by the Carolingian rulers in Germany between 814 and 911 amounts to 149, viz., 24 by Louis the Pious, 49 by Ludwig the German, 15 by Charles the Fat, 37 by Arnulf (significant for so short a reign), and 12 by Louis the Child, the last of the house.¹ Of the eight bishoprics in Bavaria, Augsburg and Salzburg were the richest, the former having possessed 1,507 manors in 812, the latter 1,600 manors in the time of Duke Tassilo, who was deposed by Charlemagne in 788.² Freising

are: Pruem (893), 2,000 *hubae*, 2,402 *Morgenland*; Mettlach, 305 *mansus*; St. Maximin, of Trier, 1284 *Morgenland*, 739 *hubae*; Werden an der Ruhr (880), 22 "dominical" estates, 200 *hubae*, and 400 other pieces of land; Weissenberg, properties scattered in 300 localities. The abbey of Lobbes in the diocese of Liège, according to a survey made in 868-69, owned 174 villages and a castle (Vos, *Lobbes, son abbaye et son chapitre*, I, 418; Kurth, *Notger de Liège*, I, 52 and n. 1). For other data see Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 700; Waitz, VII, 186. Nitzsch (I, 280) well says "Die Zeit der ostfränkischen Karolinger ist die Zeit des Wachstums der kirchlichen Besitzungen. Der Güterbestand besonders der Klöster mehrte sich durch Schenkungen und Zinsübertragungen von Jahr zu Jahr." On the subject further see Waitz, V, 186; Sommerlad, Vol. II, chap. v; Lamprecht, *Deutsche Gesch.*, III, 59; Gerdes, I, 532-40; Roscher, *Ackerbau* (11th ed., 1885, of Stieda), sec. 105. Of course it is not possible to determine absolutely what area of land any monastery possessed, for the unit of measurement, the *mansus* or *Hufe*, was not a uniform area, like an American "section" (Guérard, *Polyptique d'Irminon*, p. 605; H. See, *Classes rurales*, pp. 35-46). The great difficulty in accurately evaluating medieval statistics is illustrated in the case of Guérard, who, careful scholar though he was, made grave errors in his computations with reference to the number of hectares possessed by St. Germain des Prés according to the *Polyptique d'Irminon*. Levasseur, *Acad. d. inscript. et belles-lettres* (July-Aug., Nov.-Dec., 1890), has shown that, according to the calculations of M. Hulin of Ghent, instead of owning 221,019 hectares, the abbey possessed not over 40,000, and probably not more than 37,000. The forest area, instead of representing nine-tenths, Guérard estimated, was not over two-fifths.

¹ Hauck, III, 57.

² Rietzler, *Gesch. Bayerns*, I, 327; Inama-Sternegg, *Grossgrundherrschaften*, p. 32.

was credited with estates scattered in 320 localities in the year 835.¹ The archbishopric of Trier, in Lorraine, received ten square miles of land from Charlemagne shortly before his death.²

Naturally the enormous landed wealth possessed by the church excited the envy and cupidity of the great lay feudality, especially the powerful "stem" dukes, whose policy, with the dissolution of the Frankish empire in the middle of the ninth century, was to bring the bishoprics and monasteries within their duchies under their sway.³ With the increasing relaxation of royal authority in Germany after the death of Ludwig the German in 870, the dukes tended more and more to repudiate the Carolingian theory of ducal subordination to kingly authority which Charlemagne had so drastically exemplified in the humiliation of Tassilo of Bavaria, and to assert that they, quite as much as the king, ruled "by the grace of God."⁴

This rise of the great "stem" duchies in Germany in the ninth century is an important and interesting phenomenon. Violent as the measures often were which the dukes practiced toward the clergy in forcibly depriving them of their lands, nevertheless it would be an error to regard their course as merely one of wanton spoliation. Popular feeling in Germany in the ninth and tenth centuries was tribal, not national. The undeveloped and unapprehended popular self-consciousness functioned through the ancient German tribal organisms, of whose complex "personality," so to speak, the feudalized tribal dukes were the most visible and concrete embodiment.

The ducal policy toward the church within the separate duchies was, on a smaller scale, that of Charlemagne before them, namely, the attempt to affiliate or assimilate

¹ Sommerlad, II, 27.

² Inama-Sternegg, *DWG*, I, 284. Albert Lennarz, *Annalen des hist. Ver. f. den Niedersachsen* (1900), Nos. 69-70, has a very valuable study of the territorial power of the archbishops of Trier about 1220, based on the "Liber annalium jurium archiepiscopi et ecclesiae Trevirensis," which shows both the vast extent of the bishop's lands and the hugeness of his incomes.

³ Waitz, VII, 45.

⁴ Hauck, III, 8.

the administration and resources of the church with secular government. The feudality was not interested in questions of dogma and discipline, but was very much interested in the functioning of the church in government and society within its dukedoms. While the bishops were usually treated a little more leniently than were the abbots of the great monasteries, in general it was of slight moment to the duke whether the lands which they wished to appropriate were owned by a secular or a monastic corporation, so long as the upbuilding of a strong ducal government within their fiefs was to be furthered. As a consequence a double policy of forcible secularization of church lands and the enforcement of the right of advowson by the dukes upon the church within their duchies was general in Saxony, Bavaria, and Swabia.¹ In addition to these measures the dukes drastically thrust their "protection" upon terrorized bishops and abbots. Everywhere the dukes laid a heavy hand upon the church and attempted to impose their feudal authority on the bishops and abbots.²

The deposition of Charles the Fat and the accession of Arnulf of Bavaria to the German throne in 887 may be taken as the crucial point in this epoch. For that event, though it did not unseat the Carolingian dynasty, was nevertheless a political revolution. The German church, maddened by the tyranny and the exploitation of its lands by a baronage which had riotously pillaged it under the weak rule of Charles, in self-protection engineered the deposition of Charles the Fat and the enthronement of Arnulf.³ We get some measure of the

¹ Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 710, n. 2; Sommerlad, II, 226 f.; Dahn, IX, 518 f.; Hauck, III, 279; Stutz, *Beneficialwesen*, chaps. xx-xxi; Dümmler, *Gesch. des ostfränk. Reiches*, I, 279; II, 107, 285, 290; III, 152.

² Waitz, IV, 156 f.; 163, n. 2; Hauck, III, 8-9.

³ The dethronement of Charles the Fat was chiefly the work of Liutward, arch-chancellor of the empire, who had been driven from court in June, 887 (the deposition took place in November) by a combination of the great dukes against him, and fled to Arnulf, who already in 884-85 had unmasked his claims as a pretender. The contemporary chroniclers are singularly silent as to causes and motives, which, considering that all were clerics, of itself may be taken as evidence that clerical intrigue, whereof the writers are discreetly silent, was at the bottom of the movement. The conclusion expressed in the text is arrived at by a process of inverse reasoning from the evidence afforded by Arnulf's policy as king and the course of

church's apprehension in the action of the synod of Metz in the following May (888), which expressed fear of general secularization of the lands of the church within the several duchies and implored Arnulf for protection.¹

By virtue of the circumstances under which he became king, Arnulf was pledged to a pro-clerical policy. In return for the moral support and material backing of the church, whose vassals aided his arms, whose resources repleted the diminished revenues of the Carolingian house, Arnulf showered exemptions and immunities upon the bishops and abbots.² At the diet of Tribur in 895 the clergy were given precedence over the feudality.³ With Arnulf's reign began that intimate alliance between the German church and the German crown which reached a climax of partnership under Otto the Great and his successors.

When the last Carolingian king expired in 911 in the person of Louis the Child, Arnulf's son, the German church lost not a minute in establishing a new dynasty. The ener-

the church toward him. Waitz contends that technically it was not a deposition but an abdication by Charles in favor of his rival, and strives to minimize the revolutionary nature of the event (*DVG*, V, 26, n. 2), yet on p. 30 he admits the ascendancy of clerical influence in Arnulf's reign. It seems to me that, looking backward into the policy of the church in the time of Louis the Pious and Charles the Bald, and forward into its policy under Conrad I, especially as expressed at the synod of Hohenaltheim, we are justified in concluding that the church was the controlling factor in the change of ruler. For further literature see Gfrörer, *Gesch. der Ost- und Westfränkischen Karolinger*, II, 293; Dümmler, *Gesch. des Ostfränkischen Reiches*, III, 302 f.; Wenck, *Erhebung Arnulfs*, p. 22; Maurenbrecher, *Gesch. der deutschen Königswahlen*, pp. 25 f.; Harttung, *Die Thronfolge im deutschen Reiche*, in *Forschungen zur deutschen Gesch.*, XVIII (1874), 134 f.; Phillips, "Beiträge zur Geschichte Deutschlands vom Jahre 887 bis 956," *Abhandlungen der III Classe der Akad. der Wissenschaften* (Vienna), Band III, Abt. 2. For Charles the Bald's recognition of the church's claim to deposition of a king see Flach, *Origines de l'anc. France*, III, 249.

¹ Nitzsch, I, 286. He well says: "Ein neues System nationaler Königtümer war im Entstehen, dessen anerkannten politischen Mittelpunkt der ostfränkische Hof bildete" (p. 287).

² Dopsch, *Wirtschaftsgesch. der Karolingerzeit*, II, 328 f. Arnulf denominated himself "ecclesiae catholicae filius et defensor" after 892. There are no less than forty charters in favor of the German church in 888, and thirty-one for 889 (Boehmer-Mühlbacher, *Regesta*, Nos. 1721-92; see remarks of Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen*, I, 211-16).

³ Nitzsch, I, 292. The clergy again expressed fear of spoliation (Regino, *Chron.*, 895).

getic Hatto, archbishop of Mainz, promptly put up Conrad of Franconia as king, with the backing of the church, perilous as the course was of choosing one duke in preference to another.¹

The formidable nature of this clerical control of the government may be better appreciated when one realizes who this Conrad I was. The Conradiner were one of the most powerful feudal families of Franconia. They possessed vast and rich lands in old Austrasia, along the Rhine, in Hesse and in Franconia. At the end of the ninth century the family was represented by four brothers—Conrad, Rudolph, Eberhard, and Gebhard. They were allies of Hatto of Mainz, and Conrad had married a daughter of the emperor Arnulf. In 892 when the latter deposed Poppo, count of the Sorben or Thuringian March, he gave the position to Conrad; Rudolph received the bishopric of Würzburg. This immense advancement of the Conradiner stirred the jealousy of the Babenberger, another ruling family in Franconia, whose seat was Bamberg. Besides Poppo of Babenberg, just mentioned, there was another brother named Henry who was killed in 886 during the siege of Paris by the Norsemen. The latter left three sons—Adalbert, Adalhard, and Henry. The feud between the clans broke out soon after Arnulf died (901). A bloody engagement was fought near Bamberg in which two of the Babenbergers and Eberhard of Franconia were killed. The third and surviving member of the Babenberger, Adalbert, continued the feud until his capture and decapitation in 906. The ruin of the Babenberger, largely consummated by the efforts of the Archbishop of Mainz, made the fortune of the Conradiner, and also assured the church's ascendancy in Germany during the reign of Conrad I.²

But the danger of the church from feudal spoliation was not over.³ Henry, duke of Saxony, deprived Mainz of the

¹ Nitzsch, I, 296; Hauck, III, 6-10; Lamprecht, *DG*, II, 115; Waitz, V, 61-63.

² See Schmitz, *Die Dynastie der Babenberg* (Munich, 1880).

³ "Freche Menschen schonten selbst der Kirchen und des Kirchenguts nicht. Wie gross die allgemeine Unsicherheit gewesen sein muss, geht aus der häufigen Erwähnung von Räubereien und Plünderungen hervor" (Sass, *Die Kultur- und Sittengesch. der sächsischen Kaiserzeit* [Berlin, 1892], p. 52, n. 10; Koeniger, *Burchard von Worms*, p. 227).

lands situated within his duchy,¹ while in Swabia, Bishop Salomon of Constance waged a long and bitter conflict with Duke Burchard,² and when the latter died continued the duel against his successor Erchanger.³ In Bavaria the whole episcopate, headed by Pilgrim of Salzburg, Tuto of Regensburg, and Drachalf of Freising, rallied around Conrad, when in July, 916, he invaded Bavaria against Duke Arnulf.⁴

The conflict between the church and the crown, on the one hand, and the feudal dukes, on the other, was furiously waged. In every duchy the bone of contention was the lands of the church which the dukes struggled to seize.⁵ In Saxony alone, where the duke was too rich and the church too poor to tempt feudal covetousness, the local clergy was friendly with the reigning feudal authority. At the synod of Hohenaltheim in 916, which was strongly imbued with pseudo-Isidorean ideas of clerical supremacy, and over which a papal legate presided, the bishops of all Germany, with the exception of those of Saxony who were restrained by Henry the Fowler from attending, boldly proclaimed their alliance with the crown.⁶ Erchanger of Swabia and Arnulf of Bavaria, who had revolted against Conrad, were condemned.⁷ The synod tripled the penalty of excommunication, declared the exemption of the clergy from secular courts, asserted the appellate supremacy of the papal curia, and demanded the restoration of the property of the church, which the dukes had seized and secularized, and the enforcement of the tithe.

It was not the fault of the bishops that Conrad's reign was not successful.⁸ Erchanger, it is true, suffered death, but Arnulf of Bavaria was too strong in his position, and the

¹ Widukind, I, 21; Waitz, *Jahrbuch Heinr. I*, 20; Dümmler III, 585.

² *Annal. Allem.*, 911, SS. I, 55; Zeller, *Bischof Salomo III. von Konstanz, Abt von St. Gallen* (Tübingen diss., 1910).

³ *Annal. Atah.*, 913-16; *Contin. Reg.*, 914-17; Hauck, III, 12.

⁴ *Dipl.* I, 27, No. 30; Nitzsch, I, 303.

⁵ Waitz, V, 62 f.

⁶ Hauck, III, 13; Nitzsch, I, 303. The Bavarian bishops braved the wrath of Duke Arnulf to come.

⁷ Hauck, III, 21.

⁸ Even Conrad I abused his popularity with the church in order to increase the family holdings (Hauck, III, 20; Waitz, VII, 134).

Saxon clergy could not be lured away from Henry. Suddenly the whole program of the church collapsed with the death of Conrad on December 28, 918. The failure of Conrad's policy proved two things: first, that the feudal organization of Germany around the great dukes was too deeply rooted to be overthrown; the day had gone by when the crown could coerce the dukes as Charlemagne had broken Tassilo of Bavaria;¹ second, that the time was not yet ripe for the German church to exercise a dominant sway in political affairs.²

Upon his deathbed Conrad seems to have had some intimation of this truth, in which the clergy, however reluctantly, appear also to have acquiesced. We cannot explain otherwise the dying King's action in sending the royal insignia to Henry of Saxony, and that of the Archbishop of Mainz in inviting Henry, at Fritzlar, in May, 919, to become the defender of the church.³ But Henry I was too wary to mortgage his freedom of action to the clergy, and with feigned humility, to the bitter chagrin of the bishops, refused to be consecrated.⁴

With the accession of the Liudolfinger dukes of Saxony to the German kingship in 919 Saxony was brought into the orbit of general German history, and its simplicity, political, social, and economic, began to be modified by the penetration of more highly developed feudal institutions into the country. The change particularly affected the church lands and the people thereon, owing to Otto I's close identi-

¹ Popular feeling was tribal, not national (Thietmar, *Chron.*, II, 28). When Conrad I executed Adalbert of Babenberg much popular indignation was aroused (Regino, *anno* 906). The caliph Abd-er-Rahman told the envoys of Otto I that their sovereign made a mistake in permitting the German dukes so much liberty (*Vita Joh. Gorz*, chap. cxxxvi, *MGH*, SS. IV, 376). We see the same phenomenon in feudal France, where the Duke of Gascony denominated his duchy as "regnum" (Pfister, *Robert le Pieux*, p. 228), and the Duke of Aquitaine was styled "king" (Bouquet, XII, 451). Thietmar, VI, 30, described the Duke of Burgundy as "miles est regis in nomine, et dominus in re."

² Stein, *König Konrad*, 206 f.; Mühlbacher, *Reg. Kar.*, pp. 743-58; Dümmler, *Gesch. d. ostfränk. Reiches*, III, 574-620.

³ Waitz, *Jahrbuch Heinr. I*, 40.

⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 75; Hauck, III, 20-21; Thietmar, *Chron.* I, chap. v.

fication of the German clergy with secular government. Lordship, homage, vassalage, the benefice system, became the order of the day among the Saxon bishops and abbots, as the result of the enfiefing of the enormous grants of land made to the bishops by the Saxon kings. Even church prebends were militarized.¹

Henry I's feudal policy was to give simultaneous and due expression both to the general and the particularistic interests in Germany. The dukes were permitted to exercise their authority with almost sovereign independence within their duchies, administering justice, coining their own money, and in the case of the Bavarian duke even the right of nomination to bishoprics was abandoned to him.² Almost as much latitude was given to Burchard of Swabia and Gilbert of Lorraine.³ Henry I's policy, in a word, was one of regulation, not suppression of feudalism. But he was no less a king for that. By inner inclination as well as by the compulsion of external events the Liudolfinger were monarchical in sentiment and aspiration.

Only in the last years of his reign did Henry I relax his suspicion of the church. He was not liberal in grants to it.⁴ After 933, when his reforms were well established and his power secure, and perhaps not a little influenced by the piety of his wife Matilda,⁵ his ecclesiastical policy became more af-

¹ Waitz, VI, 105-7; Guilihermoz, pp. 126, 182, 243, 264.

"Episcopus eum ad militem suscipiens xxx aratra in praedicto pago in beneficium dedit ea ratione ut in expeditionem iv scuta transmitteret" (*Vita Meinwerki*, chap. lxx). Henry II permitted Poppo of Trier to do likewise (Thietmar, VI, 51; Koeniger, *Burchard von Worms*, p. 49). The Franconian kings continued the policy, even Henry III, e.g., "... complacuit quoque ei ut pro eodem beneficio singulis annis sicut et alii milites serviret abbati et in expeditionibus cum sex scutis militaret" (Dronke, *Codex dtp. Fuld.* No. 749 [1048]). The same practice obtained in England and France (Guilihermoz, p. 124 n.).

² Thietmar, I, 10; Rietzler, I, 329; Lamprecht, *DG*, II, 127; Hauck, III, 16-19; Waitz, *Jahrb.*, p. 52.

³ Lamprecht, *op. cit.*, II, 127.

⁴ Sommerlad, II, 232 f.; Nitzsch, I, 330-32.

⁵ The portrait of Matilda in the *Vita Mathildis reginae*, SS. X, 573 f., is largely imitated from Fortunatus' *Life of S. Radegonde*. Yet there are traces of independent treatment, e.g., chap. xvi, where it is interestingly said that the queen in spite of her life in a cloister continued to wear royal purple garments. German cloister life

fable; he even began to abridge the control of the great dukes over the church within their fiefs.¹ But as a whole church politics were at a standstill during Henry I's reign. Yet beyond any doubt Henry I in the last years of his life saw clearly that what had been a policy of wisdom at first could not be wisely adhered to permanently.² In feudal Germany the permanent estrangement of church and state was as impolitic as it was impracticable.

This Otto I perceived and symbolically enunciated both his ecclesiastical and feudal (or rather anti-feudal) program in the solemn coronation in Aachen cathedral.³ Otto cared little for the religious significance of the episcopate, but he was in earnest about its political importance.⁴ It was clear in his mind that the German church would have to comply with his will. The German church was on the horns of a dilemma,

may have been pious, but it was not addicted to exaggerated ascetism; cf. the comments of Ebert, *op. cit.*, II, 314. On this earliest movement of German pietism see Sybel, *Hist. Zeitschrift*, XLV, 25; Lamprecht, "Das deutsche Geistesleben unter den Ottonen," *Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft*, VIII, Part I, 1; Heineken, *Die Anfänge der sächsischen Frauenklöster* (Göttingen diss., 1909); Harnack, *History of Dogma*, VI, 3 n.; Ludwig, Zoepf, *Das Heiligen-Leben im 10. Jahrhundert* (Berlin, 1908); and Walther's article on Matilda, first abbess of Quedlinburg, in *Zeitschrift. d. Harzvereins f. Gesch.*, XXVII, Heft 2 (1904). She was a daughter of Otto I by his English wife, Edgith.

¹ Lamprecht, *DG*, II, 132-33; Nitzsch, I, 324-25.

² Hauck, III, 68; Nitzsch, I, 329-32: "Heinrich I erkannte am Ende seiner Regierung die Bedeutung an, welche die kirchliche Organisation noch immer für das deutsche Leben hatte."

³ Bryce's exposition of the significance of this ceremony is classic. See *Holy Roman Empire* (2d ed.), chap. viii. The church and the imperialistic ideal of Otto were more easily reconciled than the *imperium* and the ideas of feudal sovereignty of the stem-dukes. The issue between crown sovereignty and feudal state-rights was irreconcilable, as the great struggle of Frederick Barbarossa and Henry the Lion showed in the twelfth century. The absence of the principle of heredity in church offices afforded the crown a powerful means of control of the church which was not applicable to the duchies. Otto finally brought the dukes to acknowledge his authority, but they were always actuated by local and tribal traditions from which the clergy were much more free.

⁴ Cf. Hauck, III, 1-19, and notes. In the struggle between two rival candidates at Liège, Otto compelled the Archbishop of Cologne to consecrate the candidate whom he preferred. Bishop Hugo of Verdun was driven from his see for opposing the king, and Benim put in his stead. Political "availability" was the determining factor in the choice of a German bishop.

and Otto perceived it—either to continue to be buffeted and abused by the violence of the dukes and to suffer continual spoliation of its lands,¹ or to purchase peace and protection from the Saxon house at the price of surrendering its independence and renouncing those vague ideas of supremacy which it had cherished since the ninth century. Save for a few irreconcilables like Frederick of Mainz,² the German bishops as a whole espoused the king and threw their moral influence and their material resources into the scale with the crown against the feudal dukes. The bishops and abbots not only put at Otto's service their authority and their administrative experience, but their wealth and their church vassals also.

This alliance between the German crown and the German church broke the power of the great German dukes. Otto I disposed of church offices more with an eye to the political bearing of the appointment than with any sentiment for its religious character. He deposed the recalcitrant Archbishop of Mainz and gave the see to his natural brother William; he made his brother Bruno at one and the same time archbishop of Cologne and duke of Lorraine; he made his cousin

¹ Yet, strong as Otto I was, the enormous wealth of the German church still tempted some of the great dukes in his reign to brave the might of the king. Henry of Bavaria blinded and banished the Bishop of Salzburg and castrated the patriarch of Aquileia and divided the episcopal estates among his vassals (Jaffé, III, 358; Waitz, VII, 204). Liudolf of Swabia seized the lands of the Bishop of Augsburg (*Vita Oudal.*, chap. xxx; *MGH*, SS. IV, 399). The Lorrainer dukes Gilbert and Conrad often plundered the estates of the Archbishop of Trier. The frequency with which such acts are mentioned implies the wide prevalence of the practice. The bishops of Bremen, Metz, Liège, Hildesheim, Münster, Paderborn, and Cologne complain time and time again of the greed of their feudal neighbors for their lands (Waitz, VII, 206, and notes; cf. VI, 79 f.). The bishops were much more likely to be involved in this strife with the feudality than the abbots, chiefly because of their greater political ambition and intriguing, and practiced the same violence of which they accused their enemies. They maintained armed bands of bravos for defense or offense as the case might be. Many were the bishops who *praedia multa ecclesiastica pro auxilio distribuit decennium* (quoted in Waitz, VII, 206, n. 1). The anathemas of the church were ineffectual in a land where the high clergy were grossly guilty of the very practices which they reprobated (for examples of anathemas see *Forsch. z. deutsch. Gesch.*, XIII, 497; Lesne, pp. 413-23). The sources abound; see citations in Gerdes, I, 536 nn.

² For the opposition of the German clergy to Otto I's measures, see Hauck, III, 33-34.

Henry archbishop of Trier.¹ The German church, so far as the king was concerned, was an instrument of government. There are no examples of German synods in Saxon and Franconian times discussing the general welfare of the church.² There are no Saxon capitularies like those emanating from Charlemagne, Louis the Pious, or even Charles the Bald.³

Otto I introduced no new principle when he so elevated the church to such a high place in his government, but he enormously magnified the practice of his predecessors. Theoretically the canonical right of episcopal election still continued. But irregularities of the nature of royal designation were so frequent that the rule was far more honored in the breach than in the observance.⁴ The chief principle which prevailed with the king was the politico-economic importance of the office to be filled, and the "availability" of the candidate. Expediency was superior to canonicity. The interests of the crown were the decisive factor. Thietmar of Merseburg, the chief historian of the Saxon epoch, depicts the bishops as royal and loyal officials.⁵ The feudal ideal was complete. Otto was head of state and (secular) head of the church too. Dogma and discipline were left to the church, but not government, even of itself.

The life of Udalrich, bishop of Augsburg in the time of Henry I and his son Otto the Great, is a typical example of the activities of a German bishop in the depth of the feudal age. Udalrich was descended from an illustrious Allemanic family, his father having been a count of Dillingen, his mother a daughter of Burkhard, the margrave of Raetia. He

¹ Hauck, III, 31; Lamprecht, *op. cit.*, II, 153.

² Hauck, III, 67; Lamprecht, *op. cit.*, II, 155-56.

³ Hauck, III, 67 and 230; cf. Fisher, Vol. I, chap. iv.

⁴ For a list of episcopal appointments by the German crown see Hinschius, *Kirchenrecht*, II, 530, n. 9.

⁵ *Chron.*, I, 15; Lambert of Hersefeld, *Annales* (1071, ed. Holder-Egger), pp. 132-33, has a famous tirade against these "political" churchmen of the Franconian period. The Saxon episcopate has been studied in Hinschius, II, 530-37; Hauck, III, 395-403; Gerdes, I, 566-72; Koeniger, Part II, chap. ii; H. Gerdes, *Die Bischofswahlen in Deutschland unter Otto dem Grossen in den Jahren 953-73* (Göttingen, 1878).

was educated at the monastery of St. Gall, but preferred the life of a secular cleric to that of the cowl, and entered the service of Adalberon, bishop of Augsburg, by whom he was made supervisor of the episcopal revenues as well as grand butler of the episcopal court (*praecoquus*). In 924, through the influence of Burkhard, duke of Swabia, and favored by King Henry, Udalric was made bishop of Augsburg.

Both the city and the see had suffered heavily from the inroads of the Magyars, and Udalric at once set to work to repair and to strengthen the town walls. When he visited the churches in his diocese he traveled in an oxcart, accompanied by a retinue of clerks and vassals. He was himself abstemious, but loved to set a liberal table and was generous in charity. He supported Otto I during the revolt of Liudolph, the king's own rebellious son whom he had unwisely made duke of Swabia, and it was his military contingents, together with those of the bishop of Chur, which so overawed Liudolf in 954 as to prevent a battle on the Iller. In the next year (955) Udalric was the heart and soul of the brave resistance of Augsburg, when the Magyars stormed up the Danube Valley, and won great renown for his prowess in the battle of the Lechfeld. Udalric died in 973 and was succeeded by Henry, a protégé and relative, like himself, of the powerful Duke of Swabia. Less fortunate than his predecessor, Bishop Henry perished in the disastrous battle in Calabria in 982, when Otto II vainly endeavored to extend the German power over the Byzantine provinces of Southern Italy.¹

Since the defeudalization of the church in Europe, owing to the influence of the French Revolution and especially in Germany through the sweeping changes wrought by Napoleon, it requires an effort of the historical imagination and a large and intimate knowledge of the nature and operation of the feudal régime in the Middle Ages in order to under-

¹ The *Vitae* of the German bishops form a valuable source of culture history, to which may be added the fifth book of Rather of Verona's *Praeloquia*, which is a vivid tableau of the manners and customs of the feudalized high ecclesiastical society of the tenth century, so rich, indeed, in anecdote and color that one suspects it to be a satire, and hence exaggerated. Cf. also Rather's *Qualitatis conjectura cujusdam* (this *quidam* is Rather himself), esp. sec. 3.

stand how and why the church could become so identified with secular government, and how Otto I was able to make so large use of it.

The key to the matter is to be found in the proprietary nature of the medieval church, i.e., the temporal power of bishops and abbots. For at the same time these ecclesiastics were churchmen and feudal chieftains. They pertained both to the spiritual and to the feudal hierarchy. The problem was to reconcile the dual functions and obligations of bishops and abbots, and to give simultaneous and due expression to both their spiritual and their temporal duties. In practice it was impossible "to split even." Instead of the fief being regarded as the accessory of the bishopric or abbey, the bishopric or abbey became the accessory of the fief. The state applied to church lands exactly the same rules and regulations which it enforced in the case of lay lands. Clerical election, when it obtained at all, was a mere formality; in many cases ecclesiastical election wholly disappeared.¹

The king lived, in no inconsiderable degree, upon the revenues of the church² and fought his wars in large part with church vassals. To limit the power of the crown over church lands was both to diminish the royal authority and to sequester important and necessary revenues. Otto I's theory of control of the German church was that of Charlemagne before him. The difference was one of degree only. The crown's ecclesiastical authority conveyed in the term *regale*, as said before, was not so reduced as its secular authority. Considerable remnants of former Carolingian prerogative still survived in the great duchies, being least in Bavaria,³ and thus gave the crown a *point d'appui* in the very heart of the duchies. This authority was more complete in the case of the monasteries than in the case of the bishoprics.

Monasteries, from the inception of the movement, were private foundations, and of all founders of monasteries the

¹ See Erich Laehns, *Die Bischofswahlen in Deutschland von 936-1056* (Greifswald, 1909).

² "Alles Reichskirchengut stand im Eigentum des Reiches" (Richter, *Annalen*, III, Part II, 768).

³ Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, I, 227. For details see Waitz, VII, 138 f.

Merovingian kings and the Austrasian mayors had been the greatest. These the Carolingian kings inherited and increased, so that an imposing array of cloisters was within the control of the Frankish crown. Free election disappeared in the abbeys under Charlemagne, who ecclesiastically supervised them through the bishops¹ and assimilated the administration of the monastery lands to that of the fisc in virtue of the "protection" vouchsafed by the crown to them;² *Krongut*, *Hausgut* and *Klostergut* were all one in the Carolingian system.³

In consequence, despite the fact that during the ninth century the feudality usurped control of many foundations and plundered the crown of its revenues thereby,⁴ nevertheless the Saxon house was possessed of many monasteries throughout Germany, although Otto I complained of the spoliation of them under his predecessors and of their reduced number.⁵

With these "royal" abbeys must also be included the new bishoprics like Magdeburg, Brandenburg, Zeitz, Meissen, etc., established during the Saxon epoch in the colonial lands east of the Elbe and Saale rivers, as the Wendish territory was conquered and settled by the German people.⁶ By the end of the Saxon period the complete sway of the royal prerogative over all bishoprics and abbeys, save a few of the latter which still remained in private hands by virtue of ancient tradition, was accomplished.

This rapid extension of crown authority over the German church was materially facilitated by the peculiarly concrete conceptions of law which prevailed. It took the medieval, and especially the Teutonic, mind a long time to grasp the highly complex notion of a corporation. The modern legal conception of a juridical personality or of a corporation did

¹ Waitz, III, 433.

² *Ibid.*, pp. 155, 158-60.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 140; IV, 154-60. For the wealth of the monasteries under Otto I see Sommerlad, II, 39.

⁴ Waitz, IV, 156, 160, n. 2.

⁵ *Ibid.*, VII, 209, n. 4; Koeniger, 101, n. 3.

⁶ Waitz, IV, 157, 168, n. 4.

not exist. Feudalism was an extremely personal régime. Law had to possess concrete, physical embodiment. Abstract legal conceptions did not prevail and would not have been understood. Accordingly it was universally held that every bishopric and every monastery had to have a physical overlord.¹ In the case of small churches the patron was the local landed proprietor who had founded it, or whose father had founded it, and who controlled it. In the case of monasteries the overlord was the founder. But most of the great German monasteries had been founded by royal initiative and royal endowment, and the same was true, as has been said, of the new bishoprics in the conquered lands. As the king lived in considerable part upon the resources derived from the church lands, especially the abbey lands, to limit the exercise of royal authority over these lands, or to permit them to be enfeiefed without royal consent, would not only have diminished the political power of the crown, but also have deprived him of important revenues.²

When German history passes from the Carolingians to the Saxons, we find Otto I (936-73) too heavily involved with the church to resist its demands. His father, Henry I, had dangerously estranged the German clergy. It was Otto's policy to mollify them. At the inception of his reign the chief peril to the crown lay in the great power of the feudal dukes. The bishops and abbots, threatened by their usurpations, inclined toward the crown, while the King, for his part, found one of the strongest features of his anti-feudal policy in elevating the clergy as a counterpoise to the high feudality. The lavish generosity of the Saxon kings toward the German church far surpassed that of the Carolingians. Of the 435

¹ "Der Begriff der Kirche als einer juristischen Person war den Germanen fremd. Die kirchlichen Gebäude gehörten dem Herrn des Bodens, auf dem sie standen und wurden von diesem den Geistlichen zur Benutzung eingeräumt" (Richter, *Annalen*, III, Part II, 768; cf. Ficker, 12 [64]; Hinschius, II, 622; Gierke, *Deutsche Genossenschaft*; and Pollock and Maitland, *History of English Law*, I, 469-95).

² Henry II, as was his way, sensibly and pithily expressed the crown's position in this matter of secular control of church property: "Oportet ut in aeclesiis multae sint facultates . . . quia cui plus committitur, plus ab eo exigitur. Multa enim debet (Fulda) dare servitia et Romanae et regali curiae propter quod scriptum est: Reddite quae sunt Caesaris Caesari et quae sunt Dei Deo." The way in which Abelard made the point is classic (see Bouquet, XIV, 290).

charters which have been preserved of the reign of Otto the Great, 122 are donations to the church.¹ Henry I had made but 5 donations to the clergy during his whole reign. It has been well said that

Otto I perceived that under his father the church of Germany was fast becoming the prey of the nobility. The Bavarian duke had obtained from the Fowler the right to nominate to the Bavarian sees. If the example spread, the church in Germany would split into a number of tribal organizations which would intensify national differences, and possibly destroy the free circulation of talent through the kingdom. Otto was not choosing between a spiritual church on the one hand and a political church on the other. The alternative was between a church dominated and bullied by dukes and counts, and a church controlled and utilized for the service of the nation by the king.²

In this policy Otto I had the precedent of Charlemagne, who made large use of the church as an instrument of government. But the Saxon rulers went farther:

These four pious emperors pile donation upon donation. Whereas we have 42 charters of donation proceeding from Louis the German and 37 from Arnulf, we have 122 from Otto the Great. Again, the grants of market rights and toll rights made during this one reign to ecclesiastical foundations exceeded all the grants taken together made by Otto's predecessors. The munificence of the Saxon emperors builds up the territories of the great Rhenish sees, creates the archiepiscopal see of Magdeburg, invests the bishop of Würzburg with ducal powers, creates the new see of Bamberg, endows and founds numerous Saxon abbeys and nunneries, and heaps political and judicial powers upon ecclesiastical foundations.³

Otto I was the first medieval ruler who attempted clearly and thoroughly to make the church an ally of the government. The problem and the policy have been admirably formulated by Sohm:

The royal power, upon which, nevertheless, the imperial authority rested, fell far short of the position formerly assumed by the Frankish kings. The feudal system had arisen in the meanwhile, and had changed the constitution of the state. The count was no longer, as before, the official organ of the royal will, but a vassal, whose county belonged to him as a fief

¹ Hauck, III, 58, n. 5.

² Fisher, *Mediaeval Empire*, II, 78-79; cf. Waitz, VII, 184.

³ Fisher, II, 65. For detailed information on the Ottonian church policy see Hauck, III, 58 f.; Eggers, *Der königliche Grundbesitz im X. und XI. Jahrhundert* (Weimar, 1909).

in his own right. Moreover, above the count, the great duchies had arisen, the Swabian, the Bavarian, the Frankish, the Lotharingian, and the Saxon, which possessed a power altogether equal to that of the king. The royal power was in danger of being turned from a real supremacy into a mere feudal overlordship. Otho the Great saved it from this danger by two measures. First he attached the duchies as much as possible to his own family, and thus turned the resources of the duchy into resources of the kingdom. This measure was only partially successful since his own brother, the Duke of Bavaria, and his own son, the Duke of Swabia, were far more inclined to rebel against the royal powers than to be obedient to it.

The decisive measure which Otho the Great employed was to build the new kingdom on the power of the church. Under him it became an express principle of the royal policy to raise the power of the church, especially of the bishops, by enriching them with gifts, bestowing on them public privileges, and even making them counts. And wherefore? In order that the power of the spiritual princes might counterbalance that of the arrogant temporal princes. The king was surer of the spiritual lords than he was of the temporal. The king himself nominated the bishop and abbot of the imperial monasteries by means of the investiture with ring and crosier. He was more free to nominate the bishop and abbot than the count and duke, because spiritual offices were not hereditary, neither could be hereditary. The spiritual dignities in every case fell again into the king's hands at his disposal, and could always be filled by the persons most agreeable to the king.

Even property belonging to the spiritual foundations passed as in some measure the property of the empire. What the spiritual foundation gained was not therefore lost to the empire. On the contrary, it became rather the more certain possession of the empire, by being withdrawn from the hands of the great temporal vassals. The king received subsidies, under the name of gifts, from the church lands, and from church lands the greater part of his troops was supplied in case of war. So over church lands the king set up the bishop or abbot most agreeable to him. Thus the German kingdom and the German empire of the Middle Ages became possible. Its supremacy found a material substratum in the power of the church; and the royal investiture represented the means by which the church was bound to the king.¹

Otto I, even more than Charlemagne, made the church a political and economic ingredient of the government.² He found the German church in a condition of terror and material collapse owing to the violence of the feudality; the

¹ *Outlines of Church History* (Eng. trans.; London, 1895), pp. 97-99. Cf. Paul Merkert, *Kirche und Staat im Zeitalter der Ottonen* (Breslau diss., 1905); Sommerlad, II, 238 f.; Hauck, III, 58 f.

² Willigis of Mainz broke two coalitions of the dukes in the time of Otto III and Henry II (Lamprecht, *Deutsche Gesch.* 170, II).

office of advocate of church property converted into a huge device by the baronage for the purpose of levying blackmail upon the monasteries; church endowments almost everywhere except in Saxony, where the church was too poor and his own ducal power too strong to permit practices which elsewhere obtained, divided among families and private persons.¹ To all this spoliation and local "secularization"—to give the practice a euphemistic term—Otto I put an end. In 951 all "royal" abbeys were declared exempt from all and any secular authority save that of the crown, and forbidden to enfeif their lands without the consent of the king.²

From Otto the Great's time onward until the spoliations of the war of investiture the bishoprics and so-called royal abbeys were a rich source of revenue to the kings. Under Conrad II their lands were assimilated with the fisc and administered as it was.³ The right to appoint bishops and abbots to church vacancies was a lucrative means of income for the crown. In Italy this prerogative was exercised even more extensively than in Germany, and was more zealously guarded because the Italian sees were richer.⁴

¹ The tendency toward aggrandizement of the temporal power of the clergy, even down to simple priests, appears in *Vita Oudabrics*, chap. vii: "Horum autem, qui in suo episcopatu proprietates habebant, quisquis religiosorum propter amorem Christi ecclesiam componere cupiebat, et cum concessa licentia ab eodem sancto episcopo eam aedificaverat consecrationemque habili tempore ab eo fieri flagitavit, aptissima uniuscujusque petitioni praebeuit assensum, si confestim ille consecratae ecclesiae legitimam dotem in terris et mancipiis in manum ejus celsitudinis dare non differet . . . ea etiam ratione, ut aliis circumjacentibus ecclesiis jura earum in nullis rebus propter illam novam minuerentur."

² Gebhardt, *Handbuch der deutschen Gesch.* (1st ed.), I, 258; Nitzsch, I, 348-49; Waitz, VII, 93, n. 3; p. 209, n. 2; Feierabend, p. 1. At the end of the rule of the Saxon house there were 85 royal abbeys in Germany (Matthäi, pp. 96-101; Koeniger, p. 105, n. 1). For discussion of the condition described in the text see Waitz, VII, 209-11; Sommerlad, II, 239 f.; Hauck, III, 30 f.; Lamprecht, II, 154 f.; Nitzsch, I, 340 f.; Dümmler, *Otto der Gr.*, pp. 514 f.

³ On the distinction of the property of the royal abbeys for monastery and for crown purposes see Waitz, VII, 189-91; VIII, 244; Bresslau, *Konrad II*, II, 364 f.

⁴ Bresslau, *ibid.*, pp. 365-67. The Italian cities began to prosper long before the Crusades from the increase of trade through the Alpine passes. "Wenn sich damals in Deutschland selbst in den rheinischen Bischofssitzen noch immer Bauernhof an Bauernhof reihte, so verfügte dieser lombardische Prälat bereits über die Mittel einer wirklich grosstädtischen Bevölkerung und einen Komplex fester Adelshäuser in den Ringmauern seiner Hauptstadt" (Nitzsch, II, 31).

The economic advantage derived by the crown from this close articulation between state and church was no less important than the political. Ecclesiastical economy was much ahead of feudal, and even the royal domains, in spite of the precedent of Charlemagne's capitulary *de villis*, could not rival those of the church in intelligent and efficient administration, especially in the Rhinelands.¹

Until the accession of Otto I in 936 no attempt had been made by the German crown to mobilize the resources of the church in the interests of the government, nor had the kings been distinguished for special generosity to the church. Conrad I, that *Schützling* of the church, gave proof of his piety by a gift of fifteen estates to the church, located in Franconia, Bavaria, and Swabia. The less devout Henry I had made only five donations, chiefly of lands in Saxony. But Otto I, perceiving that the church possessed the most efficient economic régime of the time, gave the church a large share in the administration of the crown lands, and definitely mobilized the church's resources for the benefit of the state.² The Ottonian period was the golden age of the "royal" monasteries, whose abbots everywhere, in imitation of the ancient Frankish practice, were used as mayors of the fisc (*villici*).³

An examination of Otto I's land policy is evidence of this. The lavish favor of this great Saxon king toward the church far exceeded that of his Carolingian predecessors. Of the 435 charters which have been preserved pertaining to the reign of Otto I, 122 are records of donations of land to the church—almost three times as many as all the gifts combined made

¹ *Vita Joh. Gorz.*, chap. lxxxix, SS. IV, 362. On the richness of the Saxon church, Waitz, VII, 183-84; Nitzsch, I, 374-79, and a notable description of the prosperity of Worms in the episcopate of Burchard II (1000-1025), at pp. 388-89.

² "Er schützte die Kirche gegen die Habgier der Laien, er schlug alle Säkularisationen nieder; aber er machte die kirchlichen Erträge zum Hauptposten seines Haushalts, er bildete seine Heere in erster Linie aus den Vassallenschaften der Kirche" (Nitzsch, I, 357-58.)

³ Inama-Sternegg, II, 129; *Vita Oudalrici*, chap. iii, *MGH*, SS. IV, 389; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part I, 826. For proof of the golden age of the royal abbeys see Jaffé V, 471—a document of Otto II; for use of abbots as *villici*, Waitz, VII, 194, n. 2; p. 198, nn. 1-2; Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (anno 1063). Even Lothar, in spite of his leniency toward the church, so used them (Waitz, VII, 198, n. 3).

to the church by the Carolingian kings from Louis the Pious to Ludwig the Child. In other words, Otto I in the space of thirty-seven years gave as much to the church as his predecessors had done in ninety-seven years. Of these grants, 42 were made to Otto's favorite see of Magdeburg, which he created; 13 to Hamburg-Bremen; the rest are scattered among various bishoprics and monasteries. In a much briefer reign Otto II disposed of 50 large and 21 small estates, many of them to the bishopric of Prague.¹

Under Otto I the military service of the German bishops, whose prowess had been severely tested in the strife with the great dukes and the Hungarians during the reigns of Arnulf and his son,² was systematized, and the long line of fighting bishops in the Saxon epoch shows how manfully they responded to the call. Late in Otto I's reign the monasteries were similarly mobilized, though not quite so fully. For example, Fulda was exempt from military service until 972. The church had known fighting bishops and fighting abbots in former times, as witness the case of Leodegar of Autun in Merovingian times, and that of Abbot Fulrad under Charlemagne. But in the tenth century the art of war became an important episcopal accomplishment.³ Three-quarters of the contingents enumerated in the muster-roll of 981 (1,482 out of a total of 1,990) were drawn from church lands. The church furnished 74 per cent of the forces for that Italian

¹ "Immer mehr wachsenden Besitzungen der Bischöfe" (Koeniger, p. 74). Cf., *Libell. I in honor. Willig.*, chap. iii. SS. XV, 745, l. 25; Hauck, III, 58; Eggers, *Der konigl. Grundbesitz im 10. und 11. Jahr.* (Weimar, 1909), pp. 58 f.

² Between the years 886 and 908 ten German bishops fell in battle. For this "Kriegshandwerk" of the bishops see Hauck, II, 709; Sommerlad, II, 249-50; Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen* (5th ed.), II, 27. The abbey of Fulda alone possessed fiefs bound to furnish 6,000 fighting men in the eleventh century. For statistics of episcopal military service in the time of Otto I see Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 1295.

³ Gerard, *Viti Udalrici Aug.*, chap. iii: "Concessum est S Udalrico episcopo ut Adelbero in ejus via itinera hostilia cum militia episcopali in voluntatem imperatoris perageret"; Thancmar, *Vita Bernwardi*, chap. xxviii: "Imperator [Otto III] et pontifex jubent universos theodiscos episcopos ad illorum praesentiam destinare cum omni suo vassalatico ita instructos ut ad bellum quocumque imperator praecipiat possent procedere." Cf. Thietmar, *Chronicon*, IV, 20; V, 23.

campaign of Otto II.¹ The German kings gave lands to the church in order to increase its military effectiveness, and the grants were made subject to this stipulation. This is the reason why the kings so resolutely held fast to the right of ecclesiastical appointments, for it was the surest way of controlling the church's resources, both of men and of money. Prior to the middle of the eleventh century, when the

¹ Hauck, *Fulda and Hersfeld*, p. 8. Service *à cheval* was especially imposed upon church vassals (Waitz, V, 325-27; Guilhiermoz, p. 174, n. 10; pp. 182, 187).

An analysis of the roster, in Jaffé, V, 471-72, follows:

BISHOPRICS

Mainz, Cologne, Strasburg, Augsburg, each 100.....	400
Trier, Salzburg, Regensburg, each 70.....	210
Verdun, Liège, Würzburg, each 60.....	180
Seben [Waitz, VIII, 134, erroneously gives 20].....	50
Constance, Chur, Worms, Freising, each 40.....	160
Speyer, Eichstädt, Toul, each 20.....	60
Cambrai.....	12

ABBEYS

Fulda, Reichenau, each 60.....	120
Lorsch, Weissenburg, each 50.....	100
Prüm, Hersfeld, Ellwangen, each 40.....	120
Kempten.....	30
St. Gall, Murbach, each 20.....	40
Total.....	1,482
All lay vassals.....	508
Grand total.....	1,990

See the detailed analysis of this roster in Sommerlad, II, 250, and literature there given, to which may be added Lehmann, *Forschungen*, IX, 437, and Richter, III, 2, pp. 760-61, who, however, is wrong in his figures. On the infeudation practiced by bishops and abbots see Waitz, VI, 105-7. Examples may be seen in *Vita Meinwerki*, chap. lxx, and Dronke, *Codex diplom. Fuld.*, No. 749. In estimating the number of those summoned it must be remembered that such vassals were *vollehen*, i.e., they held *fiefs du haubert*, which implied the service of at least 12 vassals by each, i.e., 1,990 must be multiplied by at least 12, which would give an army of at least 6,096 lay and 17,784 church vassals. This fact does not directly appear, but constructively may be argued from two passages in the *Chronicle of Lorsch*, of the years 1066 and 1107, SS. XXI, 415, 434-35, and other evidence. Cf. Guilhiermoz, pp. 174 and 182. The Italian expeditions of the German sovereigns increased the number and importance of the contingents of the church. For these distant campaigns the emperors needed more reliable troops than the lay vassals usually furnished, and troops more contractually liable than the *Heerban*, which survived until the end of the eleventh century in Saxony, and the intimate relation between the crown and the church made this usage easy and safe. For a case of an abbot complaining of the burden of military service see that of Meginward of Reichenau in Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (ed. Holder-Egger), p. 127 (*anno* 1071). When Henry III went to Italy in 1046 he was accompanied by 3 archbishops, 10 bishops, and 2 royal abbots, with their vassals. The alleged charter of Otto III exempting abbots from military service except expeditions to Rome and the *Constitutio*

Gregorian reform began its attack upon the German monarchy, few contested the right of the crown so to do.¹

The enormous growth of the church's landed proprietorship, however, and the military use made of it by the German kings were not the only ways in which bishops and abbots reflected the influences of feudalism, mirroring in their historical conditions the dominant political and social ideas of a feudal age. Otto I distributed new immunities, especially to the bishops, with a lavish hand,² and confirmed many which had formerly been conferred. After 973 the privilege of immunity was so generally assumed that mention of it was frequently omitted in the charters.³ Otto III, in a blanket decree, conferred the right of full justice upon all bishops within their domains.⁴ The sole judicial officer henceforth within ecclesiastical territories was the *Vogt*, to whom the king yielded his ban.⁵ Thus the power of the counts was diminished.⁶ The prerogatives of the count and his proprietorship were largely combined in the hands of the hierarchy. Out of this condition sprang the great German "prince-bishops" of the high feudal age.

Yet immunities, despite the advantages derived from their possession, were negative rather than positive in their application. A more substantial means adopted by the Saxon

de expeditione romana attributed to Lothar II are forgeries (Schulte, *Der Adel*, p. 213). The statement in the letter of Anacletus II (1133) to Lothar II that German dukes were legally compelled to perform military service in Italy if the emperor was summoned to the relief or protection of the pope is not authentic (Doeberl, *Mon. Ger. Selecta*, IV, 14 n.).

¹ Hauck, III, 397, 402, 404. Ficker, *Abhandl. d. Kais. Akad. zu Wien, phil.-hist. Classe*, LXXII, 90, contends that the crown had legally as full control over bishops as over abbots. Waitz, VII, 199, contests the point, but admits that it has not been sufficiently studied. Cf. also Waitz's article in *Göttinger Anzeiger* (1873), pp. 821 f.

² Nitzsch, I, 339; Sommerlad, II, 242-43. Until late Merovingian time the *mundium* was more common than the immunity, which developed with the growth of feudalism in the seventh and eighth centuries (Waitz, VII, 219 f.). In general, episcopal immunities were broader than those of the monasteries (*ibid.*, VII, 228). Otto I was cautious in disposing of the latter (Hauck, III, 60; Seliger, p. 118).

³ Hauck, III, 60. For an example see case of Hamburg, in *Diplom.*, II, No. 61.

⁴ *Diplom.*, II, No. 48, p. 449; Lacomblet, *Urkundenbuch*, I, No. 228.

⁵ *Diplom.*, II, No. 16, p. 71.

⁶ Waitz, VII, 230.

kings in order to strengthen the church and make it a grateful and willing instrument of the crown was the practice of directly investing bishops and abbots with the powers of counts. This policy was not entirely novel with the Ottos, for as far back as 887 Charles the Fat had given the rights of the local count to the bishop of Langres,¹ and in 927 Henry I did the same at Toul.²

But until the time of the Saxon kings the bishops were not the equal of the counts in public authority. To be sure, within the circumscription of their immunities, as we have seen, they were independent of the local counts, and exercised powers analogous to those of the count within the *Gau*, having high and low justice over the population dwelling upon the church lands. There was a certain inconvenience, however, in this arrangement, for the lands of the bishops were usually widely scattered, while the jurisdiction of the count was coextensive with a compact, contiguous territory, and over all the population living therein. Now the bishops had whole counties bestowed upon them, with all the rights and powers of the former counts reigning there.³ At a stroke they became the heads of politico-ecclesiastical principalities. Instead of a lordship over dispersed holdings with no binding tie save their episcopal authority, the bishops now became spiritual and temporal lords of vast and compact dominions, all the more enduring because the power thus newly constituted had that perpetuity and indivisibility peculiar to the patrimonies of the church. In a word, the Ottos were the creators of the great ecclesiastical princes of medieval Germany.⁴

¹ Bouquet, VIII, 643.

² Sickel, *Diplom.*, I, No. 16, p. 52.

³ There is a large-scale map by Otto Curs, "Deutschlands Gaue um das Jahr 1000," in *Deutsche Erde*, VIII, 67, together with a register of places.

⁴ Grants of the powers of the count, either in whole or in part to bishops, made by Otto I are as follows: archbishops of Mainz, Cologne, Magdeburg; bishoprics of Speyer, Chur, Worms, and Minden (Hauck, III, 62). Otto II gave the county of Cadore to the bishop of Freising—Reizler, *Gesch. Bayerns*, I, 390. Otto III gave the counties of Waldsazin and Rangau to the bishop of Würzburg; those of Padergo, Aga, Treveresga, Auga, Sorethfeld, to the bishop of Paderborn; the county of Huy to the bishop of Liège. Under Henry II the counties of the old duchy of Franconia

The future danger arising for the German monarchy owing to this arrangement will be seen later on,¹ but there is no denying the immediate benefit of the practice in increased law and order throughout Germany, which is especially manifested in the growth of town life and the development of trade. By Henry II's time (1002-24) the wooden palisades of the Fowler's time were giving way to stone walls around the towns, as at Magdeburg, Verden, Paderborn, and Worms.² The ecclesiastical capitals became centers of a rapidly expanding commerce, owing to greater security on the roads and the multiplication of market rights in the hands of the bishops and abbots. For the Ottos were lavish in distributing favors of this nature, together with the right to coin money, among the faithful episcopate.³

were partitioned between Würzburg and the king's new bishopric of Bamberg, and the bishoprics of Cambrai, Paderborn, Utrecht, Worms, and Hildesheim were further enriched by grant to them of the rights and privileges of the regional counts. For further details and references to sources see Waitz, VII, 208-18, 255-64; Hegel, *Die Entstehung des deutschen Städtewesens*, pp. 73-74; Kurth, *Notger de Liège*, pp. 113-17; Oppermann, *Westdeutsch. Zeitschrift*, XIX (1900), 202 ff.; Schulte, *Rechtsgesch.*, sec. 68, n. 4; Ficker, *Forschungen*, II, 12 f.; Berchtold, *Entwicklung der Landeshoheit*, I, 65 f.

¹ For the deep significance both for the present and the future history of Germany of this identification of the church's administrative system with the secular government see Hauck, *Kirchengesch.*, III, 3, and IV, 674-75, and Below, *Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters*, pp. 190-96; Ranke, *Deutsche Gesch. im Zeitalter der Reformation* (5th ed.), I, 24.

² Hauck, III, 410 n.; Sommerlad, II, 234-35, 265-67; Wattenbach (5th ed.), II, 34.

³ Hauck, III, 61; Waitz, VII, 5-6, 24-33. For the increase of trade and commerce in Saxon Germany see Giesebrecht, II, 11 f.; Gerdes, I, 388-99.

The German episcopate seems to have been more negligent in keeping registers and statistics of its resources than the monastic clergy, and we are consequently driven to the use of indirect evidence and inverse reasoning to ascertain its wealth. While in the nature of things the conclusions are only approximate, it is nevertheless clear that by the year 1000 the German church was exceedingly wealthy. The growing luxury and material self-indulgence of the high clergy and the great abbots shocked the rigid moralists of the age (Richer, *Hist.*, III, 39). Bishops and abbots maintained imposing retinues of servants. This appears even in the time of Arnulf. Salomon of Constance showed some visitors a vase of gold set with precious stones (Ekkehard, *Casus S. Galli*, Book I, chap. xxii). Even Bruno of Cologne dressed his household servants in purple (Ruotger, *Vita Brunonis*, chap. xxx). Purple silk and beaver and marten fur were the usual attire of the bishops on grand occasions (Thietmar, *Chron.*, Book VII, chap. xxxv; Gerbert, *Epp.*, Nos. 33 and 188). Baldric of Liège staggered even Rather of Verona, who was used to the luxury of Italy, with his

The doctrinaire and the religious purist may be tempted to mock at this politico-ecclesiastical system perfected by the Ottos as one of selfish purpose and subversive of the purposes of religion.¹ But both the German crown and the German church faced a condition, not a theory, in the tenth century. Whatever may have been the ultimate results arising from this close affiliation between the church and the state, extending almost to the point of assimilation of the former by the latter, there is no denying the practical efficacy of the arrangement and the immediate benefit to Germany.

Modern historians² indorse the opinion of Sigebert of Gembloux³ in the eleventh century, that Germany's greatness in the Saxon epoch was due to the intelligence of her kings and the public spirit of her bishops.

The German bishops, loyal, efficient, were the pillars of the throne. A roll call of the eminent bishops of the Saxon period would make a brilliant pleiad. Among them were Bruno of Cologne, William and Willigis of Mainz; Henry and Egbert of Trier; Ansfrid of Utrecht; Theoderich of Metz, Wicfrid of Verdun, Gerard of Toul, Ulric of Augsburg, Wolfgang of Regensburg, Pilgrim of Passau, Reginald of Eichstaet, Bernward and Godehard of Hildesheim, Notger of Liège and Meinwerk of Paderborn. Every one of these

splendor. Arnold of Halberstadt wrote to his friend Henry of Würzburg: "Praedecessores nostri totam operam suam animabus lucrando insumebant, nos, quomodo corpora foveamus praecipue satagimus; illi pro coelo, nos pro terra disceptamus" (Jaffé, *Mon. Bamb.*, p. 477). For modern literature on the luxury of the Saxon period see Specht, *Gastmähler und Trinkgelage bei den Deutschen*, p. 8; Gerdes, I, 428 f.; Sass, *Deutsches Leben zur Zeit der sächs. Kaiser.*, pp. 7 f.; Hauck, III, 410-11; Koeniger, pp. 76-77; Vogel, *Ratherius von Verona*, I, 44.

¹ The point was not unseen in the tenth century, and met by the practical argument. See Ruotgerus, *Vita Brunonis*, chap. xxiii; Widukind, *Rerum Gestarum Saxoniarum Libri IV*, I, chap. xxxi, who cites the case of Samuel.

² Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, III, 7; Ratzinger, *Gesch. d. Kirchl. Armenfleige*, p. 252; Kraus, *Gesch. der christlichen Kunst*, II, 33; Kurth, *Notger de Liège et la civilisation au Xe siècle*, pp. 1-4.

³ Jure felicia dixerim Ottonis tempora, cum claris praesulibus et sapientibus viris respublica sit reformata, pax ecclesiarum reformata, honestas religionis redintegrata. Erat videre et reipsa probare, verum esse illud philosophi: fortunatum esse rempublicam, si vel reges saperent vel regnarent sapientes. Praeerant enim populo regni non mercennarii sed pastores clarissimi (Sigebert, *Vita Deoder. Mettensis*, chap. vii).

bishops had more than a local reputation—they were national figures.

The bishops profited more largely than the abbots from this course of the Saxon kings. The reasons are not hard to find. The secular branch of the clergy had an organic unity which the monastic half did not possess. The monasteries were individual, separate houses, not a closely knit organization like the episcopate, and except for the "royal" abbeys¹ almost outside the pale of the crown's control. Most of them were of private foundation and identified with local and feudal interests. Then, too, the abbots had nothing approaching the spiritual and disciplinary authority of the bishops.² Finally, the wealth of the monasteries already was so great by the close of Otto III's reign (1002) that it would have been inexpedient, not to say dangerous, as the policy of Henry II showed, to have increased their power.³

But there is no gain without some loss. While the German church was an enormous gainer from the royal protection and the royal bounty, on the other hand its close political relation with the government resulted in a certain decline of local and personal interest in it on the part of the feudality, which resented the Ottos' appropriation of revenues to which they believed themselves rightfully entitled, and the political and military use of the church made by the Saxon kings in order to coerce them. To the great German dukes and the half-feudal counts and the big proprietors in general the church was an object of envy and hate on account of its growing

¹ See M. Brennich, *Die Besetzung der Reichsabteien in den Jahren 1138-1209* (1908).

² Julius Harttung, *Diplomatisch-historische Forschungen* (1879), has shown that down to the beginning of the twelfth century the liberty of the monasteries from episcopal visitation was very limited and exceptional, the liberty granted the abbeys by Gregory V was curtailed by Sylvester II.

³ Giesebrecht, II, 86; Gerdes, I, 576. Henry II was the first German king who gave countships to abbots, and this in only two instances, Fulda and Gandersheim (*Diplom.*, Nos. 444 and 509). His actual policy toward the monasteries was one of great restraint, even of suppression. See *infra*. It may be pointed out that this partial assimilation of an abbey's lands with the fisc obviated the necessity of the abbey having an *avoué* or *Vogt* to protect it. For the *vogtis depredationes* were often so great that the monasteries resorted to making forged charters to protect themselves. See Dopsch, *Mitth. d. Inst. f. oesterr. Gesch.*, XIX, No. 4.

wealth and vast political power. Accordingly, the bishops and older monasteries got few benefactions from a sullen feudality. These experienced a distinct and alarming falling off of gifts.¹ Instead, as will be shown shortly, the benefactions of the German nobles went to enrich the newer foundations of French or quasi-French origin, like those of Cluny and Hirsau, with the result that a new and formidable problem for the German monarchy was created thereby.

Naturally the church endeavored to adjust itself to this new condition,² and sought to compensate for the decline in private endowments by reorganizing its properties. In addition to introducing greater efficiency in the management of its lands, the church also strove to consolidate its scattered buildings into large complexes, and thus to gain by more scientific management and reduced cost of administration what it lost from the failure of private munificence.³ The last half of the tenth century and the early part of the eleventh witnessed many sales or exchanges of scattered or remote parcels of land owned by the church for other holdings lying nearer to the bishopric or monastery. Judging from the data preserved, the success of the experiment was considerable.⁴

Endless are the cases of land transfer to cloister and abbey. With the land generally also went the people who lived on it. The service they had owed to their old master, the relationship to him, held good under the new. In making a transfer of lands to the Abbot of Paderborn in 1021 Henry II expressly includes the menservants and maidservants,

¹ Hauck, III, 57; Waitz, VII, 184-85; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 675, 688, 694, 704.

² The *Traditiones Sangallenses* show that between 900-920 St. Gall received 60 benefactions, between 920-1000 only 40, and in the whole of the eleventh century only 5. Before 900 the total grants to Fulda aggregated 646, for the tenth century they were only 80, and for the eleventh 40. Lorsch shows similar depreciation (Waitz, VII, 184 n.; Inama-Sternegg, II, 129).

³ For details see Sommerlad, II, 27 f.; Hauck, III, 57-59. Yet even as late as the end of the eleventh century the German monasteries did not equal the French in intelligent and effective management (Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* [ed. Holder-Egger], p. 84). Expert monastery management came in especially with the Cistercians.

⁴ Inama-Sternegg, II, 27 f.; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 687; Hauck, IV, 732.

they being amenable to such service and tax to the abbey as they formerly owed the king.¹ But land also changed hands between the nobles and king. Henry III received in 1043 one hundred tilled *mansi* into his possession from Count Esicho of Ballenstaedt, "together with the 'Eigenleute' and 'Lassen,' who live upon the mansi, men, women, and all servants of both sexes . . . , with the exception of the men servants and maid servants belonging to the manor, who always served the count at the manor."²

Episcopal pride and the customary tradition of the church required that a bishop leave his diocese richer than when he found it.³ The *Miracula S. Balderici* say that it was an exceptional bishop who did not spend his days in annexing lands and increasing the number of his vassals.⁴ At his death he left an inventory of the acquisitions made during his incumbency.⁵ The *Lives* of Meinwerk of Paderborn, of Bernard of Hildesheim, of Udalric of Augsburg, of Adalbero of Metz, of Burchard of Worms, and the *Chronicon* of Thietmar of Merseburg abound with interesting details as to the administrative duties and manner of life of these active German bishops of Saxon times.⁶

The double political edifice erected by the Ottos, half state and half church, reached its most complete point of development with Henry II (1002-24), the last of the Saxon house.

¹ *Vita Meinwerki*, chap. clxvi.

² *Codex Anhalt.*, I, No. 115, 90.

³ Thietmar, *Chron.*, Book VI, chap. xxvi; Book VII, chap. xxii, where it is related that Bernhard (994-1014), bishop of Verden, in the space of twenty years increased the episcopal domain by 380 manors. A book containing names of donors was regularly kept in every church (Gerdes, I, 535, and notes). Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (1075), p. 243, eulogizes Anno of Cologne for his material enrichment of the see during his incumbency. A medieval German proverb on the impossibility of recovering land from the church was "Kirchengut hat eiserne Zähne."

⁴ *Miracula S. Balderici*, chap. ii. Cf. Thietmar, III, 1; IV, 24, 31; *Vita Meinwerki*, chaps. xcvi, xcvi, xcix, cl, clii, clxvi, ccxvii, etc.; Waitz, VII, 206.

⁵ Thietmar, *Chron.*, Book VI, chap. xxvi; and Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichte*sq. (5th ed.), II, 33-34.

⁶ For the "day" of a medieval bishop see *Vita Oudalr.*, chap. iii, SS. IV, 390; chap. xxviii; *ibid.*, p. 418; *Vita Adalber.*, chap. x, SS. IV, 485; *Libell. I, in honor. Willig.*, chap. ii, SS. XV, 744. Cf. Gerdes, I, 549-54; Rieger, *Forsch. z. d. Gesch.*, 1877 (on Meinwerk of Paderborn); Dietrich, *Neues Archiv*. XXV, No. 2 (on *Vita Bernwardi*).

There is no king of medieval Germany whose political course is more interesting to analyze for the light which it casts upon problems of feudal government and the relations of church and state in the Middle Ages.

Henry II converted the traditional policy of the Saxon house into a systematic practice, every element of which was carefully planned. He established at court what might be called a "school" for the education of clerics, who were imbued with his ideas and trained in efficiency, and from whom he selected the bishops whom he appointed;¹ he personally invested forty-nine of the fifty episcopal appointees of his reign.² In order to magnify the dignity and authority of the episcopal office the emperor surrounded the ceremony of investiture with a pomp and majesty which it had not possessed before.³ The "ring" ceremony became almost a ritual.⁴ It was as Rupert of Dietz wrote: "Convenerunt canonici ad imperatorem . . . adhuc enim non electione, sed dono regis episcopus fiebat."⁵ In vain might the chapters of the cathedrals, which had acquired a larger liberty of election under the weak rule of Otto III, complain that their rights were infringed.⁶

It is one of the eccentricities of history that Henry II should have become known as the "pious," for his ecclesiastical policy had absolutely nothing of the cringing quality of subservience to the church which won the appellation "pious" for Louis Debonair and Robert of France. Henry II was calculating, far sighted, determined, just, but without an ounce of emotionalism in his composition. He looked at things with level eyes, in a practical, not a theoretical, way; he was neither a mystic nor a doctrinaire.⁷

¹ Hauck, III, 405.

² *Ibid.*, p. 400.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 397; Lamprecht, II, 292.

⁴ Thietmar, *Chron.*, Book IV, chap. xxvii; Book VII, chaps. vi-vii; *Vita Meinwerki*, chap. clxxxii; Waitz, VII, 268 f.

⁵ SS. VIII, 267; Hauck, III, 404.

⁶ Hauck, III, 397 f.

⁷ "So kirchlich Heinrich II gesinnt war, so wenig war er der Mann, irgend einer kirchlichen Theorie zu liebe seine Stellung als König zu schädigen [e.g., in the strife at Gandersheim, by the restoration of Merseburg, by the founding of Bamberg]. Das Recht der Bischofsernennung hielt er aufs zäheste fest, über ungetreue Bischöfe sass er zu Gericht, über Abteien verfügte er wie über Reichsgüter, in die Organisation der Kirche griff er direkt ein, er berief viele Synoden und welche Sprache er auf

The functioning of the church in government and society was of more importance to him than its spiritual authority. Religion, *qua* religion, Henry II believed to be the peculiar province of monks. They might be in the world, but their life was not to be of the world. The bishops, on the other hand, were chiefly governmental and military officers. There is no doubt of the sincerity of Henry II's convictions in so thinking. Monks were meant for prayer and worship and religious contemplation, and theirs was a cloistered life; but the duty of the secular clergy was to regulate morals, to govern the land, and to perform the military service exacted of them.¹ What Sir William Ramsay has said of the church in the Roman Empire is just as true of the medieval church:

The administrative forms in which the church gradually came to be organized were determined by the state of society and the spirit of the age. . . . These forms were, in a sense, forced on it; [but] . . . they were accepted actively, not passively. The church gradually became conscious of the real character of the task which it had undertaken. It came gradually to realize that it was a world-wide institution, and must organize a world-wide system of administration. It grew as a vigorous and healthy organism, which worked out its own purposes, and maintained itself against the disintegrating influence of surrounding forces; but the line of its growth was determined by its environment.

One may not dogmatize when considering the part played by the church in the feudal age. Institutions, social structure, ideals, were very different then from what they are today. Feudalism was the rock whence the church was hewn, the pit whence was digged the clay out of which the outward material church was built. It is not always easy to distinguish the line of division between the use and the abuse of the

denselben führte, lassen uns überkommene Nachrichten deutlich erkennen" (Koeniger, p. 16). Schulte, *Adel*, p. 68: "[Heinrich II] betrachte die Bischöfe als Beamte des Reiches." The theory of Tomek, *Studien zur Reform der deutschen Kloster im 11. Jahrhundert*, that Henry II was actuated most often by religious consideration in episcopal appointments is not justified by what facts we know of his reign (cf. Hauck, III, 397). In 1014 when Megingaud of Eichstädt died, Henry II appointed one Gunzo, a priest of Bamberg and of servile birth, to the vacancy. A feud soon developed between him and the monks of Herrieden, in which the emperor sustained the latter. His admonition of the bishop shows clearly his conception of the royal prerogative over the episcopate (cf. Schulte, *op. cit.*, pp. 69-70; *MGH*, SS. VII, 260).

¹ Hauck, III, 395; Waitz, VIII, 417.

church's institutions in the history of medieval Germany—or elsewhere in medieval Europe, for that matter—but it is an unjust assumption to assert broadly that the German kings wilfully abused the German church patronage. The church was a historical institution, the product of long historical development, and the kings used it as such.¹

A few instances may be cited here from the history of Henry II's reign which serve to make this point clear. The empress Kunigunde had a brother named Adalberon, who was a typical robber baron, a headstrong, quarrelsome Lorrainer. His depredations in the archdiocese of Trier were so great that he nearly reduced the country to a desert² and drove the Archbishop to seek refuge in Coblenz. The situation required a man of war, not a man of peace. "I will send a man," wrote the Emperor, "who will put a stop to your wild deeds." He was as good as his word. For he chose as the new incumbent of the see not a pious churchman, but a hard-headed, hard-fisted young Franconian baron by the name of Poppo of Bamberg, whom he rushed through the various grades of the hierarchy until he emerged as archbishop of Trier. Poppo distributed sixty prebends of the see to as many knights, and with this miniature standing army besieged Adalberon's castles and finally brought peace and order into the land again.³

Henry II's practical handling of the problem of the eastern frontier is of a piece with this. The weakest point of the Slavonic border was in eastern Franconia, where the apex of Bohemia projected like a salient between the Sorben Reichsland and the Bavarian Nordgau. The Emperor bridged the gap here between Magdeburg and the Danube by re-establishing the bishopric of Merseburg and founding the new see of Bamberg. Here he built that exquisite Roman-

¹ Fisher, II, 78-84 has some good words on this head.

² Following is an account of the depredations of Adalberon: "Urbes certe depulatae, vici et villae incensae omnes, viri omnes et feminae et totum promiscuum vulgus ferro, fame, igne pestilentiaque consumptum. Multi etiam nobiles in paupertatem et magnam miseriam devoluti. Multi gladio perempti" (MGH, SS. IV, 668). For modern accounts see Giesebrecht, II, 112-16; Pfister, *Robert le Pieux*, p. 364.

³ Cf. Thietmar, *Chron.* VI, 51; Koeniger, *Burchard von Worms*, p. 49.

esque cathedral which still stands in perpetuation of his memory, and here was his favorite seat of residence.¹

The superstructure of the Saxon government was built upon and around the hierarchy, as a modern skyscraper is hung upon the steel skeleton within it. The monasteries and the duchies were merely lesser pillars and traverses in the huge edifice of government. Probably if Henry II could have had his way elsewhere in Germany as he had it in Franconia he would have eliminated the duchies from the map. For he gave half of the ducal lands in Franconia to the bishopric of Würzburg and half to that of Bamberg, leaving the duchy little more than a geographical expression with the titular ducal title attached to it.

The obligation of military service, that of appearing at the king's court, the performance of various commissions required by the king, weighed more heavily upon the persons and lands of the church than upon the lay feudality. The "royal" monasteries were practically a portion of the crown lands. The king alienated or enfeoffed these domains as he pleased; he employed their revenues when and as much as he pleased for secular uses. The very abbots of the royal monasteries were frequently denominated as *villici*.²

Ficker³ has gone even farther than Waitz and has contended that the lands of the German bishops were assimilated to the status of the royal domain quite as much as abbatial lands. Waitz strongly inveighs against this argument, contending that it is going too far, and demonstrates that the sources do not designate the imperial bishoprics in the same way that the royal abbeys are described, and that there is no

¹ On the founding of Bamberg see Hauck, III, 418-25; Lamprecht, *DG*, II, 293; *DWL*, I, 2, 700; Waitz, VII, 187; Hirsch, *Heinrich II*, II, 42-43. The Emperor enriched the new bishopric with much of the wealth of his own house, to the anger of his brother Bruno, who was bishop of Augsburg, the last survivor of the Saxon line, who coveted the inheritance for his own bishopric. It received 143 separate parcels of land and 6 monasteries (see *Mon. Boica*, XXVIII, 335-407). For the scandalous circumstances under which Merseburg had formerly been abolished for the aggrandizement of Magdeburg and Halberstadt, see Schmidt's Halle diss., *Giselher, Bischof von Merseburg, Erzbischof von Magdeburg* (1886), chap. iii.

² Waitz, VI, 189-94.

³ *Abhandl. d. kais. Akad. zu Wien, phil. hist. Classe*, LXXII, 55 f.; Waitz, VII, 194-265.

example of a bishopric being transferred to a layman.¹ Nevertheless, it is certain that the dioceses of the church were subject to heavy requirements, notably that of military service, and that the material taxes imposed upon episcopal lands by the crown were heavy also. If not so completely assimilated to the condition of the abbey lands, the episcopal lands were yet very largely engrossed by the king.

Henry II made the whole organization and functioning of the church subject to his control. He convoked synods and presided over their debates; he regulated discipline, ritual, and teaching; but he sensibly distinguished between the spiritual and the political functions of the church² and was not disposed to abuse his authority. At the same time he was firmly determined not to permit the church to shirk its duties to civil society and the state. The spiritual duties of the high prelates were largely intrusted to coadjutors. The place of the bishops was at court, where they sat in the council of the king, labored in his chancellery, traveled on circuit through their dioceses, much like English sheriffs,³ and led their vassals to the field of arms, if recourse were had to war upon the border or within the realm in order to crush feudal revolt. The military burden on the church was an exacting one,⁴ owing partly to the suspicion attending the service of the lay feudality, partly to the steady decline in the free warrior class, even in Saxony, due to the extension of feudal conditions. The church also had to bear out of its revenues the largest share of the burden of supporting the court,⁵ which, owing to the primitive economic régime obtaining, necessarily had to be a wandering one with no fixed

¹ *Ibid.*, p. 199.

² According to Thietmar, *Chron.*, Book VI, chap. viii, the emperor was "vicar of God"; according to Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, Book II, chap. iii, he was "vicar of Christ." An abbot called Henry III "caput ecclesiae" (Giesebrecht, II, 599).

³ Waitz, V, 82-83; Gebhardt, I, 258; Hauck, III, 553 and n. 2; Koeniger, *Quellen zur Gesch. der Sendgerichte in Deutschland* (Munich, 1910).

⁴ Hirsch, I, 211; Waitz, VIII, 130-31, has nearly two pages filled with references on this subject.

⁵ "Nobis pertinent," said Henry VI of the church lands (*Dip.*, III, No. 65. Cf. Hauck, III, 57, n. 1).

capital.¹ Episcopal responsibility, in both ecclesiastical and civil capacity, was a watchword with Henry II. He well rewarded the bishops for their services; but when he intrusted the administration of the crown lands in Saxony to the archbishop of Mainz he expected service.²

It was Henry II, too, who devised a way to tap the resources of the reluctant feudal families who had closed their purses to the church under his predecessors by appointing members of these rich families to Saxon sees. Thus Thietmar was made bishop of Merseburg,³ Meinwerk bishop of Paderborn,⁴ Unwan archbishop of Bremen,⁵ all of whom were sons of rich and noble Saxon families who gave out of their substance to their bishoprics.

In respect to the monasteries Henry II pursued the most drastic course of any medieval sovereign. Their vows and manner of life alienated the monks from secular activities. The abbots could not be used as freely as the bishops in secular administration or in military affairs owing to the greater isolation and less compact form of government which prevailed in monastic organization. The monks had neither the moral nor the political influence of the hierarchic clergy in Germany. But the material wealth of the monasteries was even greater than that of the secular clergy. In Otto III's reign the monasteries were not only relatively, but absolutely, richer than the bishoprics. For, in the first place, they owned a greater proportion of land; and, second, they had withdrawn a greater amount of it from the taxing power of the state through privileges and immunities.⁶ Neither the military nor the financial burden upon the monasteries was so heavy as upon the episcopate.

Under these conditions the monasteries were of little

¹ Nitzsch, I, 325, 358-59.

² Nitzsch, I, 388. Cf. Bresslau, II, 354-56; Waitz, VII, 187.

³ Thietmar, *Chron.*, Book VI.

⁴ *Vita Meinwerki*, SS. XI, 111-12.

⁵ *Adam of Bremen*, Book II, chaps. xlv-xlvi, lviii. Bernward of Hildesheim gave Michaeliskloster 466 manors and 13 churches (Waitz, VII, 186).

⁶ Sackur, II, *Die Cluniacenser*, 156-57; Matthäi, p. 84; Nitzsch, I, 390-91.

practical benefit to either the state or society. Their wealth was out of all proportion to their material needs, such as the daily support of the inmates, the maintenance of schools and hospitals, and poor relief. The "dead hand" kept much of their surplus wealth from free circulation in society for the advantage of society, and it was not forced out into the open, as was the case with the church's wealth, through government use of the church.

Henry II saw the incongruities obtaining in monasticism and made a heroic attempt to rectify them. The cloistered life supposedly was a life of poverty and prayer and spiritual ministry. It had become a life of material ease and irresponsibility so far as public interest was concerned. As individuals the monks might be "unsocial" (their fundamental ideals were such), but as an institution monasticism could not be suffered to continue its antisocial exclusiveness without detriment to society and corruption of itself.¹

Contrary to what is usually thought, at this early stage in the history of medieval monastic reform, Cluny was not yet at all interested in the reformation of the secular part of the church. Her aims and interests were still wholly confined to the reform of monasticism, and when Henry II spilled the wind out of the sails of the monks who accused him of flagrantly practicing "simony" by promoting the Gorzean reform movement with dismaying thoroughness, Cluny approved of the emperor's action. "For following the tradition of monasticism she looked upon the monk as alone fulfilling literally the words of the gospel, and thus following a higher ideal than that of the secular clergy."²

The monasteries throughout all Europe had appallingly degenerated during the dark days of the ninth century, and in Germany had not recovered in the same degree as the episcopate, which the energy of the Saxon kings had so re-

¹ In *Vita Meinwerki*, chap. clxxxii, Henry II complains: "Qui me bonis concessis cum detrimento regni spoliare non cessas." Cf. also chaps. clxxxiv and clxxxvi.

² L. M. Smith, "Cluny and Gregory VII," *Eng. Hist. Review*, XXVI, 21. "Die cluniacensische Reform hat im 10. Jahrhundert keine hierarchischen Tendenzen" (Schultze, *Forschungen zur Gesch. der Klosterreform im 10. Jahrhundert* [Halle diss., 1883], p. 81).

habilitated. Ruined by the invasions of the Northmen in Gaul and the lower Rhinelands, by the inroads of the Hungarians in Germany and North Italy,¹ by those of the Saracens along the whole Mediterranean coast and far up into the Alpine passes,² by the trespass of the feudality upon their lands and the seizure of the property and even usurpation of the abbot's title; demoralized by everything which they had themselves originated through abuse of the ideals of Benedictinism, or become the victims of violence from without, the monasteries everywhere in Europe had sunk into debauchery, worldliness, and ignorance,³

Many of their inmates had fled the cloister and resorted to a life of pillage like that of the baronage.⁴ The serfs upon the monastery lands had run away or perished in the anarchy, and those that were left were often numerically so reduced that the monks themselves were compelled to till the glebe farms.⁵ In the tenth century complaints are common against

¹ So many bishops and abbots—to say nothing of lesser clergy—were rendered homeless by the Hungarian invasions in North Italy that it was hard to provide for them (*Ann. Fuld.*, 886).

² Poupardin, *Le royaume de Provence sous les Carolingiens*, pp. 248–73; Renaud, *Les invasions des Sarrazins en France* (1836); Devic et Vaisette, *Histoire du Langue-doc*, II, 549 f.; Pfister, pp. 351–52; Dümmler, I, 191–94. See the curious story of the capture of Abbot Majolus of Cluny by the Saracens in Rod. Glaber (ed. Prou), Book I, chap. iv, sec. 9.

³ Ruinés par les invasions des Normands, Hongrois et Sarrazins, par l'installation forcée des vassaux seigneuriaux dans ses domaines, l'usurpation du titre et des biens de l'abbé par les favoris du roi ou les dynastes provinciaux, dégradés par l'intrusion à la place des moines de clercs séculiers ignorants, paresseux et débauchés, les monastères étaient tombés au XI^e siècle dans la plus profonde abjection morale et matérielle" (Lot, *Hugues Capet*, p. 34). For the effect of the Norse invasions upon the monasteries in Lorraine see Parisot, *Le royaume de Lorraine sous les Carolingiens*, pp. 498–99, 546–61, 722–24.

⁴ Richeri, *Gesta eccles. Senon.*, Book I, chap. xvii, SS. XXV, 264. In the tenth century the miserable *abbatiole* of Ste Celine in the diocese of Meaux, and that of St. Sixtus near Rheims, had only one monk (Lot, *op. cit.*, p. 226 n.). In the life of Odo of Cluny it is related how his friend Adhegrinus sought in vain for a decent monastery, and in despair started on a pilgrimage to Rome, when he hit upon Berno, future first abbot of Cluny, in the little monastery of Baume (*Vita Odonis*, Book I, chap. xxii).

⁵ Richeri, *op. cit.*, Book II, chap. xviii. For evidence as to the monasteries of Lorraine see Parisot, p. 723, n. 4.

the monks, who are accused of licentiousness,¹ of neglecting their vows,² of eating meat on fast days,³ of drunkenness,⁴ and of refusing hospitality.⁵

The plight of the monasteries was so bad that they seemed incapable of reforming themselves.⁶ The initiative came from the piety of the nobility, many of whose members, for the repose of their souls, founded new monasteries, the life of whose inmates was intended to be a reproach to those of older foundation.⁷ For it seemed impossible to put new wine into old bottles. Yet, as was the case in the early history of the church when the rural proprietors discovered that it "paid" to establish rural churches, so now there was a considerable measure of self-interest in the movement for restoration of the monasteries, which was not done away with until 996, when the Cluny reform, under the captaincy of the great abbot Odilon, began to be effective. Frequently when a great noble or a bishop, before this term, refounded or reformed a monastery, it was because he controlled the foundation and profited from its revenues, much of which he appropriated for himself.⁸

The movement for monastic reform appeared in France early in the ninth century and gathered force during the two

¹ Richeri, *op. cit.*, Book II, chap. xvii; *Mirac. S. Ghisl.*, chap. x, SS. XV, 583; *Vita Gerardi*, SS. XV, 665. As early as 836 the Council of Aachen, chap. xii, declared, "Quae [monasteria] in quibusdam locis lupinaria potius videntur esse quam monasteria" (Mansi, Book XIV, col. 682).

² *Mirac. S. Maxim.*, chap. xxiii; *Mirac. S. Basoli*, chap. xi; *Mirac. S. Burcharii*, chap. viii; *Concil. Trosi.* (909); Mansi, Book XIV, col. 682.

³ Mabillon, *Annal. Benedict.*, III, 305.

⁴ Richeri, *Hist.*, Book III, chaps. xxxvii, xxxix, xli.

⁵ *Synod. Vern.*, MGH, *Leges*, I, 383-88.

⁶ *Vita Joh. abbat Gorz.*, chaps. xxii-xxiii.

⁷ Ord. Vitalis, *Hist. Eccles.*, Book VII, chap. xv. This practice was a familiar one in the high Middle Age. William the Conqueror, on his deathbed, took greatest gratification in the large number of monasteries which he had founded, and which he had encouraged his vassals to establish (*op. cit.* [ed. Le Prevost], III, 241).

⁸ "Quand un grand laïque ou un évêque restaure ou réforme un établissement, c'est qu'il possède cet établissement et qu'il profite de ses revenus qu'il a confisqués" (Lot, *op. cit.*, p. 225, n. 8).

following centuries.¹ The inspiration came not from either Monte Cassino or the imperial court, but from a remote corner of Gaul, Gothia. It was the movement generated by Benedict of Aniane. From Gothia the reform spread into Provence and over Aquitaine; and when the Emperor called Benedict to the abbey of Cornelimünster, the Rhinelands, too, were sowed with the seed of reform.² In its complete form it was really the fusion of three separate and independent movements and radiated from three particular foci—Burgundy, Aquitaine, and Brabant. The first two movements soon became identical and culminated in the Cluny reform. The history of the monastic reform movement which began in Brabant, whence it soon spread to the famous Lorraine monasteries of Gorze and Stavelot, must, however, first be traced at this point, because of its immediate influence upon the *Klosterpolitik* of Henry II and Conrad II.³

The founder of Brogne (diocese of Liège, duchy of Brabant) was a nobleman of Wallonia, named Gerard, who in 914 established a chapter of canons in one of his allods at

¹ In 845 Raymond of Limoges founded Ruffec; in 860 Count Badilon founded St. Martin d'Autun; Gerard of Roussillon founded the monasteries of Poutières and Vézelay; in 910 William of Aquitaine founded Cluny, Gerald that of Aurillain 914. The Cluniac movement was materially aided by Letald of Macon, Gaufrey of Nevers, and his successor, Adhemar, and Adelaide of Burgundy. Tulle was reformed by Adhemar of Turenne, Sarlat by the counts of Angoulême, Lezat by the viscount of Béziers, Jumièges by William of Normandy, Chanteuge by the counts of Auvergne, St. Pons by Raymond Pons of Toulouse, Fleury-sur-Loire by Count Elisierne. The aristocratic origin of this agitation for reform of the monasteries is to be noticed. The ablest abbots of Cluny, as Odo, Maieul, Odilon, and Hugh the Great, were of noble family. William of Dijon belonged to an illustrious family of Piedmont; Poppo of Stavelot was a Walloon noble. La Chaise-Dieu was established by Robert of Aurillac in 1047 in the forest of Velay near Puy, and spread until it had 297 priories in France and Spain (*Vita Roberti*, *AASS.*, *Ord. Bened.*, IX). La Grande Sauve was founded by Gerard, a Picard noble, in 1079, in Guyenne; it had 70 priories in France, England, and Spain (*ibid.*, p. 857). On all this subject see Sackur, *Die Cluniacenser*, I, 34 ff., and a special article in *Ztschft. f. Soz. u. Wirtschaftsgesch.*, I, Heft 1 (1893); Lamprecht, *Monatschrift f. d. Gesch. Westdeutschlands*, VII (1881), 91 f., 217 f.

² Dom Albers, O. S. B. *Consuetudines monasticae*, tome III, *Antiquiora monumenta maxime Consuetudines Casinenses inde ab anno 716-817* (Monte Cassino, 1907), traces the obscure development of monastic reform from the initiative taken by Pertinax to the reforming synod of Aachen in the third year of Louis the Pious.

³ Schultze, *Forschungen zur Gesch. der Klosterreform im 10. Jahrhundert* (Halle diss., 1883).

Brogne.¹ Wholly inspired by French monastic ideals, in the next year he was sent to Paris by his suzerain, Count Berenger of Namur, in order to visit the celebrated abbey at St. Denis. There he spent some time in study.² In 919 he returned to Brogne and transformed the chapter into a Benedictine monastery.³ Five years later Gerard was made abbot of Brogne by the Bishop of Liège, and in 927 was ordained a priest at Paris—for Brogne was always regarded as a dependency of St. Denis. It so happened at this time that Count Arnulf of Flanders was in good relation with the church of Rheims, and in 937, through the recommendation of the Bishop of Noyon, Gerard undertook the reformation of the great abbeys of St. Bavon and St. Blandin, in Ghent, and St. Bertin, St. Amand, St. Omer, and St. Vaast, in Flanders. From these points the Brabantine reform movement ran down the channel coast into Normandy, and down the valley of the Oise into the Ile-de-France, where it soon became fused with the Cluny reform.⁴

At the same time the movement also flowed over the Flemish frontier into Lorraine, where St. Ghiselain was reformed in 931.⁵ In 933 it took possession of Gorze, near Metz, whence it rapidly spread to the cloisters of St. Maximin in Trier; Senones, near Metz; St. Die, Stavelot, St. Viton, near Verdun; St. Evre in Toul, etc.⁶ In the "fifties" of the ninth century the Gorzean reform—for so it may henceforth be called—made headway slowly up the valley of the Moselle. In 951 Metlach joined it; by 973 most of the monasteries in the diocese of Trier, as Echternach, St. Martin, Ste Marie,

¹ *Vita Gerardi*, chap. 1, SS. XV, 2. Of course the institution of collegiate canons was not so radical a reform as the establishment of regular monasticism would have been. L. von Heinemann, *Neues Archiv*, XV, No. 2 (592-96), in an examination of the early diplomas pertaining to Brogne, has determined that the *Vita Gerardi* was written shortly after December, 1038; cf. *Forschungen*, XXV, 223-31.

² *Vita Gerardi*, chap. iv.

³ *Ibid.*, chap. xiii.

⁴ Bouquet, IX, 615.

⁵ Sackur, I, 126 f.; Lamprecht, II, 210.

⁶ Sackur, I, 146 f., 156 f., 163 f., 174 f.; Schultze, pp. 33-58. For the violent opposition of the monks of St. Maximin see *Contin. Regino* (anno 934).

Ste Eucharia, had embraced it. St. Maximin founded two new houses under Gorzean rule at Taben and Appola. From the valley of the Moselle the movement penetrated into the Rhinelands.

Otto I's brother Bruno, archbishop of Cologne, who had been educated at Utrecht, and who therefore must have had immediate knowledge of the reform, introduced the Gorzean reform in Wissemburg, in Lorsch, and probably elsewhere, and founded Soest in Westphalia and St. Pantaleon in Cologne, all of which were put under the new rule.¹ Gradually the movement extended along the middle and upper Rhine. In Alsace two clerks of Strasburg, the canon Benno and a prior named Eberhard, between 929 and 934 founded the monastery of Ste Marioe-Einsiedeln, which soon reached a high degree of prosperity.² In Swabia, Udalric of Augsburg became a supporter of Gorze; Gebhard of Constance founded Petershausen.³ In Bavaria its propagation was rapid. By the year 1000 the monasteries of St. Emmeran, St. Peter, Tegernsee, Altaich, Ebersberg, and the nunneries of St. Paul and Upper and Lower Moutier had been reorganized and three new Gorzean foundations, Michaelsbeuren, Seeon, and Pruel, had been established.⁴

The chief person in propagating the Gorzean reform was John of Gorze, who in his time had a reputation wider than the Christian world, for it was he whom Otto sent on a mission to Mohammedan Spain to the caliph Abd-er Rahman.

¹ *Contin. Regino* (anno 957); *Diplom.*, I, No. 121, 203; Ruotger, *Vita Brunonis*, chap. x; Thietmar, IV, 15; *Chron. reg. Colon.* (anno 964). Bruno's successor, Gero, founded München (*Chron. Gladb.*, MGH, SS. IV, 75) and Thankmarsfeld in Saxony. Later still another archbishop of Cologne, Everger, reformed St. Martin (MGH, SS. IV, 77, and V, 555). Willigis of Mainz reformed Disibodenburg (Hauck, III, 414 f.); Adalberon of Metz, Epinal (*Vita*, Book II, chap. xiv, SS. IV, 662).

² Hauck, III, 376; *Annal. Hersf.* (anno 925) *Annal. Meginr.* (anno 934) *Othl. Vita Wolfgangi*, chap. x. See O. Ringholz, *Geschichte des fürstlichen Benediktinerstiftes von Einsiedeln* (1905), a monograph of a high order of research. The site was at the beginning a wilderness (*Vita Joh. abbat. Gorz.*, chap. xl).

³ *Vita Gebeh.*, chaps. x-xiii, SS. X. 586 f.; *Cas. Mon. Petrih*, Book I, chap. ix, MGH, SS. XX, 630 f.

⁴ Hauck, III, 378-79; *Annal. S. Emmeran.* (anno 975), MGH, SS. I, 94 f.; *Vita Wolfg.*, p. 17; *Botae Tegerns*, MGH, SS. XV, 1067; *Chron. Ebersp.*, MGH, SS. XVII, 363; XX, 11 f.; XXV, 868 f.

His *Life*¹ is one of the most interesting and valuable sources of the epoch. And yet, in spite of his close attachment to Otto I, the Gorzean reform met languid support from the Saxon kings, and of course was violently resisted by the monks themselves.² Bruno of Cologne is the only member of the Saxon house who markedly encouraged it. Queen Adelheid, who was a Burgundian princess, seems to have been personally interested in reforming Wissemburg. But as for Otto I, he seems chiefly to have been interested in observing how this new religious emotionalism might increase the wealth of the German church through new gifts and endowments. Otto I's piety was ever practical. Neither Otto II nor Otto III seems to have taken cognizance of the reform.³ Thus, indifferently regarded by the Saxon kings⁴ and bitterly opposed by the monks themselves, the Gorzean reform in course of time lost its force,⁵ until it was energetically revived by Henry II and Conrad II, by which time it had begun to be obscured by the far greater reform out of Cluny.

During the reign of Robert the Pious of France, William

¹ SS. IV, 343 f. esp. chaps. xxii, xxiii, xxvi, xxvii, xxviii.

² Mathieu, *De Johannis abbatis Gorziensis vita* (Nancy, 1878). For evidence of resistance see Ekkehard, *Casus S. Galli*, Prolog. and Book IX, chaps. lxxv-lxxx, civ, cv, cxii; Thietmar, *Chron.*, II, 37-38; VI, chap. v; Gerhardi, *Vita Oudalr.*, chap. vi; Widukind, II, chap. xxxvii; *Annal. Qued.* (1013). Cf. Hauck, III, 343-44; Gerdes, I, 599-607; Wattenbach, *Deutsch. Geschichtsquellen*, I, 186; Vogel, *Rather von Verona*, pp. 218-24.

³ Koeniger, *Burchard von Worms*, p. 108. This fact comes out in the letter of Arnulf of Halberstadt to Henry of Würzburg. Burchard of Worms, in his famous compilation of canon law, does not even allude to the reform (Jaffé, *Ep. Bamb.*, II, 474-76; Migne, *Patrol. Lat.*, CXL, 707, 712, 804, 899, 902, 907; Hauck, III, 440 f.; and *Sitzungsber. der. sächs. Ges. d. Wiss.* [1894], p. 65.

⁴ The indifference of the Saxon kings is readily explained by the fact that, like the Cluny reform later, the Gorzean reform soon became a political movement which was a danger to the crown. The great German feudatories like Gilbert of Lorraine, Eberhard of Swabia, and Henry the Wrangler of Bavaria were not slow to perceive the political possibilities implicit in it, and advocated the reform in order to break the grip of the Saxon kings on the church (Sigeh., *Mirac. S. Maxim.*, chap. xii, SS. IV, 232; *Chron. Bened.*, chap. ix, SS. IX, 218; Hauck, III, 364). For the same reason Frederick of Mainz, the leader of the ecclesiastical opposition to Otto I, ardently supported it (Hauck, III, 375 f.; Widukind, III, 37; *Episc. Mogunt.*, p. 14).

⁵ Adalberon of Rheims introduced the Lotharingian rule into Rheims, which later gave origin to Austin canons (Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, II, 86 n.; IV, 363, 500; V, 500 f.

of St. Benigne, and perhaps Odilo, who had already labored long and earnestly in France in favor of monastic reform, carried the ideas of Cluny across the boundary into Lorraine, where he stirred up the ashes of the earlier Gorzean reform into newness of life.¹ In the monastery of Stavelot in Lorraine, William came in contact with Richard of St. Vannes and Poppo of Stavelot, destined to be shortly Henry II's and Conrad II's ecclesiastical statesman.²

Like Gerard of Brogne, the founder of the Gorzean reform, Poppo was born in the Walloon lands of the German kingdom, and was of noble birth. It was undoubtedly through his persuasion that late in his life Conrad II and his wife were induced to establish the monastery of Limburg in Poppo's native county.³ When a young man he had made a pilgrimage to Palestine, and later had been to Rome with Count Theodoric of Holland. Although betrothed, he abandoned marriage for the cowl, having been converted, it is said, by a dream.⁴ He first entered the monastery of St. Thierry, whence he passed to that of St. Vannes. Then he became abbot of St. Vaast and Beaulieu successively. It was in the last post that Henry II discovered him and took him into his service in spite of the united protest of the abbots of Flanders.⁵ In 1020 he was made abbot of Stavelot and Malmedy. Two years afterward he made, under Henry II's direction, that famous reformation of St. Maximin of Trier, the details of which we shall shortly see.

The Lorrainer monasteries, which had formerly yielded to the Gorzean reform, were now in a condition of relapse, and much as they had been before.⁶ The Benedictine monas-

¹ On William of St. Benigne see Pfister, *Robert le Pieux*, p. 312.

² On Poppo, see Hirsch and Bresslau, *Jahrbücher Heinrich II*, III, 235 f.; Bresslau, *Conrad II*, II, 405 f.; Ladewig, *Poppo von Stablo und die Klosterreform unter den ersten Saliern* (Berlin diss., 1883).

³ *Vita Popponis*, chap. xix.

⁴ Hauck, III, 499; Sackur, II, 177, 264.

⁵ Hugo Flav., *Chron.* II, 15, p. 391; Adhemar, *Hist.*, III, 37, p. 133; Jotsald, *Vita Odil.*, I, 7; Migne, *Patrol. Lat.*, CXLII, 902; Rodulf. Glaber, *Hist.*, I, 5.

⁶ For vestiges of the Gorzean reform at Bamberg as late as 1071 see Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (ed. Holder-Egger), p. 128; *Ann. S. Mich. Bab.*, SS. V, 9.

teries, on the other hand, had scarcely yet been touched. As they had resisted the earlier reform, so now they even more violently resisted its revived application, in particular Hersfeld and St. Gall, where Norbert of Stavelot, Poppo's agent, failed dismally, as Immo of Gorze also failed at Reichenau. Almost everywhere the monks ridiculed the reform and held to their old self-indulgent, loose way of living.¹

But unlike the other kings of the Saxon house Henry II took a keen interest in the cause of monastic reform, as the monks soon learned to their sorrow. It may be that the intractability of the monks had its influence in hardening Henry II's heart toward them. But his *Klosterpolitik* was undertaken neither in whim nor in spleen; it was an act of real statesmanship.

Henry II was undoubtedly sincere in his cloister policy,² though it was perhaps not without some cynical satisfaction that he proceeded to a wholesale reorganization of the German monasteries, in many cases completely disendowing them. He stripped them of the right of free election³ and of most of their property.⁴ He held (and here Cluny agreed with him) that monks were par excellence meant for a life of poverty and religious contemplation.⁵ He forbade plurality of abbots and insisted upon episcopal visitation of the monasteries.⁶ In the case of all the abbeys which survived the

¹ "Postquam luxus ac superfluitas accessit, morum insolentia subintravit, oboedientia torpuit, repulsa est episcoporum reverentia" (*Vita Bernwardi*, chap. xiv). Cf. *Vita Hathumodae*, chaps. v-vi, SS. IV, 168; Hermann Contract, *Chron.*, 1006; *Chron. Suev.*, 1006; *Catalog. abbat. Aug.*, SS. XIII, 333. Of modern writers, Sackur, II, 252 f.; Gerdes, I, 599 f.; Hattemer, *Denkmale des Mittelalters*, II, 221. nn. 4-5.

² Koeniger, *Burchard I. von Worms*, p. 108. Cf. Sackur, II, 156-58; Hauck, III, 445, 459; Nitzsch, I, 390-91, 395.

³ Feierabend, p. 3.

⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 4.

⁵ Hauck, III, 450. The Register of the lands of Prüm was made at Henry's command, and he must have made many others which have perished (Waitz, VIII, 229, n. 1).

⁶ Matthäi, p. 84; Hauck, III, 450-57; Koeniger, p. 108. Julius Harttung (*Diplomatisch-historische Forschungen* [Gotha: Perthes, 1879]) has made a minute study of the question of exemption of the monasteries, and has demonstrated that

reorganization he strengthened the control of the bishops over them, in some instances giving the monastery outright to the bishop.¹ But the last Saxon emperor was not a fanatic. He did not reduce the monasteries to utter poverty,² and sometimes he made grants to them in the interest of compacting their estates. In one particular he made a distinct departure from the course of his predecessors, for he conferred the local countship upon the abbots of Fulda and Gandersheim,³ whereas the Ottos had never given such powers to any churchmen except bishops.

In this great "leveling" process some foundations were leveled up, more were leveled down. The oldest and richest abbeys naturally suffered most. Fulda, Hersfeld, Corvey, Reichenau, Murbach, St. Gall, Benediktbeuren, Tegernsee, Altaich, Gandersheim, had huge blocks of their domains taken away from them.⁴ St. Maximin in Trier lost 6,656

at the beginning of the eleventh century the exemption of the monasteries from episcopal surveillance was very limited, and that the liberty granted the regular clergy by Gregory V (996) was sharply curtailed by Sylvester II. The forgery of papal privileges by the monasteries in order to secure exemption from episcopal authority became a scandal during the minority of Henry IV.

¹ According to Henry II episcopal inspection of monasteries was divinely ordained in virtue of the bishop's authority: "Canonum statuta non ore hominum, sed spiritu Dei condita praecipunt" (*Diplom.*, III, No. 371). In order to understand the legal authority which Henry II possessed to institute this reorganization it must be remembered that the control of the crown over monasteries was much more complete than over bishoprics. The king could legally dispose of monastic property much as he wished, employing their revenues, alienating estates or giving them in fief as he might parcels of the royal domain. See Ficker, *Eigenthum*, pp. 72-73, 88 f.; Waitz, VII, 189-227; VIII, 244 f.; Fisher, I, 256 f.

² St. Maximin of Trier, after the sharp excision in 1023, was left 209 manors scattered in 40 separate localities, and by the year 1030 had increased its possessions again to 1,000 or more manors. St. Emmeran, in Bavaria, in 1031 still owned 850 manors, and Benediktbeuren possessed 60 *villae* of the total area of 1,350 *Hufen* (Stumpf, Nos. 1815, 1817; Inama-Sternegg, II, 136; *MGH*, SS. IX, 223). By the twelfth century Fulda had so far picked up again that it had 3,000 manors in Saxony, 3,000 in Thuringia, 3,000 in the Rhinelands around Worms, and 3,000 in Bavaria and Swabia (*Gesta Marcuardi*, *Fuld. Fontes*, III, 171 f.).

³ *DD*, III, Nos. 444, 509. The grant to the monastery of Niedenburg of a tract of land nine miles long and three to five miles wide, however, was not as generous as it seems, for the abbey belonged to the bishop of Passau.

⁴ For a particularly interesting account of Corbie see *Ann. Qued* (*annis* 1014-15), SS. III, 82-83.

manors in 1023, equal to nine square German miles.¹ Some of the confiscated lands were given to smaller and more struggling monasteries like Lorsch, which, in spite of its ancient foundation, was poor. For this once favorite abbey of Charlemagne seems to have missed the popular interest of later generations, and fell away when the Carolingian house expired.²

Naturally the German bishops, who profited much from this policy, eagerly seconded Henry II's course. For there was intense rivalry between the two bodies of the clergy.³ The feud was an ancient one. Hatto of Mainz, as far back as the time of Louis the Child, had collected the revenues of four abbeys;⁴ Tagino of Magdeburg reformed Kloster Bergen; Gebhard of Regensburg that of St. Emmeran; Meinwerk of Paderborn made a 50 per cent reduction in the monasteries in his diocese.⁵ In the issue only the older and more important abbeys were left, and all with a reduced number of inmates.⁶ All were reduced to a mean average of possession;

¹ Migne, CXL, 368; Koeniger, p. 108, n. 6; Waitz, VIII, 129, n. 1; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 710, n. 2. Joerres questions the accuracy of these figures in *Westdeutsche Ztschft.*, VIII, No. 3 (1889). St. Maximus sought to recuperate in the twelfth century by forging new charters (Dopsch, *Mitteil. d. Inst. oester. Gesch.*, XVII, No. 1 [1896]).

² The important sources for this policy of Henry II toward the monasteries are *Vita Godeh.*, I, 7, 14; II, 7; *Chron. mon. Tegerns.*, p. 3; *Herim. Aug. (anno 1106)*; *Annal. Quedlinb. (anni 1014-16)*; Thietmar, VIII, 13; *Annal. Corb. (anno 1014)*; *Vita Popponis*, esp. chaps. xviii-xix.

³ For examples see *Vita Bernwardi*, chap. xv, SS. IV, 765; *Vita Adalb.*, chap. ix, SS. IV, 584.

⁴ Waitz, VII, 212; Ficker, *op. cit.*, p. 87; Nitzsch, I, 292. Henry II gave the monastery of Seligenstadt to the bishop of Würzburg, St. Stephen and Schwarzach to Strasburg, Helmswardshausen and Schildesche to Paderborn (Hauck, III, 449-50). It was rare that a prelate founded a monastery out of his own revenues. Bernward of Hildesheim and Meinwerk of Paderborn did so, but it "paid" them (Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 826). There was bitter rivalry and even feud between the bishops for control of monasteries. For cases see Nitzsch, I, 384. Koeniger, p. 69, says: "Sie Kämpften aber nicht um blosse Rechte ohne reale Grundlage, sondern um Land und Besitz; im Hintergrunde eines solchen Kampfes stand nichts anderes als ihre fürstbischöfliche Macht und Stellung."

⁵ *Vita Meinwerki*, chap. xvii; Gerdes, I, 576.

⁶ The average number of monks varied from 100 to 200; that in the nunneries was much less, perhaps from 30 to 50. When Henry II reformed Hersfeld he eliminated over 50 monks, leaving only old men and boys (Hirsch, I, 364).

fourteen were legislated out of existence.¹ What monastery lands did not go to the enrichment of the bishops were reannexed to the fisc, whence many of them had originally come, which sorely needed repletion, owing to the lavish grants of the Ottos.

The monastic writers of Henry II's reign naturally inveigh bitterly against the Emperor, while episcopal authors like Thietmar of Merseburg and the biographer of Meinwerk of Paderborn exult in the ascendancy of the secular over the regular clergy.² But Henry II's ecclesiastical policy was neither one of bigotry toward the monks nor one of favoritism toward the bishops. Each group was made to function in the best possible way according to the medieval ideal of the relation of the church to state and society. Monks were intended for prayer and spiritual contemplation apart. Bishops were meant for service in the outside world. The Emperor would have heartily indorsed the Pauline differentiation of functions and duties in the ministry.³ But the monks were human, and violently resisted the Henrician reform. Some of them were so intractable that Henry put them in irons. Their spiritual professions, which they shrilly advertised, were belied by the desperate way in which they tried to cling to their material possessions. They denounced the bishops, not without some justification, for avarice; but they themselves were quite as avaricious. In high dudgeon many of them forsook their houses. At Hersfeld all the inmates abandoned the monastery; at Corvey only nine remained.

To sum up as to Henry II's ecclesiastical policy: He was a stern, honest ruler, on fundamental issues of the relation of church and state standing with his predecessors and not disposed to abate an inch of royal supremacy over the church. Yet he was more progressive than the Ottos and more in harmony with the new spirit of the age, as when he instructed the synods of Pavia and Goslar to forbid the marriage of

¹ Matthäi, p. 81; Feierabend, pp. 4-5.

² Thietmar, *Chron.*, Book VI, chap. v; *Vita Meinwerki*, chap. xvii.

³ Rom. 12:6-8.

priests, and even ruled that the children of priests should be classed as unfree.¹

The feud between the German bishops and the German monks, when Henry II died in 1024, was the principal issue in the election of Conrad II, the founder of the Salian house. The two rival candidates were cousins and of the same name. Conrad the Old was supported by the episcopal party, which stood for diminishing the prerogatives of Rome and had triumphed two years before at the Council of Seligenstadt. Conrad the Young, on the other hand, was backed by the monastic party, by a few of the bishops who were already imbued with the ideas of the radical wing of the Cluny movement, and by the dukes of Upper and Lower Lorraine, whose zeal for the "reform" was strongly tinged with feudal particularism.² The former was elected on September 8, 1024, and was crowned by the Archbishop of Mainz. His rival gamely accepted the situation. But his partisans at first obstinately refused to recognize the new king. Headed by Gozelo, duke of Lower Lorraine, a league of opposition was formed in which were Theodoric and Frederick of Upper Lorraine, Renier, Count of Hainaut, the Archbishop of Cologne, and the bishops of Trier, Verdun, and Nimwegen. The feudal and centrifugal implications of the Cluny reform were already clearly manifest.³

But the opposition to the German crown, although shortly to become formidable, was as yet unorganized. Pilgrim of

¹ Nitzsch, I, 388; "Henry II had had genuine ideas of reform, albeit they were often mingled with political interest, as when, at the end of his reign, he instructed the synods of Goslar and Pavia to forbid the marriage of priests and declared that their children should be classed as unfree. The affair of Hammerstein, where the court, if not the emperor, energetically sustained Aribio of Mainz, the champion of episcopal rights against the papacy, and friend of Ekkehard of St. Gall, the bitter opponent of reform, shows that on a fundamental issue Henry II stood with his predecessors and would not abate one inch of royal supremacy over the German church" (Gregorovius, *Rome in the Middle Ages*, IV, Part I, 31). Cf. Hauck, III, 528 f.; Sackur, II, 258; Mansi, XIX, 323.

² Bresslau, I, 12-13.

³ *Gesta episcoporum Cameracensium*, III, 50; Pabst, *Forschungen zur deutsch. Gesch.*, V, 339 f.—an extension of his dissertation, *De Ariberto II Mediolanensi primisque mediæ ævi motibus popularibus* (Berlin, 1864), Pfister, *op. cit.*, pp. 373-74.

Cologne's participation was due to pique and the ancient jealousy existing between Mainz and Cologne.¹ Conrad II adroitly secured his defection by permitting him to have the honor of crowning Queen Gisela.² At the same time he turned to Odilo of Cluny, who was known to disapprove of the political programme of the radical Cluniacs, and who believed in still confining the reformation movement begun by Cluny to the reform of monasticism and in keeping it out of politics.³

¹ Nitzsch, II, 17.

² Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi* (ed. Bresslau), chap. ii, p. 15.

³ Bresslau, *Konrad II*, I, 34.

CHAPTER II

THE GERMAN CHURCH AND THE SALIAN MON- ARCHY; SPREAD OF THE CLUNY REFORM IN ITALY AND GERMANY

CONRAD II (1024-39) made no change in the fundamental policy of the German crown toward the church. But he was less considerate in the use of church patronage than Henry II had been. He was friendly with Poppo of Stavelot, the leader of the reform party, and did not actively oppose the movement, but he never let it compromise the political obligations of the church to the government. In the Conradiner theory of church government the bishops were equally vassals and bishops, to be handled precisely as were dukes and counts.¹ The chief office of the church had developed into a feudal institution bearing all the characteristics of a dukedom except hereditability.² The bishops ruled the land in place of the former counts; they performed traditional feudal services at court; they led their vassals to the host. They were as much a part of the feudal hierarchy as they were of the clergy, being required to give the oath of fealty and do homage like ordinary vassals. A century was yet to elapse before these princely bishops, territorialized within their dioceses like dukes within their duchies, were formally to assume the rôle of prince-bishops, and haughtily to call their ecclesiastical domains³ *terra*

¹ For Conrad II's ecclesiastical policy see Hauck, III, 544 f.; Nitzsch, II, 18; Fliche, *La réforme grégorienne*, pp. 101 f.; Lamprecht, II, 301; Bresslau, *Jahrb. Konrad II*, II, 389 f.; Feierabend, pp. 5 f.; Voigt, pp. 3 f.; Waitz, VIII, 420-21; Pfenninger, *Die kirchliche Politik Kaiser Konrads II* (Halle diss., 1880); Harttung, *Monatschriftf. d. Gesch. Westdeutschlands* (1878) (on Conrad II's relation with Aribio of Mainz). Conrad dragged the intriguing Italian bishops of Vercelli, Piacenza, and Cremona over the Alps and put the Archbishop of Lyons in chains (Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. xxviii; *Herimann of Reichenau*, 1037).

² See Waitz, VII, 195. The notes are illuminating on the point.

³ The earliest instance of this practice is the Bishop of Münster in 1134 (Werminghof, p. 78; Hauck, *Entstehung der geistlichen Territorien*, p. 28). Most of the Ger-

nostra, but they acted on that theory by early Salian times.

Conrad II used church offices with complete indifference to their religious nature, and wholly for political ends. The "school of the palace," established by Henry II for the training of bishops, was abandoned, and bishops and abbots were no longer prevailingly drawn from those of the clergy who were well educated and technically proficient in ecclesiastical duties. They were appointed and ordered about like ordinary feudal officials.¹ While meaning to be "practical" in his handling of church offices, Conrad's almost cynical method offended even those who thoroughly believed in the Saxon ecclesiastical policy, and enraged the ardent reform party. The watchword of this group, "simony," did not necessarily imply corrupt practice with reference to church offices, although the radical advocates of the cause so used the term, and if Conrad II had had more imagination and tact he perhaps might have neutralized their opposition in some degree.²

Henry II had frowned upon the frank sale of church benefices,³ but Conrad II trafficked in them like a *Realpolitiker*, as Feierabend aptly says,⁴ invariably exacting a fee from a newly installed bishop.⁵ He did not have the vision to see the inadvisability and inexpediency of such practices in view of the growing sensitiveness of the church to secular

man bishops were of noble blood and profoundly imbued with feudal ideas (Werminghoff, p. 72). The statement in the text does not mean to say that every possession of a bishopric was regarded as a fief, for a considerable part of the episcopal domains were allods. This is especially true of older holdings. But the donations of the Saxon and Salian emperors were almost invariably fiefs. Ficker (*Vom Heerschilde*, pp. 62 f.) thinks that the title of "prince-bishop" may not properly be applied before the reign of Frederick Barbarossa. Cf. Waitz, *Gött. Gel. Anzeig.* (1862), 170. Conrad's ordinance of 1037 (*Leges*, II, 38) shows that the performance of military service by clerical vassals was subject to the same conditions that governed the service of lay vassals. A bishop who failed to so do was likely to lose his office just as a lay vassal forfeited his lands for the same offense.

¹ Nitzsch, II, 20; Waitz, VII, 210-11.

² Hauck, III, 552.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 544.

⁴ Feierabend, p. 5. Cf. Waitz, VIII, 408; Bresslau, II, 366 f.; Sommerlad, II, 228-29; Hauck, III, 544.

⁵ Theodoric, bishop of Basel, paid *immensa pecunia* for the see (Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. viii).

control over it. The protest of the Cluny reform as yet was little larger than a man's hand in Germany, but Conrad II could not read the sign in the sky. He inadvertently furthered the Cluny reform by failing to distinguish between the *use* and the *abuse* of his prerogative.¹

Yet it is easy to misunderstand Conrad II's policy toward the church. While it may have been more drastic than that of Henry II and more recklessly applied, it was of a piece with that of his predecessor, and as statesman-like. It must be remembered that by Conrad's time the radicals in Cluny had come out into the open and violently inveighed against *all* secular control of the church as simony, and that, though still a minority, the time was not far off when this radical element was to gain ascendancy over the curia and to claim from Rome domination for a world-church over all the Christian nations of Europe.

A sharp reduction in the number of donations to the church is noticeable in Conrad II's reign. Suspicious of both the great clergy and the high feudality, Conrad II purposefully favored the lower feudality, playing them against the higher. In the duchies the principle of hereditary succession had practically become established; but the dukes were reluctant to see the extension of that principle among their vassals, and frequently punished them by deprivation, especially when they showed an inclination to side with the kingly instead of the ducal interests. The degree in which Conrad II strengthened the crown against the feudal princes is manifested by the revolt of Ernest of Swabia, who was easily broken because the lesser vassals would not support him.² Internal disorder was less under Conrad II than under his predecessors;³ yet he accomplished this result without re-

¹ Hefele, *Conciliengeschichte*, IV, 703; Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, II, 292. Conrad II continued the Saxon practice of conferring countships upon bishops, making six such grants, the most important of which were to Trier, Mainz, Utrecht, Brixen, and Paderborn (Bresslau, II, 506), so that the degree of power which the German bishops came to exercise was unparalleled (Gerdes, I, 354 f.).

² Wipo, chap. xxv.

³ For extended discussion of Conrad's feudal policy see Bresslau, *Konrad II*, II, 356, 374; Nitzsch, II, 21-22; Waitz, VI, 261 f.; VIII, 244; Gebhard, *Handbuch* (1st ed.), I, 288; Sommerlad, II, 227, 233; Gerdes, II, 50-57; Fisher, I, 239-40.

course to the formation of unions for peace in the land (*Landfriedenbund*).

Conrad II's treatment of the monasteries was more rigorous than that of Henry II had been. He personally founded only one new abbey, Limburg.¹ In 1026 he gave the monastery of Kempten outright to the Duke of Swabia in order to purchase his allegiance,² and when this intention failed of effect, in 1030 he gave some of the lands of Reichenau to Count Mangold in order to strengthen him in his conflict with the stubborn Swabian duke.³ Lorsch, which Henry II had spared, was so reduced, owing to the diminution of its estates, that the monks had barely enough *naturalia* for their livelihood. In Tegernsee the monks dwelt in constant terror of losing the small remainder of their property. Lands of Corvey, Hersfeld, St. Maximin, and Echternach were largely distributed among vassals of the crown and even given to *ministeriales*.⁴ Schwarzach was given in whole to the bishop of Speyer.⁵ But Conrad II did not utterly disestablish any monastery as Henry II had done.⁶

Conrad II had a thrifty German *Haushalter's* dislike of extravagance and inefficiency, and the waste attending the administration of so many monasteries annoyed him. In this sentiment he had the sympathy of Poppo of Stavelot, who clung tenaciously to the austere monastic ideals of poverty and asceticism. Accordingly, Conrad II simplified and reduced the cost of administration of the monasteries by combining no less than ten of the most famous abbeys in Germany, among them Hersfeld, St. Gall, and St. Maximin, in Poppo's hand. It is said that the king contemplated putting all the royal abbeys in his hand. What this change accomplished for economy alone, to say nothing of increased efficiency in monastic administration, must be evident. The mere elimination of ten separate abbots' courts and abbots'

¹ *Vita Popponis*, chap. xvi.

² Hauck, III, 547; Nitzsch, II, 23.

³ Bresslau, II, 366.

⁴ Hauck, III, 548.

⁵ Voigt, *Klosterpolitik*, p. 7.

⁶ Feierabend, p. 6.

retinues was a great measure of economy.¹ Conrad II was niggardly in making grants to either branch of the clergy.²

In addition to his rigorous insistence upon economy and retrenchment in the monasteries, and strict accountability for intelligent exploitation of their property by the abbots, Conrad II was also keenly appreciative of the growing trade of Germany, which the internal peace and order established by the Saxon kings had promoted, and which was stimulated by the political connection with Italy. He was generous in distributing market grants and coinage rights among the monasteries.³ The crown was a large contributor to the prosperity of the German church in this way under the Saxon and first Salian kings, in order that the church might be of material assistance to both government and society. We have few secure data to determine what the incomes of the church were from these sources, independently of its wealth in lands, but the aggregate was large.⁴

The gain to both state and church from this arrangement was mutual. The feudal structure and organization of the German church made it an inseparable ingredient of the state. It was impossible to think of a church independent of the state unless the church were willing to resign temporalities which represented nearly half the state, and which the

¹ Hauck, III, 483-89, 544; Nitzsch, II, 23-24.

² According to the records which have survived twelve monasteries received grants of land from Conrad II, the two most liberally treated having been Eichstädt, 30 manors, and Einsiedeln, 12 manors (Bresslau, II, 506). Limburg, which he and the Empress founded, received but one grant after the initial endowment (*DD*, IV, No. 216). Fulda and Quedlinburg were the only large monasteries which received grants, for usually Conrad confined his gifts to small monasteries. The same indifference—or economy?—characterized Conrad's attitude toward the bishops. Of 25 grants made to them, 18 were among 5 bishops, the remainder among 7 (Bresslau, II, 506). The gifts made to Meinwerk of Paderborn and Nithard of Freising were not "grants," but rewards for distinguished military service. The bishoprics of Meissen and Speyer were most generously treated (8 and 12 estates, respectively) (Stumpf, Nos. 2193, 2295-98; *ibid.*, Nos. 2216, 2305-6). The Bishop of Naumburg received his reward in the chancellorship of Italy; beyond this he only received one grant of a hundred manors (*ibid.*, Nos. 2249, 2242). Magdeburg got 40 manors in a single grant; Hildesheim, Eichstädt, Brixen, Salzburg, and Passau each one grant (*ibid.*, Nos. 2444, 2416, 2493, 2465, 2330).

³ Bresslau, II, 381, 389-90; Nitzsch, II, 24, 29.

⁴ Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part I, 685 f.

church itself had accepted in times past with a clear understanding of the secular obligations which possession of them entailed. But what if the church became eager not only to be independent of the state, but to subordinate the state to the church? The bishops of Germany—abbots less so¹—were lords of territorial principalities which equaled the duchies in size and power. They were ecclesiastical princes, often from the same class as the lay feudality, actuated by much the same spirit and subject to similar obligations. The emperor could not renounce control of the great preferments of the church; he could not forego the almost immemorial right of advowson without abdicating his power, if not his office.

The Cluny reform was unveiling its world-wide pretensions.² Four years after the death of Conrad II in 1039, Siegfried of Gorze declared that the only law recognizable by the church was that of the canons, and that whoever violated them defied God.³ William of Benigne wrote to the same effect to the pope.⁴ Gerard of Cambrai asserted the supremacy of the canons also.⁵ Wazo, bishop of Liège, a former protégé of Poppo of Stavelot, broke away from his master's teaching of the dependence of the church upon the state and repeated the assertion.⁶ In Italy, Peter Damieni published his famous tract entitled *Gomorrhah*.⁷ The guns of Cluny could by this time be heard in the distance. It was merely a question of time now, and that not long, before the attack of the Cluny reform upon the citadel of the German monarchy would begin. What the Cluniacs were accomplishing in France might also be done in Germany. "Away with any one who thinks God is local," exclaims Udalric in the preface to

¹ Yet Damieni, *De contemptu seculi*, Opusc. 21, complained of the insatiable land hunger of the abbots—*terram insatiabiliter concupiscunt* (cf. Anselm, *Ep.*, I, 71).

² Gerdes, II, 102.

³ Giesebrecht, II, 82.

⁴ Migne, *Patrol. Lat.*, CXLI, 82.

⁵ *Gesta pontif. Camer.*, III, 51.

⁶ On Wazo see Cauchie, *La Querelle des investitures dans les diocèses de Liège et de Cambrai*.

⁷ Migne, *Patrol. Lat.*, CXLIV, 159 f.

his *Consuetudines Cluniacenses*; "who believes that what He has done in France cannot be done in the region of Speyer."¹ All the earlier local or sporadic movements for monastic reform, like that of Gerard of Brogne and of Gorze, all the accumulated resentment of the monks everywhere in Germany who had writhed under Henry II's and Conrad II's reorganization of the monasteries; all the feudal particularism abroad in Germany, especially in the Lorraines, and in Italy, which perverted a genuine moral force to spurious intent; the ambition of many of the German bishops for greater power, which tempted them to turn against the hand which had so long fed them; and, finally, the enormous ambition of a new and rehabilitated papacy, by the middle of the eleventh century were organized and compacted together into one formidable whole under the name of the "Cluny reform." Some account, therefore, of the origin of this famous abbey and the movement which it generated becomes necessary at this point.

The history of Gerard of Brogne (who died in 959) and the Gorzean movement throughout Flanders, Picardy, and the two Lorraines showed that the church, even in its darkest hours, yet retained some portion of spiritual leaven. But its success had been limited. In striving to revive Benedictine monasticism it had made the mistake of endeavoring to put new wine into old bottles. The Gorzean reform had been too conservative to succeed, and in the course of a century, after the passing of its early leaders, it fell under the yoke of local feudal powers. What was needed was a new and radical monasticism, and this the Cluny reform was.

The birth of Cluny coincided with the most disorganized period of the feudal age. In the midst of the tumultuous disarray which followed upon the collapse of the Carolingian empire, the inroads of the Northmen, the weakness of kings, and the brutality of a riotous baronage, amid the profound oppression of the peasantry and the unparalleled corruption of the church, the establishment of the Order of Cluny was a notable movement of protest and reconstruction. Out of a

¹ "Absit autem ut quisquis credat Deum esse localem, ut quod facit in Francia non etiam possit in territorio Spirensi" (Migne, CXLIX, 638).

soil saturated with blood, out of an iron society, sprang the flower of an ideal.

Cluny introduced into the world a new form of religious life. It was the first successful effort to give homogeneity and compactness to a monastic system which itself had succumbed, like secular things, to the corruption of the ninth and tenth centuries.¹ The rule of St. Benedict had proved ineffective for times which were out of joint. The autonomy and the independence of each monastery had left them a prey to the feudality. Cluny came to prove the truth of the old motto that "in union there is strength."

For a century before Cluny arose the necessity of monastic reform had been perceived, as the labors of Benedict of Aniane² show.

The abbey of Cluny, from whose ascetic precincts the movement was destined to come forth to overturn the world, had a humble beginning. In 910 William, count of Auvergne and duke of Aquitaine, for the safety of his soul deeded to Berno,³ abbot of Beaume and Gigny, a small tract located on the borders of the little river Grosne in the county of Macon, in the midst of the hills which marked the watershed between the Loire and the Saône, whence in clear weather one might descry the blue ridge of the Jura. No spot was more central to Christian Europe, for it was accessible to the Alpine passes into Italy over which ran the pilgrimage roads to Rome, and on the edge between Germany and France in proximity to the future broad commercial highway which was soon to develop through mid-Europe via the Saône and the Meuse rivers. The territory was neither French nor imperial, but part of the "middle kingdom" of Burgundy.

At the time of its foundation Cluny was in a secluded and forested spot. The original group of Cluniacs was made up of six monks from Beaume and six from Gigny.⁴ After seven-

¹ See Hauck, IV, 316 f., for the corruption of Benedictinism.

² Nicolai, *Der Heilige Benedict, Gründer von Aniane und Cornelimünster, Reformator des Benedictinerordens* (Cologne, 1865).

³ On Berno's life before he came to Cluny see Poupardin, *Le royaume de Provence sous les Carolingiens*, p. 153.

⁴ Sackur, I, 40.

teen years of rule Berno gave way to Odo, a young noble, a native of the county of Maine, who had for some years been in the service of William of Aquitaine and had then abruptly renounced the world and come to Cluny.¹ With him the energetic and expansive history of Cluny really begins. He was the first of a long list of abbots—all of noble blood—remarkable for their moral force and administrative ability.

While nominally adhering to the ancient Benedictine rule, actually Cluny created a new type of monasticism, even though its influence was exerted more to reorganize cloisters already established than to found new ones. Practically most of the *de novo* Cluniac monasteries were those belonging to the Congregation of Hirsau in Southern Germany.² Cluny emphasized manual labor less and study more than did Benedictinism. It laid more emphasis on moral character than on sentimental piety. It frowned upon bizarre and extravagant forms of asceticism. It aimed to establish and maintain a balanced life, physical, intellectual, and moral.³ The Cluniac monks wore a comfortable, attractive, even elegant costume; their diet was generous and wholesome, and included wine and beer.⁴ They bathed often, for with them slovenliness was a vice and filth a sin. The ascetics and fanatics in the order were usually foreigners, as Hildebrand.⁵

¹ *Ibid.*, p. 41; *Vita Odonis*, Book I, chap. i.

² "Der Einfluss von Cluny im zehnten und in der ersten Hälfte des elften Jahrhunderts macht sich mehr in der Reform des Klosterlebens als in neuen Stiftungen geltend; dagegen giebt in der zweiten Hälfte Hirsau auch der Klostergründung einen neuen Impuls" (Waitz, VII, 185). The earliest purely Cluniac foundation in Germany was the priory of Rügdisberg (1072); see F. Waeger, *Freiburger Geschichtsblätter*, Vol. XXII (1915).

³ For the library of Cluny see Delisle, *Le Cabinet des manuscrits*, I, 518; II, Part III, 459; *RQH*, XXXVI, 193-94.

⁴ *Vita Majoli*, Book II, chap. viii.

⁵ For interesting evidence of female opposition to Cluniac celibacy see Lea, *Sacerdotal Celibacy*, p. 154 and n. 1. The tradition that the Rule of Cluny was not codified until the time of Hugh the Great is now exploded. The genesis of the Rule of Cluny has recently been cleared up by Dom Bruno Albers, O.S.B., in perhaps the most notable research of its kind since the seventeenth-century age of erudition—scholarly evidence that the genius of Luc d'Achery and his fellow-students in St. Maur still survives in modern Benedictinism. These volumes are: *Consuetudines monasticae*, Edited Bruno Albers, O.S.B. Vol. I, *Consuetudines Farfenses* (Stuttgart: Roth, 1900). Vol. II, *Consuetudines Cluniacenses Antiquiores* (Typis Montis Casini,

From its foundation Cluny was under the immediate authority of the Holy See and free from the control of any bishop.¹ Its material possessions enjoyed a similar immunity, for early in its history King Raoul of France (923-36) granted Cluny absolute and independent proprietorship of its lands, which made it completely exempt from feudal control—an evil which tortured so many monasteries in the ninth and tenth centuries.²

1905). Vol. III, *Antiquiora monumenta maxime consuetudines Casinenses inde ab anno 716-817 illustrantia continens* (Typis Montis Casini, 1907). Before the appearance of these works the oldest written Customs of Cluny were supposed to be the *Ordo Cluniacensis* of Bernard of Cluny, printed in Herrgot's *Vetus disciplina monastica* (1726), and the *Antiquiores consuetudines Cluniacensis monasterii*, compiled by Ulric of Zell and printed in D'Achery's *Spicilegium*, both drawn up in the eleventh century, though the relation of each to the other had not yet been determined. Dom Albers has revolutionized this belief by the discovery of far more ancient compilations among the MSS of the library of Monte Cassino and in the Barberini Library at Rome. The result of his researches shows that Cluny had compiled its rules before 930, that Abbot Majolus (954?-94) revised them, and that a further extension and revision was made between 996 and 1030. The Customs of Farfa are edited from a Vatican MS which materially differs from the version published by Herrgot. Dom Albers has traced back some of the elements of these customs to the Customs of Benedict of Aniane, who in turn was indebted to the *Concordia regularis* of Ethelwold of Winchester, who again goes back to the *Capitula* of 817 and the *Ordo qualiter*, which last was probably composed by an unknown Benedictine monk of Italy or Provence. Ulrich of Zell, author of the celebrated *Constitutiones Cluniacenses*, was born at Regensburg in 1029 and educated at St. Emmeran. In 1044 he became attached to the court of Henry III as his chaplain. His father and his uncle having become involved in a feudal rebellion against the Emperor, Ulrich lost the imperial favor and retired to Freising where his uncle Nitker was bishop. In 1046 he was in Italy, whence he made a journey to Palestine. In 1061 he was received into the Order of Cluny, became chaplain and secretary to Abbot Hugh and later prior of Marcigny. Late in life he returned to Germany at the time when Hirsau was at its height and built the monastery of Zell in Breisgau. He died in 1093, having been blind during his last years (see E. Hauviller, *Ulrich von Cluny*, Münster, 1896). The reader interested in this history may consult further: Dom Albers' summary of his editorial researches in *Untersuchungen zu den ältesten Mönchgewohnheiten* (Munich, 1905) and his article in the *Révue Bénédictine*, XX, 690; Miss Bateson's article on "Rules for Monks and Canons," *English Historical Review*, IX, 690; and Miss Rose Graham's review of Dom Albers' works in the same, XXIV, 121-24.

¹ J. Vendevure, *L'exemption de visite monastique* (Paris, 1907). No mention of such exemption of monasteries from episcopal visitation is made in the *Liber Diurnus*. But in the eighth century, and especially in the ninth century, the tendency of monasteries to resent episcopal visitation is manifest. Freedom came rapidly with the Cluny reform.

² The text of the bull of John XI is to be found in the *Bullarium S. Ord. Clun.*, p. 1. It is a matter of regret that Sir G. F. Duckett has omitted it in his two admi-

But the most notable feature of Cluny was its form of government. All the monasteries founded by or reformed by Cluny were directly dependent upon it. The mother-monastery alone was a monastery. There was but one abbot of Cluny. The reigning abbot chose his successor before his own powers began to fail through age.¹ The affiliated houses were all priories,² though a very few which were so affiliated, out of courtesy, still were permitted to retain the old title of "abbey," as Vezelay, St. Germain d'Auxerre, and St. Bertin. In this wise the famous Congregation of Cluny was formed. The priors were required to convene periodically in the chapter-general under the presidency of the abbot, and the latter made frequent visitations among the priories. How centralized this form of government was, in contrast with the complete separateness of every Benedictine monastery from every other, is manifest. It was the feudal system minus the looseness and particularism of that system. The abbot general was a grand suzerain. It was the adaptation of feudal practices and methods to monastic organization, the conveyance of feudal ideals of lordship, homage, service, fidelity, into the cloister.

This combination of feudal institutions and ideals with monasticism in large part accounts for the rapid spread of the order. Cluny was thoroughly in harmony with the spirit of the age.³ It also accounts for the attraction Cluny had for men of noble blood and the large part they played in its history.

rable volumes, *Charters and Records of Cluny* (privately printed, 1888). Cluny is not the first instance of this immediate dependence of a monastery upon the pope, as Gfrörer, *Kirchengesch.*, I, 42, thinks, but it is the earliest notable one (Blumenstock, *Der päpst. Schutz im MA* [Innsbruck, 1890], p. 33). Robert the Pious forbade the construction of castles in the vicinity of Cluny in order to protect it from the violence of the feudality (Pfister, *Robert le Pieux*, p. 306). For other examples of zones of protection see Mortet, *Recueil de textes relatifs à l'histoire de l'architecture en France au moyen-âge*, p. 114, No. xxxii.

¹ *Electio S. Maioli*; Migne, CXXXVII, 707; *S. Maioli elogium historicum*, *ibid.*, col. 719, chap. xvii; col. 737; chap. I, "Electio Odolonis," *ibid.*, col. 778.

² For list of the abbots of Cluny see Duckett, I, 24 f.

³ On the history of this expansion see Sackur, *in toto*. A brief account may be found in Pfister, pp. 282 ff. Lot, *Les derniers Carolingiens*, pp. 116-17, has interesting data on the religious enthusiasm of the tenth century.

Like all great historical institutions the Order of Cluny gradually developed through processes of change and experiment. The characteristic feature of Cluny—the organization which placed all the religious houses of the order under the control of the central monastery—was an evolution of the eleventh not of the tenth century. When founded, Cluny lay within the bounds of Benedictinism. This intense centralization, the salient feature of the developed system, was not projected in the original organization. Nor was it, when realized, a complete novelty except in so far as it became permanent. For Benedict of Aniane, in the time of Louis the Pious, seems to have vaguely had such an idea of consolidation in his mind as a part of his ideas of monastic reform.

It is interesting to notice the different ways in which the “congregational” system of Cluny grew up. First of all there were “cells,” or filial members of the abbey. The parent house would plant them, commonly under a prior, on different parts of its outlying possessions. The prior was a member of the capitular body of the great abbey, and he was able to make himself useful in connection with the management of its property as well as in keeping up the supply of monks. . . . A second method of extension was by means of influence and the prestige of the ascendant abbey. Monks of Cluny would be elected abbots in other monasteries. . . . Often the recommendation of the abbot of Cluny would be tantamount to a nomination, so deep was the conviction that what men like St. Odilo advised must be in the best interests of the religious life. It was only a step further to place new or recently founded abbeys under the direct control of Cluny, and from this to the establishment of a definitely organized “congregation” the transition was easy.¹

Like the earlier reform movement, Cluny’s propaganda encountered bitter opposition from the monks. At Fleury the monks barricaded themselves in and hurled stones, shard, and other improvised projectiles at Odo.² At La Réole they

¹ From a review of Sackur, *Athenaeum* (Sept. 7, 1895).

² *Vita Odonis*, Book III, chap. viii; Sackur, I, 80. “It had long been ravaged by the Normans, and for some years the monks lived . . . without any regular abbot at all; for there seems to have been a lay abbot, one count Elisiern, who had been granted the monastery in fee, and who after a while repented him of his ways and begged Odo of Cluny to take the monastery in hand. Odo soon made his appearance, accompanied by several counts and bishops. The monks, seemingly not knowing who he was, prepared for a siege and armed themselves with shields and missiles. They sent an ambassador furnished with charters from popes and kings declaring the immunity of the convent from the authority of any other house. They proposed to appeal to the king, some to murder their assailant. But when

killed Abbon, the abbot's representative.¹ But the efficiency of its organization and the immense appeal which Cluny made to the imagination of the time ultimately secured its success over all opposition. Under the administration of Odo it spread over Aquitaine, Upper Lorraine, the valley of the Loire, and North Italy as far as Rome.² Every new acquisition in turn became a new center of propaganda.³ Under the famous Majolus (954[?]-94), Champagne, Burgundy (the kingdom), German Switzerland, and Provence were brought within its sphere.⁴ The great abbeys of Lérins, Marmoutiers, St. Germain d'Auxerre, and St. Maur-des-Fossés then became Cluniac. With Odilo (994-1049) and Hugh the Great (1044-1109)⁵ Cluny spread over Germany, Hungary, Poland, Spain, South Italy, and England. The influence of Cluny was strongly manifested in Western Switzerland in the tenth and eleventh centuries. Not only the great abbots of the order, like Majolus, Odilo, Hugh, were in intimate relation with the last kings of Burgundy, Conrad and Rodolph III, and

Odo approached, riding on an ass, he was suddenly recognized as the Great Abbot of Cluny. All resistance was forgotten, and Odo entered into possession of Fleury. Henceforward he ruled it as abbot, and under him and his successor Archembald the connection with Cluny continued, Fleury becoming the centre from which the monastic reform was diffused in the province of Rheims and in Upper Lorraine" (*Athen., loc. cit.*).

¹ *Vita Abbonis*, 16-20; Imbart de la Tour, *Les coutumes de La Réole*; Pfister, pp. 288-89; Pardiac (abbé), *Histoire de St. Abbon ... martyr à La Réole en 1004* (Paris, 1872).

² Sackur, I, 71-114.

³ *Ibid.*, pp. 186-204; II, 133-54. For Normandy, Pfister, pp. 309-10.

⁴ Sackur, II, 232-52.

⁵ Ringholz, *Der heilige Abt Odilo von Cluny in seinem Leben und Werke* (in *Studien und Mittheilungen aus dem Benedictiner- und dem Cistercienser-Orden*, Vols. V-VI (Würzburg, 1884-85); P. Jaret, *St. Odilon, abbé de Cluny, sa vie, son temps, ses œuvres* (962-1049) (Lyons, 1898); Neumann, *Hugo I der Heilige, Abt von Cluny* (Frankfurt am M., 1879). Odo of Cluny came of a remarkable ancestry. His father Abbo was well versed in the law, who read for pleasure the novels of Justinian and the histories of Livy and Tacitus. As a manorial proprietor he was singularly just and intelligent. He was a trusted counselor of Duke William of Aquitaine and often sat in his court. As abbot of Cluny he was theologian, orator (witness his sermon on the burning of the basilica at Tours), biographer of St. Géraud, count of Aurillac, hymn-writer, musician, for he is the author of a dialogue on music, and with all these capacities, politician, diplomat, man of practical affairs.

with their successors, the German kings Conrad II and Henry III, but the abbots personally displayed, especially Odilo, great initiative in the development of foundations which fell to Cluny owing to the lapse of older monasticism, or new foundations which Cluny itself promoted. Romainmotier, Peterlinger, St. Victor of Geneva, Rougemont, Münchenwyler, Hettiswyl, Petersinzel, Leuzinger, were the principal of these.¹ At the climax of the order in the twelfth century Cluny ruled 2,000 priories.²

But before this summit was reached the great abbey had also invaded the field of the secular clergy. Without ceasing its agitation for reform of the monasteries it began to demand in imperative tones the reformation of the episcopate also. The French bishops were more deeply involved in the coils of feudalism than were the monks, and, moreover, many of them were imbued with the ancient Gallicanism of Hincmar of Rheims.³ Indeed, Rheims, Chartres, Tours, and Cambrai together constituted a school of opposition. Instead of adopting a compromising spirit the Cluniacs aggravated the irritation of the bishops. They refused to acknowledge any rights claimed by the bishops over them, declared canceled all the ancient obligations of former monasteries which had become Cluniac, closed their houses when the bishops on their visitations asked for lodging, refused homage and the payment of those manorial dues which the bishops had long collected from the lands of the monasteries, imposed the tithe on their own account, diverted into the coffers of Cluny gifts which the bishops used to receive, ignored all diocesan or metropolitan authority, and dealt directly with Rome.⁴

It requires some effort of the imagination to appreciate

¹ B. Egger, *Gesch. der Cluniacenser-Klöster in der Westschweiz* (Fribourg, 1907). For the history of the Cluniac priories in England see Dom Léon Guillbreaux, *Revue Mabillon* (1912). They were not numerous and mostly founded between 1077 and 1122.

² Helyot, *Hist. des Ordres monast.*, Vol. V, chap. xviii

³ Gerbert of Rheims, later Pope Sylvester II, opposed the Cluniac doctrine of the supremacy of the papacy (*Lettres* [ed. Havet], Nos. 192, 193, 217).

⁴ See Pfister, *Robert le Pieux*, pp. 313 f. The letters of Abbon of Fleury, Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CXXXIX, cols. 441 f., abound with information on this matter.

the depth of jealousy, not to say hatred, which divided the two branches of the medieval clergy. The feud was due to rival authority, both spiritual and temporal. The bishops pretended to a kind of ecclesiastical suzerainty over the monasteries in addition to their episcopal authority and right of examination, often exacting an oath of homage when ordaining an abbot.¹ Many monasteries, too, were required to pay a portion of their revenues into the bishop's coffers. Then the bishops roundly abused the right of hospitality which they had the authority to exact upon their visitations, often quartering a large entourage upon the monastery. Title to church lands and the right to assess the tithe were also subjects of feud between the bishops and the abbots. The former opposed the claim of the monks to collect tithes, citing the capitularies of Charlemagne and the findings of councils to the effect that *decimae sint in manu episcopi*. The monasteries, however, interpreted this regulation in another way.²

The issue between the regulars and the seculars was fought bitterly at various synods in the last decade of the tenth century³ and the first part of the eleventh, when the kings of France, notably Robert the Pious, threw the weight of the crown in favor of Cluny.⁴ Hugh, archbishop of Tours, made a special trip to Rome to protest to John XVIII against the arrogance of Cluny.⁵ But the papacy saw on which side its bread was to be buttered, and that it could diminish the powers of the bishops by supporting the monks and so enlarge the authority of the pope.⁶ But papal intervention or

¹ Fulbert of Chartres, *Epistulae*, Bouquet, X, 448 C.

² The point is elucidated in a long note in Lot, *Hugues Capet*, p. 184 n.

³ Pfister, pp. 315-16.

⁴ "Les évêques, cette aristocratie de l'église, étaient pour lui [Robert] aussi redoutables que l'aristocratie laïque; ils voulaient se rendre maîtres dans les diocèses comme les seigneurs dans les comtés. Les uns et les autres avaient mêmes intérêts et représentaient le morcellement féodal" (Pfister, p. 305).

⁵ Rod. Glaber, Book II, chap. iv; Sackur, II, 87.

⁶ Pfister, pp. 319-20; Lot, *op. cit.*, p. 36. This feeling accounts in part for the Catilinarian invective of Bishop Arnulf of Orleans at the synod of Rheims in 991 against papal corruption: "O lugenda Roma, quae nostris majoribus clara patrum

even papal anathema never wholly abated the feud. For years there was strife between Fleury-sur-Loire, the Cluniac bastion in Central France, and the bishops of Orleans, which finally came to open fight on the floor of a council and culminated in the offending bishops being summoned to Rome.¹ A similar incident took place in 1025, when the bishop of Soissons and the monks of St. Médard resorted to physical conflict.² In the same year the French and Burgundian bishops united at Anse near Lyons declared null and void the papal bull exempting Cluny from the jurisdiction of the bishop of Mâcon.³ In 1026 Count Landri of Nevers dispossessed the inmates of a monastery belonging to him and replaced them with monks from Cluny, whereupon the Bishop of Autun threw his lands under interdict and so aroused the lay population against him.⁴ At Tours there was prolonged quarrel between Archbishop Archambaud and the monks of St. Martin.⁵

Quite as acrimonious as these quarrels dividing the bishops and the monks was the protracted feud between the monks and the feudal nobles, who resented Cluny's attacks upon their immemorial feudal right to appoint to church livings and control church revenues. The history of the first Capetian kings of France, of the dukes of Normandy and

limina protulisti, nostris temporibus monstruosas tenebras futuro saeculo famosas effudisti. Olim accepimus claros Leones, magnos Gregorios; quid sub haec tempora vidimus?" (Mansi, *Concilia*, XIX, 131). Cf. Certain's article on Arnoul of Laon in *Bib. de l'école d. Chartes*, XIV, 455.

¹ *Vita Gauzlini*, Book I, chaps. xiv, xv, xvi; Sackur, I, 273 f.

² Bouquet, X, 474.

³ Pfister, pp. 307, 317-18; Lot, pp. 156-57; Hessel, *Zeitschrift für Kirchengesch.*, Vol. XXII (1901). The extension of rural parishes owing to the movements of the peasantry in France has been studied by A. de Charmasse, "L'origine des paroisses rurales dans le département de Saône-et-Loire," *Mem. de la Soc. Eduenne* (Nouv. sér., 1909), Vol. XXXVII. While such churches were proprietary foundations, there was fierce competition between the local bishop and Cluny for oversight of them—a conflict which generally terminated in favor of the abbey because of the hostility of the nobles toward the bishops.

⁴ Petit, *Hist. des ducs de Bourgogne*, Vol. I, éclaircissements xvii-xviii, xxvii.

⁵ *Lettres de Gerbert* (ed. Havet), pp. 190-91.

Burgundy, and of the counts of Anjou and Champagne is filled with this struggle.¹

The Cluny reform in its original purpose and policy and in its ultimate application constituted two very different movements, so different that the two were actually separate and distinct propaganda. The original Cluniac movement was a real movement for moral reform and was exerted in the monasteries only. It was a renaissance of the old ideals of poverty and chastity and aimed to emancipate the monasteries from the worldly and feudal practices which had been intruded into them. Owing to the peculiar conditions of its foundation Cluny was free from the prevailing confusion which obtained in other cloisters, for it was independently governed under its own abbot. Thus Cluny tasted of the sweets of independence and was free from political control, as other foundations were not. Moreover, there was undeniably a deeper spiritual life at Cluny.

If the reform had continued to be solely a reformation movement seeking to purify the morals of the clergy and to eliminate the grosser features of feudal abuse, its propaganda would have been both reasonable and salutary. But when the Cluny reform began to preach church independence as well as moral reform it invaded the field of politics and at once took issue with the secular authority, whose supremacy it challenged. This second stage was reached when the Cluny reform became identified with the papacy, in whose hand it became the weapon for the establishment of a universal dominion, and may then be fittingly termed the "Gregorian reform." For its purposes then were less religious than political, less moral than monarchical. This is the Roman stage of the Cluny reform.

Yet the movement was Italian before it became Roman.² But even thus early it was anti-German in its direction. Lombard and Tuscan Italy by the middle of the eleventh century had begun to chafe under German domination, and

¹ See Sackur, II, 24 f.; Pfister, pp. 180 f.; Luchaire, *Inst. mon. de la France*, II, 72 f.; Imbart de la Tour, *Les élections épiscopales*, pp. 177 f.; Viollet, *Inst. polit.*, I, 416 f.; Lavissee, *Hist. de France*, II, Part II, Book I, chaps. iv and v; Book 2, chap. i.

² Dresdner, *Kultur und Sittengesch. der Italien Geistlichkeit*, pp. 20 f.

that a domination chiefly maintained by the imposition of German bishops in Italian sees. For the emperors, both Saxon and Salian, distrusting the native ecclesiastics, systematically appointed German bishops to Italian sees. Between 950 and 1000 the presence of 47 German bishops in the bishoprics of Italy is attested, and undoubtedly there were more of such of whom we have no record. Ever since the restoration of the empire in 962 the German kings had followed the practice of setting a certain number of German bishops over Italian sees who would be more devoted to their interests than native clergy were likely to be. The proportion of these foreigners varied according to the time. It was greater under Henry II (about one-quarter) than under the Ottos, when it was about one-sixth. The proportion also varied according to regions. German bishops were thickest in the suffragan sees of Aquileia, in the March of Verona, and in Ravenna. In Lombardy, on the other hand, there were many bishops of Lombard origin, a situation due to the vitality of the tradition of the ancient Lombard church.¹ The precaution was warranted, for by the time of Henry II all the prominent noble families of North Italy were allied against German domination south of the Alps. Within twenty-four days after the death of Otto III in 1002, on February 15, in the church of St. Michael at Pavia, Arduin, margrave of Ivrea, already famous for his hostility to the Germans in Italy, assumed the iron crown of Lombardy.² Two years later the Pavians destroyed the German castle which was the key to the imperial hold upon the city.³

But the Pretender had undertaken an impossible task. Henry II crossed the Alps in the spring of 1004 and gave Pavia over to the flames, though Arduin escaped and con-

¹ The subject of German bishops in Italian sees in these times has been attentively studied in three dissertations: Groner, *Die Diözesen Italiens von der Mitte des zehnten bis zum Ende des zwölften Jahrhunderts* (Tübingen, 1904); Pahncke, *Geschichte der Bischöfe Italiens deutscher Nation von 951-1004* (Halle diss., 1912); Schwartz, *Die Besetzung der Bistümer Reichsitaliens unter den sächsischen und salischen Kaisern* (Freiburg i. Br. diss., 1913); cf. *Hist. Ztschft.*, CXIV, No. 1 (1915); Dresdner, *op. cit.*, pp. 28-29, 83-87.

² Pfister, p. 362, n. 1.

³ Giesebrecht, II, 231 f.; Lamprecht, II, 278-79.

tinued to call himself "king of Italy" until his death in 1015.¹ Henry II's humiliation of the Archbishop of Milan and devastation of Parma² foiled a plot for the massacre of all the Germans in Lombardy.³ The news of the Emperor's death at Grona, on Saxon soil, in 1024 was received with shouts of rejoicing in Lombardy, where the populace of Pavia utterly destroyed the new citadel which Henry II had built.⁴ Conrad II again riveted German domination upon the turbulent country and colonized it with German bishops and German soldiery.

Italy was sullen and sore under the German heel. But though revolt after revolt failed, nevertheless Arduin of Ivrea and later conspirators managed to sow dragons' teeth in the path of the Germans. In 1004 Arduin had vainly made overtures to Robert of France, true to the traditional Italian policy of seeking some powerful intervention from without, when he perceived that his cause was failing.⁵ The suggestion was not lost. When Arduin died the Italian anti-German party offered to yield the March of Ivrea to Rodolph, king of the Two Burgundies, as the price of his intervention,⁶ and

¹ Thietmar, V, 25-26; Migne, CXL, 96-98; Adelholdi, *Frag. de reb. gestis Henrici*, chaps. xxiii-xxviii. Pfister, p. 362; Sackur, II, 14; Provena, *Studi critici sopra la storia d'Italia a' tempi del re Ardoino* (Turin, 1844); Carutti, *Archivio Storico Italiano*, Vol. X (1882), has traced the history of Arduin's house to the old kingdom of Burgundy, when it was established in the Val de Maurienne. One of the best accounts of the history of Italy in the early Middle Ages is G. Romano, *Le dominazioni barbariche in Italia* (395-1024) (Milan, 1909). The work terminates with the failure of the efforts of Arduin to establish an independent kingdom of Italy at the moment when the German rule was fixed on the north and the Normans were beginning to found their powerful kingdom in the south.

² Pabst, *De Ariberto II, Mediolanensi primisque medii aevi motibus popularibus* (Berlin diss, 1864); cf. the array of sources and authorities in Richter, *Annalen*, III, Part II, 312-20.

³ Nitzsch, II, 32. For the Romans' hatred of the Germans in 962 see *Benedicti chronicon*, Book I, chap. xxxix, SS. III, 719. For general evidence: Liutprand, *Antapod.*, I, 23; *Gesta Bereng.*, Book III, vss. 80 f.; Regino, *Chron.*, annis 894, 896; *Annal. Fuld.*, anno 886; Folcuin, *Gesta abbat. Leob.*, chap. xxviii, SS. IV, 69; *Annal. Qued.*, 1014; Sackur, I, 321 ff.

⁴ Wipo, *Vita Chonradi*, chap. vii.

⁵ The Lombard nobles were too fickle and tricky to be wholly relied upon. "Principes regni fraudulenter incedentes Arduino palam militabant, Heinricho latenter favebant, avaritiae lucra sectantes" (Arnulf, *Mediol. Hist.*, I, 15).

⁶ Pfister, pp. 367-70.

when Henry II died in 1024 they offered the Italian crown successively to a son of Robert the Pious, to William of Aquitaine, and finally to Odo, count of Champagne, who in 1037 invaded Lorraine, took Commercy, failed before Toul, and laid siege to Bar-le-Duc, where he was slain (November 15).¹ Once more retribution was visited by Conrad II upon the rebellious cities of Italy, especially Pavia and Parma.² However much Italy might be divided against itself with warring feudal houses and rival bishops, its hatred of German domination and of the Germans has almost the dignity of a national feeling. The chronicles for every century, even from before the permanent establishment of German rule by Otto the Great in 962, bristle with the evidences of it.

Ever since the intervention in Italy in 901 of King Louis of Burgundy, whom Pope Benedict IV had crowned emperor after Arnulf's death, Italy had been a field of exploitation for adventurous and greedy transalpine Burgundians and Provençaux.³ The overtures of the rebellious Italians in the reigns of Henry II and Conrad II to Robert the Pious, William of Aquitaine, Rodolph of Burgundy, and Odo of Champagne increased this French influx. It was the Italian national party which saw the political advantage latent in the Cluny reform, abandoned open revolt for more insidious conspiracy, and began to agitate against lay investiture as a means of emancipating Italy from German rule. Then and there the Cluny reform became a formidable political movement against the German monarchy, all the more formidable because under the guise of religion it could pursue its purposes. "Reform" became a means to an end, and that end the liberation of Italy. In soil so fertile with an anti-German

¹ Giesebrecht, II, 231 f.; Lamprecht, II, 278-79; Richter, III, Part II, 273-74 (*annis* 1025-27).

² Richter, III, Part II, 311, 319 (*anno* 1037). "The impression that he [Conrad II] made in west Lombardy was prodigious; only the devil, it was there thought, could be responsible for so much success" (Previte-Orton, *History of the House of Savoy*, p. 178); cf. Bresslau, I, 133-34, 188; Rod Glaber, IV, 2.

³ Poupardin, pp. 65-66, 223, and esp. pp. 377-99; Gregorovius, *Rome in the Middle Ages*, Vol. III Book 6, chaps. i-ii; Lapôte, *L'Europe et la St. Siège à l'époque Carolingien*, pp. 330-34. For Italian feeling toward these adventurers from beyond the Alps see Liutprand, *Antapod.* Book II, chap. lx; Book III, chap. xlv; Book V, chap. vi.

spirit the Cluny reform found a congenial field. Many of the rebellious Italian nobles were ardent devotees of Cluny. Arduin of Ivrea, who had rebelled at the death of Otto III and had had himself crowned king of the Lombards at Pavia in 1102, and whom Henry II crushed, terminated his stormy career in Fructuaria, one of the earliest Cluniac foundations.¹

But if the independence of Italy could be so secured, why not also that of the church in the same way? And if the independence of the church, why not the supremacy of the church? It was this enormous possibility in the application of the Cluny reform which Hildebrand saw, as did no other man, while he was yet little more than a simple monk. He saw the tremendous implications in the issue: that by identifying the papacy with a war to abolish lay investiture the papacy might not only emancipate the church from secular control, but subordinate, even demolish, the state. "Abolition of simony" was to become the slogan of papal victory. The Cluny reform might be made an Archimedean lever with which to overthrow the world. The time was not yet ripe to unveil a program of such colossal magnitude, but it was implicit in the enterprise of the Italian nationalist party.² Arduin of Ivrea's rebellion had exhibited marked anti-episcopal tendencies.³ It is obvious that the original nature of the Cluny reform and this Italian nationalist expression of it were two very different movements.

Italy had early become a seed plot of the real reform, for its clergy in the tenth century was perhaps even more degraded and corrupt than that north of the Alps. Even corrupt and mutilated forms of ancient paganism had resurgence.⁴ The Benedictine rule was a reminiscence in such famous monasteries as Monte Cassino, San Vincenzo, Farfa,

¹ Fructuaria was founded by William of St. Bénigne in 1003 (Pfister, p. 266); Abbé Chevalier, *Le vénérable Guillaume, abbé de St. Bénigne*, p. 86.

² Giesebrecht, II, 30 f.; Lamprecht, II, 278 f.; Sackur, II, 1-14. Contemporary Italian literature at this time shows marked French influence and is prevailingly hostile to the Germans (Zimmer, *Roman. Forsch.*, Vol. XXIX [1911]).

³ Giesebrecht, II, 240; Lamprecht, II, 284.

⁴ Dresdner, *Kultur- und Sittengesch. der italien. Geistlichkeit im X. und XI. Jahrh.* (1890), pp. 51 f., 174 f., 263 f., 307 f., 362 f.; Schulz, *Atto von Vercelli*, pp. 40 f.; Vogel, *Rather von Verona*, I, 43 f.; Sackur, I, 93 f.; Nitzsch, I, 338-39.

Peschiera, and Subiaco.¹ Marozia and Theodora paid their soldiery with money and plate taken from Roman convents.²

The Cluny reform was introduced into Italy by Odo, the second abbot, whom Alberigo, founder of a short-lived Roman republic (932-54), is alleged to have made abbot general over all the monasteries in Rome and its environs. In any case the famous monastery of Sancta Maria, where Hildebrand was educated, was established at this time on the Aventine in a palace given over to it by Alberigo, and a long series of old foundations reorganized by Odo, as St. Lorenzo, St. Andrew, St. Agnes, St. Sylvester, St. Stephen, Subiaco, Farfa, St. Peter in Pavia, and finally Monte Cassino. When Odo died in 944 the progress of the Cluny reform in Italy was interrupted for two decades, but was resumed under Majolus (954?-94).³

In 971 St. Savior in Pavia was reformed, in 972 St. Apollinaris near Ravenna, in 982 St. John in Parma, in 987 Monte Celio in Pavia, where Odo had been successfully resisted by the monks some years before. Pavia, significantly for the seat of the Italian national party, at this time indubitably the richest and most populous city in North Italy, became the chief seat of the order in Italy, where Cluny in 967 had acquired extensive lands both within the city and along the banks of the Po.⁴ The reformation of Farfa about the year

¹ Gregorovius, Book 6, chap. xii, sec. 3 (Eng. trans., III, 307-10).

² For the general subject of monastic corruption in Italy see Dresdner, pp. 16-26. Rather of Verona, *Opera*, 503, asked the caustic question: "quorum vero major pars intrat ecclesiam divitumque an egenorum?" (Dresdner, p. 18, n. 2), Sackur I, 96-97. On Farfa see Gregorovius, III, 314-15 (Eng. trans.).

³ *The Life of S. Guglielmo*, written by Raoul Glaber (Migne, CXLII, 609 f.), informs us that the saint was born in Lombardy, but left his monastery in the diocese of Novara to go to Cluny, whither he accompanied the abbot S. Majolus, when the latter was returning from Rome. S. Guglielmo became successively abbot of St. Saurin and St. Bénigne at Dijon. He was sent to the latter monastery for the express purpose "ad redintegrandum divini cultus ordinem qui in eodem loco omnino defecerat" (Porter, *Lombard Architecture*, I, 157).

⁴ Bruel, *Recueil des Chartes de Cluny*, II, Nos. 1143, 1229, 1295. Karl Voigt, *Die königlichen Eigenklöster im Langobardenreich* (Gotha, 1909), is valuable for the history of certain monasteries founded in North Italy by the kings or their queens, upon the lands of the royal domain. The history of San Pietro in Ciel d'Oro in Pavia and of San Salvatore in Brescia is especially well treated (cf. C. W. Previte-Orton, *House of Savoy*, pp. 149-50, 178-88).

1000 was the work of Majolus' successor, Odilo, who founded La Cava near Naples in 1025. Odilo's greatest conquests though were made in Piedmont, where Fructuaria was established in 1003 by his able assistant William of St. Benigne, and Novalese in 1027.¹ The last is a curious example of monastic migration, for the original monastery had been founded in Bremen.²

But by this time—we are within the eleventh century and in the reigns of Henry II and Conrad II—the Cluny reform in Italy had ceased to be so much a reform as an anti-German and nationalist propaganda. The Italian who first saw the Cluny reform in this new light was Guido of Arezzo. He voiced the earliest deliberate formulation of medieval Italian nationalism in a letter to Herbert, archbishop of Milan and a bitter enemy of German rule in Italy, in 1031.³ He was clever enough, though, to conceal his political purpose under the drapery of religion, and inveighed against the “simoniacal” practices of the German kings in denunciatory fashion. But “simony” with Guido meant not the *abuse* by the German kings of their appointive power to church offices in Italy, but the very exercise of that appointive power at all. He branded lay investiture as heresy⁴ and declared that countless thousands of Christians had suffered eternal damnation because of it. In this wise the agitation was artfully made to gain the support of the ignorant and terror-stricken lower classes in the Lombard cities. A national and popular Italian and anti-German party was thereby formed in Lombardy, of protest against “lay” investiture, “simony,” and the marriage of priests, with a political undercurrent and a religious overcurrent of enmity against the German bishops. This was the Pataria, in which the Italian feudality, the lower priest class, the bourgeoisie of the rising towns, and the rabble were all commingled.

Milan now, and not Pavia as formerly, was the center of

¹ According to Porter, *op. cit.*, I, 161, the Cluniac churches in Italy were far from being the magnificent and sumptuous edifices which they were in France.

² Bresslau, *Jahrbuch*, II, 164, n. 4; *Vita Odilonis*, II, 12.

³ Mirbt, *Libelli de lite*, I, 1-4; Bresslau, III, 271-73; Waitz, VIII, 425.

⁴ Kayser, *Placidus von Nonantula*, p. 15.

this agitation for Italian independence, but most of the cities of the Lombard Plain were more or less partisans of the movement. Two Milanese clerks named Ariald and Landolph traveled from town to town, preaching in the churches, haranguing the populace in the public squares, and everywhere inveighing against the German bishops, the marriage of priests, simony, etc., in passionate and popular speech, seeking to fan the flame into open revolt and even going so far as to advocate the assassination of all German priests.¹

The upper clergy in Lombardy, frightened by the violence of the agitation, implored the Archbishop of Milan to suppress it. Ariald and Landolph were condemned in a synod which the Archbishop convoked, and promptly appealed to Rome against the verdict. In 1056 Alexander II canceled the Archbishop's excommunication. The Pataria was formally recognized by the papacy.² In the next year Hildebrand, already the power behind the papal throne, and Anselm of Lucca, who had studied at Bec in Normandy under Lanfranc,³ appeared in Milan as legates of the Holy See and concluded a papal-Patarian alliance, the league being under the captaincy of Landolph's brother Erlenbald, to whom Alexander II sent a special standard which he had blessed.⁴ Thus officially recognized by Rome, the Pataria became bolder. The Archbishop of Milan and the German hierarchy in North Italy generally, frightened by the popular fury and the thunders of the Lateran, bowed before the storm. In 1059 they advocated, outwardly at least, the Patarian program at the synod of Rome.⁵ The seeds of that revolt against the imperial authority in Lombardy were already sown which came to fruition in the reign of Frederick Barbarossa in the formation of the league between the Lombard cities and the

¹ Arnulf, *Gesta epp. Mediol.*, III, 11, SS. VIII, 19.

² *Ibid.*, III, 13, p. 20; Andreas, *Vita Arialdi* (Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CLXIII, 1439, 1447).

³ *Vita Alex.*, chap. ii; Labbé, *Concil.*, XII, 69.

⁴ Arnulf, III, 14, p. 20; 16, p. 21; Bonizo, VI, 592; Andreas, 33; Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CLXIII, 1455; Bernold, *Annal.* (1077), p. 305.

⁵ Petr. Dam., *Epp.* I, xlii; Arnulf, III, 14-15, p. 21; Bonizo, VI, 593; Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrbuch*, I, 131.

papacy in 1167, when the independence of Lombardy was won on the battlefield of Legnano (1178) and at the peace of Constance (1183). The papacy had scattered dragons' teeth in the imperial path in Italy.

The eleventh century is one of the most fascinating of epochs to the psychological historian, for a religious renaissance, so to speak, then actuated Europe which took many and intense forms of expression. The Cluny reform and the Crusades were the two greatest of these. But the variety of the stirrings of the new consciousness was almost infinite. Almost a craze for the building of new and more magnificent churches developed, from which was born the first positive example of medieval ecclesiastical architecture, the Romanesque.¹ New heresies appeared, symptomatic of fervent religious thought.² Relic worship became a mania.³ The Truce of God attempted to suppress the worst features of private war and made strong appeal to the popular mind.⁴ Pilgrim-

¹ Rodolph Glaber's beautiful figure descriptive of this enthusiasm for church building is famous: "contigit in universo pene terrarum orbe, precipue tamen in Italia et in Galliis, innovari ecclesiarum basilicas. . . . Erat enim instar ac si mundus ipse, excutiendo semet, rejecta vetustate, passim candidam ecclesiarum vestem indueret" (Book III, chap. iv, sec. 13 [ed. Proul]); cf. Mortet, *Textes relatifs à l'hist. de l'architecture*, Nos. XXXI and XLI. For a vivid account of the building of a monastery see Ord. Vit., *Hist. eccles.*, Book VIII, chap. xxvii; Guibert de Nogent, *De vita sua* (ed. Bourgin, 1907), pp. 85, 110, 193-94, testifies to the same enthusiasm. For literature see Viollet le Duc, *Dict. d'architecture*, I, 107-30, 241-42; Merimée, *Études sur les arts au moyen âge*, chap. i; Reinach, *Story of Art*, p. 98; Moore, *Gothic Architecture*, chap. i; Kurth, *Notger de Liège*, Vol. I, chap. xv; Rosières, *La chaire française*, Vol. II, chap. vi; Mortet, *op. cit.*, Introd., pp. xxxi-xlvi; Enlart, *Manuel de l'archéologie franc.*, Vol. I, chap. iv, esp. pp. 202, 206, 208-9.

² Rod. Glaber, Book II, chap. xi; Book III, chap. viii; Book IV, chap. ii. For literature see Pfister, pp. 325 f.; Lea, *Hist. of Inquisition*, I, 108 f.; Rosières, *La chaire française*, Vol. I, chap. ii; Sackur, II, 30-32; Rénan, *Averroes et averroïsme*, pp. 284 f.; Havet, *Bib. de l'école des chartes*, XLI, 570 f.; Lea, *Sacerdotal Celibacy*, chap. xiii; Hahn, *Gesch. der Ketzer im Mittelalter, besonders im 11, 12, und 13. Jahrhundert* (Stuttgart, 1845).

³ Rod. Glaber, Book III, chap. vi; Petrus Venerabilis, *De miraculis*, Book II; Guibert de Nogent, *De pignoribus sanctorum* (Migne, CLVI, 607-79); Lefranc, *Le traité des reliques de Guibert de Nogent* (in *Études Monod*); Duchesne, *Les origines du culte chrétien*, pp. 265-90; Reuter, *Gesch. der relig. Aufklärung im Mittelalter*, I, 147 f.; Harnack, *Hist. of Dogma*, V, 267, 302-8; VII, 54 f.; Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen*, II, 247 f., has good bibliography for Germany.

⁴ On the Truce of God see Luchaire, *Manuel*, pp. 231-33 (bib.); Holtzmann, *Franz. Verfassungsgesch.*, pp. 127, 129, 164 f., 153 (bib.); Lavisce, *Histoire de France*, II, 2, 133-38 (bib.).

ages to the Holy Land enormously increased.¹ The first intimations of chivalry, that curious commingling of the ideals of a military society and of the faith of the Middle Ages, began to be manifest.²

In such an atmosphere the Cluny reform had operated until it became identified with Italian nationalist sentiment in Lombardy, with feudal resistance to the monarchy in Germany, and finally with the papacy, which saw in it, not merely an instrument for securing the independence of the church from secular control, but a means wherewith to overthrow the state.

This stage was reached between 1046 and 1056 with the ascendancy of Hildebrand in the curia in 1046 and the accession of Henry IV to the German throne in 1056. The first period of the Cluny reform was a genuine and legitimate movement for reformation of the medieval clergy, especially the monks. The second, or Hildebrandine, period was a huge political propaganda for the establishment of papal supremacy over the national churches and over the nations, masked under the guise of religion and morality.

When the Cluny reform had first entered Germany out of France the attitude of the German kings had not been one of hostility to it.³ Henry II had encouraged the movement and can hardly be accused of merely playing politics because he used the reform in order to secularize much of the lands of the monasteries whose misuse of their wealth had become a scandal, and which needed to be bled for their own health's sake.⁴ Conrad II had been a *Realpolitiker*. But though he

¹ See Pfister, pp. 344 f.; Bréhier, *L'Eglise et l'Orient au moyen âge*, pp. 42-54; Lalanne, "Des pèlerinages en Terre Sainte avant les croisades," *Bib. de l'école des chartes* (1845), p. 1; Riant, "Les établissements latins de Jérusalem au X^e siècle," *Mem. de l'acad. d. inscrip.*, XXI, Part II, 151 f.; Lavisé, II, Part II, 81.

² Wattenbach, in *Deutschlands Geschichtsq.* (5th ed.), II, 217-23, has some admirable pages characterizing and summarizing the processes indicated in this paragraph. See also Flach, *Les origines de l'anc. France*, II, 431-579; Lavisé, II, Part II, 139-43 (bib.); Luchaire, *Manuel* (index); Guilhaume, *L'origine de la noblesse en France au moyen âge*; Garreau, *L'état social de la France au temps des croisades*, pp. 165-90. The close affiliation between Cluny and chivalry still is to be worked out.

³ Lamprecht, II, 327.

⁴ Hauck, III, 448 ff.

seems to have been without the religious sentiment of Henry II, in the main his ecclesiastical policy was sane and just.¹

Henry III, however, was distinctly a man of the high eleventh century, one deeply and sincerely religious. The argument of expediency was without force with him; his actions had to have a moral sanction as well. This religious earnestness pervaded the whole working of his government.² Henry III's marriage with Agnes of Poitiers, daughter of William V of Aquitaine,³ undoubtedly accented his attachment for things French and inclined him more than ever to be favorable to the Cluny reform, for Cluny had been founded by a duke of Aquitaine, and the house had ever taken interest in its history.

No medieval German ruler assumed the crown under more favorable conditions or exercised his authority with greater power than did Henry III. Of the six German duchies two only, Saxony and Lorraine, had independent dukes. The four others, Franconia, Swabia, Bavaria, and Carinthia were in the king's hands. From the Rhine to Moravia, from the Harz to the Brenta, Henry III was both duke and king. But unfortunately Henry III was less practical than his predecessors and of a more refined education, and fell under the charm of the priest class. The future was already determined when the emperor, without reservation, espoused the Cluny reform. He was betrayed from the beginning of his reign by those in whom he reposed confidence.⁴ His endeavor to put a stop to simony was more laudable than successful, for it chiefly diverted the revenues from appointment to church benefices from the treasury of the king into the pockets of his officials.⁵

¹ Voigt, pp. 3-8; Feierabend, p. 5.

² For estimates of the character of Henry III see Hauck, III, 572 f.; Nitzsch, II, 38-40; Gerdes, II, 119-21.

³ Henry III's French marriage irritated the German clergy (Hauck, III, 571; and letter of Siegfried of Gorze to Poppo of Stavelot in Giesebrecht, II, 702 [4th ed.]).

⁴ Bresslau, III, 271 f.; Waitz, VIII, 425; Francisz, *Der deutsche Episkopat in s. Verhaeltniss zu Kaiser und Reich unter Heinrich III* (Regensburg, 1878).

⁵ Henry III's sacrifice of the royal patronage financially embarrassed his government. He gave generously to the church, which already was perilously rich; the

In the synod of Constance, at the close of a successful campaign against the Hungarians, in gratitude for the victory, and perhaps sentimentally affected by the recent death of his mother, the emperor publicly pardoned all his enemies.¹ He petitioned Siegfried of Gorze, an austere reformer, to pray for him.² He wanted to make Richard of St. Vannes in Verdun, the Cluniac leader in Germany, a bishop. While the reform principles of Cluny appealed to his conscience, the Italian Camaldoli appealed to his religious emotion.³ He abandoned his father's unfinished and sensible plan for consolidated management of the royal abbeys.

Yet Henry III was not clay in the hands of the Cluniacs. His conception of his prerogative was perhaps even more theocratic than that of Charlemagne had been. He treated the papacy as he would a bishopric. Matters of faith were one field, politics was another.⁴ He was not afraid of collision with the Cluniacs and those bishops (and there were not a few at this time in Germany) who were tinctured with "reform," but he did not have the discernment to sense the danger in their opposition.

Meanwhile, the immense significance of the Cluniac movement in Italy had been perceived north of the Alps. In 1044 Henry promised the bishopric of Ravenna to a canon of Cologne named Widger, over the protest of a synod at Pavia. The new bishop was so rash as to celebrate mass without yet having received formal investiture from the emperor. For this breach he was summoned to the synod of Aachen, over which Henry III presided. But when Widger was brought forward for trial Wazo, archbishop of Liège, declared that the emperor had no authority to summon an Italian priest before

church at Goslar, for example, was given one-ninth of the income from the local crown lands. At one time Henry III was so cramped for funds that he was compelled to pawn the crown jewels (Waitz, VIII, 292).

¹ Hauck, III, 572.

² Giesebrecht, II, 718.

³ Pfister, p. 312; Hauck, III, 572. See W. Franke, *Romuald von Camaldoli und seine Reformtätigkeit zur Zeit Ottos III.*

⁴ Hauck, III, 577; Gebhard, I, 280.

a German ecclesiastical body, and that furthermore only the pope had the right to appoint bishops.¹ Italy, Lorraine, and the Flemish lands had struck hands and were all linked together in organized protest by the Cluny reform, now a regular political machine under papal direction. The emperor stood by his guns and deposed Widger, but it was a frontal attack upon the German monarchy. Two years later, when Henry offered the archbishopric of Lyons to Halinard, abbot of St. Benigne, the haughty abbot denied to the king's face his right of investiture and refused to do homage to him at the diet of Speyer in August, 1046.² This bold action was applauded by Richard of St. Vannes and the bishop of Toul, the future Leo IX.

But events far more significant than these soon happened in Italy. In 1045 there were three rival popes in Rome. To put an end to this scandal Henry III called a synod at Pavia. Peter Damieni, an enthusiastic admirer of the Holy Roman Empire, who had sustained Henry in the recent controversy over Widger,³ was inclined to favor Gregory VI, although he was alleged to have bought the papal office, because, as pope, he had openly pronounced against simony.⁴ The Emperor hesitated and called another synod at Sutri, where all three popes were deposed.⁵ When Adalbert of Bremen declined the

¹ Hauck, III, 578-79; Sackur, II, 284; Hegel, *Städteverfassung von Italien*, II, 230; Nitzsch, II, 42; Bresslau, I, 309.

² Sackur, II, 274-75.

³ *Ep.*, VII, 2.

⁴ Jaffé-Wattenbach, 4126, 4130.

⁵ A mystery still hangs over what happened at the synod of Sutri. Did Henry III depose Gregory VI, as he did the others, or did Gregory VI abdicate? According to Kroymer, *Hist. Vierteljahrschrift*, X, No. 2 (1907), Henry III intervened of his own initiative and called a synod at Pavia; Gregory VI came to find him at Piacenza; Henry then called a second synod where both Sylvester III and Gregory VI were deposed; a third synod at Rome deposed Benedict IX. There is ground to suspect that under Hildebrand's urgency the pope abdicated rather than to have the papacy humiliated by an overt act of deposition performed by the emperor. The act, in other words, was done to save the theory of pontifical authority. This action of self-sacrifice on the part of Gregory VI may have been the reason why Hildebrand, when made pope himself, took the name of Gregory, too, as a tribute to his friend. If true, it shows that Hildebrand was a master of intrigue or an ardent zealot of the "new" Clunism. See the interesting article by Sir Frederick Pollock,

honor,¹ Henry III chose the Bishop of Bamberg, who took the name of Clement II and crowned Henry emperor. The Cluniacs sullenly acquiesced, comforting themselves with the reflection that Clement II had also pronounced against simony. But when the new pope soon died and Henry appointed the Bishop of Brixen as Damasus II, and a few months later, on his decease, Bruno of Toul became Leo IX, the triple exhibition of imperial control of the Holy See was too much for the Cluniacs. The Bishop of Liège bluntly told the Emperor that he had no right to appoint the pope,² and in France an anonymous pamphlet was circulated against Henry.³

But the reform party quickly went from despair to elation. Henry III with his passionate idealism, his religious emotionalism, could not read men. Already he had naïvely appointed bishops imbued with Hildebrandine ideas to Italian sees.⁴ Now he little realized, when he gave the papal scepter to his uncle Bruno of Toul, that he was undermining his own

"The Pope Who Deposed Himself," *English Historical Review*, X, 123-24, and cf. Sackur, *Neues Archiv*, XXIV, 734 f. R. L. Poole has published a study entitled "Benedict IX and Gregory VI" (*Proceedings of the British Academy*, Vol. VIII). I have not seen the original article, but a review of it in the *English Historical Review* (April, 1918), pp. 278-79, states that "Mr. Poole shows that the usual version that there were three popes co-existing at the same time, whom the emperor Henry III had deposed in 1046, is a mere popular tale given out, he considers, by the imperial entourage, for Benedict IX had abdicated and the anti-pope Sylvester III (John bishop of the Sabina) had abandoned his claims. In fact, at Sutri the reigning pope Gregory VI was deposed for simony, and at Rome the ex-pope Benedict IX was also deposed, presumably because the validity of his abdication was considered doubtful. It would be a natural source of the tale of the three rival popes. . . . Mr. Poole further makes it probable that the Tusculan popes, though no model ecclesiastics, have been painted in over-dark colors; and gives an explanation of the descent of Gregory VI and his connection with Gregory VII which satisfactorily combines the available evidence."

The question whether a pope may designate his successor has been mooted by some modern historians. Hollweck, *Archiv. f. kath. Kirchenrecht*, LXXIV, Heft 3 (1895), 329, contends that Pius IV, Felix IV, and Boniface III did so, but admits that such instances are very exceptional. In the next volume (1896), Heft 3, Holder severely criticizes this position, and denies that the pope ever has had the right to designate his successor.

¹ *Adam of Bremen*, III, 7.

² *Gesta epp. Leod.*, II, 65.

³ *De ordine pontif.*; Hauck, III, 599; Sackur, II, 305, n. 2.

⁴ Hauck, III, 609.

throne, for Leo IX proved to be a devoted Cluniac.¹ From his pontificate (1049-54) dates the immense influence of Hildebrand,² with whom worked Halinard of Lyons, a notorious ultramontanist,³ Humbert, soon to be the author of a famous Cluniac tract, and a swarm of Lorrainer and Burgundian prelates.⁴

The Cluny reform betrayed the trust reposed in it by Henry III. Would it have been applied so vigorously without imperial support? In the synod of Sutri in 1046 the Emperor was more radical than the monks, than even Peter Damieni, who were willing to recognize the simoniacal Gregory VI. In the election of the popes the Emperor observed the ancient formalities of election by the clergy and people of Rome; he labored constantly not to offend public opinion and to please the orthodox party. He renounced the dignity of "patrician" at the instance of Victor II, and the gold ring which the Roman government regularly presented to each new emperor; he waived the imperial right to preside over the conference which elected the pope, together with the right of investiture of the pope. At the synod of Aachen (1046) Henry III interdicted simony and never practiced it himself. He encouraged Leo IX; gave him full liberty of action. He did not remove Archbishop Halinard of Lyons, although the Archbishop haughtily refused to take the oath of fidelity to the Emperor. No ruler since Charlemagne had exercised such great sway over the church as Henry III. But he was sincerely convinced that the church must be moral to render effective service.

Hitherto the popes had been accustomed to assign the presidency of synods to legates. But Leo IX traveled from country to country and personally inquired, examined, authorized.⁵ The keynote of the future was sounded at the

¹ *Ibid.*, III, 600; see Lamprecht's characterization, II, 308, and Drehmann, *Pabst Leo IX und die Simonie* (Berlin, 1908). Bernheim, *Hist. Ztschft.*, CII, No. 2, contests some of his points.

² *Ibid.*, III, p. 597, n. 1.

³ Steindorff, *Jahrbuch*, II, 54 n.

⁴ Sackur, II, 314-15.

⁵ Hauck, III, 601 and note.

synod of Rheims in October, 1049.¹ Three canons of that assembly were of great importance. The very first one read: "Ne quis sine electione cleri et populi ad regimen ecclesiasticum proberetur."² The second forbade the purchase and sale of altars, church offices, or churches. The third made it obligatory upon all bishops to enforce the canons of election and installation. Bishop after bishop came forward and made obeisance to the pope.³ From Rheims, Leo IX went to Mainz where he received like homage.⁴ The pope preached to the people in their own tongue, presided over the synod, and everywhere proclaimed the teachings of the Cluny reform. The changed relation between pope and emperor is significant. The pope was gradually and artfully edging the emperor out of his legal and traditional headship of state and church.⁵

The policy of Leo IX was new, yet not novel. It was a reassertion of the pretensions of Pope Nicholas I in the ninth century. The new Pope showed the nature of his ideas from the first, for even when still Bruno of Toul, he refused to assume the papal office until he had received confirmation of the Emperor's choice from the clergy and people of Rome. Yet Leo IX was not so uncompromising a reformer as to let principle always rule above policy. In the year after his election (1050) he did not hesitate to violate the principle of free election of bishops by the clergy in the case of the see of Nantes where he thrust in Airard, abbot of St. Paul's in Rome, without any regard for the local clergy. In the Council of Rheims, Leo IX emphatically asserted his position as

¹ Sackur, II, 322-23.

² Mansi, *Concilia*, Vol. XIX, cols. 796 f.; Bonizo rightly said of this legislation, "Haec gladium in viscera mersit inimici."

³ Hauck, III, 613. The pope and the emperor seem to have presided as co-equals at the synod of Mainz. It is significant that Ekkehard, *Chron.*, 1052, SS. III, 70, writes: "Magna sinodus congregata est in Mogontia, cui Leo papa et Henricus imperator praesidebant." Henry III at this time effected an exchange with the pope of a "complex" of crown lands in Lower Italy for some domains pertaining to the papacy in Germany (Steindorff, II, 216).

⁴ *Ibid.*, III, p. 615.

⁵ For extended demonstration of this statement see Hauck, III, 600-615, and Lübbersledt, *Die Stellung des deutschen Klerus auf päpstlichen Generalkonzilien von Leo IX bis Gregor VII (1049-1085)* (Greifswald diss., 1911).

head of the church, the universal spiritual sovereign, not only by proclaiming the apostolic supremacy of Rome, but also by summoning divers bishops, and even laymen, before the bar of the Council. The weakness of the French kings made Leo IX's ecclesiastical policy possible in France. The application of the same policy in Germany precipitated, with Gregory VII, a conflict that shook Christendom.¹

The immense moral prestige which the papacy acquired during the pontificate of Leo IX was not lost; the cumulative force of ideas and things carried the papacy forward and upward. The brief pontificate of Stephen IX saw some of the fruits of his predecessor's reign ripen. Through the clever manoeuvring of Hildebrand and Anselm of Lucca the new Pope qualified without the usual formality of securing imperial approval. This success was followed by the bold stroke of Nicholas II in establishing the College of Cardinals (1059) and thereby emancipating the papacy completely from any legal control by the imperial authority.² The minority of Henry IV, the weakness of the empress-mother Agnes, the feud between Anno of Cologne and Adalbert of Bremen, at this time compromised Germany to such a degree that the papacy could do such revolutionary things almost without protest.³ The provenience of these mid-century popes is instructive in this particular: Leo IX was an Alsatian, Stephen IX a native of Lorraine, Nicholas II a Burgundiun, Alexander II a Lombard. In these regions the Cluniac reform already had secured firm root.

¹ W. Bröcking, *Die französische Politik Papst Leos IX* (1891; 2d ed., 1899); cf. Hauck, III, 665 f.

² On the establishment of the College of Cardinals see Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrbuch*, I, 134 f.; Hefele, IV, 824 f.; Giesebrecht, *Münchener Jahrb.* (1866); Gustav Schober, *Das Wahldekret vom Jahre 1059* (Breslau diss., 1914). Heinemann, *HZ*, XXIX, No. 1, has shown that it was not the decree of 1059 which brought about the conflict between empire and papacy, for in January, 1059, the convention at Sutri had recognized the emperor's right as patrician of Rome and the decree of May, 1059, required imperial approval before papal enthronement. It was the decree of the Easter council in 1060 which permitted a pope elected outside of Rome to use the property of the church without having been enthroned that provoked the condemnation of Nicholas II and the protests of the imperialists. After the election of the antipope Clement IV the decree of Nicholas II was doctored by his partisans.

³ Hauck, III, 664.

The monasteries in the reign of Henry III had enjoyed a new lease of prosperity to which they had been strangers since Henry II's time. In addition to recovering the right to elect their abbots,¹ they were liberally endowed again, even acquiring once more considerable parcels of the lands of which Henry II and Conrad II had deprived them.² They were protected from the greed of the bishops.³ The monastic chroniclers are unanimous in testifying to the prosperity of the abbeys under Henry III.⁴

But the monks ill repaid the crown for its generous treatment of them. Henry III's work was ruined in advance, his deeply religious nature abused, the very monarchy betrayed. The Cluny reform which he so favored was at bottom insidiously destructive of secular government.⁵ The pro-Cluniac monks who surrounded Henry III were secretly hostile to the German theory of government of a strong church within a strong state and were determined to reverse the relation. What they artfully called the "confusion" of temporal and spiritual authorities was not so in point of fact, for law and order was the ideal of and permeated the whole dual system. But it was this very law and order which maddened the Cluniacs. The mere existence of any sovereignty except that of the papacy was their ground of feud.

The German kings claimed the right of control of the German church because the German church had freely accepted the conditions under which its prosperity had developed. The state contended that if the church wished to possess temporalities it should abide by the responsibilities those temporalities imposed. "You cannot exercise the sovereignty attached to proprietorship without recognizing as all possessors of the soil do, a suzerain above you, to whom you owe homage, fidelity and service; without receiving from him your lands and the rights which inhere in possession of

¹ Nitzsch, II, 54

² Bresslau, II, 138, n. 5; Feierabend, p. 6.

³ For example, the case of intervention in the feud between Herbert, bishop of Eichstädt, and the Abbot of Neuberg (Voigt, p. 15).

⁴ Voigt, p. 19.

⁵ Gerdes, II, 102.

them."¹ But a party had gradually grown up within the church which was eager to establish, not only ecclesiastical independence, but even ecclesiastical supremacy; which denied that the grants of the emperors had been made conditionally, or that the church had ever willingly entered into such a relation with the state. This party stigmatized all secular control of church offices as "simony," and found the readiest means to attain its end in a denial of the legality of lay investiture. This was the new teaching of the Cluny reform.² The war of investiture was at bottom a contest for control of church patronage, and the root of the whole matter was the temporalities of the church. The contest was fundamentally motivated by economic interest. Gregory VII and his successors strove to repudiate those feudal duties and obligations to both government and society which the church's possession of vast landed property naturally and legally entailed, and at the same time to keep the church's lands.³ This important fact is what Arnold of Brescia and Abelard, the two keenest thinkers of the age, perceived and bluntly said. At the same time they pointed out the remedy.⁴

¹ Reply of imperial partisans reported by Placidus of Nonantula, Pez, *Thesaurus anecdotorum*, II, Part II, 75; Gerhoh, *De statu ecclesial*, cap. 24. On the other hand, the episcopate would rather die than sacrifice their temporalities (Gerhoh, *ibid.*, caps. 22, 24; *Chron. Casinense*, cap. 37; *Muratori*, IV, 516). The church could not possess land without recognizing and staying in the feudal hierarchy. This is what the Concordat of Worms recognized. It was a deviation from the ideas of Gregory VII, a compromise. The opposition of the princes forced the pope's hand. See letter of Albert of Mainz to Calixtus II in Martène and Durand, *Amplissima Collectio*, I, 671). "Sed quia tam imperium quam imperator tamquam haereditario quodam jure baculum et annulum possidere volebant, pro quibus universa laicorum multitudo imperii nos destructores inclamabat."

² Hirsch, against the overwhelming evidence amassed by Mirbt, Hinschius, Dresdner, *et al.*, contends that this view was as old as the fourth century (*Archiv. f. Kathol. Kirchenrecht.*, LXXXVI, No. 1 [1906]).

³ Placidus of Nonantula (1070). "Quod semel ecclesiae datum est, in perpetuum Christi est nec aliquo modo alienari a possessione ecclesiae potest, in tantum ut etiam ipse fabricator ecclesiae, postquam eam Deo voverit et consecrari fecerit, in ea deinceps nullum jus habere possit" (*Lib. de hon. eccles.*, chap. vii; Hinschius, II, 628).

⁴ "[Arnaldus] dicebat enim, nec clericos proprietatem nec episcopos regalia nec monachos possessiones habentes aliqua ratione salvari posse. Cuncta haec principis

Arnold of Brescia was neither understood by church nor feudality. What his enemies called "political heresy" in him was nothing but the modern doctrine of national sovereignty.

Whatever the weight given to the influence in Gregory's mind of Augustinian ideas of a *Civitas Dei* on earth, whatever the arguments of papal legists and proponents, I am convinced that the papacy never would have attempted to translate these vague, abstract aspirations into actuality if the economic development of the church in Germany had not stimulated the papal ambition and created the opportunity. Naturally the popes kept this materialistic ambition in the background and forced the issue on other grounds. It used phrases like the "Rock of St. Peter" and the "Living Church" as clever watchwords in order to conceal its real purpose and to cover its conduct with the draperies of sanctity. But the real striving of the popes was for wealth and power, in the chief form in which wealth and power were embodied in the feudal age, namely, land.

It is a mistake, however, to think that as yet Hildebrand had complete control of the Cluniac party. There was a radical and a conservative wing in it, a left and a right.¹ Hildebrand, Cardinal Humbert, and the famous curialist Placidus of Nonantula, represented the extreme faction. Its position was that investiture was wholly an ecclesiastical act, and that the grace which was administered through the bishop's office must not be sullied by any form or degree of lay control. It contended that the feudal authority and the temporal functions of the bishop were merged within his episcopal nature, and that no differentiation could be made between them—a contention which was tantamount to depriving the state of all the enormous resources and political

esse, ab ejusque beneficentia in usum tantum laicorum cedere oportere. Preter haec de sacramento altaris, baptismo parvulorum non sane dicitur sensisse. . . . Nichil in dispositione Urbis ad Romanum pontificem spectare, sufficere sibi aecclesiasticum judicium debere" (Otto of Freising, *Gesta Friderici*, II, chap. xxviii).

¹ All the advocates of the two-sword theory came from France or Italy, not Germany, e.g., Bernard of Clairvaux, John of Salisbury, Godfrey of Vendome, Nicholas II, Gregory VII.

authority vested in the bishops by the emperors from Charlemagne down.¹

On the other hand, Cardinal Damieni was not so radical. He was a sincere admirer of the Holy Roman Empire and appreciated the debt which the church owed to the state. He distinguished between the purely ecclesiastical and the feudo-temporal nature of the bishop's office, and advocated a double coronation ceremony for the bishops, which would give simultaneous and just expression to the claims of both church and state. This is the germ of the idea which finally triumphed in the settlement at Worms in 1122.²

By the time of Hildebrand's ascendancy over the papacy, when the church began to pass from prelacy to papacy, the division of Cluny into two parties, an old and a new—or what I have just called a "right" and a "left"—amounted almost to a schism. The real Cluniac party was out of sympathy with the political designs of this radical minority.³ We are specifically told that Odilo⁴ sympathized with the work of Henry II and Conrad II in the reformation of the German

¹ Humbert was the author of the tract *Adversus simoniacos* (1059), which may be with right regarded as the opening gun of the Gregorian party. It is printed in the *Libelli de lite*, I, 95 f., and see comments of Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb.*, I, 104 f.; Hauck, III, 674 f.; Lamprecht, II, 317 f. There is a large literature on Cardinal Humbert, e.g., Halfmann, *Kardinal Humbert, sein Leben und seine Werke* (1882); Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, III, 19 f.; Meltzer, *Gregor VII u. d. Bischofswahl*, pp. 37 f.; A. Fliche, "Le cardinal Humbert de Moyenmoutier," *Revue Hist.*, CXIX, 41-76. On Placidus see Kayser, *Placidus von Nonantula: De honore ecclesiae, ein Beitrag zum Investiturstreit* (Kiel, 1888). His tract is in Migne, *Patrol. Lat.*, CLXIII, 613 f.

² Damieni argued that the act of royal investiture was only for the church lands and not for the office (*Ep.*, 13, cited by Bernheim, *Zur Geschichte d. Worms. Konkordates*, p. 4). See also Ficker in *Wiener Akad.*, 1872, p. 100, and Kayser, p. 11. Waitz, *DVG*, VIII, 433-51, has summarized the arguments and contentions of both parties. But any secular investiture opened the door to simony, for in investing with the temporalities the crown seemed also to control the spiritual authority attached to the office. How could the two be separated? Cf. *Gesta Trevorum Cont.*, sec. 11: "Artificiosi colore commenti simoniaceae haereseos sibi machina menta configunt, asserentes se non spiritualia, sed terrena terrenis acquirere." Pertz, VIII, 184.

³ Hauck, III, 864.

⁴ Odilo ordered the memory of Henry II to be regularly celebrated at Cluny (Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CXLII, 1038; *Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XXVI, 33, nn. 7, 8).

monasteries; that Henry III "loved him [Odilo] beyond measure and humbly adhered to his counsels."¹ Cluny had

regarded with sympathetic interest every intervention of the emperors for the reform of the church from the days of Otto I to Henry III. She had rejoiced at the purification of the papacy, at its gradual ascendancy over the noble families at Rome, and at the attempt of the reformed papacy to tighten the reigns of discipline over the bishop. . . . But further than this she was not prepared to go, and when the movement under Stephen IX turned from the reform of the church to its freedom the Cluniac held back. The anti-imperial bias of the new reform movement estranged his sympathies, and Cluny had perhaps stood too near to the emperors to get the proper perspective. When, therefore, the movement for the freedom of the church took new impetus under Gregory VII, and when the latter worked to set the church above all worldly and temporal powers, the reformed monasteries took neither a decided nor a unanimous stand for the papacy. . . . Against simony in the church and the marriage of priests Cluny cannot be shown to have been a pioneer. . . . For any organized campaign against either simony or the marriage of priests evidence is wanting. Silence reigns on both points in the *Lives*. . . . Dangerous as it may be to argue from silence, it is perhaps still more dangerous to maintain a theory which, with no other proofs, is built up in defiance of that silence. On this point we believe Kerker's judgment to be sound,² while Hauck cites William of Dijon's zeal against simony as in striking contrast with the attitude of the other Cluniacs.³

The original Cluny reform was designed to purge the monasteries and to establish a new life within them. It was indifferent to the condition of the secular clergy and held aloof from them, frowning upon those members of the order who were persuaded to accept episcopal appointments.⁴ Otherwise than this Cluny was chiefly interested in promoting the Truce of God, pilgrimages, and church-building.⁵

¹ "Qui supra modum eum diligebat, illiusque consiliis humiliter adherebat" (*Vita*, II, 12).

² *William der Selige* (1863), p. 109.

³ The quotation is from L. M. Smith, "Cluny and Gregory VII," *Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XXVI, 25-26.

⁴ Miss Mary Bateson says (*Eng. Hist. Rev.*, X, 140) that Odilo "had a strong desire to be himself a leader or general of an army of monks."

⁵ Mansi, XIX, 593; Pfister, pp. 164-73, 266. The influence of chivalry upon Cluny is very interesting. This fact is the pith of the satire of Adalberon, bishop of Laon (in Bouquet, X, 65), who attacked the military conception of monasticism in a

Even when the radical Hildebrandines captured the reform and twisted it to the ends of papal supremacy, Hugh of Cluny, although impotent to check the new tide, remained a conservative. Gregory VII reproached him for his indifference in the war of investiture.¹ Hugh was godfather to Henry IV and finally, according to Berthold the annalist, was excommunicated for his loyalty to the Emperor,² and when Henry IV was put under the papal ban the monks of Cluny prayed for him.³ At the conference at Tribur and Oppenheim, Hugh was with the Emperor and did his best to mitigate the verdict.

The real originator of the "new" Clunyism, i.e., the movement to abolish lay investiture in order to elevate the papacy over the state, was Wazo of Liège. But with political Clunyism the conservatives of the order had no sympathy. Peter Damieni was an admirer of the Holy Roman Empire; the *Lives* of Majolus and of Odilo emphasize respect for secular authority and secular dignitaries.⁴ To Abbo of Fleury "ascendancy of the crown over both worldly and spiritual

fable which Miss Bateson has paraphrased, telling "how a doubt having arisen in a monastery as to the interpretation of contradictory precepts, the bishop considered the matter and sent one of the monks to Odilo for advice. He returned in the evening mounted on a foaming steed. The bishop could scarcely recognize him. He wore a bearskin on his head, his gown was cut short and divided behind and before to make riding easier. In his embroidered military belt he carried bow and quiver, hammer and tongs, a sword, a flint and steel, and an oaken club. He wore wide breeches, and as his spurs were very long he had to walk on tiptoe. The bishop asked: 'Are you my monk whom I sent out?' He answered: 'Sometime monk, but now a knight. I here offer military service at the command of my sovereign who is King Odilo of Cluny'" (*Eng. Hist. Rev.*, X, 140). See further: Hückel, "Les poèmes satiriques d'Aldeberon," *Bib. de la faculté des lettres de Paris*, fasc. xiii (1901). For the influence of Cluny on pilgrimages see Pfister, pp. 344 f.

¹ Jaffé, II, 81; *Reg.*, I, 62, p. 81; VI, 17, p. 351; VIII, 2 and 3, p. 429. Cited by Smith in *Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XXVI, 29. Hugh of Cluny (1024-1109) was a French feudal noble, cf. A. L'Huillier, *Vie de St. Hugues, abbé de Cluny* (Paris, 1888).

² Berthold, *Annal.*, p. 289; for Hugh's activity in favor of Henry IV, Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (ed. Holder Egger), pp. 290, 294.

³ D'Achery, *Spicilegium* (ed. 1723), III, 426. "Neque tamen debita poenitentia errorum cognitum emendavit" (letter of Halinard of Lyons to Countess Matilda).

⁴ *Vita Majoli*, I, 7; *Vita Odilonis*, I, 7.

dignities was the foundation of all public laws.”¹ Majolus’ refusal of the papacy when it was proffered him by Otto II “showed no consciousness that such power of choice did not lie with the emperor.”² Imperialistic Clunyism was born in Rome, not in France. The unapprehended thought of Wazo and Cardinal Humbert was seized by the mind of Hildebrand, who, as Pope Gregory VII, converted it into a thunderbolt: “Man darf geradezu sagen dass eine Parteibildung überhaupt nur von Rom ausgehen konnte.”³ It has been well said that “the century which is called the century of Gregory VII, with much better reason might be called the age of Cluny. For it was only because he was the greatest of the Cluniacs that Gregory became the greatest of the popes.”⁴

For six successive pontificates, from that of Leo IX to his own ascension of the throne of the Fisherman in 1073, Hildebrand was the power behind the papal chair. During that period the Cluny reform had become an organized and formidable propaganda directed by the Holy See; the creation of the College of Cardinals had emancipated the papacy from secular interference; papal power in Europe had been consolidated, especially through the creation of the papal legates;⁵ the financial resources of the popes had materially in-

¹ Smith, “Cluny and Gregory VII,” *Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XXVI, 23; cf. Sackur, II, 305. Duke William of Aquitaine broke up the synod of Poitiers in 1078, though a papal legate was present (Mansi, XX, 495). Mr. Smith rightly says that “the Cluniacs do not seem to have preached any special doctrine as to the papal power.”

² *Ibid.*

³ Hauck, III, 515; cf. Grützmacher, *Realencyclopädie für protestantische Theologie*, XIII, 183. Wazo enjoyed high repute in Flanders and the Rhinelands as a canonist, and it is to be remembered that Hildebrand had once studied at Cologne.

⁴ Dehio and Bezold, *Gesch. der christl. Baukunst im Mittelalter*, I, 387.

⁵ Engelmann, *Die päpstlichen Legaten in Deutschland bis zur Mitte des 11. Jahrhunderts* (Marburg, 1913). For other literature on the institution of the papal legates see Werminghoff, p. 205. Gregory VII’s legates were nearly all radical Cluniacs, as Hugh the Venerable, with whom Gregory continually consulted (*Vita St. Gregor.*, *AASS*, Bolland., May, VI, 115; *Reg. Greg. VII*, 6; Labbé, *Concil.*, VI, 17); Odo and Gérard, priors of Cluny (*Reg. Greg.*, I, chap. lxii); Hugh, the prior of St. Marcel de Châlons, who suspended the archbishops of Rheims, Tours, Bourges, and Besançon and convoked no less than ten synods or councils (Hug Flav, *Chron.*, p. 194; Bertbold, *Annal.*, anno 1078); Simon of Valois, abbot-prior of La Chaise-Dieu and later of St. Benigne, who was Gregory’s ambassador to Robert Guiscard (Hug Flav,

creased, both through extension and through improved methods of collection; the States of the Church were solidly buttressed on either hand by the establishment of papal suzerainty over the kingdom of Norman Italy, and the close alliance effected between the papacy and Countess Matilda of Tuscany, a strong papal partisan and ruler of the most extensive and compact territory north of the Norman kingdom.

In Hildebrand's brain were blended a huge ideal and a practical, vivid political program.¹ There was nothing vague or indefinite about either. Using the current feudal conceptions of the time he held that God was supreme suzerain of the world, that the pope was God's vicar and vassal, that every secular authority, every state, was to be held within the overlordship of the pope, that national governments were not rightfully independent sovereignties, but *imperia in imperio*, that the church was both a political and an ecclesiastical empire as wide as Christendom and as high as heaven. He claimed all Italy, with Corsica and Sardinia, as the "States of the Church" in virtue of the alleged donation of Constantine; that "Spain belonged of old to St. Peter," and that this right had never been lost, although the land

Chron., p. 229); Bernard of St. Victor in Marseilles, legate in Spain and Germany, where he presided over the diet of Forchheim which deposed Henry IV, and was papal agent among the revolted Saxons (Berthold, *Annal. annis* 1078-79; *Epp. Greg.*, VII, 15); Richard, a brother of Bernard of St. Victor, who also served in Spain. "His [Gregory VII's] chief means were synods held by the pope [this was begun by Leo IX] and new ecclesiastical law books. The nephew of pope Alexander II, Anselm of Lucca, became the founder of the new Gregorian church law, this being effected by him partly by making apt use of that Pseudo-Isidore, and partly by a new set of fictions, e.g., episcopacy everywhere originated from Peter, and forgeries. He was followed by Deusdedit, Bonizo, and cardinal Gregorius. Deusdedit formulated the new principle that contradictions in the traditional church law must always be harmonized by letting, not the older but the *greater* authority, that is, the dictum of the pope, cancel the opposite view. . . . A sentence of his [Augustine's] was so manipulated that it came to mean that the papal letters stood on a level with canonical scripture," Harnack, *Hist. of Dogma*, VI, 18 n.

¹ Hermann Sielaff, *Studien über Gregors VII Gesinnung und Verhalten gegen König Heinrich IV in den Jahren 1073-80* (Greifswald, 1910).

The question of the genuineness of the *Dictatus Papae* attributed to Gregory VII has given rise to a large amount of critical literature. As far back as the eighteenth century Fleury declared it apocryphal; Voigt thought it the composition of a papal partisan; Giesebrecht, who examined the original manuscript in the Vatican archives, discovered no trace of interpolation, found the spirit of the document in

had been occupied by the infidel;¹ that Hungary belonged to the Roman church by gift of King Stephen; that Charlemagne had given Saxony to the Holy See; that "the empire is a fief of Rome."

With less pretension and more concreteness Gregory VII tried to convert the conferring of the bishop's pallium and his episcopal oath into an act of homage and oath of vassalage to the pope as the bishop's immediate overlord. Except the requirement of celibacy, no demand of Gregory so stirred the opposition of the bishops, for it outraged their national sentiments as well as impugned their long-established political attachment to the emperor.

The most practical and the most successful of Gregory VII's reforms were in the fields of church finance and

harmony with Gregory's ideas and practices, and declared it to be of Gregory VII's own authorship; Rocquain, *Bib. de l'école d. chartes* (1872), pp. 378-85, from resemblance between passages in the *Dictatus* and in *Pseudo-Isidor*, thinks it a collection designed to reflect Gregory VII's ideas and known to him. Did Gregory believe the *Pseudo-Isidor* to be genuine?

¹ The popular spirit with regard to encroachments of Rome in Spain is well illustrated in the *Romancero del Cid* when that doughty warrior urges his sovereign to defy the pope who had just decided that Spain was subject to the Holy Roman Empire.

"Enviad vuesto mensaje
Al Papa, y a su valia,
Ya todas desafiad
De vuesa parte y la mia"

(cf. Lea, *Studies in Church History*, p. 406).

² Jaffé, *Reg. Greg.*, IV, 2, p. 241; *Monumenta Gregoriana*, II, 457, 461 f. For Gregory VII's demand of homage from William the Conqueror see Brook, *Eng. Hist. Rev.* (April, 1911). Weiland, *Ztschft. f. Kirchenrecht* (N.F., 1882), III, Heft 3, prints the letter of Gregory to O'Brien, the Irish chieftain. The question of the genuineness of the registers of Gregory VII has been the subject of new historical examination in recent years. Peitz, *Mitteil. d. Inst. f. oesterr. Gesch.*, XXXIII, Heft 1 (1912), declares that the Vatican example is the original register and was the work of Rainerus, the papal notary. He has attempted to apply the same method of demonstration with less success to the registers of Innocent III and Honorius III (cf. Casper, *Neues Archiv*, XXXVIII, No. 1 [1913]). Pflugk-Harttung, *Neues Archiv*, VIII, 2, finds proof that there was another copy of the register besides that preserved in a collection of canons of Deusdedit in Vatican MS 3833, written in the twelfth century. For imperialists like Wenrich of Treves, Hugh de Fleury, and Sigebert of Gembloux, the state was of divine origin. For the papalists it was of the devil (Mirbt, *Die Publizistik*, pp. 545-46). Gregory VII compared the papacy to the sun, imperial authority to the moon. The glossators calculated mathematically the papacy was

codification of the canon law. Gregory VII's achievements in the field of finance testify to his administrative capacity and the essentially material nature of his aims and projects.¹ Ever since the ninth century, owing to the violence and insecurity of the feudal régime, it had been the practice of weaker proprietors to commend themselves to the stronger; sometimes the latter were bishops or abbots. But many churches and monasteries, in order to protect themselves from feudal spoliation, gradually fell into the way of putting themselves under the patronage of the papacy. Through this practice the pope often became the eminent proprietor of lands of churches and monasteries widely scattered in Europe. These foundations, thus liberated from any other human control, lay or clerical, and protected against spoliation by apostolic anathema, recognized this protection by paying an annual sum (*cens*) into the papal treasury.² Under various forms the papal patronage was spread over hundreds of churches and monasteries in Germany, France, and Italy. Gregory VII saw in the practice both a means to extend his authority and a means to reduce the power of the bishops, and a lucrative source of papal revenue as well, and so widely extended the system. Not only ecclesiastical establishments, but private nobles and even towns appeared upon the revenue rolls of the papacy as "wards" paying for papal protection. The pope thus became, as has been justly said, "a veritable suzerain, to whom both homage and money service was due." If we add to these resources the sums derived from the Peter's Pence, from administrative fees of many sorts, and from the *Patrimonium Petri*, it is evident that not for nothing had

47 times greater than the empire. One Laurentius rectified the "error" and found that the papacy was 1,744 times greater than the empire (Gieseler, *Kirchengesch.*, II, 2, sec. 54, n. D). In the sixteenth century Bodin ridiculed this calculation and by pretended use of Arabic and Ptolemaic formulas declared that the papacy was 6,645 $\frac{1}{2}$ times greater than the empire (*De la république*, Book I, chap. ix).

¹ W. Schneider, *Papst Gregor VII und das Kirchengut* (Greifswald diss., 1919).

² P. Sander, *Der Kampf Heinrichs IV und Gregors VII von der zweiten Exkommunikation des Königs bis zu seiner Kaiserkrönung* (Berlin, 1883), pp. 113-14, shows the bad condition of the papal finances under Gregory VII and his desperate

Hildebrand been *oeconomicus* of the Roman church before his elevation to the pontificate.¹

It is difficult for a modern scholar accurately to evaluate the motives and practices of the Cluny reform and to do justice simultaneously to both state and church. On the one hand, one must guard against judging the history of the eleventh century by the standards and practices of the twentieth; on the other hand, it requires an effort of the historical imagination to appreciate the theories and to visualize the conditions which then prevailed.

Only an ignorant or a prejudiced man will pronounce a harsh or bitter judgment either way in this momentous controversy. There is much to be said—and much to be forgiven—on each side. We must discount the raucous, propagandistic, polemical literature which each party circulated. Each side had its rights and its wrongs, its wise men and its stupid, its strong and its weak, its good and its evil men. What Sir Gilbert Murray, quoting Geffcken, has written of the conflict between paganism and Christianity in the fourth century may be said of the struggle between pope and emperor in the eleventh and twelfth centuries: “Dieselbe Seelenstimmung, derselbe Spiritualismus.”

It may be premised, however, that the absolute and complete separation of church and state was an impossibility in the feudal age. Granting this, there were two alternative courses open: (1) to define the sphere of authority of each in such a way as to give simultaneous and due expression to the sovereignty of each without jeopardy to the other by the

need of money. Schulte, *Der Adel*, etc., pp. 212–20, shows the zeal of the “reform” monasteries for papal protection in the large number of forged charters which they fabricated. *Per contra*, the anti-reform abbeys forged charters to prove that their lands pertained to the imperial fisc. “Reichenau war eine Schmiede, in der nicht allein für das eigene Kloster, sondern auch für andere geeignete Urkunden fabriziert wurden” (p. 212).

¹ See on this subject Waitz, VII, 218–20; Schreiber, I, 9 f.; II, 463 f.; Werminghoff, p. 70, n. 4, pp. 184–85; Blumenstock, *Der päpstliche Schutz im Mittelalter* (Innsbruck, 1890); Hauck, III, 865 f.; Scheffer-Boichorst, *Mitteil.*, XIV, No. 4. Hinschius’ criticism of Blumenstock called forth a reply in *Ztschft. f. Kirchengesch.* (Ser. 3, 1893), III, Heft 2. The fullest account in French of the origin and nature of the papal protection is Daux, *La protection apostolique au moyen âge*. See a review in *RQH*, LXXII, 5–60.

determination of the reserved or particular rights of each, and at the same time to provide for enough articulation between the two in order to enable them to function together by specific delegation and concurrent jurisdiction; (2) failing the establishment of the coequality of each in separate spheres, the other alternative was either the supremacy of state over church or that of church over state.¹

It may be objected that the first solution was incompatible with the Germanic form of government created by the Saxon and continued by the Salian emperors. This is probably true. But there are clear indications that such a solution was possible. The reigns of Henry II and Henry III had shown that the political functioning of the church did not necessarily exclude its spiritual working. The church, i.e., the radical wing of the Cluny reform which dominated it after 1049, was really the uncompromising party. For it was resolutely bent upon achieving the supremacy of the papacy over both church and state.

The just and reasonable remedy, if the church chafed under its relation to the state, would have been for the church to renounce its feudal possessions and its feudal rights and privileges—feudal lands, countships, coinage, and market grants, octrois, regalian perquisites in general—and to be content with its allodial lands, which were of vast extent in themselves. Radical as this solution would have been in the feudal age, it was thought of and suggested. The imperial government was willing to make the performance, but the church was too rich to make the sacrifice. It was determined to keep its lands and privileges, but to repudiate the obligations to the state which it had assumed with their possession—a policy little less than robbery under the guise of religion. Firmly resolved upon this course from the time of Hildebrand's ascendancy at Rome, there was only one way for the church to attain its ends, namely, to establish its sover-

¹ The papalists argued that investiture was a mark of dependence. Pascal II, Ep. 3 *ad Anselm*, Mansi XX, 982: "Si virgam pastoralitatis signum, si annulum fidei signaculum tradit laica manus, quid in ecclesia pontifices agunt?" and if maintained, the church would become a fief and a fief more dependent than a secular one, for the latter had the guaranty of hereditability while celibacy opened the

eighty over the state.¹ When the state resisted, the church went to the length of seeking to destroy the state, to dissolve the historical and legal bonds which centuries had developed, by organizing rebellion and creating anarchy. In a word, the policy of the Gregorian church was a rule or ruin one. It was a policy of no compromise, not even shrinking from the annihilation of civil society.²

The struggle between the medieval empire and the papacy, some of the history of which has been anticipated in the preceding paragraphs in order to show the nature of it, began openly at the death of Henry III in 1056. The Hildebrandine party, already in league with the Pataria³ and the Lombard nobility, had also effected an alliance with the

door to free disposal of church offices when vacant by the nobles. The only remedy was prohibition altogether of lay investiture in spite of the fact that it was a revolution, although Gregory VII denied the utter novelty of it (*Ep.*, V, 5).

¹ Sigebert of Gembloux, the most distinguished man of letters who advocated the cause of Henry IV, strongly inveighed against the Gregorian theory of temporal supremacy and said it was heresy (Pertz, VI, 366). He also (p. 362) affirmed that compulsory celibacy of the clergy was heresy.

² "The piety of the Carolings and the Saxons brought a nemesis in the end, for one of the main agents in the downfall of the mediaeval empire was the territorial ambition of the princes of the church" (Fisher, I, 81). Helmold, *Chron. Slavorum*, I, 4, says the German bishops were "princes of earth instead of heaven." Cf. Nitzsch, I, 390; Waitz, VII, 202-3. There is enormous significance in the words of Theoderich, *De reb. Norv.*, chap. v (Langebek, *Scriptores rerum Danicarum*, V, 316), speaking of the policy of Otto II: "Iste est . . . qui ecclesiam omnemque clerum plus honorabat et pene plus ditabat quam expediret, subdendo ei pheodatos duces et comites. Nam ex opulencia nata postea insolentia, ut usque hodieque est cernere. Unde et illi, ut in Romana historia reperitur, ab angelo est dictum: 'Venenum addidisti ecclesie.'" Cf. also Gerhoh, *De aedif. Dei*, chap. ix, on whom see Fisher, *Mediaeval Empire*, II, 117-19. The *Dictatus Papae*, sec. 27, had theoretically formulated the principle that the pope could dissolve the secular organization of society: "That he [the pope] may absolve subjects from their oath of fidelity to wicked rulers." Gregory VII gave it practical application in the first deposition and banning of Henry IV in 1076, which threw Germany into the throes of a long civil war. How revolutionary the decretalists thought Gregory VII's policy to be is shown by the fact that Ivo and Gratian lay down the doctrine that obedience to the secular authority is commanded by God, even when that authority is in the hands of an unbeliever" (Carlyle, *Political Theory of the Middle Ages*, II, 146-47). Ivo of Chartres, *Decretum*, V, 7: "Julianus exstitit infidelis imperator, nonne exstitit apostata, iniquis idolatra?"

³ On the Pataria see Previte-Orton, *House of Savoy*, pp. 223, 227, 230-31, 255; Mirbt, *Die Publizistik*, pp. 447 f.; Wattendorf, *Papst Stephen*, IX (1883).

feudality of Western and Southern Germany. "Reform" was the vehicle for expression of the enmity of the German dukes toward the crown. Feudalism and the papacy were leagued together. There is deep significance in the fact that the Lotharingian Humbert had been a teacher of Hildebrand.¹

The chief seat of the movement was Lorraine, the most refractory of all the feudal principalities in Germany. In the time of Otto I the duke Gilbert had coquetted with France and the archbishop Frederick of Mainz who had so resisted Otto's church policy. Under Otto II, Otto III, Henry II, and Conrad II, there had been new plots for French intervention vaguely identified with the French reform movement. But with Henry III the compact between the feudal elements in Lorraine and the Hildebrandine "reform" became close. The whole rule of the German kings over the lands in the valleys of the Rhine, the Meuse, and the Moselle was challenged. Most of the religious houses in this vast region were peopled with offspring of the local feudal families, and Henry III had been unwise enough to permit the bishoprics of Lorraine to be filled with representatives of this local aristocracy, thus letting the strongest instrument of his government of Lorraine, the episcopate, slip out of his hand. Hermann II of Cologne was made arch-chancellor of the apostolic see; Bruno of Toul became Pope Leo IX.² The feudal aristocracy of Lorraine, and the bishops, most of whom were of noble birth, combined their political aspirations with the Cluny reform and worked together against the monarchy. The identification of the Cluny reform in Germany with the elements and forces of feudal particularism and revolt is plain. The abbey of St. Vannes in Verdun quadrupled its landed wealth in certain years owing to the generosity of the nobles of Lorraine.

This double feudal and "reform" tendency was incarnated in the person of Duke Godfrey of Upper Lorraine, a

¹Cf. K. Hampe, *Wissenschaftliche Forschungsberichte* (Gotha, 1922), p. 64.

²Hauck, III, 482 f.; Sackur, II, 152 f.; Gerdes, II, 519 f. Lambert of Hersfeld (*anno* 1071, ed. Holder-Egger), p. 133, clearly shows the intimate relation subsisting between the high German feudality and the Cluny reform, "... principes regni ad instituendam in Galliis divini servicii scolam Transalpinos monachos evocabant, nostrates autem, quicumque in illorum instituta ultro concedere noluissent, de monasteriis cum ignominia eiciebant."

redoubtable warrior and a born adventurer, who was descended from the ancient counts of Verdun.¹ Expelled from his duchy by Henry III,² who awoke too late to the danger of the situation in Lorraine, Godfrey, in 1051, wandered over the Alps to Italy, where he captivated Beatrice, the widowed Marchioness of Tuscany, whose daughter was the great Countess Matilda, and married her.³ Thus the string of border states along the French edge of the Empire clear to Rome was bound together in a papal-feudal association between 1046-55 against the German monarchy.⁴ Yet Henry III's eyes were so sealed to the real import of things that on his deathbed he commended Empress Agnes and the little Henry IV to Godfrey's care.⁵ The ramifications of the Hildebrandine-Lorraine intrigue even penetrated into Bavaria in Henry III's reign. In 1042 Henry, son of Count Frederick of Luxemburg (who was also vogt of St. Maximin in Trier), was made duke of Bavaria by Henry III, who gave it out thus instead of holding it in the hands of the crown as he should have done. Thus the feudo-papal program became identified with Bavarian sentiments of ducal autonomy also.⁶

Meanwhile, in Lombardy, the Pataria, to which allusion has been made, had also become a formidable movement of opposition, and it is necessary briefly to relate the origin and purposes of this party. The organized sale of church offices in Milan was of long standing. The higher clergy were married into the chief families, the rest according to their position in the social scale. The government of the church in Lombardy formed a hierarchic and social oligarchy. It was manifest to those who were discontented with this condition of things that the imposition of celibacy would go far to break this combination.

¹ Petr. Dam., *Epp.*, VII, 10, SS. XI, p. 450; *Triumph. Remacii*, I, 11, *Ibid.*, p. 443; Leo Ostiens, *Chron. Cass.*, xi, 97.

² For the emperor's drastic discipline of Godfrey see Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales*, 1046. Freeman, *Norman Conquest* (2d. ed.), Vol. II, Appendix O, has a vivid account.

³ Dupréel, *Hist. crit. de Godfrey le Barbu*, pp. 59 f.

⁴ Nitzsch, II, 47-48.

⁵ Lamprecht, II, 266.

⁶ Gerdes, II, 68.

The agitation was started by a former collegiate priest of the see of Milan named Anselm da Baggio, whom Henry III had made bishop of Lucca, and who speedily developed into a passionate reformer. He found able coadjutors in the person of Ariald, a deacon of the church of Milan and a clerk in orders named Landulf. The three agitators soon formed a party among the discontented lower clergy, many of whom were hedge-priests without fixed livings. But the movement soon became more formidable. While Landulf harangued the rabble in the towns, Ariald journeyed through the country districts rousing the rustic population against the rural clergy. In the countryside the Pataria became an agrarian revolution. The most violent invective was indulged in, and from verbal abuse matters soon passed to rioting and mob violence against all married clergy. Religious fanaticism, social prejudice, and economic envy of those who were well-to-do or rich were united in a seething leaven of discontent. The most radical among the Patarines went so far as to deny the right of private ownership of property.

Thus both north and south of the Alps manifold forces of opposition to the existing order of things were in a condition of violent unrest, and drifting into co-operation or combination together.

The death of Henry III in 1056 was the signal for open attack of the papal opposition upon the German monarchy. The accession of Stephen IX, a brother of Godfrey of Lorraine and formerly a monk in Verdun, to the papal throne in 1057 was contrived by Hildebrand, the cardinal-abbot of Monte Cassino, and Godfrey himself. Its effect was definitely to sever the Holy See from imperial control. The imperial authority was not even consulted.¹

This action was followed by the creation of the College of Cardinals in 1059 by Nicholas II, which permanently excluded German influence in papal elections. In spite of the guarded phraseology of this decree, it was a declaration of war upon the imperial authority.² In the same year Cardinal

¹ Hauck, III, 680; Lamprecht, II, 319.

² "Salvo debito honore et reverentia dilecti filii nostri Henrici, qui in praesentia rex habetur et futurus imperator, Deo concedente, speratur" (Labbé, *Concil.*,

Humbert issued the famous tract *Contra simoniacos*.¹ At once a storm of indignation arose in Germany. Anselm of Lucca, Hildebrand's agent with him in effecting the papal alliance with the Pataria, was refused a hearing at a German synod in December, 1059, where Hildebrand and Nicholas II were both excommunicated by the irate German bishops.² In the next spring the Lorrainer cardinal Stephen was refused audience by the imperial court, and after waiting five days returned to Rome.³ In 1061 the German bishops condemned the Lateran decree, erased the name of Nicholas II from the list of popes, and declared his decisions null and void.⁴

From such tension to open rupture between the German church and Rome was a matter of a short time. The Lombard bishops, who both detested and feared the growing influence

XII, 50; Hauck, III, 683 f.). Nicholas II was archbishop of Florence, but French-Burgundian by birth. It is to be remembered that Florence was in the center of the Tuscan territory of Godfrey of Lorraine. Panzer, *Ztschft. f. Kirchenrecht*, XXII, Heft 3-4 (1889), has a critical article upon the decree of Nicholas II in 1059, and his encyclical *Vigilantia universalis*. According to him, 125 bishops were in the conclave which debated the question of the creation of the College of Cardinals. The decree promulgated by Nicholas II in 1059 is not identical with the provisions made in the encyclical of 1060. The latter is silent as to the right of the emperor to exert any control over the election of the pope, but the imperial right is not formally denied. The silence was deliberately planned in order to make neglect of the imperial right "convenient" when desirable. Pflugk-Harttung, *Mitt. d. Inst.*, XXVII, 1 (1906), thinks neither version reliable and both "redacted."

L. von Heinemann, *Hist. Ztschft.*, XXIX, Heft 1, argues that the decree of 1059 did not force the issue between empire and papacy, since in January, 1059, the synod of Sutri had recognized the emperor's prerogative as "patrician" and the May decree provided for imperial confirmation before the pope was enthroned. It was the decree of the Easter council in 1060, Heinemann contends, which permitted a pope, though named outside of Rome and before enthronement, to use the property of the church, that provoked the condemnation of Nicholas II, and called for the imperial protest. After the election of the anti-pope Clement IV the decree of Nicholas II was falsified by the Hildebrandines. For additional bibliography relating to the history of the origin of the College of Cardinals see Delarc, "Le pontificat de Nicolas II," *RQH*, XL, 361 n.

¹ Halfmann, *Cardinal Humbert, sein Leben und seine Werke* (Göttingen, 1883).

² Hefele, VI, 404.

³ Petr. Dam., *Disc. synod.*, p. 88; Scheffer-Boichorst, *Mitteil. des Institut.*, XIII, 125.

⁴ Deusdedit, *Contra Invasor.*, cap. ii; Mirbt, *Libelli de lite*, II, 309; Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb.*, I, 285.

of the Pataria, especially since its union with Rome, vainly urged the Empress to appoint Cadalus, bishop of Parma, a well-known opponent of the "new Clunyism," to the papal office.¹ Hildebrand countered with his friend Anselm of Lucca, who was elected by the cardinals as Alexander II,² and in order to thwart the possibility of imperial intervention summoned the Norman chief Richard of Aversa to Rome, with whom he had had an interview some years before at Melfi, under the shadow of whose soldiery Alexander II was elected.³

The German party was more alarmed than ever. In October, 1061, the German and Lombard bishops (most of whom, it should be remembered, were either German or German sympathizers) met at Basel, proclaimed young Henry IV "patrician" of the Romans, and, in order to rebuke the Hildebrandine party, elected Cadalus of Parma, a bitter enemy of Hildebrand, to be pope under the name of Honorius II.⁴ For the next ten years a war of the partisans racked Northern Italy. The empire was powerless to interfere, and most of the German bishops were too busy grinding their own axes at home to give attention to things beyond the Alps.⁵ Hildebrand was not yet quite ready to carry the war overtly into the German kingdom, but was soon to do so.

In the meantime, Germany was sown and watered with the "new Clunyism." No attentive student of the history of the war of investiture can fail to be impressed with the conjuncture of circumstances in the middle of the eleventh century. The years between 1056, when Henry III died and the minority succession of Henry IV ensued, and 1075, when Hildebrand, as Pope Gregory VII, opened the great struggle, saw the development of conditions which profoundly affected the history of both empire and papacy.

¹ Petr. Dam., *Epp.*, I, 20, p. 242; Leo Ostiens, *Chron. Cass.*, III, 19; Benzo, VII, 2.

² Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb.*, I, 669 f.

³ Hauck, III, 704; Leo Ostiens, *Chron. Cass.*, III, 19; Benzo, *ibid.*

⁴ Hauck, III, 705-6.

⁵ For the unimportant details of this schismatic conflict see Hauck, III, 717 f.; Giesebrecht, III, 80 f.

The rapid growth of the order of Cluny in Germany during the minority of Henry IV is not merely interesting; it was ominous for the future.¹ In this process the regent-mother Agnes was an unwitting tool in the hands of Anno, the crafty archbishop of Cologne. Already a patroness of the Italian Cluniac foundation at Fructuaria, in 1060 she colonized a group of Italian Cluniacs from Fontello in the old monastery of St. Blasien in the Schwarzwald.² In 1066 Anno colonized Sigeberg and St. Pantaleon near Cologne with Piedmontese monks, and in 1071 expelled the Benedictines from Saalfeld and Grafschaft and filled their places with Lorrainer and Burgundian monks.³ By 1075 the influx of French and Italian monks into Germany seemed like an invasion. Lambert of Hersfeld gives a glowing account of this migration of "transalpinos monachos" from Cluny, from Gorze, from Fructuaria, and rejoices in the discomfiture and exile of the Benedictines, who fled the cloisters, often taking the treasure and vessels of the monasteries as spoil with them.⁴

The shining product of this revolution—for it amounted to that—was the monastery of Hirsau in the Black Forest. Founded in the ninth century by Louis the Pious, it had long

¹ Upon this significant sympathy of the German feudality for the Cluny reform see Hauck, III, 490 f.; Gerdes, II, 369-70 and notes, 519 f.; *Chron. Hirsaug.* (1099); Lambert of Hersfeld (*anno* 1071); *Chron. S. Blas.* (1091), SS. V, 452.

² Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb.*, I, 280.

³ *Vita Annonis*, chaps. xvi-xvii, xxiii; Lambert of Hersfeld (*anno* 1071), p. 132; (*anno* 1075), pp. 244-45.

⁴ Lambert (*anno* 1071), p. 133; cf. (*anno* 1075), pp. 244-45. A monk of Gorze found St. Michael's in Bamberg empty when he arrived (Berthold, *Annal.* [1071], MGH, SS. V, 184). The old-line Benedictine abbeys, especially those which were "royal," violently resisted the incomers, satirizing their "unascetic" costume (MGH, SS. XXI, 432, vss. 84 ff.; *Casus S. Galli contin.*, XXXI, 82; *Chron. Lauresham.*, SS. XXI, 421; Hauck, III, 869), inveighing against their hypocrisy and stigmatizing them as tares and thorns among wheat (*Vita Oudalr.*, p. 24; MGH, SS. XII, 259). "Haec pestis de Francia transfusa in Lothrangiam quam sit detestabilis, nostro tempore Petrus Damianus Alexandro papae hujusmodi invectione deplanxit," is another description of the monastic reform movement out of France (*Chron. Huberti Andagin*, chap. lxxviii; Migne, CLIV, 1426), Meyer von Knonau, *Mitt. zur vaterländischen Geschichte*, Vols. XV-XVI (1877), on the sources of the history of S. Gall, analyzes the *Casus S. Galli* of Ekkehard IV line by line, and shows how the monks lauded the good old times in opposition to the Cluny reform.

fallen into decay. About the year 1066 it was colonized by a band of monks from Einsiedeln, one of the earliest offshoots of Gorze.¹ The Black Forest soon became a veritable drill-ground of Clunyism. Around Hirsau were St. Blasien, Grünlingen, Ruggisberg, Peterlingen, etc.² A new codification of the Rule of Cluny was drawn up by Udalric,³ the prior of Hirsau.

Within an amazingly brief time branch houses of Hirsau multiplied in Germany, especially in the south. By 1080 St. Blasien and Schaffhausen were united with Hirsau. In Franconia it absorbed Hasungen, Komburg, Schönrein. In Swabia it acquired St. Savior in Schaffhausen, St. George, St. Gregory, Zwifalten, Petershausen, Weilheim, Blaubeyren, and Sindelfingen. In Bavaria, Kremsmünster, St. Paul, Admont, St. Margaret in Zell. In Thuringia, Reinhardsbrunn and St. Peter in Erfurt. In addition to all these Hirsau either founded or absorbed more outlying or detached monasteries, as Altdorf, Kloster Bergen near Magdeburg, Hugshofen, St. Michael's in Bamberg, Paulinzelle, Prüfening, Breitenau, Bosau, Langenau, Elchingen, Amorbach, Mettlach, Schwarzach on the Rhine and another of the same name on the Main, Theres, Wessobrun, Meherau in

¹ Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CL, 927.

² Hauck, III, 865-76; Lamprecht, II, 368-70. The Black Forest region of Germany was very strongly pro-papal in the war of investiture (*Bernold S. Blas.*, SS. V, 439 [1083]; 452-53 [1091]). "Die Richtung und Entwicklung der Kirche, welche mit Gregor VII zur Herrschaft kam, ging vornehmlich von Cluny aus, und einer ihrer stärksten Vorposten, in engster Verbindung mit Cluny, waren die Klöster des Schwarzwaldes. Hier verkehrten die Legaten und Gegenkönige, hier feierten sie ihre Feste, hier suchten sie und ihre Anhänger Zuflucht in Zeiten der Noth. Die Mönche von Ebersheimmünster im Elsass haben Rudolf von Reinfelden sogar seine Krone geschmiedet. Es war nicht wie bei den Sachsen eine zufällige Uebereinstimmung in der Opposition gegen das Reich, welche diese Mönche mit Gregor zusammenführte, sondern der reine dogmatische Eifer" (Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichte*sq. [5th ed.], II, 44).

³ Lambert (*anno* 1071), p. 133; *Vita Oudalr.*, Book II, chap. xxxiv; Berthold, *Annal.* (1077). It was Bernhard, abbot of St. Victor in Marseilles and the legate of Gregory VII, who suggested to William of Hirsau the adoption of the Cluniac rule (Wattenbach, II, 45). For the text see Migne, CXLIX, 635f.; and for the history thereof, CL, 929. For the discipline of these *Consuetudines Cluniacenses* see *Const. Hirs.*, II, 21, col. 1067; II, 9, col. 1048.

Bregenz, Lorsch, Bleidenstadt, Hornbach, Deggingen, Beinwil, Odenheim, Mölk, Scheuern, St. Emmeran, Prühl, Biburg, Mallersdorf, Reichenbach, Michelfeld, Ennsdorf, Weinhenstefan, Weltenburg, Münchenmünster, Kastel, Benediktbeuren, Seon, Corvey, Pegau, St. Jacob in Regensburg, etc.¹ At the same time Cluny proper founded or reformed Ilsenburg, Hillersleben, Harsefeld, Huysburg in North Germany, while St. Blasien in the south did the same with Muri, Kempten, St. Ulrich, Wiblingen, Ochsenhausen, Alpirsbach.²

The great German nobles were little less active. Welf of Bavaria, since 1070 duke there, and a bitter anti-imperialist, founded Weingarten; Berthold of Zähringen founded St.

¹ Hauck, III, 870; Mayr, "Die Hirsauer Congregation," *Mitteil. des Inst.*, I (1880), 126 f.; Helmersdörfer, *Forsch. z. Gesch. des Abtes Wilhelm der Heilige*, p. 118. According to *Annal. Hirs.*, Prolog and pp. 225-27, 266-68, 294, the total number of Hirsauer foundations was 97. The bibliography of the Hirsauer movement is extensive. Süssmann, *Forschungen zur Gesch. des Klosters Hirsau, 1065 bis 1105* (Halle diss., 1903); Messing, *Papst Gregors VII Verhältniss zu den Klöstern* (Greifswald diss., 1907); Ernest Hauviller, *Ulrich von Cluny* ("Kirchengesch. Studien," Band III, Heft 3), (Münster, 1896); Haffner, *Regesten zur Gesch. des schwäbischen Klosters Hirsau* ("Studien und Mitteil. aus dem Benediktiner- und Cisterzienserorden," Band XIII); Cless, *Versuch einer kirchl.-polit. Landes- und Kulturgesch. von Württemberg*, II, Teil I, Abt., pp. 237 f. (Gmünd, 1807); Kerker, *Wilhelm der Selige* (Tübingen, 1863); Richter, *Annalen*, III, 2, pp. 86-87, 269-72, 347, 411-12; Godeke, *Die Hirsauer während des Investiturstreites* (1883); Egger, *Gesch. der Cluniazenser-Klöster in Frankreich und in der West-Schweiz bis zum Auftreten der Cisterzienser* ("Freiburger Hist. Studien," Heft III, Freiburg [Switzerland], 1907); Karl Schott, *Kloster Reichenbach im Murgtal in seinen Beziehungen zu Hirsau und den Markgrafen von Baden* (Freiburg i. B., 1912); Schreiber, *Kurie und Kloster im 12. Jahrhundert* (2 vols.) (Stuttgart, 1910); Gieseke, *Die Ausbreitung d. Hirsauer Reform*; C. H. Baer, *Die Hirsauer Bauschule* (1895); Max Fischer, *Studien zur Entstehung der Hirsauer Konstitution* (1910). Odilo Ringholz, *Des Benediktinerstiftes Einsiedeln Tätigkeit für die Reform deutscher Klöster vor dem Abte Wilhelm von Hirsau* ("Studien und Mitteilungen aus dem Benediktiner und Cisterzienserorden," VII [1886], 1); Bruno Albers, *Hirsau und seine Gründungen vom Jahre 1073 an* ("Festschrift des deutschen Campo Santo," pp. 115-29). Weber, "Hirsau-Paulinzella-Thalbürg," *Ztschrft. d. Ver. f. Thüring. Gesch.* (N.F., XII); Hafner, *The Treaty of Confraternity between the Benedictine Monasteries of Hirsau, St. Blasien and Muri* ("Studien und Mitth. aus dem Bened. und dem Cisterc.-Orden," Band XVI, Heft 4 [1895]). Text with commentary on monastic confraternities in the Middle Ages. Thudichum, *Wuertemb. Vierteljahrshefte f. Landesgesch.*, Band II, Heft 3 (1893), has shown how in envy of and imitation of Hirsau other monasteries in Germany forged privileges of the nature of those of Hirsau. Thus in the twelfth century Ellwangen did so in order to reduce the rights of the *vogtei* and limit the authority of the bishop of Augsburg.

² Hauck, III, 869-71.

Peter in the Schwarzwald.¹ Two Swabian counts united in founding Wiblingen on the Iller. Count Udalric of Bregenz founded Ochsenhausen. The bishops Adalberon of Würzburg, Gerard of Salzburg, Altmann of Passau, severally founded one or the other of the following: Lambach, Admont, Reichersberg, Göttweih, St. George, St. Polten, St. Florian, St. Paul, St. Lambert. In Saxony, Burckhard of Halberstadt, Herrand, abbot of Ilsenburg, Gilbert, abbot of Rheinhardtbrunn, sowed the north and east with Hirsauer or Cluniac houses, as Ilsenburg, Hillersleben, Harsefeld, Huysburg, Pegau, Kloster Bergen, Hammersleben, Reinsdorf, Paulinzelle, Oldisleben, Hadmersleben, Vizenburg, Drübeck, Notterlingsburg, Kalterbrunn.² Whole villages got the contagion of the new monasticism, which was fired by fanatic, wandering preachers, and resolved "to have all things in common" like the apostles.³ Wealth and numbers poured in upon the monasteries so fast that the Cluniac rule against lay brothers was broken down.⁴ Gregory VII saw in this popular growth of Hirsau the possibility of establishing a German Pataria.⁵ The monasteries in these years grew like Jonah's gourd vine. When Otto I died in 1073 there were 108 monasteries in Germany; when the war of investiture began there were over 700.⁶

¹ Bernoldi, *Chron.* (1093), SS. V, 456-57.

² Hauck, III, 871-72.

³ Bernold, *Chron.* (1091); *De unitate ecclesiae conservanda*, II, 38; Gerdes, II, 272, 528 f.; Kerker, pp. 156 f.; Richter, III, 2, pp. 412-13 nn.

⁴ Bernold, *Chron.* (1093); Hauck, III, 875, n. 3; Gerdes, II, 530; Helmsdörfer, pp. 90 f.; Kerker, pp. 135 f. They are first mentioned by Lambert of Hersfeld in 1076 (ed. Holder-Egger), p. 277. The lay brothers were used in gardening and working on the grange (*grangiae*) farms and were called *conversi laici*, or more familiarly, *fratres barbati* or *Bärtlinger*, i.e., "bearded." For the economic activity of these "lay" brothers see Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen*, II, 88. Although not unlike Cluny, the Hirsauer monasteries were not so compactly associated together as the Cluniac (*Chron. Zwifalt.*, 16, SS. X, 82). Many of the older monasteries, as a popular move, during the war of investiture, in imitation of Hirsau, enrolled lay brothers in their midst (Wattenbach [5th ed.], II, 88). "Die Mönche der älteren Art kamen durch diese neuen Regeln, welche rasch verbreiteten, mehr und mehr in Missachtung *beim Volke* und bei den Grossen und sahen sich dadurch manchen Gefahren ausgesetzt" (*ibid.*, p. 89).

⁵ Berthold, *Contin.* (1079), p. 317; Richter, II, 2, p. 293; Feierabend, p. 25 n.

⁶ Hauck, IV, 49, n. 10; Koeniger, p. 101, n. 3.

By the time the struggle between Henry IV and Gregory VII opened, all West and Southwest Germany and large areas in the center and north had been colonized by Cluny or Hirsau, the German form of the Cluniac movement. More ominous still for the monarchy was the intimate alliance between Cluny-Hirsau and the powerful lay feudality. Its support is not to be attributed to disinterested or religious motives. Just as earlier the great dukes had espoused the Gorzean reform in the hope of finding in it a means to injure the crown's power over them by using the German church against them, so in the eleventh century the German feudality advocated reform for self-advantage. Lorraine, Bavaria, and Swabia were notorious storm centers of opposition to the Saxon kings.¹

By the third quarter of the eleventh century the controlling influences in the church, namely, the Cluniac party and Gregory VII (1073-85), were more interested in church supremacy than in church reform; more interested in enlarging the political power and material wealth of the church than in furthering its spiritual ministry. Of course the real remedy for church corruption and the solution of the friction between the state and the church was for the latter to have renounced its vast material wealth and temporal powers, much of which was not necessary to it as a religious institution. But this the church was unwilling to do. Its love of wealth and its love of power were too great. The church's policy, with the accession of Hildebrand to the papacy, was one of uncompromising supremacy of church over state. It laid the ax at the root of the emperor's power by attacking the state's right of proprietary control over the church through the prohibition of lay investiture.

Before 1050 the Catholic Church, however universal in theory, had hardly been universal in fact. The period of the Frankish, the Saxon, and the early Salian emperors had been a period of what German writers called the *Landeskirche*. The power of the bishop of Rome had not yet been fully established, and the great churches of Rheims and Mainz and Milan were practically independent centres. Independent of the papacy, they were not independent of the lay rulers within whose dominions they lay. On the contrary, their members were deeply engaged in lay activities; they

¹ Lamprecht, II, 135 f., 151 f., 163 f., 249 f.

were landlords, feudatories, and officials in their various countries. In the face of these facts the Gregorian movement of the eleventh century pursues two closely interconnected objects. It aims at asserting the universal primacy of the papacy; it aims at vindicating the freedom of the clergy from all secular power. The one aim is a means to the other: the pope cannot be universal primate unless the clergy he controls are free from secular control, unless the universal primacy of the papacy effects their liberation.

Gregorianism . . . establishes the theory, and in a very large part the practice, of ecclesiastical unity. . . . The days of the church universal under the universal primacy of Rome are begun. But when the universality of the church has once been established in point of extension, it begins to be also asserted in point of intensity. Once ubiquitous, the papacy seeks to be omniscient. Depositary of the truth, and only depositary of the truth, by divine revelation, the church under the guidance of the papacy seeks to realize the truth in every reach of life, and to control in the light of Christian principle every play of human activity. Learning and education, trade and commerce, war and peace, are all to be drawn into her orbit. By the application of Christian principle a great synthesis of human life is to be achieved and the *lex Christi* is to be made a *lex animata in terris*. This was the greatest ambition that has ever been cherished.¹

"Reform" was a means to an end, not an end in itself. It was a convenient watchword, like so many political shibboleths, embodying self-interest in an outward guise of virtue and ethicality which fooled the emotionally religious and the unthinking masses of mankind, but which never deceived the initiated and those who had the penetration to see that though the hand might be the hand of Esau, the voice was the voice of Jacob. The English historian, William of Malmesbury, who lived in the reigns of Henry IV and Henry V, clearly perceived the justice of the emperor's position. He writes:

This was the period in which Germany for fifty years bewailed the pitiable and almost fatal government of Henry [IV]. . . . He was neither unlearned nor indolent; but so singled out by fate for every person to attack, that whoever took up arms against him pretended, to himself, to be acting for the good of religion. . . . There were many things praiseworthy in the emperor: he was eloquent, of great abilities, well-read, actively charitable; he had many good qualities both of mind and of person.²

¹ Barker in Marvin, *The Unity of Western Civilization* (Oxford, 1915), pp. 99-100.

² Cf. *De unitate eccl. conserv.*, especially chap. vii, and *Vita Heinrici IV*, *passim*.

CHAPTER III

THE WAR OF INVESTITURE; THE CONFLICT BETWEEN HENRY IV AND GREGORY VII

HISTORY affords few more striking examples of revolutionary change than the contrast between the relations of the German crown, the German church, and the papacy in Saxon (919-1024) and Salian (1024-1125) times. Under the Saxon emperors the church was the friend and ally of the dynasty. This good relation became somewhat strained under Conrad II and Henry III, the first Salians, and under the last two Salian rulers, Henry IV, and Henry V, the German church in large part, and the papacy wholly, were the implacable foe of the emperors and strove with might and main to compass the destruction of the German crown.

The conflict between Henry IV and Gregory VII has usually been portrayed with the dramatic grandeur of a Greek tragedy. Dramatic qualities and dramatic personalities that struggle certainly possessed. But in general its history has been pitched upon too high a plane. The character of Hildebrand is one of the most complex and difficult to understand in all history. He was at once a superlative idealist imbued with the Augustinian dream of a world-church supreme over a world-state, and a shrewd politician. Such a man is rarely always consistent in his conduct. Depending upon mood or circumstance he sometimes responds to one motive or stimulus, sometimes to another.¹ It is the endeavor of this chapter to show that the root of the struggle between Gregory VII and Henry IV was an economic one; that the immediate and fundamental, though carefully con-

¹ The life and time of Gregory VII are too packed with great men and great events for a single writer or a single volume adequately to present the complex issues. No epoch of medieval history is more dependent upon the co-operative labor and researches of a large number of historical students. See the suggestive paragraph by Giry, "Grégoire VII et les évêques de Térouanne," *Revue Hist.*, I, 387.

cealed, purpose of the papacy was to acquire complete proprietary control of the German church (indeed the church throughout all Europe); and that the Cluny reform was sedulously propagated as a means to that end. Karl Wilhelm Nitzsch (1818-80) in his *Geschichte des deutschen Volkes* was the first who discerned this factor in the war of investiture.¹ Since his death other scholars, in many monographs, have widened the field which he first tilled, and the enormous influence of the proprietary interests of the German church upon the history of the medieval empire has been abundantly demonstrated.²

One of the most certain achievements of modern historical research is the proof which precludes denial of the interrelation of all the facts and forces of an epoch. The war of investiture cannot be rightly understood except in the light of the economic and social history of Germany in the tenth and

¹ Cf. Nitzsch, *Deutsche Gesch.*, II, 15, and Döllinger, *Akad. Vorträge*, Vol. II, Lecture 1; Inama-Sternegg, *DWG*, II, 135.

² Harnack, *History of Dogma*, V, 7, has suggestively said, "The task of administering property was more important to the German church than the political and dogmatic debates of the neighboring French hierarchy." So again, *ibid.*, VI, 16, he says, "It was about the property of the bishops and . . . who was the true ruler of the divine state that the great battle was really waged between the empire and the reformed papacy."

Ficker first clearly formulated the idea that the war of investiture was primarily one for control of the church's proprietary power (*ein Eigenthumsrecht*)—"Ueber das Eigenthum des Reiches am Reichskirchengute," *Sitzungsberichte der philosoph.-histor. Klasse der kaiserl. Akad. d. Wissenschaften*, LXXII (1872), 55-146, 381-450. To this article Waitz replied the next year in the same journal (1873), p. 825, admitting the presence of proprietary elements in the struggle between emperor and pope, but contending that Ficker exaggerated its importance. Cf. Waitz, *Deutsch Verfassungsgesch.*, VII, 199, n. 1. Since these epoch-making articles a large amount of supplementary work has been done by more recent scholars, which, it seems to me, bears out Ficker's contention, as Matthäi, *Die Klosterpolitik Kaiser Heinrichs II* (Göttingen diss., 1877); Stutz, *Die Eigenkirche als Element des mittelalterlich-german. Kirchenrechts* (Berlin, 1895); and his *Gesch. des kirchlichen Beneficialwesens* (1895) and article entitled "Lehen und Pfründe" in *Zeitschrift der Savignystiftung für Rechtsgesch.*, XXXIII (N.F., 1899), 20, 213-47; Hauck, *Kirchengesch. Deutschlands*, III (1905), 441 ff.; Werminghoff, *Gesch. der Kirchenverfassung Deutschlands im Mittelalter* (Leipzig, 1905), pp. 179 ff.; Feierabend, *Die politische Stellung der deutschen Reichsabteien während des Investiturstreites* (Breslau diss., 1913); Voigt, *Die Klosterpolitik der Salischen Kaiser und Könige mit besonderer Berücksichtigung Heinrich IV bis zum Jahre 1077* (Leipzig diss., 1888); Koeniger, *Burchard I von Worms* (1905), chap. iv. Waitz's great work, Vol. VII, chap. ii, *Die hohe Geistlichkeit*, is invaluable for the wealth of references to sources. For the "royal" abbeyes see *ibid.*, III, 434-35; IV, 153-57.

eleventh centuries.¹ The root of the problem between church and state in the Middle Ages, and the chief root of the evil in the church, was its immense landed wealth. Between the alternative of renouncing her feudal revenues, her temporalities, her privileges, her political power, and so seeking deliverance from secular control, and the alternative of keeping her temporalities and yet securing freedom from the authority of the state by crushing the state, the church did not hesitate. She chose the latter course, and the identification of the Cluny reform with the papal power by Hildebrand went far toward making the aspiration a reality.

Henry IV, when he reached his majority, was not hostile to the reform. If the issue between him and Gregory VII had been one merely of traffic in church dignities and the celibacy of the priest class, the rupture between emperor and pope would probably never have come to pass. There is no reason to doubt Henry IV's sincerity when in 1082 at Milan he took an oath not to practice simony, and when, in 1083, his anti-pope Clement II urged the clergy to live in chastity—and that at the very moment when Gregory VII had begun to waver upon the question of celibacy owing to the adverse situation in which he found himself. All these issues were minor ones between emperor and pope. Much smoke was raised over them at times, but there was really little fire in them.

The real issue was otherwise: the aspiration of Gregory VII for universal rule over both church and state, his passion for wealth and power, his pretensions to the right to set up and dethrone kings—these were the marrow of the conflict. In giving a new and formidable connotation to the word "simony," in dissolving the tie of fidelity and investiture which bound the German clergy to the king, Gregory VII attempted to cut the very nerves of the Salian monarchy. It is true that much of the property of bishoprics and abbeys was considered as royal property; but the church derived enormous benefit from the possession of it nevertheless, in

¹ In his recent work, *Belgian Democracy* (Eng. trans.), p. 30 n., Professor Henri Pirenne has written, "There is here, i.e., in economic history, a whole group of phenomena in general too little heeded by the students of this great conflict."

spite of heavy political, financial, and military burdens imposed upon its clergy. The benefits resulting from the arrangement were worth the price exacted, as most of the German bishops perceived, and accordingly advocated the king's cause instead of that of the pope.

The war of investiture was a maze of cross- and counter-currents. While the struggles between emperor and pope and between the German crown and the rebellious Saxons were the two main streams, the strife between the bishops and the abbots was no unimportant chapter.¹ The feud between the "regulars" and the "seculars," as we have seen, was an old one. The monasteries for centuries had chafed under the superior jurisdiction of the bishops, and the papacy had developed a lucrative trade in selling them exemptions from episcopal authority. The German kings, too, had always sustained the bishops against the monks. Naturally most of the monasteries, except conservative ones like St. Gall and Lorsch, supported the Cluny reform as a means of emancipation from both the episcopate and the crown.²

While Henry III had lived he had attempted to hold the balance even between the rival groups of clergy. But when his strong hand was removed the weak regency of the empress-mother was unable to cope with the situation. The bishops as well as the lay feudality at once began a wholesale policy of spoliation of the monastery lands. When Agnes was removed from the regency and the rivalry of Anno of Cologne and Adalbert of Bremen ensued for control of the boy king Henry IV, the condition of things grew more aggravated than ever. For both were fierce and ambitious bishops who hesitated at nothing to attain their ends, whether by fraud or violence.³

The years of the minority of Henry IV were favorable days for the bishops. Between 1057 and 1065 we have the record of 20 grants of land made to them, and only 5 for the ensuing seven years (1066-73), when the king had attained

¹ Cf. Messing, *Papst Gregors VII Verhältnisse zu den Klöstern* (1910).

² Hersfeld, Fulda, Corvey, and Ottobeuren were notorious seceders (Feierabend, p. 27). On the whole see Sackur, II, 270-99.

³ Hauck, III, 728 f.; Voigt, p. 40 f.

his majority. For immediately upon the decease of Henry III the bishops waxed bold in their demands of the crown. The Bishop of Brixen bullied the empress-mother into giving him the monastery of Dissentis and seized Kloster Polling; the Bishop of Speier got Conrad II's foundation of Limburg, St. Lambert's, and the abbey of Schwarzach; the Bishop of Freising obtained Benediktbeuren; the Bishop of Halberstadt received the monastery of Drusbeck in the Harz as settlement for claims against the royal estates in his diocese; the Bishop of Constance seized Reichenau; the Bishop of Bamberg, Kloster Kitzingen. A typical case is the spoliation of the lands of St. Michael's in Bamberg by Ulrich, a *ministerialis* of the Archbishop of Mainz. The years 1062-65 were even worse for the monasteries. The Archbishop of Salzburg seized Chiemsee in 1062; the Archbishop of Mainz acquired Selingenstadt in 1063; Adalbert of Bremen tried to seize Malmedy and Cornelimünster.¹

During the time of Henry IV's minority it seemed as if the suppression of the monasteries by the bishops and the German princes would be accomplished. By 1065 fourteen of the greatest and richest abbeys had been appropriated by the bishops and the Fürsten.² Otto of Nordheim, the new duke of Bavaria, devoured Nieder Altaich; Rudolf of Swabia laid his hand on Kloster Kempten. As Gerdes says, "Fast jeder grosse und kleine Fürst geistlichen und weltlichen Standes erhielt ein Stück aus der Beute."³

Sometimes, however, the rivalry between two jealous bishops for possession of the same foundation resulted in a deadlock. The distribution of the prizes might be made on paper but was impossible in practice.⁴ For example, Anno of Cologne and Adalbert of Bremen were both contestants for possession of Corvey and Lorsch, and neither got them.⁵ Anno was thwarted in his contemplated seizure of Stablo

¹ Adam of Bremen, III, 45.

² *De unitate eccles. conserv.*, chap. xxxiii; *Libelli de lite*, II, 258 f.; Waitz, VII, 211-13; Voigt, pp. 38-43.

³ Gerdes, II, 158.

⁴ Voigt, p. 40.

⁵ Hauck, III, 729; Voigt, p. 55; Adam of Bremen, III, 45.

by the Abbot of Malmedy, aided by his vassals.² The monastic chroniclers of these early years of Henry IV, especially Lambert of Hersfeld, give a vivid picture of the spoliation of the monasteries at the hands both of the German episcopate and the lay feudality.³

The feud between the bishops and the great nobles to enlarge their lands was quite as bitter as that between the bishops and the monasteries. The history of the archbishopric of Bremen is perhaps the best example of this struggle. This see, in early Saxon days, was very poor.⁴ Its enrichment began with the accession of Archbishop Unwin (1013-30), of the wealthy Immedinger family, who gave a substantial portion of his family inheritance to Bremen.⁴ Under the careful administration of the archbishops Liawizo (1030-32) and Hermann (1032-35) the riches of Bremen increased.⁵ But the greatness of Bremen really began with the famous Archbishop Adalbert (1043-71).⁶

Adalbert was the son of a Saxon noble, Count Frederick of Goseck. If he had been permitted to grow up as a feudal lord instead of a bishop the history of Saxony might have been very different from what it was. While yet provost in Halberstadt, Adalbert's ability, striking personality, and no less striking physical bearing made him a marked man. Henry III made him archbishop of Bremen. The ambition of the Billunger dukes of Saxony was at this time giving serious anxiety to the Emperor, and Henry wanted a strong man to hold it in check. In 1046 Adalbert accompanied the Emperor to Italy; and when Gregory VI died he was offered the papacy but waived the honor in favor of his old colleague of Halberstadt days, Bishop Suidger of Bamberg, who became Pope Clement II.

² Voigt, p. 46; Lambert of Hersfeld, (*anno* 1071).

³ Lambert of Hersfeld (*annis* 1060, 1064, 1066, 1070, 1071, 1072, 1074, 1075, etc.).

⁴ The large powers of the archbishop of Bremen date from the charter of Otto I (967), *DO*, II, 16; cf. Adam of Bremen, III, 5, Henry IV's confirmation of this grant.

⁵ Adam of Bremen, II, 40, and schol. 46.

⁶ *Ibid*, II, 44, 65; Thietmar, *Chron.*, VI, 53.

⁷ For a character sketch see Meyer von Knonan, *Jahrb.*, II, 124-45.

Bremen historically was the ecclesiastical center from which the conversion of the North had radiated. Its episcopal overlordship extended over Denmark, Scandinavia, the Northern Islands, Iceland, and the newly conquered Slavonic lands; Adalbert dreamed of erecting his see into a huge patriarchate of Northern Europe; almost, one might say, to make himself pope of all Baltic and North Atlantic Christendom. The resistance of the Danish kings, of Harold Hardraade of Norway, and of Hildebrand, then the power behind the papal throne, who naturally could not tolerate such a separatist ecclesiastical project, ruined Adalbert's scheme.

Adalbert's early years in Bremen were his happiest and best. He admirably organized the diocesan administration and began work on the great cathedral. His court became one of the most brilliant in Europe, a refulgence possibly influenced by the commercial importance of the city. Italians, Greeks, Mohammedans, Spaniards, French, English, Norse; musicians, actors, literati, physicians, artists, were hospitably received within its gates.¹

But the most substantial opposition came from the dukes of Saxony. The upgrowth of such a powerful episcopate within their immediate lands, and one intimately identified with Salian power, was most unwelcome to them. The Billunger feared, with good reason, that Henry III had planned to abolish the dukedom and vest its authority in Adalbert.²

¹ The names of some of these persons have been preserved, as John of Ireland; Gualdo Gallicus (*Hamb. Urkundenb.*, No. 101); Transmundus the artist-monk (Bruno, *De Bello Saxonico*, I, 4); Guido, a musician (Adam of Bremen, II, 66). Schumacher, *Brem. Jahrb.*, Vol. 5 conjectures he may have been Guido of Arezzo which is denied by Schneidler, p. 129, n. 1; the most recent editor of Adam of Bremen, Aristo, probably a Byzantine Greek; Adamatus, from the medical school in Salerno; Bovo, a famous traveler who had been three times to Jerusalem and even to Cairo. For larger information see Adam of Bremen, III, 35-38, 44; for Adalbert's revenues see Adam of Bremen, II, 45; Dehio, *Gesch. des Erzbistums Hamburg-Bremen*, I, 175-277; Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, III, 95-138, 153-66; Beazeley, *Dawn of Modern Geography*, II, 516-21; K. Maurer, "Islands und Norwegens Verkehr mit dem Süden im IX. bis XIII. Jahrhundert," *Zeitschrift für deutsche Philologie*, II, 446; Riant, *Pélerinages des Scandinaves en Terre Sainte*, p. 58. The Golden Psalter now in the Hofbibliothek at Vienna is believed to be the one mentioned by Adam of Bremen, III, 45, as once belonging to Adalbert of Bremen. See Schneidler's edition, p. 187, n. 5. Adam of Bremen, III, 58, mentions a colony of merchants in Bremen in 1072.

² Blumenthal, *Adalbert of Bremen*, p. 18.

The assignment of the county of Frisia to him, when Duke Gottfried of Lorraine died, readily made the Duke of Saxony so believe. Be this as it may, the enrichment of Bremen was a rapid one.¹ Adalbert tried to purchase the Duke's good-will by alienation of numerous estates of the church of Bremen. The old duke Bernward seems to have been not unwilling to compound with Adalbert, but nothing could pacify his sons, Bernhard, Ordulf, and Hermann.² The episcopal estates in Frisia were lost to Adalbert owing to a raid which the Duke and his two sons made in 1059, and seven hundred pounds of silver were collected by them.³ Henry III had too many irons in the fire to be able to help the Archbishop to any great degree, and all that Adalbert seems to have acquired during his reign were the forest lands in Lorigau and Stiergau, with the donation of two royal *villae*, Bolga and Fivelgoe.

What could not be accomplished in the lifetime of Henry III was done in the earlier years of the reign of his son, when the weakness of the crown gave opportunities for seizures. Thus soon after the death of Henry III the Frisian counties on the left bank of the river Ems⁴ were given to Adalbert, and in 1063 the promised estate Lesum⁵ of approximately seven hundred *hubae*, with the rights of coinage and toll, and much land about the city of Bremen, were ceded. In the same year the countships Emsgau and Stade came into his possession, not as gifts, however, for the King demanded one hundred pounds of silver as the purchase price for Emsgau.⁶ A short time afterward three more estates were transferred to his posses-

¹ Adam of Bremen, III, 8, p. 41.

² *Ibid.*, III, 9; Steindorff, II, 41.

³ Adam of Bremen, III, 41-43. The abbey of Luellberg was also destroyed about the same time (*ibid.*, III, 35). Ordulf blinded some of the serfs on the episcopal lands. Henry III sent money to aid in rebuilding.

⁴ Stumpf, No. 2540; cf. Adam of Bremen, III, 8, 45.

⁵ Stumpf, No. 2622; cf. Steindorff, II, 16; Adam of Bremen, III, 8. Lesum was an old North German county which had once belonged to the Billunger, and had been "revindicated" by Conrad II. Hermann Billung at this time hoped to have it restored to him. Naturally the Billunger were incensed to see a territory to which they believed they had rightful claim pass into the hands of their worst enemy.

⁶ Stumpf, Nos. 2630, 2632; Adam of Bremen, III, 35; Meyer von Knonau, I, 357.

sion, as well as the privilege of hunting in four royal forests.¹ In 1065 the King awarded to Adalbert the countships of the counts Bernhard and Werl, and the margraviate of Udo, with the fiefs, immunities, market, and toll privileges pertaining thereto. But as the King was in need of money at this time, the Archbishop paid a thousand pounds of silver for the acquisitions.² The abbeys of Lorsch and Corvey, however, never came into Adalbert's possession, although transferred to him by the King.³

During the absence of Adalbert at the King's court the Billunger played havoc with the lands and serf population of the Bremen diocese. In the end he was forced to buy off his enemies by alienating a thousand mannors to Magnus Billung and nearly as much more in fief to Magnus' friend, Count Udo of the Nordmark, before he dared return to Bremen from his ancestral estates near Goslar, whither he had fled. He died in 1071, four years before the death of his implacable rival, Anno of Cologne.⁴

The rapacity of the German church, besides being manifested in the bitter feud between "regulars" and "seculars," in the strife between clergy and feudality, and in the exhaustion of the conquered border peoples by clerical taxation, is also reflected in the famous "Tithe War" of the early years of Henry IV. Since its institution by Charlemagne⁵ the tithe had always been a lucrative source of income to the church. Under the Saxon kings the church had labored hard to subject all land, lay and clerical alike, to its imposition.⁶ While such a blanket right was not acquired, nevertheless the church got a substantial reward. Otto I gave the Bishop of

¹ Stumpf, Nos. 2633, 2634, 2638.

² Adam of Bremen, III, 45. For a remarkable story told of Udo see Freeman, *Norman Conquest* (2d ed.), IV, 245-46.

³ Adam of Bremen, III, 27 and 44.

⁴ Meyer von Knonau, I, 513-22; Gerdes, II, 162-63. The moral difference between Adalbert and Anno is to be observed. Anno of Cologne strove for personal aggrandizement; Adalbert of Bremen for the aggrandizement of the church of Bremen (Wattenbach, II, 71).

⁵ *Capit. Herist.*, anno 779; *Leges*, I, 50.

⁶ Stein, *Konrad I*, p. 184; Dümmler, *Otto I*, Vol. I, p. 47; Koeniger, pp. 55-56.

Osnabrück permission to levy the tithe on all lands within his diocese.¹ Otto II permitted Corvey to collect it in Ammergau.² These rulers were complacent in allowing the tithe to be imposed upon the royal domain. Naturally there was contention between bishops and abbots for the right, all the more so because the bishops tried, in turn, to impose the tithe upon the monastery lands.

The Tithe War was a feud between the Archbishop of Mainz and the abbots of Fulda and Hersfeld, in which Thuringia was the bone of contention. Ecclesiastically the country was subject to Mainz, but part of the region paid tithe to the monasteries. The rest was exempt. The origin of this partial exemption is not known. Shortly before the death of Henry III, Liutpold of Mainz attempted for the first time to levy the tithe upon all Thuringia. The Thuringians resisted, pleading ancient customary law, no writ of exemption being in evidence. Liutpold claimed that Henry III had recognized the legality of his demand and included even the royal estates in Thuringia under the imposition. It was a barefaced piece of effrontery. The weak empress-mother Agnes compounded with the Archbishop and alienated one hundred and twenty manors of the fisc as the price of quit-tance.³ But Fulda and Hersfeld repudiated the Archbishop's claim. While the struggle still endured Liutpold endeavored to extend the tithe over the lands of the Thuringian nobles too. The triangular conflict dragged along for years without settlement and finally became one of the eddies in the war of investiture.⁴

¹ Waitz, VIII, 347, n. 2. Pages 347-72 contain a long account of the history of the tithe in Salian Germany. In the reign of Henry IV, Benno of Osnabrück forged new documents for the extension of the tithe over Corvey and Herford (Wattenbach, II, 28-29), which precipitated another Tithe War in Saxony; cf. Loeffler, *Hist. Jahrb.*, XXIV (1903), 2; Philippi, *Osnabrücks Urkb.*, pp. ix f.; Brandi, *Westdeutsche Ztschft.*, XIX, 142 f. For its history in the twelfth century see Schreiber, *Kurie und Kloster im 12. Jahrhundert* (2 vols.; Stuttgart, 1910), Part III, pp. 246-94.

² Waitz, VIII, 355. The same privilege was given to Memleben.

³ Waitz, VIII, 347; Stumpf, No. 2569; Lambert of Hersfeld (*annis* 1062, 1067, 1069, 1073, 1074, etc.). The synod of Quedlinburg (1085) forbade lay collection of the tithe except in cases where the right had been "legally" granted.

⁴ For the history of this Tithe War see Giesebrecht, III, 1116 f.; Hauck, III, 730 f.; Voigt, pp. 56 f.; Wolf, *Eichsfeldische Kirchengesch.* (1816), pp. 60 f.; Ausfeld,

Meantime, in 1070 Henry IV had got the reins of government into his own hands. The change, so far as the German church is concerned, is reflected in two ways: first, in the diminution of grants of land to the bishops; second, in recovery of the "lost" royal abbeys by the crown.¹ Henry IV clearly perceived the importance of the monastery lands to the fisc and attempted to regain possession of those which had been seized by the episcopal cabal during his minority.² By strong pressure all but four of these were recovered, not, however, without their having suffered considerable reduction, owing to the rapacity of the bishops during their short possession of them,³ and naturally while in the hands of such "politicals" the monasteries had received few benefactions.⁴

Such, as we have described it, is the complex background,

Lambert von Hersfeld und der Zehntstreit zwischen Mainz, Hersfeld und Thüringen (1880); Dronke, *Codex diplom. Fuld.*, pp. 370 f. Koeniger (pp. 55-56) has a good brief account of the tithe in the Saxon epoch. There is no proof that Henry IV promised the Archbishop of Mainz the collection of the Thuringian tithe if he would divorce him from the queen Bertha (Giesebrecht, III, 1116). The pretensions of Mainz emboldened the Archbishop of Salzburg to attempt the same measure in Bavaria, and he proceeded with such energy that most of the monasteries and nobles either paid or compounded. The sources abound with examples of feud between bishops and abbots, between bishops and bishops, between abbots and abbots, over the tithe, e.g., *Vita Bernwardi*, chaps. xiii-xv; *Vita Deoderici*, chap. xvi; *Vita Adalb.*, chap. ix. In 1123 Adalbert of Mainz at last succeeded in imposing a tithe upon crops and fruits in Thuringia (*Ann. Pegav.*, SS. XVI, 254).

¹ Lambert (1063) points out the dependence of the abbeys on the fisc: "Nihil minus regem juris ac potestatis in abbates habere quam in villicos suos vel in alios quoslibet regalis fisci dispensatores." *Ibid.* (1071): "Abbatiae publice venales prostituuntur in palatio, nec quisquam tanti venales proponere queat, quin protinus emptorem inveniat."

² *De unitate eccles. conserv.*, chap. xxxiii; *Libelli de lite*, II, 258 f.; Voigt, pp. 38-43.

³ "Bald ein Theil der Einkünfte verschenkt, bald der Besitz selbst in fremde Hände gegeben" (Gerdes, II, 178); cf. Voigt, p. 51. During Henry IV's minority the bishops had annexed eleven countships. In all by 1073 the German episcopate is estimated to have held possession and collected the revenues from 53 countships.

⁴ Even Adalbert of Bremen, whom Henry IV trusted much, could not persuade the King to be generous with him. Henry saw the necessity of hanging on to all the resources of the crown. When Magnus Billung surrendered after the revolt of Saxony, Henry, however, restored to Bremen the lands which the Duke had seized. Adam of Bremen asserts that the estates of Plisna, Duspure, Gronningen, and Sigoriem were restored, but no record has survived by which we may control this statement.

of the war of investiture upon the verge of which we now are. It was a series of wheels within wheels, of struggle within struggle, at the bottom of every one of which, in last analysis, the church's lands and the church's resources were the subject of feud. One other factor yet remains to be mentioned, the great revolt of the Saxons under Henry IV,¹ although this is not the place to enter into consideration of its causes. It was inspired by a blend of tribal jealousy, political and economic grievance, and social unrest. It was in no sense due to any religious or ecclesiastical issue, even remotely. But so decisive was the influence of the Saxon rebellion that it has been said with good reason that a compromise between state and church might have been possible "in an atmosphere undisturbed by the Saxon war," but that this "was from the first rendered abortive by the obstinate determination of the Saxon race."² Rebellious Saxony and the papacy had a common enemy in Henry IV, and Gregory VII was acute enough to perceive the value of Saxon support. The coincidence between the rebellion of the Saxons and the prohibition by Gregory VII of lay investiture was not accidental. The Pope's action was deliberately timed.³

The rebellious Saxon nobles favored the Gregorian cause solely out of self-interest, and in spite of his detestation of the Germans the Pope welcomed their alliance.⁴ No thinking person of the time was duped by the Saxon professions of religious devotion.⁵ Their special and local motives were clearly perceived.⁶ Real Gregorianism probably had less actual sway in Saxony than anywhere else in Germany. The Saxon hierarchy was notoriously political and secular in spirit and practice, and the lower clergy were almost totally

¹ See chapter v.

³ Gerdes, II, 176-77.

² Fisher, I, 133.

⁴ Meyer von Knonau, I, 140.

⁵ It is to be noticed that most of the northern bishops backed Henry IV in spite of their metropolitans of Mainz, Cologne, and Magdeburg (Loeffler, *Die Westfälischen Bischöfe im Investiturstreit*). In Osnabrück, Benno II (1088) was an imperialist; Markwald, former abbot of Corvey, a Gregorian—deposed in 1093; Wido (1093-1101) an imperialist; cf. Klem, *Mitteil. d. Ver. f. d. Gesch. von Osnabrück*, Band XXVII (1902).

⁶ Guill. Malmesb., *Gesta regum Anglorum*, III, 288; Bruno, *De bello Saxonico*, chaps. 108, 116; *De unitate ecclesie conserv.*, II, 16.

illiterate.¹ The cleverness with which Henry IV and his partisans maneuvered at Tribur,² and the wavering course of Gregory VII are in striking contrast. Gregory VII at first had no idea of dethroning the King, and after Canossa recognized him as such, although in 1080 he denied that he had restored Henry.³ The Pope's dealings with Rudolph of Swabia were ambiguous. On the other hand, there is nothing to prove that Henry IV falsified his promise of October, 1076.⁴ When the war began, Rudolf of Swabia, whom the feudal party put up as king on March 15, 1077, was compelled to purchase a following by promises of land, not only from the royal fisc, but out of the domains of the church.⁵ The first thing striven for by all parties, and the last thing surrendered, was the lands, whether belonging to one or another of the partisans, or to the fisc, or to the church.

The princes of Germany, who were already intriguing with Gregory for support in their perennial revolts against their sovereign, were delighted to seize the opportunity of at once obliging the pope, creating disturbance at home, and profiting by the church property which they could manage to get into their hands by ejecting the unfortunate married priests. . . . Add to this the attraction which persecution always possesses for the persecutor, and the license of plunder so dear to a turbulent and barbarous age, and it is not difficult to comprehend the motive power of the storm. . . . A contemporary writer whose name has been lost, but who is supposed by Dom Martène to have been a priest of Treves, gives us a very lively picture of the horrors which ensued, and as he shows himself friendly in principle to the reform attempted his account may be received as trustworthy. He describes what amounted almost to a dissolution of society.⁶

As early as 1078 Gregory VII was compelled to order that no more church property was to be enfiefed, and threatened to put everyone who sought to enrich himself by seizure of

¹ *Vita Bennonis*, chap. v, Gregory VII, *Ep.*, IX, 3, admitted even most of Italy favored Henry IV: "Cui ferme omnes Italici favent."

² Cf. Brackmann, *Hist. Vierteljahrschrift* (1912), No. 2.

³ See Martens, *Ztschft. f. Kirchenrecht*, N.F., 1882 Band II.

⁴ Cf. Schaefer, *Hist. Ztschft.*, Band LX, Heft 3.

⁵ Bertholdi, *Annal.* (1077); Bruno, *De bello Saxonico*, chaps. xcix, cviii; Hauck, III, 810; Gerdes, II, 268-70.

⁶ Lea, *Sacerdotal Celibacy* (3d ed.), I, 278-79; Martène and Durand, *Thesaurus*, I, 230-31.

church land under the papal ban.¹ Six months later the synod of Rome ordered every noble, every bishop, and every abbot who had seized any church land to restore it whence it came.² In 1085 the legate Leo of Ostia, at the synod of Quedlinburg, issued a blanket ban against all despoilers of church lands.³ Nevertheless, for years the lands of the church were subjected to almost perpetual pillage. The sources abound with such references.⁴ As a result of the anarchy there was a great exodus of monks from Germany into France.⁵

The masterly stroke of Henry IV at Canossa in defeating Gregory's designs with reference to Germany,⁶ and the utter

¹ Hefe, V, 109.

² *Ibid.*, p. 114.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 333.

⁴ *Gesta Trevororum*, chaps. iv, xvi, xxii; *Gesta Alberonis*, chaps. xii, xiv; *Gesta episcop. Mettens. cont.*, I, chap. i; *Laurentii gesta episcop. Virdun*, chaps. ix, x, xxii, xxv; *Vita Churnadi archiep.*, chap. vii; *Ann. Augsb.* (annis 1077, 1084, 1088, 1090); *Ann. Sax* (anno 1077); Bruno, chap. cxii; *Vita Norberti*, chap. xviii; *Chron. episc. Merseburg*, chap. xiii; *Chron. Gozecens*, II, chaps. xxii-xxiv, xxix; Ekkehard, *Casus S. Galli, passim*; *Gesta abbat. S. Trudon*, X, chap. xii, *Ruperti chron. S. Laurent. Leod.*, chaps. xlv-xlvi, 1; *Chron. S. Huberti-Andag.*, chap. lxxxix. For Corvey's losses, Martiny, *Grundbesitz Corveys*, p. 305; for Fulda's, Dronke, *Trad. Fuld.*, p. 153; Bunte, *Güterbesitz des Kloster Fulda* ("Jahrbuch für Emden"), Band X, Heft 1; Ekkehard, *Chron.* (annis 1098, 1125); Ortlieb, *Chron. Zwifaltens.*, chap. v; Cosmas of Prague, III, chap. xx; *Chron. S. Petri Efford* (anno 1105); Jaffé, V, 232, 517.

⁵ Gerdes, II, 272. Pro-Gregorian monks wore beards, pro-Henrician ones shaved the face clean (*Gesta Trev.*, chap. x, SS. VIII, 183).

⁶ Every historical scholar today who is worthy of the name knows that Canossa was a victory for Henry IV, and not for Gregory VII. The prevalent popular and erroneous belief, which has been carefully cultivated and fostered by the Church of Rome and has even deceived most Protestant historians, as Milman and Michelet, for example, is based upon the account of the incident as described by Lambert of Hersfeld, supplemented by later legendary materials. Von Ranke was the first scholar who challenged the integrity of Lambert ("Zur Kritik fränkisch-deutscher Reichsannalisten," *Abhand. d. Akad. d. Wiss. zu Berlin* [Phil.-hist. Cl., 1855]. This was followed in 1873 by Delbrück's crushing critical study, "Ueber die Glaubwürdigkeit Lamberts von Hersfeld," and later by Döllinger, *Kirchengesch.*, II, 1, pp. 131 f.; Hefe, *Conciliengesch.*, V, 89 f.; and D. Schaefer, *Deutsche Gesch.*, I, 226, since which it has been impossible to attach any credence to Lambert. Although he seems to have had copies of Gregory's letters before him when he wrote, Lambert, by transposing the Pope's words, garbled the meaning (cf. ed. Holder-Egger, p. 291 nn.). Henry was *not* kept outside the courtyard of the chateau of Canossa, and merely "intra secundum murorum ambitum receptus," as Lambert says, while "foris derelicto omni comitatu suo." Both statements are false, for Henry and his company were admitted to the place before the gate of the inner castle, according to Gregory's own account (*Reg.*, IV, 12) which is confirmed by Berthold; Berthold, *Annal.*, p. 289; cf. Haller, *Neues Jahrb.*, IX (1906), 2. The "castellum triplici muro septum" is a description of Lambert's own fancy borrowed from

failure of effect which his second ban had, gradually gave Henry IV the upper hand.¹ By 1093 Germany and Italy were under imperial control once more.² With the death of William of Hirsau in 1091 the Cluniac movement in Germany collapsed.³

By 1085 Henry IV had succeeded in winning control of almost every bishopric in the kingdom. Only Gebhard of Salzburg, Altmann of Passau, Adalbert of Worms, Hermann of Metz, and Adalbert of Würzburg resisted to the last. In the Council of Mainz in April of that year these, too, were deposed. But in the next year, following upon a new rising of the Saxons and the King's defeat at Pleichfeld (August 11), Adalbert of Würzburg recovered his see for a season. Actually, however, the Gregorian episcopal party collapsed with the death of Burckhardt of Halberstadt.⁴

Vergil vi. 549. Moreover, Henry did *not* stand *en chemise*, as Michelet says, *nor*, "while the fierce winds of the Apennines were sweeping the sleet upon him in their passage from Monte Pellegro to the plain, [he] knelt barefoot, clothed in sackcloth, fasting from dawn till eve, for three whole days," as Symonds (*Sketches in Italy*) has written, *nor* "clad only in the thin white linen dress of the penitent," as Milman has said. Henry naturally, since he was appearing as a penitent, put off his royal insignia and assumed the garb of a penitent. But all that Gregory (*Reg.*, IV, 12) says is that "*deposito omne regio cultu, miserabiliter utpote discalciatus et laneis indutus*," which shows that he was comfortably clad beneath his white dress. Again, Henry did *not* "*a mane usque ad vesperam perstabat*," i.e., stand "three days" outside the castle door. Gregory himself, Berthold, and Donizo all say only that "on the third day" Henry was admitted to the papal presence (Lambert of Hersfeld [ed. Holder-Egger], p. 292 nn.). The famous "hostia-scene," in which Gregory is alleged to have prayed that he might be stricken dead if guilty, when swallowing the holy wafer, and challenging Henry to the same ordeal, is a dramatization imitated by Lambert from Regino of Prüm's account (*anno* 869) of the interview between Pope Hadrian II and King Lothar II of Lorraine. The incidents and the language are nearly identical. Neither Gregory nor Bruno has any such account of the incident, and Berthold's and Donizo's versions are much less sensational (see Holder-Egger, p. 297 nn.). Finally, it must be remembered that an act like that of Henry IV at Canossa, dramatic as it seems to us, was not fraught with novelty for men in the Middle Ages. It was no new thing in

[Footnote continued on page 140]

¹ "Er [Gregory VII] weiss, mit der Absolution, ist Heinrich auch wieder König," (Dehnicke, *Massnahmen Gregors VII gegen Heinrich IV*, Halle diss., 1889).

² Lamprecht, II, 36.

³ Feierabend, p. 28. For the completeness of Henry IV's ecclesiastical control see Herbordus, *Dialogus*, III, 35; *Vita Otton. ep. Babenb.*, I, 7; Jaffé, V, 595, 828.

⁴ Hauck, III, 839-50; Stein, *Gesch. Frankens*, I, 178 f.

Gregory VII died May 25, 1085 in self-exile in Salerno, whither he had sought refuge with the Norman king, Robert Guiscard, his spirit indomitable to the last. If the words reputed to him lack positive authenticity—"I have loved justice and hated iniquity. Therefore I die in exile"—they are true in fact if not perhaps in form.

The cardinals gathered at his bedside besought him to designate his successor, who might safely steer the ark of the church through the troubled waters. The dying pontiff is said to have recommended to the suffrage of the College of Cardinals Desiderius, the abbot of Monte Cassino; Archbishop Hugh of Lyons; Otto, bishop of Ostia; and Anselm, bishop of Lucca. Meanwhile, Henry IV's anti-pope had been driven from Rome by the mob. At first the Abbot of Monte Cassino seemed the most likely person to secure the tiara, but he hesitated to accept the honor so nearly thrust upon him, and finally quit the city and returned to his monastery. His election would have been a good omen for Henry IV to whom he was favorable, and he was supported by the Nor-

medieval Europe, either before or after the time of Henry IV, for a king to do public penance and even to be flogged. Otto I, Otto III, Henry II, Henry III, all did such penance without forfeiting the loyalty of their subjects. The imposition of penance was a discipline of the church and was universal. It was not even a humiliation. Gregory had to absolve Henry, for the moral sentiment of Europe would have regarded it as a monstrous abuse of the authority of the church if he had refused to do so. Henry professed penitence; he had to be forgiven. By the absolution Gregory was balked from going into Germany to try the King at Augsburg, and although the Pope later claimed that the absolution did not restore Henry to the kingdom, it is a quibble to say the ban deprived him of the right to rule, but that the raising of it did not restore him to the kingship. The utter failure of the second ban shows the futility of the Pope's efforts, for it helped Henry's cause instead of hurting it. The real victor at Canossa was Henry IV, not Gregory VII. He foiled all the plans of his enemies. As Nitzsch, II, 100, has said: "Dieser Akt einer furchtbaren, rücksichtslosen Energie gab den Vermittlern die Oberhand über das Misstrauen des Papstes." Whether Henry himself devised this astonishing way out of the situation in which he found himself at the diet of Tribur ("inito tam occulto quam astuto consilio" [*Vita Heinrichi*, chap. iii, p. 13]), or whether it was suggested to him by someone else, is a matter of conjecture. Personally I am inclined to think that the suggestion came from Hugh of Cluny, always one of Henry's staunch supporters, who was with him when he was suspended from the kingship at Tribur. Lambert of Hersfeld ended his history at this point (1077), giving up in despair any hope of resolving the complex mass of material which he had collected, and using almost the identical valedictory words of Lampridius, in his *Vita Sept. Severi*. After the exhibition of partisanship, falsification, and mendacity which he perpetrated under the guise of "history" it is small wonder that he did so.

man influence. Fortunately for the papacy his timidity frustrated his election.

A long deadlock ensued. The intervening months had seen a new broadcasting of that polemical literature to which the war of investiture gave rise. Guido of Ferrara endeavored in a pamphlet to demonstrate that Gregory VII had been a schismatic, and implored the factions to recognize the anti-pope. The imperialist blast was all the more disconcerting to papalists for the reason that their own camp was divided. Hugh of Lyons and the Gregorian intransigents formed a radical group of "die-hards," who would accept no compromise. Things seemed to be coming Henry IV's way of themselves. Rudolf of Swabia, the first anti-king, had been slain in battle (1080). The second anti-king was a hopeless nonentity. The rebellious Saxons were cowed, if not completely crushed. The papal partisans in Germany were silent and submissive. With great astuteness the Emperor had expressed his wish to have peace, his regret for the misfortunes of Gregory VII, and declared himself willing to submit to the second excommunication provided its legality were established. To this end he convoked the Saxon bishops at Gerstungen. The papal legate in Germany, Otto of Ostia (the future Pope Urban II), who had been sent thither to draw together again the threads of papal interest, made a tactical blunder in consenting to this conference and designated Gebhard, archbishop of Salzburg, as the Gregorian advocate.

But the cards were stacked against him in advance. Wezil of Mainz, a Henrician partisan, boldly produced a false decretal which seemed to favor the Emperor's contention, and the Archbishop was not a clever enough scholar to discern the forgery. The result was that the bishops refused to sustain the alleged papal act. Udo of Hildesheim, his brother Conrad, Count Theodoric of Katlenburg, and others made their peace with the King. After Easter, 1085, Henry IV convened a synod at Mainz whose members triumphantly sustained the King's cause. The composition of this synod is worth noting. Besides the three Rhenish bishops—Wezil of Mainz, Egilbert of Trier, Sigwin of Cologne—sixteen other bishops had responded to Henry's summons, among them

Theodoric of Verdun, Conrad of Utrecht, Robert of Bamberg, Otto of Constance, and Udo of Hildesheim. Hermann of Metz was the sole prelate west of the Rhine not an avowed Henrician partisan. He had appealed to Gregory VII for counsel and had been the recipient of that famous papal epistle in which the Pope had fully set forth his theocratic ideas. Hermann henceforth was an eager papal partisan, so that Henry IV now deposed him and established the Abbot of St. Arnulf in his stead.

Certain now that the German episcopate was well in hand, Henry IV turned to Saxony to achieve its final pacification. Here, where Udo of Hildesheim and Hartwig of Hersfeld had labored earnestly in the King's behalf, affirming that the crown would not displant the old Saxon privileges, most of the Saxon nobles made their submission. The counter-king, and the few supporters which he still had, fled across the Elbe. The Abbot of Hersfeld was installed in the archbishopric of Magdeburg; Merseburg, Meissen, and Minden were filled with Henrician bishops. The same sort of displacement of Gregorian bishops by loyal supporters of the imperial cause took place in Bavaria. All feudal and ecclesiastical opposition to Henry IV was dead in Germany. From the Elbe to the Rhine, from the Alps to the sea, the cause of anti-king and pope seemed at an end. In Italy the Countess Matilda of Tuscany was shut up in the castle of Canossa, practically a prisoner.

Meantime, what of the papacy? In the College of Cardinals at this juncture the Norman influence was in control. The policy of Robert Guiscard was both anti-imperial and anti-Gregorian. He feared both the German power in Italy and the growth of the theocratic power of the papacy. Guiscard's candidate for the throne of St. Peter was the pliable Abbot of Monte Cassino, and in the issue he was elected pope, taking the name Victor III. The choice antagonized the Bishop of Ostia and Hugh of Lyons, each of whom had been strong candidates, and a rupture of the College of Cardinals ensued. The new Pope's early demise, however, soon liberated the papal office from immediate Norman control. The factions were united again, and finally, nearly three

years after Gregory VII's death, his ideas may be said to have returned to their august seat when Otto of Ostia was finally elected to be pope, taking the name of Urban II, a name destined to win everlasting renown in history. For Urban II was the organizer of the First Crusade (1095).¹ The zeal of the cleric and the avarice of the feudality had consumed the land. When there was nothing else for the Pope to offer the nobles as an inducement for further support he proffered the enslavement of the wives of married priests as a bribe.²

The influence of the First Crusade upon the peace of Germany was manifested in a drawing off toward the east of the most boisterous fighting element. In 1101 a German army under Welf of Bavaria and the archbishops of Salzburg and Passau went on an expedition to the Orient. Welf died on the return homeward.

The authority of Henry IV was everywhere acknowledged in Germany.³ But the overture which the Emperor made to Rome in 1101 was repulsed, and the excommunication⁴ of him renewed in sharper form. At the diet of Mainz in 1102 a general peace for the whole Empire was decreed to last for four years. The peasantry, and especially the burgher class in the towns, profited much from the order which prevailed in the realm. Cologne became notoriously prosperous.

¹ The intricate history of papal politics in the years immediately following the death of Gregory VII has been best studied by F. Chalandon, *La domination normande en Italie et en Sicilie*, Vol. I, chap. xii; and more recently by A. Fliche, "La crise religieuse depuis la mort de Grégoire VII jusqu'à l'avènement d'Urban II," *Revue des cours et des conférences*, Vol. XXIV, Nos. 1-2.

² *Synod. Melfi*. (1089), canon 12, cited by Lea, *Sacerdotal Celibacy* (3d ed.), I, 289.

³ Even Henry IV's enemies, when not blinded by prejudice and indulging in vituperation, admitted his ability and force of character. Ekkehard, *Chron.* (1106); Pertz, VI, 239: "Pluribus autem testibus comprobare poterimus, quod nemo nostris temporibus, natu, ingenio, fortitudine et audacia, statura etiam totaque corporis elegantia videatur fascibus imperialibus ipso aptior, si tamen in conflictu vitiorum homo non degeneraret vel succumberet interior."

⁴ Urban II declared it was not murder to kill those who were excommunicated (*Ep. ad Godfred episcopum Lucan*, citing Gratian, *Decret.*, cap. xlvii, Qu. 5: "Non enim eos homicidas arbitramur quos adversus excommunicatos zelo catholice matris ardent, aliquos eorum trucidare contigerit." A council in 1105 ordered the disinterment of bodies of excommunicates (*Annal. Hild.* [Pertz, III, 108]).

But there were tares in the wheat. Many of the German nobles who had battered on the civil war for years were loath to obey the peace. Others who had once supported Henry IV's monarchical designs now took alarm at the growth of the royal power and drifted over to the side of the Pope and his feudal partisans in Germany. The *ministeriales*, of whom by now there were thousands, who had been fed on the meat of power too much, in imitation of the feudality built their castles on the hilltops and assumed the life of a riotous baronage, to the anger and dismay of the peasantry.

The insurrection of the Emperor's son Henry was based upon these elements, and by 1103 the kingdom again began to be racked by civil war.¹ The reason given by the latter, that he was not bound to obey an excommunicated ruler, was a mere pretext. His main motive was that he was fearful of losing the succession, and the instigation of the papal partisans and the discontented feudality urged him forward. The insurrection, as was natural, rapidly spread over Thuringia and Saxony, the ancient battle-ground of opposition to the Salians. To make matters worse for the emperor, the bishops who had hitherto largely supported him now deserted the imperial cause on account of Henry IV's friendly attitude toward the burghers in the towns, between whom and the bishops there was an enduring feud. The secession of the bishops, too, was accelerated, owing to the fact that Henry IV, on account of the dilapidation of the fisc, had increased the taxes upon the church.

¹ "Patria ab utraque parte nimio incendio vastatur."—*Ann. Rosenv.* (1103).

Herman of Tournai explicitly says that Urban II provoked the rebellion of Henry V: "Interea callidus papa Henricum adolescentem filium Henrici imperatoris litteris adversus patrem concitat et ut ecclesiae Dei auxilietur, admonet; ille, regni cupidus . . . (Achery, II, 914). Even Gerhoh, *De statu ecclesiae*, chap. xviii, a papal partisan, says that Henry V was crowned "Urbani papae hortatu accedente." The *Annales* of Hildesheim declare that the idea of inciting Henry IV's son against him was of divine inspiration: "Apostolicus autem ut audivit inter patrem et filium discidium, sperans haec a Deo evenisse." Herman of Tournai, who saw the letter Henry IV wrote to Philip of France in regard to Prince Henry's rebellion, wrote: "Quam si quis legerit et non fleverit, videtur mihi duri esse cordis," Achery, II, 914. The *Chron. Breve Leodiense* (Martène and Durand, *Anecd.*, IV, 1407) flays Prince Henry: "contra jus naturae et fas legum." Alberic of Trois-Fontaines said: "Sub specie religionis eo quod pater ejus a romanis pontificibus excommunicatus . . . videres . . . quod contra legem naturae, filius in patrem assurgeret."

After two years of desultory conflict Henry IV was compelled to resign the crown; he had even to recite the form of confession of his sins—the *Confiteor*—as a crowning humiliation. Henry IV fled from Ingelheim and threw himself upon the protection of the Rhenish burghers. Flanders, Lorraine, and the Rhinelands joined with Saxony and Thuringia. In the midst of the struggle the Emperor died, on August 7, 1106, his last act having been to send his signet ring and sword to his rebellious son.

It now remained for Henry V to settle the long controversy. He had played with his father's enemies as a means to an end. His professions had been mere pretenses, for he was a true Salian in the conception of his prerogative. But his path was smoother than that of his father. For the struggle had dragged on so long¹ and the exhaustion of both combatants was so great that room had been made for a compromise party to get a hearing. A generation of rack and ruin began to bring surcease of combat through very exhaustion. The strife had given birth to an enormous amount of polemical literature.²

Out of the bewildering maze of passions and conflicting ideas a mediate thought gradually crystallized. An unknown monk of Hersfeld, who was the author of the tract entitled *De unitate ecclesiae conservanda*, and Wido of Ferrara, author of the *De scismate Hildebrandi*, were the chief imperialist pamphleteers, and urged a double and simultaneous investiture by both church and state: the one for the bishop's office, the other for his lands. Already before the close of the eleventh century Yves de Chartres and Hildebert of Lavaradin, bishop of Tours, had begun diligently to labor in search of a general principle which would reconcile the

¹ For the anarchy in Germany see Hauck, IV, 105.

² For this literature see Mirbt, *Libelli de Lite*, and his *Die Publizistik im Zeitalter Gregors VII* (1894); Bernheim, *Zur Gesch. des Wormser Konkordats* (1878); Willing, *Zur Gesch. des Investiturstreites* (1896); Heinzelmann, *Die Färfenser Streitschriften, etc.* (1904); Imbart de la Tour, "La polémique religieuse et les publicistes à l'époque de Grégoire VII," *Revue des Questions Historiques* (1907), pp. 226 f.; Fliche, *Études sur la polémique religieuse à l'époque de Grégoire VII: polémique durant la querelle du Investiture* (1916)."

issue yet preserve the principle for which the church contended.¹

In his perturbation Pascal II turned toward France for support, and in rapid succession sent four separate legates thither: John of Gubbio, cardinal of Ste Anastasia; Benedict, cardinal of Ste Eudoxia; Richard of Albano, deacon of St. Stephen's in Metz; and Bruno, bishop of Segni. On December 2, 1104, the Pope raised the ban of excommunication under which King Philip I had been living for years, closed his eyes to the latter's misconduct with Countess Bertrada of Anjou, and followed this action by liberal concessions concerning episcopal elections in France, yielding papal preferment to royal choice.

There is ground for the probability that some sort of compromise was arrived at not unsimilar to the Concordat of 1107 made between Henry I of England and Anselm, which certainly was the prototype of the Concordat of Worms in 1122. In that instrument the English king renounced the right to invest the bishop with ring and crozier, but retained the prerogative to exact homage of the bishop.

Some such entente seems to have been arranged between Philip I and Pascal II, owing, so far as we can judge, to the conciliatory influence of Yves of Chartres.²

How far along the road of compromise the papacy had traveled within twenty-two years may be appreciated when we compare these terms with the uncompromising ones of Gregory VII. In his eyes the church had the whole and exclusive right to dispose both of the bishop's office and the lands pertaining to the see. But now, in Pascal II's time the lands of the church are conceded to be fiefs of the king (*regalia*) which the kings had donated to the church subject to the exaction of feudal rights and including royal investiture.

If we cut the issue of lay investiture down to the marrow

¹ Barth, *Hildebert von Lavardin (1056-1135)* (Stuttgart, 1906), chap. ii. For French indifference to the significance of the war of investiture in its early stages see Flach, *Origines de l'anc. France*, III, 279.

² B. Monod, *Essai sur les rapports de Pascal II avec Philippe Ier (1090-1108)* (Paris, 1907), pp. 90-91.

by putting the question of simony to one side for a moment, an analysis of the evidence, as Scharnagel has made it, shows that there were three interpretations of what was meant by the term "investiture."¹ According to the first, lay investiture concerned not only the property of the church, but the church itself, its independence, its dignity, its authority. The Gregorians gave the word this sweeping application in order to make the contention of Henry IV appear to be as monstrous as possible. According to the second theory, investiture could only be given to those bishops canonically elected, and had to be given to them; but the bishop was bound to swear homage and fidelity to the secular power. Until his open espousal (after long hesitation) of the cause of Rudolph of Swabia, whom the German rebels put up as counter-king to Henry IV, Gregory VII seems to have been inclined to tolerate this form of investiture, but the Emperor refused to concede any abatement of his prerogative. But as the conflict became more bitter the papacy hardened, and Urban II in 1095 forbade the bishops to perform homage. The third interpretation took a middle stand between these two extremes, acknowledged the legitimacy of both contestants, and aimed to effect a compromise by providing for simultaneous and due recognition of the rights both of the church and of the secular power.

The pacific current of French ecclesiastical thought at this time was peculiarly effective, for in France the strife over lay investiture never reached the colossal dimensions it had within the Empire, although the Gregorian claims had produced acute relations between the papacy and Philip I, the dukes of Normandy (who were at the same time, be it remembered, also kings of England), the counts of Anjou, and others of the great French feudality.

In this atmosphere, less surcharged with enmity, a moderate and liberal group of the French clergy was formed, imbued with the ideas of Cardinal Damieni, who in the early days of the Cluny movement had attempted to distinguish between the purely ecclesiastical and the feudo-temporal

¹ Scharnagel, *Der Begriff der Investitur in den Quellen und der Literatur des Investiturstreites* (Stuttgart, 1908).

nature of the bishop's office, and had advocated a compromise settlement of the issue.¹ Progressive without being radical, resolute without being violent, this third party of moderates gradually grew in influence until, with the exhaustion of both combatants, it at last began to find a hearing.²

This compromise form of settlement slowly increased the number of its adherents and formally triumphed in England in 1107 with the concordat made between Henry I and Anselm, by which election of bishops and abbots was to be in the hands of the chapters, but held at the king's court, the consecration to be in the hands of the bishops, but the temporal estates of the church to be conferred by the king. This English form of settlement had a powerful influence upon France and French politico-ecclesiastical thought.³

¹ Hinschius, *Kirchenrecht*, II, 552 ff.; Kayser, *Placidus von Nonantula*: Gierke-Maitland, *Political Theories of the Middle Ages*, nn. 34, 38, 46; J. de Ghellinck, "Polémique durant la querelle des investitures," *Révue des Quest. Hist.* (N.S.), XCIII, 71-89. The last article contains much additional bibliography. It is significant of the depth to which Rome had intellectually degenerated that during the whole eleventh century the Hildebrandine propaganda had no Roman representative. All the thinking was done by Lombard and Franco-Burgundian publicists (Wattenbach, II, 195). Donizo of Sutri is an exceedingly untrustworthy source. Originally a zealous partisan of the papacy and author of a tract against simony, when removed from the see of Piacenza by Urban II for misconduct, he became a violent detractor of the Pope and the countess Matilda. See Fournier, *Bib. de l'école d. ch.* (May-Oct. 1915); Martens, *Theol. Quartalschrift*, Vol. LXV (1883).

² Consult Esmein, *La question des investitures dans les lettres d'Ive de Chartres* (1889); Fournier, "Yves de Chartres et le droit canonique," *Compte rendu du quatrième congrès scientifique internat. des catholiques* (Fribourg en Suisse, 1898); Lavissee, *Histoire de France*, II, 2, pp. 218-20; Gierke-Maitland, *op. cit.*, n. 38. Fournier, *Bib. de l'école d. chartes*, LVII, 645-98; LVIII, 26-77, has an exhaustive study of *Les Collections canoniques attribuées à Yves de Chartres*. These are the *Panormia*, the *Decretum*, from which the *Panormia* was abridged, and the *Tripartita*. He concludes that Yves was the author of the first two and of two-thirds of the last, and that the Bishop's purpose was ecclesiastical reform in anticipation of the councils called by Urban II. Yves of Chartres' ideas may be summarized as follows: ecclesiastical election, popular acclamation, papal approval, lay investiture of temporalities. Barth, *Hilbert von Lavardin*, chap. ii, deals largely with the conciliatory ideas of Yves of Chartres. Schum, *Die Politik Papst Paschals II gegen Kaiser Heinrich V im Jahr 1112*, gives interesting details about Yves de Chartres, Geoffrey de Vendome, etc.

³ The best presentation of the Anglo-French angle of the conflict over investiture will be found in Boehmer, *Kirche und Staat in England und in der Normandie im XI. und XII. Jahrhundert* (Leipzig, 1899), Part II, in which he surveys all the literature pertaining to the issue in France and England before 1107, i.e., the writings of Yves of Chartres and Hugh of Fleury, of Lanfranc and Anselm, of Gilbert Crispin

This compromise solution was ultimately applied to Germany and Italy in the Concordat of Worms in 1122, with the difference that in the former kingdom homage preceded consecration, while in Italy and Burgundy consecration was made to precede homage.

But there were still rocks and shoals ahead, and years were to elapse before a settlement finally could be made. The idea of compromise was distasteful to both Emperor and Pope, and even when each began so to incline from sheer exhaustion, neither dared take the initiative for fear of letting his cards slip out of his hand.

Henry V began his reign aided by the papal party.¹ His election was at Mainz on December 25, 1105, while his father was yet alive. Henry IV was deserted by almost all in Germany except the burghers of the Rhine cities.² The new emperor—or rather counter-Emperor—immediately sent an embassy to Rome,³ the chief members of which were Bruno, archbishop of Trier; Henry, archbishop of Magdeburg; Otto, bishop of Bamberg; Eberhard, bishop of Eichstädt; and Gebhard, bishop of Constance, the last an intimate friend of Pascal II. It is important also to notice that the historian, Ekkehard of Aura, was in the embassy, a circumstance which gives his narrative unusual weight.⁴

But the embassy sent by Henry V failed to reach Rome. It was intercepted by a young count named Adalbert, acting for Henry IV, according to Ekkehard, and all the members of it were captured except Gebhard of Constance, who finally got to Rome.⁵ Presumably Gebhard performed the mission of the entire embassy, for at the Council of Guastalla no evidence of friction between Henry V and the papacy was evidenced. This Council convened in the last week of October,

and Hervert of Norwich (Thetford). The hundred pages (pp. 177–269) are masterly in which the chronology of these writings is examined and the ideas of the authors analyzed with reference to ordination of priests' sons, celibacy, relations of church and state, etc.

¹ Ekkehard, *Chronicon Universale*; Migne, CLIV, 999.

² *Ibid.*

³ Gregorovius, *Rome in the Middle Ages*, IV, 2, p. 324.

⁴ Ekkehard in Migne, CLIV, 1005.

⁵ *Ibid.*, col. 1003.

1106. Ekkehard was present and records that Pascal II promised to come to Mainz at the next Christmas.¹ A serious endeavor seems to have been made at Guastalla to adjust the grounds of feud between pope and emperor. A decree was issued ecclesiastically legitimizing those bishops and lesser clergy who had been ordained during the war of investiture.² No mention was made of that formidable word "investiture."

If the papal party had cherished the hope that the new ruler would be inclined to their interests it was soon disillusioned. A Guelf emperor was as impossible as a Ghibelline pope. Before the year 1106 was far along it was evident that the Salian leopard had not changed his spots. Henry V invested the bishops in Germany with both ring and staff,³ against which the Council of Troyes in the next year protested. It is not surprising, therefore, to find that the Pope did not come to Germany as he had promised.⁴ Instead, he went to France and spent the whole winter (1106-7) either at Cluny or at St. Denis.⁵ At Châlons-sur-Marne in May, 1107, Henry V's ambassadors made uncompromising demand for a

¹ *Ibid.*, cols. 1013, 1015.

² *Chronica regia Coloniensis* (folio ed.), p. 45.

³ William of Malmesbury, the English historian, was not far wrong at this time when he wrote (*Gesta*, sec. 420): "The emperor had in his favor all the bishops and abbots of the kingdom . . . because Charlemagne . . . had conferred almost all the country on the churches, most wisely considering that the clergy would not so soon cast off their fidelity to their lord as the laity; and besides, if the laity were to rebel, they might be restrained by the authority of episcopal excommunication and weight of power" (cf. Waitz, VII, 203, n. 2).

For a modern characterization, which shows that William of Malmesbury knew what he was writing about: "Seit Otto dem Grossen nahmen die deutschen Bischöfe eine kirchlich-weltliche Doppelstellung ein, sie waren zugleich hohe Würdenträger der Kirche und des Reiches. Als Diener der Kirche waren sie ihrem Oberhaupte, dem Nachfolger Petri, Gehorsam schuldig. Als Inhaber von Reichsgütern waren sie dem Könige verpflichtet; ihm hatten sie auch meist die Erhebung auf ihre Stühle zu danken. Und endlich haben sich nicht wenige Bischöfe auch an den Bestrebungen der weltlichen Fürsten beteiligt" (Löffler, *Die Westfälischen Bischöfe im Investiturstreit* [Halle, 1903]).

⁴ Ekkehard, *op. cit.*, col. 1015.

⁵ For his activities in France at this season see Suger, *Vita Lud. Crassi* (ed. Molinier, 1887), chap. ix, and Luchaire, *Cat. des actes de Louis VI*, Introd., pp. cxxxiii-iv; *Inst. mon. de la France*, I, 140; Mühlbacher, *Papstwahl*, p. 42; D'Arbois de Jubainville, *Hist. des comtes de Champagne*, II, 96-97.

settlement of the war of investiture.¹ Deserted by the Countess Matilda, abandoned by the Normans in Italy, even indifferently regarded by Cluny, save the "irreconcilables," with the Gregorian party everywhere in Germany and Italy broken and reduced,² the Pope was powerless. A synod at Troyes protested against the Emperor's demands,³ a cry of indignation went up from the Italian clergy.⁴ But their wrath was impotent, for no one moved a hand. For four years Pascal II hesitated and temporized, while a torrent of invective and reproach was poured out in Europe.

Meanwhile, in 1110, after the diet at Regensburg was over, Henry V had entered Italy with his army.⁵ Reluctantly the Pope, early in 1111; when the Emperor was at Sutri, made an overture, proposing a convention by the terms of which the state was to resign the right of investiture in return for renunciation to the crown by the church of the fiefs and political rights acquired by the church since the reign of Charlemagne.⁶

¹ They were Bruno, archbishop of Trier; Reginard, bishop of Halberstadt; and Burchard of Münster. Suger, who characterizes Bruno as "vir elegans et jocundus, eloquentie et sapientie copiosus," gives a vivid account of the meeting. Cf. B. Monod, "Étude sur les relations entre le St. Siège et la royaume de France de 1099 à 1108," *Bib. de l'école d. Chartes* (1904), pp. 99 f.

² *Annal. Hild.* (1104, 1105); Hauck, III, 885.

³ Suger, p. 28. The acts of the Council are lost, but the evidence for its deliberations may be found in Mansi, *Concilia*, XX, cols. 1217-20. Cf. Hauck, III, 894 f. The *Annal. Hild.*, p. 60, says that even Gebhard of Constance was censured.

⁴ *Chronica regia Coloniensis* (ed. Waitz), p. 48.

⁵ Suger, *Vita Ludovici Crassi*, chap. ix, says that Henry V had 30,000 men with him. Ekkehard, *op. cit.* (1019), gives an account of the diet of Regensburg.

⁶ *Paschalis II Privilegium primae conventionis* (February 12, 1111), in Doeberl, *Monumenta Selecta*, III, No. XX A; also in *MGH, LL.* II, 68 f. The preamble, after reciting the evils which have penetrated the church by reason of its participation in feudal affairs concludes: "Tibi itaque fili karissime rex Heinricus, et nunc per officium nostrum Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, et regno regia dimittenda precipimus, que ad regnum manifeste pertinebant, tempore Karoli, Lodoicy, et ceterorum predecessorum tuorum. [This spared the temporal power of the pope.] Interdicimus et sub anathematis distractionem, ne quis episcoporum seu abbatum, presentium vel futurorum, eadem regalia invadant. Id est, civitates, ducatus, marchias, comitatus, monetas, teloneum, mercatum, advocatias regni, jura centurionum, et curtes que manifeste regni erant, cum pertinentiis suis, militia et castra regni. . . . Porro, ecclesias cum oblationibus [i.e., pious gifts in the form of produce or money], et

Henry V accepted the terms on condition that they were ratified by the bishops and nobles of Germany. It is difficult to believe that either the Emperor or the Pope conceived for a moment that such a radical solution would be possible. Henry V must have been "bluffing"; as for Pascal II, perhaps he hoped that latent sympathy might be stirred in his behalf if he thus exposed the papacy's extremity. He could hardly have indulged the illusion that the German bishops would passively renounce their great worldly power. He knew them too well for that.¹ Had not Urban II at the Council of Milan in 1096 said that even parish priests conducted themselves like petty kings? The German clergy had too long been fed upon flesh by the Saxon and Salian kings to renounce it now. Temporally, feudally, they were unwilling to yield and too strong to be coerced by either emperor or pope.

The supreme test of the church's sincerity was made in 1111, when Pascal II offered to buy the church's freedom from lay investiture at the price of renunciation of the church's temporalities and secular power. At once a storm of

hereditariis possessionibus [i.e., gifts of land owned in fee simple, and not feudally], que ad regnum manifeste non pertinebant, liberas manere decernimus."

Not every landed possession of the church was a fief; for if it had been an allod at the time of donation, it so remained. Most of the donations made since the beginning of Saxon times were fiefs, however, so that the effect of the decree, if executed, would have been to reduce the church to the proportion of land which it had possessed in the time of Louis the Pious. This would have been far from cutting the church to the quick, for even so early the church's landed wealth was enormous. Placidus of Nonantula, an ardent curialist, argued that the church needed its great wealth for support of the poor, and that tithes, etc., were not enough (see Kayser, *Placidus von Nonantula*, p. 17). There is little doubt of the wisdom of requiring the church to evacuate its purely feudal lands. But it may have been going too far, in an age of *Naturalwirtschaft*, to expect the church to renounce, too, its endowments in the form of tolls, market rights, etc. These were the very sources of income which tended to emancipate it from the *Naturalwirtschaft* of the earlier medieval period, and which would enable the church to keep abreast of the economic changes of the time. The question was not a doctrinaire one, but one of enormous practical interest. I owe this important suggestion to my friend, Professor Charles H. Haskins of Harvard University. The latest work on Pascal II is by Korbe, *Die Stellung Papst Urbans II und Pascals II zu den Klöstern* (Greifswald, 1910).

¹ "In your kingdom," Pascal II had written Henry V the year before, "bishops and abbots are so occupied in secular affairs that they are compelled to frequent the county courts and to do soldiering. The ministers of the altar have become ministers of the court" (*Gesta Trev.*, I, 222). The Pope refused to go to Germany, alleging the "barbarous" manners of the people there (Ekkehard, *Chron.* [1107]).

protest arose. Like the rich young man who came to Jesus (Matt. 19:16-22), the church had too great possessions to make the sacrifice. Its idealization of poverty was belied by its avarice. A few rare spirits like Arnold of Brescia¹ daringly advocated the true remedy and expiated at the stake the zeal of the reformer born out of due season. The greatest spirits of the Middle Ages, like St. Francis, Dante, Nicholas de Clamanges, for example, deplored the church's choice. But few churchmen, and never any pope save Pascal II, had the courage to advocate the true solution of the church's corruption. The argument and the protest of the church of Liège, at the height of the strife over lay investiture, fell upon deaf ears.²

Pascal II was compelled to cancel the agreement, but proffered no other form of settlement.³ Henry V brusquely demanded imperial control of episcopal elections and unconditional right of investiture. The Pope, after enduring two months of imprisonment, yielded.⁴ If the first concession had angered the German bishops, the second enraged the Gregorians.⁵ A council at Vienne condemned the papal action,

¹ In spite of the enmity between St. Bernard and Arnold of Brescia they were at one over the evils flowing from the temporal position of the church (see Bernard, *Epp.*, No. 238, to Eugene III, and his *De consideratione*, *passim*. Gerhoh of Reichersberg shared Arnold's views (G egorovius, *Rome in Middle Ages*, IV, 2, 547, n. 2).

² In justifying itself against the threats of Pascal II the church of Liège quoted St. Ambrose with telling force: "Si Christus non habuit imaginem Caesaris, cur dedit census? Non de suo dedit: sed reddidit mundo quae erant mundi. Et tu, si non vis esse obnoxius Caesari, noli habere quae mundi sunt. Sed si habes divitias, obnoxius es Caesari. Si vis nihil debere regi terreno, dimitte omnia et sequere Christum" (Udalr. Babenb., *Cod. Lib.*, II, chap. ccxxxiv).

³ Pascal II seems honestly to have regretted the church's temporalities (*Ep. 22 ad Henricum V*; Mansi, *Concilia*, XX, 1007; cf. *Vita Paschalis*, Muratori, SS. III, 360; *Annales Romaldi* (1111), (Pertz, V, 473). Schum (*Jenaer Literatur-Zeitung*, 1877, No. 8) demonstrates that Pascal II really sought liberty of the church by separation of the temporal power.

⁴ Doeberl, *op. cit.*, No. 20 B. On these two privileges see Gerson Peiser, *Der deutsche Investiturstreit unter König Heinrich V bis zum päpstlichen Privileg vom April 13, 1111*, and Hauck, III, 894-903.

⁵ Pascal II's letter of October 29, 1111, to the Emperor shows the sentiment of revolt abroad in the church: "Ex quo vobiscum illam quam nostis pactionem fecimus, non solum longius positi, sed ipsi etiam qui circa nos sunt, cervicem adversus nos erexerunt, et intestinis bellis viscera nostra collacerant et multo faciem nostram rubore perfundant" (Jaffé, V, 283; Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CLXIII, 291; *Chron. Cass.*, IV, chap. xxxi; Suger, *Vita Lud. Crass.*, chap. ix; cf. Hauck, III, 904-5).

reaffirmed in energetic words that lay investiture was heresy, and held Henry V up to the obloquy of Christendom.¹

The radical Gregorians in Italy raised a furious outcry. Bruno of Segni even attacked Pascal II himself, for which insult he was deprived of the abbotship of Monte Cassino. The unfortunate Pope cast about for some means of renouncing the agreement which he had made, and a council was convened at the Lateran on March 28, 1112. The representatives were all Italians except two transalpine bishops. This fact is interesting, for it indicates that the old pro-imperial and German clergy in Italy had become wholly displaced during the long conflict.

The spokesman of the Gregorians was Bishop Gerard of Angoulême, who argued that the agreement made by Pascal II did not expressly forbid a revocation of it. The resolution of the council is a masterpiece of ecclesiastical casuistry, though it must be said that the method of revocation was no worse than the means by which the agreement had first been obtained.²

Neither the findings of the Council of Vienne nor those of the Lateran had any appreciable effect on Henry's position in Germany.³ The ban served as a pretext for a feudal noble here and there to rebel against the king. But the crown was too strong to fear a repetition of what had happened in Germany in 1076, until the Emperor's defeat at the battle of Welfesholz on February 11, 1115, gave new courage to the Gregorians and filled Henry V with misgiving.⁴ Then Kuno of Praeneste was bold enough to carry the excommunication of the Council of Vienne into Germany. But Pascal II was too timid to heap the papal excommunication upon the ban of the Council.

The reason for the pope's prudence is to be found in the fact that Henry V had again come into Italy, where the great Countess Matilda had just died (1115), in order to prevent the execution of her will, in which she had made the papacy the beneficiary of her vast possessions in Tuscany. In spite

¹ Labbé, *Concil.*, XII, 1183. For extracts from sources, Richter, III, 2, pp. 575-77.

² Labbé, XII, 1163-82. ³ Giesebrecht, III, 862. ⁴ *Chron. Ursperg.* (1116).

of the Emperor's efforts to secure a conference with Pascal II, he was unable to bring it about. The pope was too wary again to be caught in the imperial clutches and replied that all matters touching the relation of pope and emperor must be deferred until another council, which he would summon in due time. But the Pope's call was never issued, for Pascal II died on January 21, 1118. After the death of Pascal II the influence of the conciliatory party rapidly increased. The control of things almost wholly passed out of the hands of the Pope, less out of the hands of the Emperor, into those of the penetrating canonists who finally resolved the issue.¹

His successor was John of Gaeta, the late Pope's chancellor, who took the name of Gelasius II. Henry V, by this time grown impatient of the way in which Pascal II had dodged him, tried unsuccessfully to take the pontiff prisoner by a *coup de main*. Failing this attempt, the Emperor had recourse to the old practice of creating a counter-pope and put up Archbishop Burdinus of Braga, who took the name of Gregory VIII.² He was a mere tool whom Henry V soon discarded and imprisoned when the door opened to another solution to the controversy.

Meantime, Gelasius II had fled to France, summoned a synod at Vienne, of whose deliberations nothing is known,³ and excommunicated Henry V and his papal puppet.⁴ At the same time, in Germany, Kuno of Praeneste and Adalbert of Mainz called an opposition synod at Cologne in May, 1118, and at Fritzlar on Saxon soil in July.⁵

The whole situation abruptly changed when Gelasius II died on January 18, 1119, and was succeeded by Gui of

¹ For a masterly exposition of the whole complex issue—the opinions and contentions of the two contending parties, the obscurities which enveloped the theories of secular and ecclesiastical supremacy, the extent of the domains of the Church and of the Empire, always a bone of contention between the principals, the exhaustion of both parties, the passionate desire for peace with honor, the pressure of the German nobility upon Henry V, the pitiable turning and twisting of Pascal II, the rapid development of the influence of the canonists, etc.—see Bernheim, *Zur Geschichte des Wormser Konkordates* (Göttingen, 1878).

² *Chron. Cassinense* (Migne, CLXXIII, 885); *Annales Romani*, SS. V, 478–79.

³ Labbé, XII, 1249.

⁴ *Chronica regia Col.*, p. 57.

⁵ Ekkehard, *ibid.*, col. 1039.

Burgundy, the archbishop of Vienne, who, on February 2, 1119, became Pope Calixtus II.¹ During this decade the conciliatory ideas of Yves of Chartres and Hugh of Fleury gained ground, which the English settlement of 1106 reinforced.

It seemed a favorable opportunity to terminate the bitter strife. Calixtus II had been a violent opponent of Henry V, but seems to have been sobered by the serious position of his office. On the other hand, the Emperor, too, was in a more conciliatory mood than he had been in the early part of his reign. He sorely wanted peace, for the situation in Germany gave him great anxiety.

Henry V summoned the diet at Tribur, the date of which we do not know, where he proffered the olive branch to ambassadors of Calixtus II. The incongruity of the Pope dealing with an excommunicated ruler does not seem to have occurred to anyone. After these preliminaries the Pope began to negotiate more directly with the Emperor and sent the Bishop of Châlons and the Abbot of Cluny to Strasburg. We have a detailed account of these negotiations in the *Relatio de concilio Remensi*, written by one Hesso, "scholasticus."

The argument which seems to have had greatest weight with Henry V was that the English King had surrendered the right of investiture without losing the regalia. Calixtus II was at Paris when word was brought to him of the Emperor's inclination to make peace with the church after the compromise form. But he still mistrusted. "Utinam jam factum esset: si sine fraude fieri posset," he exclaimed. The Pope now sent Cardinal Gregory and the Bishop of Ostia to confer with Henry V, who met them between Verdun and Metz. Here the formal documents were prepared which the Emperor agreed to exchange with Calixtus II in person at Mouzon on October 23.

On October 19, 1119, the council opened at Rheims, where hopes for peace ran high. Four days later the Pope went to Mouzon. His suspicions were made more certain when he discovered that Henry V had come with an army at his back.

¹ Ulysse Robert, *Histoire du pape Calixte II* (1891); Hauck, III, 907; Lamprecht, II, 383-87; Ender, *Die Stellung des Papstes Calixt II zu den Klöstern* (Greifswald, 1913).

He had no mind to fall into the trap which had caught Pascal II, and returned to Rheims. Henry V was re-excommunicated and the council was dismissed. But the door was even then left ajar for the possibility of peace, for a canon was adopted which specifically declared that the prohibition of lay investiture applied *only to the office* of bishops and abbots as such, and not to their regalia.

In Germany everyone wanted peace. In a short time a commission of twelve princes was established, the members of which were divided equally between the two factions, who should draft an agreement to be submitted to a diet which was to be held at Würzburg.

The diet convened on September 29, 1121. The Emperor was now as politic as he had been impolitic at Mouzon, and left everything, at least outwardly, to the princes. The separation of investiture from regalia was agreed upon, and Bishop Otto of Bamberg, Duke Henry of Bavaria, and Count Berenger were sent to Rome to secure the cancellation of the ban of excommunication. Later the Bishop of Speyer and the Abbot of Fulda were also sent to Rome and returned to Germany in company with two cardinals and the Bishop of Ostia.

Exactly a year had elapsed since the diet of Würzburg had met. On September 8, 1122, a council met at Worms. The Concordat of Worms in 1122 distinguished between the spiritual and the temporal functions of bishops and abbots and instituted a double investiture, the Emperor investing the new incumbent with the fiefs and secular authority of the office, the Pope or his legate with the spiritual title and authority.¹ The loaf was divided, apparently into equal portions. But the pope had the difference between a half loaf and no bread.

Yet the Concordat of Worms really settled nothing permanently, for the papacy soon claimed that the terms of the Concordat were only applicable to the rule of Henry V and that the church was not so bound to his successors. Neither Pope nor Emperor, as the future was to show, nor the German bishops, were satisfied with the halfway nature of the

¹ Ulysse Robert, *Calixte II*, chap. x.

arrangement. At most it was only an armistice. It glossed the question; it did not determine it. The most that it proved was the temporary exhaustion of both combatants. It was too irrepressible a conflict to be settled by any half-measures. The real winner was the German episcopate, who in the preliminaries in 1121 had declared that they would make the right of imperial investiture their own. They kept their word only too well. For they made the claim for secular investiture not only the emperor's, but their own. The real Prinz-Bischof of Germany dates from this time. The episcopal lands became less church domains than fiefs. It is not long before we find the bishops boldly alluding to their episcopal lands as *terra nostra*.¹

The Concordat of Worms did not terminate the struggle between the Empire and the Holy See; it did not mark the ruination of the Holy Roman Empire; it did not destroy the Ottonian-Salian monarchy. Its terms were made neither by the German King nor the Pope, but by the German feudal princes. The German feudality were the arbitrators between Henry V and Calixtus II. The German clergy still remained dependent upon the Emperor. The crown still retained the right of eminent domain over church property, the right of proprietorship remained, and the bond which bound the clerical feudality to the crown as supreme proprietor was guaranteed in the article of the pact; the bishops were compelled to swear fidelity and to do homage; the heavy financial exactions long laid upon their lands were continued; the resources of the Staufer kings in the twelfth century were chiefly derived from the property of the church.

The famous clause requiring the *presentia regis* for valid election and that requiring investiture before consecration, saved not only the honor, but the authority of the king. He could block the candidacy of a bishop who was displeasing to him. The great purposes for which Gregory VII had struggled were unfulfilled at Worms. Calixtus II renounced the pretensions of his predecessor.²

¹ Cf. Hauck, *Die Entstehung der geistlichen Territorien*.

² It is interesting to observe the marked influence of the revived study of Roman law and the legists of Italy upon the policy both of imperialists and papalists. The

What loss of power the German king suffered in 1122 rebounded, not to the profit of the papacy, but to that of the German princes, whose influence henceforth was vital in episcopal elections. Hadrian IV recognized that the Concordat of Worms was merely a suspension of hostilities, not a victory for the Holy See, when he renewed the conflict under Frederick Barbarossa. The complaints of Gerhoh of Reipersberg regarding the dependence of the German clergy upon the feudal princes are very instructive. If other proof be asked to demonstrate the real discomfiture of the papacy at Worms, the opposition of the Lateran Council in 1123 which refused to ratify the settlement, and the positive repudiation of the Concordat by the Lateran Council in 1139, are sufficient evidence. The Roman church's programme of "revindication" is recorded at length in the *Narratio de electione Lotharii*. The contention of the papacy was that the concession *de presentia regia* was a simple personal concession to Henry V and had no force in church law with his successors!¹

two seats of this study were Ravenna and Bologna, the former being imperial in sympathy, the latter pro-Italian and papalist. Petrus Crassus, who was the author of the remonstrance of the German bishops against Gregory VII in the Council of Brixen (1080), was a teacher of law at Ravenna (Ficker, *Forschungen zur Reichs- und Rechtsgesch. Ital.*, IV, 106 f.; Rashdall, *Rise of the Universities*, I, 107-9). Bologna, "a link between the papal states and Lombardy" (Rashdall, I, 117), owed its importance to the patronage of Countess Matilda and "the need the countess Matilda experienced of learned defenders for the cause of the church and of testamentary freedom" (*ibid.*, p. 133). It was not until the time of Frederick I that the school at Bologna deserted the papal cause for the imperial, and even then not entirely. Roland Bandinelli, afterward Alexander III, as Lambert of Fagnano, later Honorius II before him, were both teachers of law at Bologna.

¹ Dietrich Schaefer, *Zur Beteiligung des Wormser Konkordates* (Berlin, 1905), contends that the imperial promise of September 23, 1122, was valid for the church in general; that it constituted a permanent agreement which bound the Emperor and his successors to Peter and Paul and to the Holy Catholic Church; but that, on the other hand, Calixtus II's concessions were personal to Henry V alone, and not binding upon the Pope's successors—a condition which gave room for future conflict between Empire and Papacy. Schaefer attempts to prove his contention by an examination of subsequent episcopal elections from the beginning of Lothar's reign down to the death of Frederick I (1125-90). His conclusion is that the terms of the Concordat of Worms played no part in episcopal appointments during this period, and that political considerations alone were decisive. In other words, politically the settlements at Worms really concluded nothing.

This view has been attacked by a number of scholars, notably by Hauck,

The application of the Concordat of Worms varied in time and place according to the interest of politics and the obstacles or the support which it met. Lothar II was conciliatory; Frederick I, the opposite. The consequence was that conflicts over the election of bishops tended to throw a large amount of control into the hands of the canons, who often succeeded in eliminating outside influences in the choice, both imperial and papal. The Council of the Lateran in 1139 encouraged this practice as a means to extrude the secular factor in episcopal elections and the Lateran Council in 1215 made it general, saving always the confirmation of choice by the papacy.¹

The oft-repeated statement that Lothar weakly surrendered to papal pressure and sacrificed the "saving clause" of the Concordat is a legend, or rather a misrepresentation of the Roman party in order to gloss over the defeat of the Pope and afford pretext for a future renewal of the papal claims. It is beyond doubt that Lothar resolutely insisted upon the rights of the state in all nominations to vacant bishoprics and abbeys during his reign.² He never showed himself either indifferent or negligent on such occasions, but

Kirchengesch. Deutschlands (3d and 4th ed., Leipzig, 1906), III, 1047-49; by Bernheim, *Das Wormser Konkordat und seine Vorurkunden hinsichtlich Entstehung, Formulierung, Rechtsgültigkeit* (Weimar, 1906), who bases his argumentation upon the preliminary documents of 1111 and 1119, and endeavors to show that these do not justify Schaefer's conclusions. Bernheim argues for the substantial permanence of the terms in spite of exceptional instances. This is also the conclusion of H. Rudorff, *Zur Erklärung des Wormser Konkordates* (Weimar, 1906); of Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb. . . . unter Heinrich V, VII*, Exkursus I; and is the one made traditional by Giesebrecht. Paul Kopfermann, *Das Wormser Konkordat im deutschen Staatsrecht* (Berlin, 1908), shows that in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries the legal writers attached no importance to the Concordat. It was the Reformation which elevated it to a false eminence—an eminence which became almost consecrated in the view of Protestant historians owing to the influence of Planck. May I add that Werminghoff has made an important suggestion which it is hoped may bear fruit. He points out that the whole conflict had turned upon the higher *Reichskirchengut*—bishoprics and abbeys; but that after 1122 an obscurer but very important struggle was carried on over control of parish temporalities. A study upon this neglected phase of the war of investiture is much needed.

¹ Roland, *Les chanoines et les élections épiscopales du XI^e au XIV^e siècle (1080-1350)* (Aurillac, 1909).

² A. Friedberg, *Forschungen zur deutschen Gesch.*, Band VIII.

made it an absolute rule not to grant regalian rights to bishop or abbot until the candidate had taken oath of fidelity, and that before his consecration. The sole concession made by Lothar seems to have been the waiver of homage from those ecclesiastics already in office, a renunciation which did not later prevent him from enforcing the right of investiture in all its fulness during the schism occasioned by the double election of Innocent II and Anacletus. The most that may be said in reproach of Lothar is that his conciliatory policy toward the papacy opened the door to a new series of papal usurpations which culminated in the breach between Frederick Barbarossa and Hadrian IV in 1157.¹

Unfortunately, the evidence is not so plentiful for the history of Conrad III, but it is quite as certain that the first of the Staufer was not disposed to relax the vigilance of the crown in so important an issue. The most that can be conceded is that Conrad III, since he owed his election not a little to the ecclesiastical princes and the legate (a fact which in itself is indicative of papal discontent with the policy of Lothar II), admitted appeal to Rome in the case of a double election, a contingency not provided for in the Concordat of Worms.²

Under Frederick I the German church was the right arm

¹ Bernheim, *Lothar III und das Wormser Konkordat* (Strasburg, 1874), has shown that Lothar made it an absolute rule not to accord regalian rights to the bishop until the oath of fidelity had been taken, and before consecration. The only concession made by him seems to have been postponement of ecclesiastical homage immediately after his election—a circumstance which did not prevent him later, in the schism produced by the double election of Innocent II and Anacletus, of enforcing the right of investiture with full force. Nevertheless, it must be admitted that Lothar by abandoning the old practice opened the door to papal usurpations—usurpations which he could not prevent owing to the fact that at his coronation as emperor he failed to demand the recognition of the former law. It is this laxity which perhaps accounts for Conrad III's weak ecclesiastical policy. Moreover, Conrad III owed his election chiefly to the support of the bishops.

Hampe defends Lothar against Hauck, who accuses him of having constantly sacrificed the interests of the crown to the claims of the church (*HZ*, LVII, Heft 3). Henry V evaded the limitation imposed upon the crown in 1122 by recourse to a garbled form of the text now preserved in the *Codex Udabrigi*. Lothar and Conrad III adhered to the Concordat but Frederick I and Henry VI followed the example of Henry V.

² H. Witte, *Forsch. zur Gesch. des Wormser Konkordates: Die Bischofswahlen unter Konrad III* (Göttingen, 1877).

of his power, the most effective instrument of his policy. The bishops were finally and permanently englobed in the German feudal system. Frederick I, when the bishops of Oldenburg and Halberstadt refused to do military service for him in Italy (1155), promptly seized their manors and annexed them to the fisc.¹ The evidence of it is the hot protest of the German clergy after the episode at Besançon against the pretensions of Hadrian IV (1157). At Würzburg in 1165 all the bishops except two adhered to Frederick's anti-pope. In the last conflict of Frederick I with the curia in 1186 every bishop present protested against Urban III's interference with German politics, and affirmed their feudal obligations to the Emperor. From his right of proprietorship over the property of "royal" churches Frederick I drew consequences of far-reaching power, appropriating as regalia all rights, authorities, and revenues of vacant sees. As to nominations to ecclesiastical dignities, while an appearance of election was pretended, actually Frederick I claimed the right to designate incumbents to vacant church offices; his control of ecclesiastical offices was complete and decisive.

He used the high clergy of the German kingdom as commanders of his armies, as diplomats, as governors. Rainald of Dassel, archbishop of Cologne, was a trusted military leader; Christian of Mainz was practically his viceroy in Italy. And what shall be said of Wibald of Stavelot, Philip of Cologne, Arnold of Mainz, Wichmann of Magdeburg, Eberhard of Bamberg, Hartmann of Brixen, Otto of Freising? There is not a single bishop in Germany during the reign of Frederick Barbarossa who can be mentioned for his spiritual desert; there is hardly one who was not a politician or a warrior.

As the result of his defeat by the Lombard communes at Legnano in 1176 Frederick I was compelled to renounce his grandiose purpose of establishing a powerful monarchy in North Italy at the Peace of Venice. But his power in Germany still remained undiminished. The fall of Henry the Lion in 1181 (whose alleged "treason" at Legnano is impossible of occurrence since the lay princes of Germany were not

¹ Otto of Freising, *Gesta Frid.*, II, 12; Helmold, *Chron.*, I, 83.

obliged to participate in Italian expeditions) and the brilliant diet of Mainz in 1184 are striking evidences of the abiding power of Frederick I. Pope Alexander III, in spite of the magnitude of his pretensions, recognized the "schismatic" bishops whom Frederick I had appointed to German sees, and declared to the chapter of Bremen in 1177 that the *favor principis* was essential to episcopal election. So far as Germany is concerned, the settlement at Venice no more compromised the prerogative of the King with reference to control of church offices than the Concordat of Worms had done.¹

The doctrine of the Two Swords, clearly enunciated in the eleventh century, crystallized in the next century and at last triumphed in 1198.²

But the final victory of the Holy See over the Empire in the time of Innocent III was more owing to the civil conflict then raging in Germany than to the natural power of the papacy. With the fall of Henry the Lion in 1181 and the passing of the old duchies of the high feudal age, the ancient sectionalism which had often made the dukes protagonists of regional aspirations and sentiments passed away also. In its stead grew up the rank weed of feudal particularism, something ignoble and vicious, and unpossessed of those virtues of local pride and patriotism which, with all its faults, had been attached to the motives and the policy of the ancient duchies, now mutilated or destroyed. The ambitious and selfish feudal princes of Germany, lay and clerical, ruined the autonomy of the once glorious kingdom, and in so doing wrecked the Empire too.³ But the victory was not unto the Pope. The

¹ Hauck, IV, 196, 304.

² Cf. Ivon. Carnot., *Ep.* 106; John of Salisbury, *Policrat.*, V, 2, 13, 26; VI, 9; Gierke, *Genossenschaft*, III, 112, 526, 547. "Nun ist der Papst nicht mehr primär Priester, sondern vor allem Weltherr" (Hauck, IV, 685).

³ One of the papal partisans in the time of Frederick I admitted that the purpose of the Pope was a broken and divided Germany incapable of threatening the popes in future. Gerhoh, *In Psalmum*, p. 64: "Haec nimirum spectacula nunc regibus partim ablati, partim diminuto eorum regno humilitas, et exaltato sacerdotio, delectant spectatorem benevolum, torquent invidum quo ut amplius crucietur . . . , succedet in seculari dignitate minoris nominatis potestas diminutis regnis magnis in tetrarchias aut minores etiam particulas, ne premere valeant ecclesias et ecclesiasticas personas."

Fürsten demanded the right of investiture in their own territories.¹ As princes the German bishops were as free of papal control in the thirteenth century as their predecessors had been in the eleventh and twelfth. The mastery of the emperors over the German church was destroyed, but the mastery of the papacy was not established in its room.

Certainly not the state nor yet the church was the ultimate winner in the great controversy. The real winners were the feudalized bishops and abbots and the German feudality. The prince, bishops and warlike abbots of Germany, with their worldly ways, their hard faces, their political interests, lords of church lands which were actually huge ecclesiastical fiefs,² and the German feudality were the real victors in the war. The sources upon this subject are rich, varied, and unanimous. In the bitter warfare of the partisans both sides had pillaged wantonly. Probably there was not a bishopric or monastery in all Germany which was not despoiled at least once. When Adalberon became archbishop of Trier in 1131, the revenues of the see would hardly support him for a day. The condition of Metz and Verdun was similar. Augsburg was captured and pillaged twice. Salzburg fared no better. The losses of Mainz were huge. Of the abbeys, all were more or less plundered, and numbers of them completely de-

¹ Hauck, IV, 196-97.

² "Episcopi non essent pastores ecclesiarum, sed ductores bellorum" (*De unitate eccles. conserv.*, chap. xviii). "Lo, what lusty and warlike archbishops there are in Germany," wrote Richard to Prince Edward of England during the War of the Barons. "It would not be a very bad thing for you if you could create such archbishops in England" (*Annals of Burton*, MGH, SS. XXVII, 489). For discussion of this feudalization of the episcopate see Below, *Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters*, pp. 336-37, and Stutz, *Ztschft. der Savigny-Stiftung*, XX, 217 and 242-44. To Louis VII of France, according to Walter Map, an archdeacon of Oxford, who has reported an interesting conversation he once had with the French king, the chief difference between Germany and France was in the greater material wealth and comfort in France, and the great political and military power of the bishops in Germany (*De nugis curialium* [ed. Wright, Camden Soc.], p. 215). Caesar of Heisterbach relates that a clerk at Paris sustained the thesis that no German bishop was capable of being saved "because almost all the bishops of Germany have both the spiritual and the temporal sword; because they judge cases of blood and practice war; because they are more solicitous for military power than for the cure of souls" (*Distinctio*, II, chap. xxvii).

stroyed, as Goseck, St. Gall, Schaffhausen, Prüm, Stablo, Lüttich, St. Trudo, St. Hubert, and Corvey.

Neither Germany nor the church was the same ever again. While nominally the former form of government seemed still to remain, actually the government of the Hohenstaufen was very different from that of their predecessors.

From the national ruin of the war of investiture the German church rapidly recovered under the Staufer. But the moral recuperation is not so manifest. As new evidences of the institutional development of the church in Germany in the twelfth century the most striking phenomena are internal rather than external. It is true that the eastward expansion of the German people still had the effect of creating new episcopal sees; but most of these had been founded in the tenth or eleventh centuries, and had passed their infancy in the twelfth. The internal growth of the church, though, during the Staufer period is an interesting and important matter. Examples of this process are many: multiplication of rural deaneries, increase in the number of almost every cathedral staff, new urban parishes, the increasing importance of the lay element in ecclesiastical affairs, which is especially manifest in the schools and in eelymosinary administration. More intangible phenomena, and difficult to trace, are the real and genuine religious manifestations like pietism.¹ But often poverty, not will, compelled people to enter the church.

The immediate effect of the papal mothering of the monasteries naturally was to bind them close to Rome and to make the monks zealous propagandists of pontifical supremacy. The monks became a standing army of the popes in Europe and the monasteries papal garrison points. The ultimate effect, however, was to work their deterioration. By donations and privileges of indulgence the curia augmented the fortune of the monasteries with the result that they became richer and more self-indulgent than ever, until by the end of the twelfth century the manners and morals of the regular clergy in Europe had again become notorious for their cor-

¹ Hauck, IV, 1-9.

ruption,¹ a condition which gave rise to the two great reforming orders of the thirteenth century, the Franciscans and Dominicans. "The condition of the church," wrote Caesar of Heisterbach at the beginning of the thirteenth century, "has become such that it is not worthy to be governed save by reprobate bishops."²

¹ *MGH*, SS. XVII, 232, l. 31, *ca.* 1200: "Canonici cum militibus, moniales nobiles cognoscebant."

² *Distinctio*, II, chap. xxviii.

CHAPTER IV

OLD SAXONY

THE HISTORY, institutions, and culture of the Germans of the fifth century have for three generations been a hunting-ground for the student of social origins. Almost nothing new may be found there. It is threshing old straw to study them.

But there was a great German tribe living in late Roman times where their descendants live to this day, namely, the Saxons of Lower Germany, who did not come in contact with Roman civilization or Christianity, as the other Germans had done, in the fifth century, and knew nothing of the Romano-Christian-German culture of early medieval Europe until the end of the eighth century. Accordingly, a study of early Saxon history when this people, still in a state of barbarism, first came in contact with medieval civilization has a freshness that is denied to the earlier period. For, compared with the study of the social origins and practices of the early Germans, that of the Saxons has been neglected.

In superficial area Saxony was the greatest of the German tribal duchies. It included the entire territory between the lower Elbe and Saale rivers almost to the Rhine. Between the mouths of the Elbe and the Weser it bordered upon the North Sea. The only parts of the territory which lay across the Elbe were the little counties of Holstein and Ditmarsch. Adam of Bremen, writing in the eleventh century, compared the shape of Saxony (including Thuringia) to a triangle, and estimated that from angle to angle the distance was eight days' journey. Roughly speaking, Old Saxony was an equilateral triangle measuring approximately two hundred miles on each side.

For the most part, the land was a broad plain, save on the south where it rose into hills and the low mountainous country of the Harz and Hesse, where are the sources of the Weser,

the Ems, the Lippe, and the Ruhr rivers. This low divide was all that separated the country of the Saxons from their ancient enemies and ultimate conquerors, the Franks. The lack of clear physical definition along this border, from time immemorial, had been the cause of incessant tribal conflict between the Saxon and the Frank.¹

Along the Frisian border and in the bottom lands of the Ems and the Weser the soil was very marshy until drained by Dutch and Flemish colonists in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. But, as a whole, Saxony was a rich alluvial plain of alternating prairie and forest, the fertility of which was highly praised in the eleventh and twelfth centuries by Adam of Bremen and Helmold, the ablest North German chroniclers of the feudal period.²

As a people the Saxons were divided into four kindred groups: the Angrians, along the right bank of the Weser; the Westphalians, along the Ems and the Lippe; the Eastphalians, on the left bank of the Weser; and the Nordalbingians, in modern Schleswig-Holstein.³ But not even with these four tribal groups was the term of tribal division reached. For the Saxon, "nation" was really a loose congeries of clans of kindred stock.⁴ For example, the Nordalbingians alone were subdivided into lesser groups—Holsteiners, Sturmarii, Bardi, and the men of Ditmarsch.⁵ The primitive bond of kindred

¹ History can add little to or take little from Einhard's brief statement in *Vita Karoli*, chap. vii: "... Termini videlicet nostri et illorum paene ubique in plano contigui praeter pauca loca, in quibus vel silvae majores vel montium juga interjecta utrorumque agros certo limite disterminant, in quibus caedes et rapinae et incendia vicissim fieri non cessabant."

² Adam of Bremen, *Gesta Hammaburgensis ecclesiae pontificum*, I, 1, 2; Helmold, *Chronicon Slavorum*, I, 12, 88.

³ The *Chauci* and the *Chauci minores* of Tacitus may be the earliest recorded division between the Eastphalians and the Westphalians.

⁴ "Sed variis divisa modis plebs omnis habebat. Quot pagos tot pene duces" (*Poetae Latini*, MGH, SS. IV, 8).

⁵ Einhard's *Annales* for the years 775, 776, 783, 797, 810; Widukind, *Rerum gestarum Sax.*, I, 14; Helmold, *passim*. Schmidt, *Hist. Vierteljahrschrift*, XIV (1911), 1, has studied all the earliest textual references to the Saxons. For the origin of the name Holstein see Adam of Bremen, II, 17. They were *Holcetae, dicti a silvis, quas accolunt*—"those who dwelt in the woods" (*Holz*). "The inhabitants of Ditmarschen are supposed to be Saxon, with a leaven of Frisian blood. Wagrien, the eastern part

and clan was particularly strong among the Saxons, and in spite of these many divisions the Saxons were an unusually homogeneous nation living as late as the eighth century as the early Germans had lived.

The long warfare with the Franks largely reduced, though it did not wholly obliterate, the identity of these ancient tribal groups, and the ducal leadership of the house of Widukind, the first important person mentioned in Saxon history, was confirmed by the heroic resistance of the people under him for thirty years (772-802) against Charlemagne. "*Gens dura Saxonum*" was a Frank byword as early as Einhard's time.¹

The Saxons were composed of an aristocracy of nobles, not a landed proprietary class, but a free warrior class of distinction and renown, simple freemen, and many unfree.² Social differences were jealously guarded by social prescription. The death penalty was imposed upon any man who married a woman above his rank; the marriage of a man below his station was severely condemned; bastardy was not tolerated; intermarriage between Saxons and other Germans was

of Holstein, left desolate by migration, or so it is said, was given over to the Wends by Karl the Great, and won back in the twelfth century. Lauenburg seemed to have originally been Slavic, but the Slavs were gradually ousted by Saxon colonists in the twelfth century. That there was a large subject population of Wends in most Saxon districts is revealed by the thirteenth century *Sachsenspiegel*. . . . The history of Ditmarschen is . . . sharply divided from that of Holstein . . . though from an ethnological point of view it is very similar, the population being of Saxon origin, though perhaps with a Frisian admixture. . . . The solidarity of the kindred has left its mark on every sphere of Ditmarschen life. It was the kindreds, or *Schlachte* ["agnatic clans"], which in the tenth and eleventh centuries built the great dykes to prevent the sea flooding the marsh lands" (B. S. Philpotts, *Kindred and Clan*, pp. 103, 125).

¹ "Saxones, gens dura, bellis aspera, tam praeceps ad arma quam audax, vendicans sibi praerogativam laudis ex incepto furoris" (*Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. iii). Cf. *Poeta Saxo*, V (772), 13; *Poetae Latini*, IV, 1, 7: "Saxonum . . . pectora dura"; Alcuin, *Versus ad sanctos Eboracensis ecclesiae*, *ibid.*, V, 47; Jaffé, *Bibl.*, VI, 83: "Gens . . . duririam propter dicti cognomine Saxi" (as if "Saxon" were derived from the Latin word *saxum*, a "rock"!).

² Nithard, *Historia*, IV, chap. ii; Rodolph. Fuld. *Translatio S. Alexandri*, chap. i; Widukind, *Rerum gestarum Sax.*, I, 14. Cf. Moeser, *Osnabrückische Gesch.*, Part I, sec. 44. The *lazzi* of Nithard means *Leute* (Moeser, Vol. I, Part III, sec. 32, n. E).

frowned upon; and strangers were hated.¹ So tenaciously did the Saxons cling to their ancient customary law that clear traces of these social survivals persisted in Saxony down through the Middle Ages.²

The nobles, as a class, seem to have been of late origination and to have developed greatly during the long wars with the Franks, for the earliest designation of them is found in a capitulary of the year 797, *cc.* 3 and 5 (*nobiliores*), and Bede's well-known characterization of the Saxons of the eighth century makes no mention of any noble class, but only of warchieftains.³ But once arrived, the Saxon nobility displayed a tenacity and a durability not found elsewhere in North Germany. In the tenth century, Saxony was the only country of North Germany still retaining its own historic and old-line noblesse.

The various stages in the Frankish conquest of Saxony may be discerned from careful analysis of the chronicles, and the variety of methods employed by Charlemagne to maintain the subjugation of the country is worth observing. In 775 Charlemagne established two Frankish garrisons: one at Eresburg, the other at Syburg. These fortified points marked an advance line of protection, a "mark," at some distance from the imperiled Hessian frontier. Soon afterward the fortress of Karlsburg was established on the Lippe. Thus a triangle of fortified posts and a segment of occupied territory was marked out in the heart of the Saxon land. At the same time a civil and ecclesiastical administrative organization began to be installed through the medium of counts, bishops, and abbots who were introduced into Saxony.⁴ The method of reduction of the country was exactly similar to that employed by Pepin earlier in Frisia in the time of Willibrord and

¹ *Translatio S. Alex.*, MGH, SS. II, 674-76; Widukind, I, 9; Adam of Bremen, I, 6, and III, 55; Bruno, *De bello Saxonico*, chap. xxiii; *Sachsenspiegel*, III, art. 64, sec. 3.

² Widukind, *op. cit.* (ed. Waitz), p. 15, n. 3.

³ Bede, *Historia ecclesiastica*, V, 10. On the nobility and freemen among the Saxons see Waitz, *Deutsche Verfassungsgesch.*, III, 148-50.

⁴ Waitz, III, 129; Abel and Simson, *Jahrb. Karl d. Gr.*, I, 417; Hauck, *Kirchen-gesch.*, II, 382; Kenzler, *Forschungen zur deutschen Gesch.*, XII, 350; Schroeder, *Ztschft. der Savigny-Stiftung f. Rechtsgesch.: German. Abt.*, XXIV, 350.

Boniface. Although the Franks were driven out time and again, they always returned and ultimately wore down the Saxon resistance into submission both to Frankish rule and to Christianity. The most intractable region was the low, marshy country between the lower course of the Elbe and that of the Weser, called Wihmode or Wigmodia, and in Nordalbingia.¹ The whole Frankish policy is registered in the ferocious capitulary *De partibus Saxoniae* (785?). But continual and desperate risings of the Saxons, united with the humane protest of Alcuin, gradually induced Charlemagne to moderate the drastic nature of the government in Saxony.

The Saxons were too inflexible (*gens dura*) to be utterly reduced, and had to be compromised with in certain ways. The change is measured by comparing and contrasting the capitulary just mentioned with a new law proclaimed in 797, which evidently was the result of long deliberation between the king, the clergy, the nobles, the counts, and the Saxon leaders themselves. It is most significant that the Saxons in 797 were permitted the right of public assembly and to retain their own ancestral laws and customs. The country lost its independence and was incorporated within the great Frankish Empire. But the Saxons still preserved many of their native manners and customs, which they were too indomitable to surrender.² The chief change in Saxony effected by the con-

¹ The old practice of blood revenge and even paganism was to be found in these localities until the twelfth century.

² A remarkable example of the inflexible nature of the Saxons and their strenuous adherence to their ancient laws and customs, even in the face of the authority of the church, is afforded by the case of Gottschalk, a Saxon monk in the ninth century. He protested against the oblation of young boys, i.e., against the monastic practice of persuading the parents of young children to commit them, while still infants, to the monastic life. When still a little boy, Gottschalk, who was of noble Saxon lineage, had been dedicated by his parents to cloister life in the monastery of Fulda. He bravely asserted that this was a deprivation of liberty in violation of Saxon law which declared that no freeman could be deprived of liberty without the judgment of competent persons of his own class and nation. We have in Gottschalk's case the example of a Saxon appealing to his law, but also of the deep antagonism between Frank and Saxon. For Rabanus Maurus, archbishop of Mainz, published a reply to Gottschalk in which he poured contempt and scorn upon the Saxons as being half-pagan barbarians yet. See Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CVII, 432; Ebert, *Gesch. d. Lat. Lit. d. Mittelalters*, II, 138-39; H. O. Taylor, *Mediaeval Mind*, I, 224.

Wala is another example somewhat similar to Gottschalk. He was also of noble

quest was in the matter of religion. Yet, as we shall see later, the ancient Germanic paganism persisted and was strong in Saxony for many years.¹

Charlemagne, with that unerring judgment which distinguished him, when the subjugation of the Saxons was completed, treated the Saxon nobles with great consideration, and we find many of them at his court in the latter years of his reign.² But the freeman class, which was not so large as once was believed, was only very slowly worked into the Frankish military system.³ When the Frankish conquest ended

the dependent peasant was already the rule. When peasant holdings are given to a monastery, the donor is not the cultivating peasant, but his small landlord, who gives the land and the peasant on it. What happened in the Carolingian epoch was not the birth of landlordship, but a new allot-

Saxon birth, and abbot of Corvey until exiled by Louis the Pious in 822. Though a monk, he never forgot that he was a Saxon. His biographer relates that he often said he wished he might still wear the Saxon national clothing instead of the Benedictine frock, and to the end of his life he insisted upon wearing Saxon shoes (*Vita Walae*, chaps. xii, xvi).

How unfamiliar Saxony was in the ninth century with the popular Christianity of the Frank land is illustrated by the *Translatio S. Viti* (*Mon. Corb.* ed. Jaffé, pp. 319-22). Relic worship was still a novelty in Saxony, as the account vividly shows. Cf. Ebert, *Gesch. d. Lat. Lit. d. Mittelalters*, III, 205-6; Dümmler, *Otto I*, pp. 331, 343, 347, 354, 357.

¹ The *Translatio S. Liborii* written by a Saxon clerk, probably of Paderborn, toward the close of the ninth century, is highly interesting for the evidence it furnishes upon the deep religious change in Saxony made by the conquest. Cf. Ebert, II, 204-6. Of equal value is the *Translatio S. Viti* (836), in Jaffé, *Mon. Corb.*, I, 319 f.; and see Ebert, II, 336-37. A glimpse of pagan Saxony before the Frankish conquest is found in Hucbald, *Vita S. Lebuini*, chap. ix; cf. Abel, *Karl der Grosse*, I, 96; Ebert, II, 190-91.

² For this policy of Charlemagne, see Nitzsch, *Deutsche Gesch.*, I, 222-29, 234-35, 320-21.

³ In 855, when Louis the Young invaded the West Frank kingdom of his uncle, Charles the Bald, his army was composed of Franks, Thuringians, Swabians, and Bavarians, i.e., of South Germans (*Miracula S. Martialis*, Bouquet, VII, 370); some Saxons were with the East Frankish host in the battle of Andernach in 876 (*Ann. S. Bert.*; *Ann. Fuld.*; *Regino, Chronicon*), but it is evident that they were not many, since the *Ann. Fuld.* tell us that on account of the large number of horses the army had to be widely scattered for forage, and we know that the Saxons were almost wholly foot-forces. Arnulf's army in the battle of the Dyle against the Norsemen in 891 was chiefly drawn from Bavaria and Swabia, though there were some Saxons in it (*Cont. Ratisb.* [891]).

ment of the permanently dependent peasants, leading to the formation of a relatively small number of great lordships instead of a larger number of little ones.¹

Thirty years of bitter and wasting wars between the Franks and the Saxons, while it created an aristocracy of warrior nobles among the Saxons, also left in its wake thousands of broken freemen, serfs, and slaves. This is evident from the account of Nithard, the Frankish chronicler of the middle of the ninth century, who relates that during the civil war between the sons of Louis the Pious, after the defeat of Lothar at Fontenay in June, 841, he sought assistance from the Saxons. His relation is very interesting for the light which it throws upon the texture of lower Saxon society and the profound social and religious effect which the Frankish conquest had had. He writes:

As all Europe knows . . . the great emperor Charles . . . turned the Saxons from the vain worship of idols to the true and Christian belief in God. . . . All this nation is divided into three classes. First there are those who in their speech are called *aedhillingi*, the second are the *frilingi*, finally there are those known as *lazzi*, that is to say in Latin, nobles, freemen and serfs.² In the strife between Lothar and his brothers the nobles were divided into two factions, one of which espoused Lothar, the other Ludwig. This being the case, Lothar perceiving that after the victory of his brothers the people who had been with him wished to desert him, compelled by various exigencies, sought assistance wherever and however he could.

¹ W. J. Ashley, *Economic Journal*, IX, 255, a review of Knapp's *Grundherrschaft und Rittergut*.

² These three classes are indicated in Hucbald, *Vita Lebuini*: "Statuto quoque tempore anni, semel ex singulis pagis atque eisdem ordinibus tripartitis singillatim viri duodecem electi et in unum collecti in mediae Saxonia"; and again late in the tenth century, Widukind, I, 14, writing of social stratification among the Saxons, says: "usque hodie gens Saxonica triforimi genere ac lege preter conditionem servilem dividitur." It is evident from an examination of the texts that serfdom was a new social condition in Saxony in the ninth century. Meitzen, *Siedelung und Agrarwesen*, I, 297, citing Nithard, says that in the *lazzi* we are to see conquered Saxon freemen who had been permitted to remain upon their formerly free ancestral acres, but who were subjected to manorial impositions, and with a "diminished" freedom. But how far diminished? Was manorial proprietorship introduced into Saxony by Charlemagne? Or did it exist before in some degree? If so, then the Frankish conquest merely aggravated an already existing process toward lordship and serfdom in Saxony. Wittich, *Die Grundherrschaften in Nordwest Deutschland*, and Knapp, *Grundherrschaft und Rittergut*, have contended that a dependent peasantry was the rule in Saxony even before 800. See further Ashley, *Surveys, Economic and Historical*, pp 129-30, 134-35.

He distributed the crown lands for his own advantage, he gave liberty to some and promised that he would give it to others when he had won. He even sent messengers into Saxony and promised both freemen and serfs, whose number was immense, if they would support him, that he would restore to them the law which their forefathers had possessed when they were worshippers of idols. Won over by this means these classes formed a league, adopted a new name for themselves, that is *Stellinga*, and having almost driven their masters out of the country, began to live the law which each pleased after ancient Saxon custom. . . . But Ludwig . . . suppressed the rebels in Saxony both by legal process [i.e., by confiscations and forfeitures] and by executions.

What was the *Stellinga*?¹ Is it an example of the ancient German gild surviving in Saxony, but which Charlemagne and the church had stamped out among the other Germans? It seems to bear resemblance to those *conjuraciones servorum* which existed in the salt marshes of Flanders and Frisia, and which the legislation of Louis the Pious condemned in 821.² If so, then it was a rebellion of broken freemen and serfs. There can be no doubt that the *Stellinga* was an insurrectionary movement in Saxony which intended to secure the restoration of those old Saxon rights and liberties which the conquest had suppressed or destroyed.³ We know

¹ Nithard, IV, chaps. ii, iv, and vi. The *Annal. Fuld.* (842) mention *liberti*, i.e., *liti*; the *Annal. Xanten* (841) speak of *servi*. The *Annal. Ruod. Fuld.* refer to this movement in Saxony as a "validissimam conspirationem libertorum legitimos dominos opprimere conantium, auctoribus factionis capitali sententia dampnatis, fortiter compescuit." Prudentius, *Annal. S. Bert.*, says that 140 conspirators were beheaded, 14 hanged, and "innumerable" others suffered mutilation. For commentary on these sources see Derichsweiler, "Der Stellingabund," *Progr. des Fr.-Wilh. Gymn. zu Köln* (1868); Meyer von Knonau, *Über Nithards vier Bücher Geschichten. Der Bruderkrieg der Söhne Ludwigs d. Fr. und sein Geschichtsschreiber*. (1866), pp. 77 f.; Dümmler, *Gesch. d. Ostfränkischen Reiches*, I, 178; Waitz, III, 148-50, and IV, 689; Gfrörer, *Gesch. d. Ost- und Westfränk. Carolinger*, I, 27-30. As to the derivation of the word *Stellinga*, modern philology favors its derivation from German *stellen*, or *sich herstellen*. Graff, *Althochdeutscher Sprachschatz oder Wörterbuch*, VI, 674, associates the word with *stallo* and *Notgistallo*, which points to the ancient German gild associations which Charlemagne and the church endeavored to suppress as *conjuraciones*.

² That the *Stellinga* was very similar to the *conjuraciones servorum* which had been formed earlier in the seaboard regions of Flanders and Frisia, and which the legislation of Louis the Pious condemned in 817, admits of no doubt. For this statute see Baluze, *Capitularia regum Francorum*, I, 875; (ed. Boretius), I, 301; cf. p. 437.

³ See Wachsmuth, "Aufstände und Kriege der Bauern im Mittelalter," *Historisches Taschenbuch*, V, 294-96.

from the biographer of Louis the Pious¹ that the Emperor restored many of those Saxons who had suffered under his father to their rights and liberties, and this restoration of the Saxon nobles may have infuriated the peasantry, who were not partakers of the imperial clemency and who endured the exactions of church and feudality, to rebellion.² The tyranny of the tithe was a potent source of their dissatisfaction.

But the *Stellinga* was also a pagan reaction. The *Annals of St. Bertin*, indeed, emphasize this nature of the rebellion.³ After fifty years of professed Christianity, actually it was but a gloss in Saxony. Deep below all outward profession of the conquering faith, in the hearts of the Saxon people were the memories of old worship, old strivings and victories which the imposed religion could not efface. Even Saxon Christianity was tinctured with these ancient aspirations. We find it in the *Heliand*:

To the old Saxon poet Christ is a king over his people, a warrior, a mighty ruler. . . . The Christ in the *Heliand* is a hero of the old Germanic type, an ideal of courage and loyalty, and his disciples are noble vassals from whom He demands unflinching loyalty in return. . . . The background of the events in the *Heliand* is the flat Saxon land with the fresh North Sea. . . . "Nazarethburg," "Bethlehemburg," "Rumuburg" [Rome] called up more vivid, if more homely pictures than any description of Palestine or Rome; the marriage at Cana and Herod's birthday-feast become drinking bouts in the hall of a German prince.⁴

But traces of this pagan persistence may be found much later than the ninth century in Saxony. In 1013, when Bishop Unwin came to Hamburg, he found pagan rites still celebrated

¹ Theganus, *Vita Ludovici imperatoris*, chap. xxiv.

² It was a tantalizing suggestion of Potgessier (a writer of the eighteenth century), *De statu servorum*, Vol. I, chap. ii, sec. 84, p. 94 n. C, that in the Stedinger movement of the twelfth century in Lower Saxony we have the survival or at least the outcropping of the ancient *Stellinga* once more.

³ *Ann. S. Bert.* (841), "Ut Saxonibus qui Stellinga appellantur, quorum multipliciter numerus in eorum gente habetur, optionem cujusque legis vel antiquorum Saxonum consuetudinis, utrum earum vellent, concesserit; qui . . . magis ritum paganorum imitari quam christianae fidei sacramenta tenere delegerunt." Under anno 842, it is added: "Qui et christianam fidem pene relinquerant."

⁴ J. G. Robertson, *History of German Literature*, p. 20.

in some parts of the diocese, the fasts of the church ignored, and even, we are told, bloody sacrifices.¹

It is significant that in 852 there is record of a third revolt of the *Stellinga*.² The seat of the discontent was Angraria and the *pagi* in Eastphalia of Hardego, Suabengo, and Hohsingo, localities in which to this day old Saxon characteristics and ancient Saxon customs still persist with remarkable fidelity.³

The conquest of Saxony by Charlemagne, it is manifest, was the point of departure of enormous political, economic, social, and religious changes. But the innate and rock-ribbed conservatism of the Saxons was more proof against the thrusts and pressures imposed by the growing feudalization of things than any other part of Germany. According to Meitzen, there are villages today in this portion of Germany in which nine-tenths of the *Höfe* may be traced back as far as changes which took place during the tenth and eleventh centuries.⁴ A modern French historian (and the only one who is

¹ Adam of Bremen, II, 48 and 62. Even in the second half of the eleventh century Saxon prejudice against new-fangled church ritual was strong (*ibid.*, III, 26). For traces of Germanic paganism in the popular beliefs around Braunschweig see Voges, *Ztschft. d. Harz Ver. f. Gesch.*, Vol. XXI, No. 2 (1889). See also the valuable work of Pfannenschmidt, *Germanische Erntefeste im heidnischen und christlichen Cultus mit Beziehung auf Niedersachsen* (Hannover, 1878), and his earlier book, *Das Weihwasser im heidnischen und christlichen Cultus* (Hannover, 1869).

² *Annal. Fuld.* (852): [Hludovicus] "profectus est in Saxoniam ob eorum vel maxime causas judicandas, qui a pravis et subdolis iudiciis neglecti et multimodis, ut dicunt legio suae dilationibus decepti graves atque diuturnas patiabantur injurias. Suberant etiam et aliae causae ad se ipsum specialiter aspicientes, possessiones videlicet ab avita vel paterna proprietate jure hereditario sibi derelictae, quas oportuit ab iniquis pervasoribus justa repetitione legitimo domino restitui. . . . Habito generali conventu tam causas populi ad se perlatas justo absolvit examine quam ad se pertinentes possessiones juridicorum gentis decreto recepit. . . . Apud Erpfestfurt habito conventu decrevit inter alia ut nullus praefectus in sua praefectura aut quaestionarius infra quaesturam suam alicujus causam advocati nomine susciperet agendam, in alienis vero praecausis agendis haberent facultatem" (cf. Waitz, IV, 410, n. 2).

³ Cf. the notes of Pertz to the *Annals of Fulda* (852). Of all the Saxons bishoprics founded in the time of Charlemagne, Hildesheim most preserved its ancient character and original condition through the Middle Ages. See Otto Heinemann, *Beiträge zur Diplomatik der älteren Bischöfe von Hildesheim (1130-1246)* (Marburg, 1895).

⁴ *Siedelung und Agrarwesen*, I, 562. Wittich, *Die Grundherrschaften in Nord-westdeutschland* (Leipzig, 1896), admits the same thing, but with more qualification.

a competent authority upon the history of medieval Germany) relates how he found a peasant of Drantum near Osnabrück who in his (the historian's) belief was living still upon the same farm which his ancestors had worked a thousand years before.¹ Winckelmann claims that a considerable proportion of the present farming population in what was once Old Saxony can trace their family history, at least in family tradition, back to the time of Widukind.²

The agrarian economy of the Saxons reflected simple and homely farming conditions.³ The social texture was the result of the agricultural system. While manorial conditions and practices prevailed upon the lands of the church and those of the greater nobles, on the other hand there were thousands of allodial freeholders in Saxony and great blocks of freehold land. In a word, freeholds, not tenures, were the rule. Moreover, the tenacity of family ties and the stubborn persistence of the spirit of the old clan group gave protection and support to this condition.⁴ What another has written has pertinence here:

It is generally agreed that the isolation of the small landowner was his undoing, since it rendered him unable to withstand adverse circumstances, such as a bad year, a fire, a plague among his beasts, or a piratical raid upon his homestead. This is all quite true of the isolated small landowner, but we cannot believe it at all true of the small peasant proprietor who was surrounded by a kindred. . . . In regions where the kindred preserved its solidarity it would be far less easy for a wealthy landowner, or even for ecclesiastical foundations, to exploit the financial and social difficulties of a poor neighbor by acquiring his lands, or by extorting rights over him at a period of want.⁵

¹ G. Blondel, *Études sur les populations rurales de l'Allemagne*, p. 69.

² Winckelmann, *Schriften des Vereines f. Sozialpolitik*, XXIII, 53.

³ The *Heliand* furnishes interesting evidence that horse-raising was important in ancient Saxony, for instead of "shepherds watching their flocks by night" on the eve of the nativity, we find *ehuscalos* watching over their horses in the fields. The whole poem is redolent of German antiquities. See Vilmar, *Deutsche Alterthümer im Heliand* (2d ed.; Marburg, 1862).

⁴ Inama Sternegg, *Grundherrschaften*, p. 54; Sering, *Erbrecht und Agrarverfassung in Schleswig-Holstein*, p. 199; Nitzsch, *Das alte Ditmarschen* (Kiel, 1862). These authors are cited by Philpotts. See next note.

⁵ Philpotts, *op. cit.*, pp. 247-48.

This is precisely what we find in early Saxony, indeed until as late as the end of the twelfth century, whereas in all the rest of Germany this condition had disappeared centuries before.

Remnants of the primitive Germanic *Gemeinde* evidenced in the "plowlands" pertaining to each householder, and the common meadow and duck-pond were everywhere visible in Saxony until late in the Middle Ages.¹ Forms of tillage grown obsolete in older Germany survived in Saxony, as the ancient one-field and two-field systems, found side by side with the three-field system.²

Drastic as the conquest of Saxony had been, the native Saxon temper was too sturdy to be wholly altered in genius and character by it. The influence of the church's organization did not wholly extirpate the ancient *Gau*-system, although Adam of Bremen would have us so believe.³ Nor did the church succeed in utterly stamping out the immemorial pagan religious practices of the Saxons. Fragments of the cult of Woden and Thor survived for centuries in the mutilated form of folk-lore, custom, superstition.⁴ The same vitality characterizes the persistence of primitive social institutions. The *comitatus*—the ancient German war-band or "following" of a war-chieftain or Herzog—can be clearly traced in Saxon history long after it was lost in feudalism in the rest of

¹ Long after the Allmend had been appropriated by the greediness of both lay and secular nobles, the currency of certain sayings shows how tenaciously the Saxons clung to the memory of free villages and common lands, e.g.: "Allmend ist nicht Nachbarngut"; "Was der Ochs mit dem Horne nicht biegen kann, das weiset man für Markland"; "Wenn der Müller aus der Mühle tritt, so steht er auf der Allmend."

² Meitzen, II, 53-97.

³ Adam of Bremen, I, 3. Cf. Thietmar, *Chronicon*, II, 20, and the spurious charter (see Sickel, *Acta Karol*, II, 393-94) for Bremen cited by Adam of Bremen in I, 13: "Huic parrochie decem pagos subjecimus, quos etiam abjectis eorum antiquis vocabulis et divisionibus in duas redigimus provintias, his nominibus appellantes Wigmodiam et Lorgoe." Usually in Saxony the limits of the dioceses were deliberately made different from the lines of the ancient tribal boundaries.

⁴ Widukind, I, chap. xii; cf. Grimm, *Myth.* (1st ed.), I, 210 n.; Müllenhoff, *Zeitschrift f. deutsch. Alt.*, XXIII, 3; Halthaus, *Cal. med. ævi*, p. 131, has collected a mass of evidence on this matter. The *Chron. ducum de Brunsw.* chap. ix (*Deutsche Chron.*, II, 581), shows that the festivities of *die Gemeine Woche*—the week beginning with the first Sunday after the feast of St. Michael—preserved ancient pagan German practices as late as the sixteenth century.

Germany.¹ The stubborn nature of Saxon social texture yielded ever so slowly to the pressure of the feudal social structure around it.² The *Sachsenspiegel* retained a force in North Germany long after the law of the Swabians (*Schwabenspiegel*) and of the Bavarians had gone the way of feudalism.³ In the dissolution of the Frankish Empire in the ninth century the native institutions of the Saxons asserted their supremacy over the external and exotic Carolingian institutions which Charlemagne had imposed upon them.⁴

The core of the Saxon army for years was the ancient German Heerban, led to the rally by the counts, and interspersed with the more compact fighting groups of the *comitatus*. The free farming peasantry of Saxony in a trice, if occasion demanded, could be converted into a fighting force, as the Saxon bishop, Thietmar of Merseburg, gleefully records in 1002, when Henry II was in Saxony with a rout of Bavarian troopers, who "with that insatiable avarice which they curb at home, but wantonly indulge abroad, began to waste the crops of our Saxon farmers," and got soundly thrashed by the infuriated peasants. The brother of the King's chancellor, together with several other Bavarians, was killed in the *mêlée*. The remainder fled to the royal court, which was soon surrounded with augmented bands of irate peasants who were not dispersed until Duke Bernhard of Saxony appeared upon the scene with a strong force.⁵

The army with which Henry II invaded Poland in 1004

¹ Widukind, I, 21-22 and III, 51; Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* 1070, (ed. Holder-Egger), p. 116. The Saxon army as a popular assembly appears as late as 929 (Widukind, I, 38). Cf. Richter and Kohl, *Annalen d. deutschen Gesch.*, III, Part II, 758-63.

² Schröder, *Deutsche Rechtsgesch.*, p. 389; Michael, *Gesch. d. deutschen Volkes*, I, 298; Schulte, *Deutsche Staats- und Rechtsgesch.*, sec. 62.

³ For this subject of legal complexities and ancient survivals see Waitz, V, 149 f.

⁴ Widukind, I, 36; II, 3, 16, 33; III, 45, 51, 54, 67. Cf. Schröder, p. 166, n. 18. Some of the Carolingian officials passed into the feudal hierarchy, e.g., Dietrich, count of Kallenburg, was descended from a *preses Saxonicus* (*Annal. Ratisb. anno* 1085).

⁵ Thietmar, *Chronicon*, V, 19; *Acta Henrici (II) imper.*, chap. xvii (Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CXL, 97).

contained many Saxon footmen and the same is true of that which he led into Italy,¹ although mounted service prevailed everywhere else in Germany, a fact which shows how unfeudal Saxony was. During the civil war in the reign of Henry IV (1103), the feudal soldiery of the Emperor, most of whom came from the Rhinelands and South Germany, were astonished still to find in Saxony freemen cultivating their fields in time of peace and in war swarming to the fyrd, as their forefathers had done before them, raw peasant levies fighting on foot, armed with antiquated equipment,² and perhaps wearing homemade straw hats, as Otto the Great's army did when it invaded France in 946.³ "Go back to your fields from whence you came," cried Henry IV once to a rebel Saxon army over against him.⁴

As a people, the Saxons as late as the twelfth century were a simple folk, wholly agricultural in their means of livelihood, west of the Weser dwelling in isolated farmsteads bounded by a hedge or ditch, east of the river living in jumbled villages, with the "long fields" of the community lying round about the hamlet,⁵ every man among them proud of his

¹ Thietmar, *op. cit.*, VI, chaps. viii, x.

² Widukind, I, 21; II, 39, and Liutprand, *Antapod.*, II, 25, would seem to show that Henry I's forces at the battle of the Unstrut in 933 was wholly composed of the Heerban. Cf. Waitz, VII, 124; Baltzer, *Zur Gesch. des deutschen Kriegswesens*, p. 31; Lambert of Hersefeld, *Annales* (anno 1012, 1075; ed. Holder-Egger), pp. 195, 216, 238, 260. *Carmen de bello Sax.*, II, vss. 118 f., and III, vs. 94; Bruno, *De bello Sax.* (ed. Wattenbach), chap. iii, p. 20.

³ The curious information in regard to straw hats is found in Widukind, III, 2; *pillea foenina*, according to cod. A, 2, 3; *pillei ex culmis contexti*, according to cod. i. This is confirmed by a passage in Rather of Verona cited in Pertz's edition of Widukind, *Rerum Ger. Scrip. in usum schol.*, p. 60, n. i; *Opera Ratherii* (ed. Ballerini), p. 310; Vogel, *Ratherius von Verona*, I, 260; Lauer, *Le règne de Louis IV d'outre-mer*, p. 146, n. 5.

⁴ *Reddite agris quos ex agro deputastis armis, coequate numerum satellitum ad mensuram facultatum*" (*Vita Heinrici Quarti*, 1103 [ed. Eberhard], p. 21). The medieval Latin syntax in this sentence is almost as curious as the historical matter in it.

⁵ See Meitzen, *Siedelung und Agrarwesen*, II, 53-97, and Fuchs, *Epochs of German Agrarian History and Agrarian Policy*, translated in T. N. Carver, *Readings in Rural Economics*, pp. 224-30, where the theories as to the origin of this dualism are given. Cf. also Seebohm's review of Meitzen in *Economic Journal*, VII, 71, and Ashley's in his *Surveys, Historic and Economic*, pp. 116-28, and Wuttke's in *Neue Jahrb. d. klass. Alterthumsgesch. und deutschen Literatur*, Vol. I, No. 5 (1898). Meitzen's work strongly emphasizes the importance of agricultural practices and

"long knife,"¹ the *sachs*, from which they were believed to have derived their tribal name, and hating strangers.²

Feudalism in Saxony was almost rudimentary when compared to the system elsewhere in Germany. There was hardly any *ordo militaris* there. Suzerainty and vassalage—overlordship and underlordship—were less formal relations than

agrarian economy for the interpretation of history. But the honor of first perceiving this valuable fact and formulating the principle is to be given to Justus Moeser, who wrote in the Preface to his *Osnabrückische Geschichte*: "The history of landed property in Germany is the most important chapter in the history of German civilization." Elsewhere in the same work, Vol. I, p. 2, sec. 1, he returned to this thought in these weighty words: "Die Einrichtung eines Landes hängt gar sehr von der Natur seines Bodens und seiner Lage ab. Viele Bedürfnisse der Menschen werden allein dadurch erweckt und befriediget. Sitten, Gesetze und Religion müssen sich nach diesen Bedürfnissen richten." It is evident that the early Saxons dwelt both in nucleated villages and in tiny hamlets and scattered farmsteads. According to Meitzen (and others have followed him in this interpretation of the origin of these differences), where the population is found dwelling in rambling villages and outlying farms it is evidence that we have an autochthonous population, or at least peaceful occupation, e.g., the territory of the great Saxon plain. On the other hand, where the population is found settled in compact villages, it is the proof of German conquest, or at least of settlement made with more or less force. House construction and house decoration also shed some light on this distinction in the nature of ancient Germanic settlement in Old Saxony, and the elements which went to form the Saxon nation. West of the Weser the popular ornamentation is a horsehead; east of the Weser, on the other hand, pillars or columns reminiscent of the Irminsæule are to be found. See Hartmann's monograph on house and gable ornamentation in Old Saxony (*Monatschrift f. d. Gesch. Westdeutschlands*, Band VIII [1882]; cf. Brandi, *Mitteil. d. Ver. f. Gesch. von Osnabrück*, Band XVIII [1893]). He determines the line of division as running through Detmold, Bielefeld, Osnabrück, Hanteburg, and Petershagen. The southern limit of the Low German type of peasant-house today does not coincide with the dividing-line between the Low and High German peoples, but runs to the north of that line. Since the eighteenth century the High German type of peasant-house has steadily trespassed on the region of the Low German peasant-house so that the latter seems doomed gradually to disappear and to be known in future only in pictures. See Andree, *Ztschft. f. Ethnologie*, Band XXVII, Heft 1 (1895).

¹ Widukind, I, 6-7; Nennius, *Hist. Britton*, chap. xlviii; Schaten, *Hist. Westphal.* (2d ed.), p. 119, says: "Usus hujus vocis hodie in Saterlandia obtinet apud incolas prisci sermonis retinentissimos, apud quos coram audivi loquentes 'sachs' cultrum sonat." For information on the Saterland see Kretschmer, *Hist. Geographie von Mitteleuropa*, sec. 121, where other literature is cited.

The Goths, too, earlier seem to have been partial to this short blade. For in the *Gesta Francorum* by Rorico, a monk of Moissac, we find the Visigoths using it against the Franks in Clovis' time: "Gothi . . . cultellos permaximos quos vulgariter 'hantsaccos' corrupto vocabulo nominamus, etc." (Migne, CXXXIX, 609.)

² For Saxon hatred of outsiders (*advenae*) see Adam of Bremen, III, 55; Hel-mold, *Chron. Slavorum*, I, 83.

in Swabia and Bavaria. While there were many nobles, there was also a large body of free peasants. Moreover, these nobles were not many of them great landowners. Their distinction was a social one rather than one of political superiority. They lived much like English country gentlemen upon their estates. The early Saxon noble was more a rich proprietor farming his ancestral acres than a great baron. His life was rustic and his activities and interests rural. He was proud of his class but he wore no escutcheon.¹

The true-born Saxon was opposed to new-fangled feudal laws and feudal methods like rigid definition of the relations of overlord and underlord, relief (i.e., inheritance tax for succession to a fief), new judicial processes, new kinds of taxes, extension of the king's ban over the forests, etc. He was a staunch conservative in this attitude, and in the sentiment the peasantry shared.² The Saxons were proud of the *crudelissima lex Saxonum*,³ opposed to the new invention of the church to regulate and restrain private war, the Truce of God,⁴ resented efforts to stamp out the good old blood feud (*faida*),⁵ were sticklers for the old legal idea of personality of law,⁶ were democratic within their class, but clung tenaciously to social distinctions, and detested outsiders (*advenae*) of any kind, Swabians, Bavarians, Flemings, etc., and hated *ministeriales* both as men of servile origin and as outsiders.⁷

Such is a picture of the culture of Saxony and the Saxon people in the depth of the feudal age—a bit of older Germany surviving and persisting in Central Europe when all the rest of Europe had gone the road of feudalism. Racial instincts, customs and inhibitions, primitive Teutonic religion, primi-

¹ Nitzsch, II, 10; Müller, *Sachsen unter Herzog Magnus* (1881), p. 9; Huebner, *Germanic Private Law*, p. 94.

² Bruno, *De bello saxonico*, chap. xxv. Cf. what Huebner, pp. 6–7, says about the conservatism of Saxon law. The revolt of Margrave Dedi of the Ostmark, or Thuringian Mark was due to the fact that having married the widow of the former margrave, Henry IV demanded payment of an inheritance tax (relief) for the lands which she brought him (Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 106; Bruno, *op. cit.*, chap. xxvi).

³ Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. vi.

⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 108, 116.

⁴ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 160.

⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 158, 270.

⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 114, 151, 152, 158, 172, 178, 217, 235, 236, 246, 262, 287; Bruno, *chaps. xvi, xxiii–xxvi, cxxvii.*

tive Teutonic law, a simple Teutonic society, gradually broken down by stronger outside contacts—such is the history of early Saxony.

Longinqua odia et inexpiabiles irae had existed between the Saxons and the Franks from the time of Charlemagne, and may have been aggravated in 1024 when the scepter passed from the Saxon to the Salian (Frankish) house. But in the eleventh century this factor was probably less concrete than the separatist ambition of the Billunger dukes. This purpose, veiled under Conrad II, became clear in the reign of Henry III (1039–56),¹ who took drastic measures for the coercion of Saxony by erecting and garrisoning castles there, so that long in advance of their rebellion the Saxons already were treated much as a conquered people.

In spite of the large part which Saxony played in German history during the rule of the Saxon house (919–1024), the Saxon people always had preserved a certain aloofness toward Germany as a whole, and revolved in an orbit of their own defining. Two reasons were mainly responsible for this: One was the fact that the Slav world not only impinged upon the eastern edge of Saxony, along the Elbe River, but actually imperiled Saxony. Accordingly, the interests and the energies of the Saxons for two hundred years were chiefly directed toward the conquest of the Wendish tribes. The colonization and upbuilding of Mecklenburg, Brandenburg, the Thuringian East Mark, and Pomerania absorbed all the resources of the Saxons. They had neither time nor inclination to participate in the affairs of the rest of Germany.

The other influence which held Saxony aloof from Germany at large was the fatal blunder of Otto I in failing to retain the duchy in his own hands, and instead conferring it upon his friend, Hermann Billung.² From the first the Bil-

¹ See Hauck, *Kirchengeschichte*, III, 313 and notes.

² Hermann Billung in 961 owned twenty counties in Saxony, and in Nordalbingia from Ditmarsch to the Peene River he possessed the tithe (Richter and Kohl, *Annalen*, III, Part I, 139, 143, 147, 185, 194). The tale that the Billunger in the beginning were mere peasant farmers is a legend (Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, I, 247–48). The family was originally from Nordalbingia and owned several counties in the dioceses of Bremen and Verden (*ibid.*, pp. 237–38; Waitz, *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte*, VII, 102, 109, 138; Steindorff, *De ducatus qui Billungorum dicitur in Saxonia progressu*).

lunger dukes played their hand wholly for themselves, and worked tooth and nail to build up a great lordship in the north which would be all but independent of the German crown. Henry II was well advised when he built a royal citadel in Bremen.¹ The result was a wall of partition, as it were, between Saxony and the rest of Germany which accentuated the isolation of Saxony.²

Until the decease of Duke Benno in 1011 the Billunger had been loyal, though with diminishing fidelity, to the German crown. With the accession of Duke Bernhard the alienation of Saxony became an estrangement which Conrad II was not the man to brook. His lenient treatment of the Wendish peoples (the hereditary foes of the Saxons) and the revindication of the fisc which he began were intimations not lost upon the Billunger. Thanks to Conrad II's effective measures, by 1039, when Henry III succeeded his father, only two of the six German duchies, Saxony and Lorraine, were independent. From the Rhine to the Morava, from the Harz to the Brenta, Henry III was both a local prince and a sovereign. Even the string of marches along the eastern border of Saxony were under his control. For after the death of Eckhard of Meissen in 1046, who made the king his heir, the crown had retained Eckhard's allodial lands, while the Thuringian March and Lausitz were given to Dedi of Wettin, a jealous rival of the dukes of Saxony.

¹ Adam of Bremen II, 48 (*anno* 1011).

² How far the factor of interracial antagonism between North and South Germany is to be allowed is doubtful, and it may have been rather a result than a cause. It was not greatly apparent before the war of investiture, and then the elements were so complex and kaleidoscopic that it is quite impossible to differentiate and to evaluate them all. Innocent III, though, used the racial argument in 1198 (*Reg. de neg. Rom. Imp.* [Migne, *Patrologia Latina*, CCXVI, 1067]; Toesche, *Heinrich VI*, Beilage X, pp. 587-92). Yet there was no love lost between Saxons, Bavarians, Swabians, and Franks. The Bavarians had a bad reputation for plundering whenever possible (*Adelboldi Fragmentum de rebus gestis Henrici (II) imperatoris*, chap. xviii; [Migne, CXL, 95]).

CHAPTER V

THE REBELLION OF SAXONY¹

IT WAS with Henry III (1039-56) that the real coercion of Saxony was begun. His instruments of coercion were the archiepiscopal authority of Bremen, the fisc, and royal castles spread like a mesh over the duchy. He wrought to make Adalbert, archbishop of Bremen,² the great lord of the north in room of the Billunger dukes, to crush their feudal power under the weight of an enormous politico-ecclesiastical authority backed up by the military and financial resources of the crown, and at the same time to bleed the Saxon nobles and high clergy of the lands which they had obtained from the fisc in huge amounts and by questionable methods in times past.³

But Henry III's intentions were bigger than the coercion of a sullen and recalcitrant duchy. Possession in his own hands of each and every one of the German dukedoms was but preliminary to greater things still. What Henry III

¹ The literature pertaining to this subject is so great that it may seem temerity to hope to write anything new upon it. See Meyer von Knorau, *Jahrb. Heinrich IV*, II, 153 f.; Nitzsch, *Hist. Ztschft.* (N.F.), IX, 1, 193 f.; Vogeler, *Otto von Nordheim*, pp. 65-66; Lindner, *Anno der Heilige*, pp. 83 f. Ullmann, *Zum Verständnis der sächsischen Erhebung* (*Aufsätze für Waitz*); Zweck, *Die Gründe des Sachsenkrieges* (Königsberg, 1881); Eckerlin, *Die Ursachen des Sachsenaufstandes* (Burg, 1883); Hahn, *Ueber die Gründe des Sachsenkrieges* (Dramburg, 1885); Tieffenbach, *Die Streitfrage zwischen Heinrich IV und den Sachsen* (Königsberg, 1885); Sieber, *Haltung Sachsens gegen Heinrich IV* (Breslau, 1883); Meyer, *Lambert von Hersfeld* (Königsberg, 1877); Delbrück, *Ueber die Glaubwürdigkeit Lamberts von Hersfeld* (Bonn, 1873); Wagemann, *Die Sachsenkriege K. Heinrichs IV* (Celle, 1882); Floto, *Kaiser Heinrich IV und sein Zeitalter*, I, 351 f.; Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, III, 155 f.; Gerdes, II, 178 f.; cf. Richter, *Annalen*, III, Part II, 117 n.

² Adam of Bremen, III, 34, 35, 36, 56, 57, 65; Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (anno 1057); Steindorff, *Heinrich III*, II, 366 and n. 6. Ordulf called Adalbert a spy—*quasi exploratorem* (Adam of Bremen, III, 5). On the other hand, Adam calls Magnus' followers *latrones* (III, 48).

³ For Adalbert's use of *dispensatores fisci* see Lambert of Hersfeld (ed. Holder-Egger), pp. 89, 91. The Archbishop's fiscal operations and castle-building angered the Saxons (Adam of Bremen, III, 36).

dreamed of was the transformation of the feudalized German kingship into a real monarchy, the defeudalization of it by concentrating all provincial authority in the person and office of the king, the welding of the separate duchies into a compact whole—in a word, to transform the German kingdom from an agglomeration of duchies into a compact, united realm.

As a means to this end Henry III planned to centralize the Salian monarchy in a fixed capital at Goslar, and abandon the age-old practice of a wandering, itinerant government with the capital situated wherever the king happened temporarily to be at any given time.¹ Goslar at this time was nothing but a hunting lodge of the kings, with a little mill hard by it, in the Harz. But the locality had recently acquired great importance because of the discovery of the silver deposits of the Rammelsberg in the reign of Otto I.² The increased importance of a money economy is faintly discernible in Europe at least fifty years before the Crusades which created a widespread necessity for it, and Henry III seems to have felt the peculiar value of Goslar as a capital.³ In spite of its apparent remoteness and isolation Goslar actually was singularly well situated for a capital. The great Heschenwege, or Hessian Way, the most important vertical highway in Germany between the Rhine and the Elbe, terminated at Goslar, so that the town was readily reached from Franconia, the homeland of the Salian kings, and even

¹ This is a moot point among historians of Germany, and many doubt if Henry III's ideas were so concrete. But it seems to me that Nitzsch (*Deutsche Gesch.*, II, 45-47, and Anmerkung, pp. 352-60) has proved the point. Goslar originally pertained to the house lands of the Ludolfinger dukes of Saxony, whence came Henry I and Otto I. The appropriation of Goslar by the Salian kings was one of the many grounds of feud between the Billunger and the crown in the eleventh century. Cf. Begiebing, *Die Jagd im Leben der Salischen Kaiser*, p. 48 (Bonn diss., 1905); Borchers, *Villa und civitas Goslar* (Leipzig, 1919).

² Widukind, *Rer. gestar. Sax.*, III, 64; Thietmar, *Chron.*, II, 8. Legend ascribed the discovery to the reign of Henry I (Waitz, *Jahrb. Heinrich I*, Excursus XV; Kretschmer, *Hist. Geographie von Mitteleuropa*, p. 210).

³ See Gebhardt, *Handbuch d. deutschen Gesch.* (1st ed.), I, 298, n. 10; Justus Möser, *Osnabrückische Gesch.*, Part III, sec. 18, is the first historian who emphasized this fact.

from Swabia and Bavaria.¹ Here the Emperor built a palatium, erected two churches, and established a market which soon became an important rendezvous of merchants.²

The Saxon feudality and their duke regarded the new policy of Henry III with deep distrust, a sentiment also extended to the King's favorite, Adalbert of Bremen, whom the royal largess enriched with the reversion of the county of Frisia, 700 manors in the royal Herrschaft of Lesum (or Lismona), other estates (*praedia*) in Sinzig, Duisburg, and Altenburg, navigation rights on the lower Weser and along the coast, king's ban and hunting rights in Stedingerland and Vieland, in addition to gold bullion and plate for the cathedral church at Bremen.³ Even more ominous than this increase of the power of his favorite in Saxony was Henry III's castle-building in the Harz, where he erected Regenstein and Heimburg, fit companions to Goslar. It was evident that the machinery of the metropolitanate of Bremen and that of the fisc were to be utilized to coerce Saxony. Duke Bernhard and the ring of northern bishops around Anno of Cologne, Adalbert's bitter rival, of whom Burckhard of Halberstadt, Anno's nephew, and Werner of Magdeburg, Anno's brother, were the most prominent, regarded Henry III's measures with secret and sullen anger.⁴

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld frequently mentions this road (pp. 116, 117, 156, 225). Modern (and medieval) Eschwege in Hesse-Nassau, about eighteen miles southeast of Cassel, preserves the remembrance of this famous highway. The town consists of the old town on the left bank of the Werra River and the new town on the right bank, and Brückenhausen—expressive name—on a small island connected with the old and new towns by bridges.

² Adam of Bremen, III, 27. Goslar, Boppard, Hammerstein, Dortmund, Engern, Nürnberg, were the chief toll stations of the German *Reich* (Waitz, VIII, 203; Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 145 n.).

³ Adam of Bremen, III, 8, 27, 44, gives a detailed account of these donations. For further information see Kretschmer, p. 238; Dehio, *Gesch. d. Erzbistums Hamburg-Bremen*, I, 233 f.

⁴ Adam of Bremen, III, 5, 34; Bruno, chap. xxvi; Vogeler, *Otto von Nordheim*, pp. 44-45. For a particular account of Burckhard's spoliation of the fisc see Sellin, *Vita Burchardi II . . . ep. Halberstadensis* (Halle, 1866), pp. 13-15; Wackermann, *Burchard von Halberstadt, der Führer der Sachsen in dem Krieg gegen Heinrich IV* (1878). Henry IV imprisoned him in the Harzburg at one time (*Ann. Palad.*, SS. XVI, 70). Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales*, abounds with details as to the plundering

The fire was not long in breaking out. Apparently the enrichment of Adalbert was the chief grievance, although the irritation was commingled with fear of loss of some of their own ill-gotten lands.¹ In 1047 matters reached a crisis when Thietmar, the brother of the Saxon Duke, was charged with a plot against the life of Adalbert of Bremen. When summoned to trial before the Emperor, Henry III commanded him to clear himself through trial by battle, and as if in deliberate humiliation of the accused, appointed as his combatant a royal *ministerialis* named Arnold. Thietmar refused to fight under such conditions. The cause was adjourned for a few days, and in the meantime Thietmar was murdered by Arnold. Shortly afterward the dead Count's son waylaid and killed Arnold and then hanged the corpse between two dead dogs, for which the King exiled him.² The relation of Saxony to the German crown was year by year becoming more and more tense. Already, since the death of Otto III in 1002, one representative of the ducal house had been besieged, one killed, and the third exiled. It is no wonder that for the next five years Henry III stayed almost uninterruptedly in Saxony and pushed forward the works around Goslar.³

The sudden death of the Emperor in the prime of life in 1056 delayed, but did not avert, the struggle between Saxony and the crown. The duchy began to steam with rebellion. As soon as it was known that Henry III was dead the Saxon nobles commenced to take measures to safeguard their interests, although Lambert of Hersfeld's statement⁴ that a plot

of the "royal" monasteries and the fisc during Henry IV's minority, e.g., pp. 41, 42, 47-56, 58, 67-69, 77-79, 89-91, 192, etc. For the graft and rapacity Anno displayed in order to enrich Cologne see Lambert, p. 143.

¹"Metropolitanus autem e contra bonis studiis certans et beneficiis" (Adam of Bremen, III, 9; Steindorff, II, 15-16, 366).

²Adam of Bremen, III, 8; Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 61. For this gruesome old German method of punishment see Grimm, *Rechtsalterthümer*, p. 685.

³Herim. Aug., *Chronicon (annis 1048-52)*.

⁴"Principes Saxoniae crebris conventiculis agitabant de injuriis quibus sub imperatore affecti fuerant, arbitrabanturque . . . si filio ejus dum aetas oportuna injuriae esset, regum iriperent. . . . Accessit . . . adjumentum Otto frater Wil-

was at once set on foot to dethrone the infant Henry IV, and even to kill him, is open to doubt. It is impossible to believe that the conspirators ever seriously contemplated putting up as king Otto, the half-brother of the heroic William, the margrave of the Nordmark, who had recently died of wounds received in a campaign against the Hungarians, and with whose prowess Germany rang. For Otto's mother was a Bohemian. It is preposterous to think a man of half-foreign and base extraction could have been contemplated for the kingship. The truth would seem to be that the conspirators planned to use Otto (whose claim to the vacant margraviate was impeached by his low birth as well as against the feudal law of the time, for the hereditability of the marches was not yet established as a legal principle) as a stalking-horse behind whom to further their own designs. But the murder of this ambitious and unscrupulous adventurer, as he was en route to Saxony, by two of the King's cousins, Bruno and Ekbert of Brunswick,¹ certainly nipped a contemplated rebellion of the Saxon nobles in the bud.

Perhaps nothing but the strength of Adalbert of Bremen saved the crown of the infant Henry IV from being at once stripped of all power in the north. But in the end the great Archbishop was overwhelmed by his foes. First Henry IV, who had nominally attained his majority in 1065, was compelled to dismiss Adalbert from his service (1066); then the Billunger fell upon Bremen and terribly wasted the diocese. In vain Adalbert, who had fled to Goslar, sought to compound with his enemies by proffering a thousand of his manors. "He shall not rest," said Ordulf, Duke Bernhard's son, "while I and my house last." In the issue, the archdiocese of

lehelmi marchionis sed matrimonio impari, matre scilicet Sclavica. . . . Is. . . . comperta morte fratris, magna spe obtinendae hereditatis regressus in Saxoniam, a cunctis illic principibus benigne excipitur, magnisque omnium adhortationibus instigatur non modo marcham, quae sibi jure hereditario competeret, sed ipsum quoque regnum affectare. . . . Fidem omnes dicunt, suas quisque manus, suam operam pollicentur, regemque, ubicumque fortuna oportunum fecisset, interficere constituunt" (Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* [1057], p. 71).

¹ Their grandmother was Gisela, formerly wife of Bruno, count of Brunswick, who after his death married the emperor Conrad II.

Bremen was stripped of two-thirds of its lands, half the spoil going to the Duke, the rest to his partisans.

In the welter which followed the fall of Adalbert it must sometimes have seemed as if the German kingship would be dragged down, too, and the King become a lean and solemn phantom like the kings of France at this very time, with scant domains and little save the theory of royal authority to sustain the fabric of government. For with the general lapse of the crown's power in Saxony, Bavaria, Swabia, and Lorraine also exhibited ominous centrifugal tendencies. Fortunately for the crown at this critical juncture, the German episcopate as a whole, even in Saxony, remained loyal to the monarchy. Why should it not? For a century and a half the kings had fed and favored the bishops, and protected them against the violence of the feudality.

Henry IV was made of sterner stuff than either his father or Conrad II. The greatest of the Salians, as able as Frederick Barbarossa and far wiser (indeed, if I may hazard my own judgment, the ablest German ruler between Charlemagne and Charles V), Henry IV was not the man to cry quits. With a courage, a cunning, and an energy that is amazing to observe, when Henry IV became a free agent at the termination of his disastrous minority, he patiently set himself to repair the shattered fabric of German kingship which Conrad II and Henry III had built up.

During the King's infancy the disloyal bishops and the Fürsten in Saxony had boldly seized huge blocks of the lands of the fisc by means of forged charters or by force, and then erected castles in defiance of the law with which to hold the land.¹ Dedi, margrave of the Thuringian March, built Beich-

¹ A portion of the fisc was the remnant which remained from the largesses which had been made by the Ottos. The residue was represented by the revindications of Conrad II and Henry III. The penury of the royal fisc in Saxony is manifest from the admissions even of the king's enemies (Lambert of Hersfeld [1065; ed. Holder-Egger], p. 100; *ibid.* [1073], p. 173; Bruno, *De bello Sax.*, chap. xliii—letter of Werner of Magdeburg to Siegfried of Mainz; *Carmen de bello Sax.*, I, 26, 45). Much of the property of the crown had been seized by means of forged charters, especially in the case of the bishops. For further information see Vogeler, *Otto von Nordheim*, pp. 41–43; Waitz, *Abhand. d. k. Gesellschaft d. Wiss. Göttingen*, Band XV; Schumann, *Gesch. des niedersächsischen Volkes*, pp. 190–91. The best study of Henry IV's attempt to "revindicate" the fisc in Saxony and Thuringia is M. Stimming, *Das*

lingen and Burgscheidungen; Otto of Nordheim constructed Hanstein, Burghasengun, and Desenburg; Magnus Billung fortified Lüneburg.¹

But the Saxon nobles soon discovered that two could play at the game of castle-building. Henry III had pointed out the way to coerce the duchy by erecting Goslar, Regenstein, and Heimburg. His son proposed to cover the country, especially the region of the Harz, with a network of castles, garrisoned by loyal Swabians, Bavarians, and Franconians, most of them *ministeriales* of the king.² The plan was not unsimilar to Otto the Great's method in the tenth century, when he gridironed the newly conquered Thuringian March, just wrenched from the Sorben, with timbered blockhouses like those which his father Henry I had built in Saxony to protect it against the Magyar raids. But Henry IV's erections were more substantial than these earlier structures, for the art of castle-building had much advanced in the eleventh century.³

The precaution had first been pointed out to the King by Adalbert of Bremen in 1066, and he had begun speedily to act upon the advice.⁴ The first and strongest of these castles was the Harzburg,⁵ which was another Goslar in magnificence

deutsche Königsgut, pp. 86 f., who shows that much the richest block of the crown lands was in Eastern Saxony and Thuringia.

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld (1069), p. 108; *ibid.* (1071), p. 119. Anno of Cologne was the original sinner in this violation of the law (Delbrück, *Ueber die Glaubwürdigkeit Lamberts v. Hersfeld* [Bonn dis., 1873], p. 30), having built them during the feud with the abbots of Fulda and Hersfeld—a fact which Lambert carefully conceals, but which is revealed by the *Annal. Corb.* (anno 1067), SS. III, 6. Cf. Bruno, *De bello Saxonico*, chap. xvi; Ekkehard, *Chronicon* (anno 1068); Berthold, SS. V, 275; *Annal. Alah.* (anno 1073).

² "Rex . . . privata praesidia nimirum potentibus regni non satis fidens instituere . . . coepit" (Ekkehard, *Chron.* [1068]).

³ "Castella non tam pulchra quam forta esse laborabat" (Bruno, *loc. cit.*).

⁴ ". . . ipsius [Adalbert] suasionibus coepit in desertis locis altos et natura munitos montes quarere, et in his hujusmodi castella fabricare, quae si in locis competentibus starent, ingens regno firmamentum simul et ornamentum forent" (*ibid.*). Stimming (*Das deutsche Königsgut*, pp. 98 f.) significantly shows the contiguity of the lands of the leaders of the Saxon revolt, bishops as well as nobles, to the royal domains in Saxony and Thuringia.

⁵ Bruno, *loc. cit.*; Lambert of Hersfeld (anno 1071); Meyer von Knonau, II, 231, n. 76; *ibid.*, p. 871, n. 5.

and strength. At first the Saxon Fürsten smiled derisively, and said that Henry IV was merely playing at castle-building.¹ But when the hills of Thuringia and the Harz country fast began to bristle with frowning fortresses they looked graver.² Among them were Wigantestein, Moseburg, Sachsenstein, Spatenburg, Hasenburg, and Volkerode.³ Without counting the castles which his father had erected, Henry IV soon had five other castles in the Harz, and two in Thuringia.

The royal architect in the erection of these structures was Benno II, bishop of Osnabrück, the earliest military engineer of medieval Germany.⁴ If Bernward of Hildesheim (died 1022) be Germany's first great architect,⁵ Benno was certainly the second and Otto of Bamberg the third.⁶ Swabian born, and of servile birth, Benno was educated at Reichenau, whence he went as master to the cathedral school at Hildesheim, of which church he became provost. Henry III took a fancy to him and made him mayor of his palatium at Goslar and superintendent of the fisc. Finally, having tested Benno's talents, the Emperor appointed him bishop of Osnabrück in 1054. He died in 1088, the most able and loyal supporter Henry IV ever possessed. Besides building the King's castles Benno drew the plans and laid the foundations of Henry IV's Romanesque cathedral at Speyer, where the prob-

¹ "... puerilis ludus videbatur" (Bruno, *loc. cit.*).

² "Montes omnes colliculosque Saxoniae et Turingiae castellis munitissimis . . . (Lambert of Hersfeld [1073], p. 141); "... totam Saxoniam castellis novis et firmis coepit munire" (*Vita Bennonis*, chap. xi); to the same effect: *Annal. Corb.* (1067), SS. III, 6; *Annal. Sax.* (1067), *ibid.*, VI, 695; *Compil. Sanblas.*, *ibid.*, V, 275; Bernold, *ibid.*, p. 429; *Annal. Altah.* (1073).

³ Lambert of Hersfeld (1073), p. 179. For location and details about these structures see Holder-Egger, *Neues Archiv*, XIX, 190 f., 425 f.; Meyer von Knonau, *op. cit.*, II, 871 f.; Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 130-31. Helmold, *Chron. Slavorum* (written a century later), I, 27, in order to make an effective quotation from Deut. 32:10, exaggerates the wildness and isolation of the site of the Harzburg. Lambert of Hersfeld's description (pp. 155-56) is probably fairly accurate. There were no roads in the region, only hunters' trails. The Harzburg, like the Star Chamber in England, became a synonym for royal tyranny. Arnold of Lübeck in the thirteenth century refers to it as the "jugum totius Saxoniae" (*Chronicon Slavorum*, II, 18).

⁴ See the long and interesting accounts in *Vita Bennonis*, chaps. xi, xxi, xxvii.

⁵ On Bernward see Thangmar, *Vita Bernwardi*, SS. IV, 758 f.

⁶ See Herbordus, *Vita Ottonis ep. Babenb.*

lem of protecting the foundations from being undermined by the floods of the Rhine was a difficult one. In addition to these abilities Benno was a notable manager of the lands and resources of his diocese.¹

Henry IV's drastic course in the building of these châteaux stirred up bitter resentment in the countryside roundabout, for he impressed into service the whole laboring population, employing not only serfs from the crown lands in the region, but those on the manors of the Saxon nobles too, and even, it is said, Saxon freemen.² When completed the castles were garrisoned with Bavarian and Swabian troops, who instead of living upon the produce of the royal manors in the vicinity, made levies upon the Thuringian monasteries and raided the countryside for forced contributions.³

And yet there is reason to believe that the chroniclers hostile to Henry IV, like Bruno and Lambert of Hersfeld, exaggerate these grievances. As has been before observed, by the middle of the eleventh century Europe was beginning to manifest signs of an economic awakening, trade was commencing to have an international relation, and a money economy was slowly supplanting the old practice of barter and exchange. With the silver mines of the Rammelsberg so close at hand Henry IV seems to have attempted to force forward these economic changes too rapidly for the backward population of Thuringia to understand them. For Lambert inadvertently admits in two places that those supplies which the fisc or the royal abbeys (which were actually part of the fisc) failed to furnish were purchased—an inadvertence as damaging to the annalist as it is creditable to Henry IV. It probably not infrequently happened on such occasions that

¹ Norbert's *Vita Bennonis* ranks as one of the most valuable episcopal biographies of the Middle Ages. For modern appreciations of him see Von Thyen, *Benno von Osnabrück* (Göttingen diss., 1869); Stenzel, *Gesch. Deutschlands unter den fränkischen Kaisern*, II, 93 f.; Bresslau, *Neues Archiv*, Band XXVIII; Löffler, *Die Westphälischen Bischöfe*, pp. 39-44.

² Bruno, *loc. cit.* For a similar instance in Lorraine see *Frag. de gestis Henrici imp.* (Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CXL, 98).

³ Bruno, chaps. xvi, xxv; Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 118, 141; *Annal. Altah.* (anno 1073); Waitz, VIII, 429. For an instance of one of the royal *ministeriales* being killed by a woman at Ingelheim while making a forced levy see Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 101.

the simple peasantry, unused to money and not knowing what to do with it, refused to take it when proffered in payment for supplies taken, whereupon the King's officers seized the goods wanted.¹

That Henry IV should have been misunderstood and violently opposed, not only by those who had selfish interests to guard, but by others who were quite genuine and sincere in their hostility to him, was natural. Bruno's charge is true: ". . . ut solus omnium dominus esset, nullum in regno suo dominium vivere vellet,"² provided "dominus" be understood as an absolute king and not a tyrant, and "dominium" to mean intelligent and efficient rule and not mere brute force on the part of a prince. Goslar, both because of its strategic position in Saxony, the storm center of opposition to the Salian purpose to establish a strong monarchy in Germany, and perhaps more because of its proximity to the Rammelsberg silver mines, was Henry IV's intended capital.³ Here was the seat of Henry IV's court until the great rebellion of 1075 drove him out. It was the *königlicher Hof*. Here foregathered, when not afield, Henry IV's most trusted counselors and friends like Benno II of Osnabrück, Ebbo of Naumburg, Liemar of Bremen, Adalbert's successor, lesser nobles of the feudal hierarchy like Werner of Hesse, William of Utrecht, Liupold of Merseburg, Giso, count of Gudensberg-Hollenden, Udalric of Cosheim, a count Adalbert, whose fief (if he were not a favored *ministerialis*) seems to have been too insignificant to record the name of, with his four sons, and two counts of Nellenberg—one from Zurichgau, the other from the upper Rhinlands.⁴

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 100, 173. Lambert seems to be confirmed by Bruno (chap. iv), who clearly fails to understand this kind of transaction.

² Bruno, chap. lx. The same charge is made by the *Annal. Sax.* (1076), which quotes the harangue of a Saxon leader: "Nolite servitutis jugum recipere, nolite hereditariam vestram tributariam facere."

³ Nitzsch, *Deutsche Studien*, p. 133 (also printed in *Hist. Ztschft.* [N.S.], IX, 1 f., 193 f.); Thyen, p. 34 and n. 5. Vogeler (*Otto von Nordheim*, p. 39), however, thinks Henry IV had no greater purpose than to make Goslar his chief military base. But, as developed in the text, Henry IV's public economy was toward getting away from the old *Naturalwirtschaft* and basing his system of government upon the new *Geldwirtschaft*.

⁴ Adam of Bremen (ed. Schmeidler), p. 192, n. 3.

The fisc, as already intimated, was an important instrument of Henry IV's administration, and he used it like a screw to bring pressure upon Saxony. For he enormously increased the burden upon the crown lands there both for days of service and in amount of produce to be contributed. The heaviness of Henry IV's hand in these two requirements was so great that one is led to think that there was a political intention in the policy as well as an economic purpose; that, anticipating protest, and even rebellion, he planned to break the backbone of opposition in advance by sheer weight of the burdens imposed.

Be this conjecture as it may, the fact is certain that the inventory of services required in the year 1064-65 shows that the exactions laid upon the fisc in Saxony were from four to five times as great as elsewhere in Germany. According to this highly important document,¹ the crown then possessed twenty-one manors in Franconia, twelve in Bavaria, and twenty in Saxony. Nothing is said of the number of the crown lands in Lorraine or Swabia or Carinthia, and we know that there was no fisc in the new colonial lands across the Elbe.

An analysis of these important *Tafelgüter* reveals that while the fiscal manors in Bavaria were charged with only thirty-six days' service and those in Franconia with eighty-five days' service, the Saxon manors had a total of four hun-

¹ The full title is *Indiculus curiarum ad mensam regis Romanorum pertinentium* (text in *MGH Const.*, I, No. 440, 646; better edition in *Neues Archiv*, XLI, 572-74). Haller, "Das Verzeichnis der Tafelgüter des römischen Königs," *Neues Archiv*, XLV, 48-81 argues against the generally accepted date (*ca.* 1065) and holds that it pertains to a century later (1185). But I cannot see the force of his argumentation. It seems impossible to me that the document can be of the time of Frederick I, though it is plausible to indulge the thought that it was made by Frederick I after the fall of Henry the Lion in 1181. See B. Heusinger, "Servitium regis," *Archiv. Urkundenforschung*, VIII, 26-159, for further critical study. While by far the most important, this famous *Indiculus* is not the sole source of information which we have upon the royal exactions in Thuringia.

In Boehmer, *Fontes*, III, 397, or *MGH LL*, IV, 1, 647-49 (also in *Reg. Thur.*, No. 853), is found a similar document showing the undue burden imposed upon the manors there. It reads: "Iste curie tamen de Saxonia dant regi tot servitia, quot sunt dies in anno et XL plus. Item notificamus tamen vobis, quod sit regale servitium in Saxonia: Sunt XXX magni porci, III vacce, V porcelli, L galline, L ova, LXXX casei, X anseres, V carrate cervisie, V libre piperis, X libre cerae, vinum de cellario suo ubique Saxonie." Cf. also *ibid.*, Nos. 837 and 940.

dred and five days' service imposed upon them each year. This means that the average long working day of the Saxon peasant was prolonged far beyond customary exaction elsewhere. The same enormous discrepancy is apparent also when we compare the exactions in produce (as distinguished from services). It may be presented in the subjoined table.

	Cows	Hogs	Chick- ens	Geese	Eggs	Chees- es	Beer	Honey	Wine	Pepper
Saxony.....	60	600	1000	200	10,000	1,800	100	200	.....	100
Franconia.....	20	160	200	40	2,000	360	.....	40	16	20
Bavaria.....	15	120	150	30	1,500	270	.....	30	12	15

If Henry IV had gone no farther than the reorganization of the fiscal system upon the crown lands in Saxony¹ he would have dealt only with an unfree peasantry. But he touched the whole body of Saxon freemen, of whom there were thousands, on the quick when he revived the almost obsolete royal impositions (*census*; Ger. *Zins*, *steora*), formerly exacted of freemen in Carolingian times. These were collected on farm produce.² The menace of manorial serfdom threatened the largest and freest body of free peasantry in Germany. It is small wonder that the Saxon peasantry grew disquieted. Always tenacious of their native institutions and jealous of outside and newfangled innovations of any kind, whether in state or church, they were apprehensive lest the new policy of the fisc might extinguish the *Allmend*, inclose the forests, restrict their hunting rights, and draw the net of manorialism tighter around their free villages.³

¹ For the management instituted upon the manors of the church from which the crown drew revenues see *Vita Bennonis*, chap. x; Eggers, *Der königliche Grundbesitz*, pp. 133-34; Inama Sternegg, *DWG*, II, 150.

² Waitz, IV, 111 and n. 6; Schröder, *Rechtsgesch.*, p. 187. For an example under Otto I see *Codex Anhalt.* (965), I, No. 42, p. 32. On the other hand, tribute was only exacted of the conquered non-German peoples of the east border, e.g., Widukind, I, 35, 40; *ibid.*, III, 53; Wipo, chap. vi; Lambert (*anno* 1041); Otto Fris., *Gesta Frid.*, III, 2.

³ Even in the reign of Henry II, who was of Saxon blood, the Saxons had showed alarm by compelling the King to take an oath "not in any point to corrupt Saxon law" (Thietmar, *Chron.*, V, 16-17; Giesebrecht, II, 24, 593).

The Salian forest policy was as alarming as its fiscal policy. The old order of things formulated in Vridank's rhyme,

Dem richen walt es lützel schâdet,
Ob sich ein man mit holze ladet,¹

was fast becoming obsolete in the eleventh century. One of the most significant evidences of the growth of feudalism is the gradual appropriation of the forests by private proprietors, both lay and clerical. Year by year since Charlemagne's death the area of free forest land in Germany had shrunk, and the rights of the peasantry to the timber, fish, and game therein had been curtailed by the spread of private proprietorship.² With the revival of royal authority by the Saxon kings a stop was put to this indiscriminate practice of forest appropriation, and all unappropriated forest land was declared to be *Königswälder* and a part of the fisc, special license being required for use of it.³ But unfortunately, while the Ottos thus tried to save at the spiggot, they wasted at the bung. The Saxon kings were lavish in gifts of forest land to the bishops and abbots.⁴ The drop-off of private donations to the bishops in the eleventh century, owing to the great popularity of the religious orders, especially Cluny, gave a fillip to the land-hunger of the bishops, who found compensa-

¹ Quoted by Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part I, 517.

² *Ibid.*, p. 110; and his *Deutsche Gesch.*, III, 54-55; Von der Goltz, *Landwirtschaft*, I, 186; Huebner, *Germanic Private Law*, p. 271.

³ Lamprecht, *Deutsche Gesch.*, III, 53.

⁴ Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part I, 148. This is especially true of Henry II. In 1002 he enriched the Bishop of Worms, in 1008 the Bishop of Liège, in 1012 the Abbot of Fulda, with huge tracts of forest. See his *Acta* (Migne, CXL, 245, 281, 295).

In 1065 Henry IV gave Adalbert of Bremen the *Bannforst* over the forest between the Ruhr, the Rhine, and the Düsseldorf, through which the great road from Cologne ran, which at that time was dotted with villages of the free peasantry. "Addimus insuper cum banno nostro praedictae ecclesiae forestum unum in triangulo trium fluminum scilicet Rein, Tussale et Rurae positum, ita quoque determinatum per Ruram se sursum extendens usque ad pontem Werdinensem et exinde per stratam Coloniensem usque ad rivum Tussale, et per descensum ejusdem rivi ad Rhenum, et per alveum Rheni usque ad quo Rura influit Rhenum" (Lacomblet, *Urk. B.*, I, 205; cf. Averdunk, *Gesch. der Stadt Duisburg*, I, 44; Begiebing, *op. cit.*, pp. 33-36).

tion by inclosing the forests, a practice which the lay nobles quickly imitated.¹

By the middle of the Salian period most of the forest land in Western and Southern Germany had become inclosed. But this was not true of Saxony. Here the forest was the poor man's home, in whose depths he might escape the coils of manorialism, farm a little clearing, and pasture his swine upon the nuts and acorns without money and without price. This free condition especially prevailed in the Harzwald and Thüringerwald.²

Henry IV, with that passion for efficiency which so characterized him, determined to realize upon all the resources of the crown, and revived the almost forgotten prerogative of king over unappropriated forest tracts and sought to assimilate the forests in Saxony with the fisc.³ The project stirred the Saxon people, especially the masses of freemen, enormously. If he had alarmed and antagonized the free farming peasantry of the open country by imposing the *Zins*, he now still more alarmed and antagonized those thousands of humbler, lowlier freemen who dwelt in tiny hamlets in clearings in the forests. They believed that the King contemplated nothing less than the reduction of all of them to a state of serfdom. They resented being compelled to pay for pasturage and firewood which from time immemorial had been as free as air, and the curtailment of their ancient right of "squatter sovereignty."⁴

Farther and farther into the remote valleys of the Harz and the depths of the Thüringerwald, had the Saxon free peasantry pressed, only there to be sought out by land-hungry bishops, abbots, and barons, or the agents of the

¹ Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 688; Inama Sternegg, *Grundherrschaften*, p. 44.

² Thietmar, V, 19; *Vita Bennonis*, chap. x. For the wildness of the Harzwald see Lambert of Hersfeld (1073), p. 156.

³ Waitz, VIII, 388; Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 123; Lambert of Hersfeld (1073), p. 146. For other mentions by him of government invasion of the forest see pp. 141, 147, 155, 158, 159, 270; Bruno, chaps. xxx, xlii; *Carmen de bello sax.* I, ll. 42-46. Delbrück (*op. cit.*) has shown the exaggerated nature of this popular apprehension. Cf. Thimme, "Königsgut und Königsrecht," *Archiv. f. Urk.* (1909).

⁴ ". . . qui vulgo dicuntur werlude" (Lacomblet, *Urk. B.* [1026], I, No. 164, cited by Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part I, 148).

royal fisc.¹ The Harzwald must have been dotted with tiny forest villages founded thus,² among whose inhabitants Henry IV's announcement that the king's ban was to be extended over the three great heaths of Saxony spread consternation. For the heaths had been *Ödlandereien* as far back as the memory of man.³ The forest around Castle Iburg seems to have been dotted with these pioneer borderers (*commarchiones*), who were driven to fury by the royal appropriation and leveling of the woods to make a cleared space for another of Henry IV's castles.⁴

The bitter tithe wars waged at the same time in Saxony between the bishops and the abbots for exclusive right to exact tithes of the peasantry increased the rage of the peasantry. The bishops claimed that the right was an episcopal one in which the abbots had no part. In Osnabrück there was a feud between the Bishop and the Abbot of Corvey,⁵ Burckhardt of Halberstadt waged a long controversy with Hersfeld.⁶ The Archbishop of Mainz and the Abbot of Fulda were at swords' points in Thuringia. Inevitably the feudality were drawn into the struggle. Dedi of the Thuringian Ostmark and Albert of Ballenstadt sought to fish in the troubled waters. Royal intervention became necessary to enforce peace in Thuringia, but increased the sullen resentment.

Henry IV emerged victorious from the struggle with Margrave Dedi only to discover that he had a new and more formidable conflict upon his hands in the rebellion of Otto of

¹ For a striking instance see "Gesta Marcuardi," *Fuld. Fontes* (ca. 1150), III, 166. The upper Moselle was not invaded until the twelfth century (Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part I, 147).

² There is a valuable article by Bruhns, "Geographische Studien über die Waldhufensiedelungen in Sachsen," with a map, in *Globus*, XCV, 197-200, 220-25.

³ For these three heaths see *Sachsenspiegel*, II, 61, and for the *campestris Heidibae* (Hadeby) south of the Schlei River see Adam of Bremen, II, 79. Cf. *Zeitschft. f. Ethnologie*, XXXVI (1904), 688-90. An interesting account of the multiplication of these forest villages during the tenth and early eleventh century may be found in the *Mittelrheinisches Urkundenbuch*, Band II (Einleitung); Inama Sternegg, I, 207-17; Arnold, *Ansiedelungen und Wanderungen deutscher Stämme*, II, 20-44; Von der Goltz, I, 140 f.; Rietzler, *Gesch. Bayerns*, I, 135 f.; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part I, 124-48.

⁴ *Vita Bennonis*, chap. xvi.

⁵ *Ibid.*, chap. xvi.

⁶ Lambert of Hersfeld (1059), p. 75.

Nordheim and Magnus Billung. Few characters in the history of feudal Germany are more enigmatical than Otto of Nordheim. Even the exact reason for his rebellion still eludes complete explanation. Was Otto a deeply wronged man, or was he a shrewd adventurer? Was he knave or hero? Certainly, whatever be the verdict, it is impossible to deny Otto's great influence upon the course of events.

Otto of Nordheim first appears in history in 1061 as a favorite of Agnes, the queen-mother, who gave him the then vacant duchy of Bavaria in that year. He was of Saxon lineage and already marked as a man of capacity.¹ Gossip said that out of pique at not obtaining the duchy of Swabia instead, Otto turned against the Empress. At any rate, he was a party to the abduction of the young King in 1062 and for a time shared the power with Anno of Cologne and Adalbert of Bremen.

When Henry IV took the reins of government into his own hands he may possibly have feared so powerful a counselor. He had no reason to repose confidence in any ministers of the regency except Adalbert, least of all a Saxon. For Otto of Nordheim, through his landed possessions, was one of the greatest of the Saxon nobles and boon companion of Magnus Billung to boot.² The crisis came in 1069 when Henry IV was sojourning in Bavaria, having just returned from a victorious campaign against the Ljutizi beyond the Elbe.³ A violent feud broke out between some of the men of the Duke and a favorite *ministerialis* in Henry IV's train named Conon,⁴ whom Otto detested, perhaps for no other reason than that Saxon pride of birth hated all parvenus. The other *ministeriales* in the entourage took a hand in the fray, among them a friend of Conon named Egino.⁵ The affair was temporarily appeased. But soon afterward Egino publicly accused Otto of conspiracy to kill the King.

¹ Stenzel, I, 217; Voigt, p. 14.

² *Annal. Altah.* (anno 1061); Ekkehard, *Chron.* (1071); Lambert of Hersfeld (1061), p. 78; Vogeler, p. 7 n.

³ *Annal. Weissemb.* (anno 1069); Sigeb. Gembl., *Chron.* (1069).

⁴ He appears as a recipient of the King's bounty in a charter of October 26, 1064 (Stumpf, *Regesta*, No. 2652).

⁵ Vogeler, pp. 12 and 14, n. 3.

The incident so far seems only to have led to some estrangement between the King and the Duke.¹ Now Otto was summoned to appear before the *Hofgericht* at Mainz (June 19, 1070), where he denied the charge and was given a delay of six weeks, at the termination of which he was commanded to appear at Goslar to clear himself, according to custom,² by trial by battle with his accuser. The form of solution was needlessly humiliating,³ for Otto of Nordheim was a high noble and Egino a man of servile origin. The Duke demanded a safe-conduct to court and a trial by his peers. The King granted the security but evaded pronouncing upon the form of the process. Otto feared, perhaps with good reason, to come to Goslar, was tried and condemned in his absence by a court of Saxon nobles,⁴ and deprived of his benefices, which were immense.⁵ The north country soon flamed with war. The armed *ministeriales* of the King devastated Otto's estates, while he himself sought asylum in the depths of the Thuringian forest, whence he made forays upon the adjacent crown lands. In August, Henry IV himself came with a rout

¹ Otto of Nordheim's name appears very rarely in the *Urkunden* in 1069-70, although frequent before (Vogeler, p. 17).

² ". . . ut mos est" (Ekkehard, *Chron.*, SS. VI, 200).

³ For an analysis of the psychology of this incident see Meyer von Knonau, II, 9 f.

⁴ As Otto was a Saxon and lived Saxon law the process was strictly proper. But was he guilty? Saxon chroniclers, like Bruno and Lambert, believe him innocent; the Bavarian author of the *Chronicle of Niederaltaich* thinks him guilty; Bertold of Swabia brings in the Scotch verdict "not proven." The various sources are analyzed by Giesebrecht, *KZ*, III, 1033 f.; Richter, III, 2, 71, n. B. A puzzling feature is that Saxon nobles themselves condemned Otto. Lambert alleges private envy of him: "principes Saxoniae . . . propter privatas inimicicias maxime in visum eum haberent" (p. 114), which Riezler, *Gesch. Bayerns*, I, 484, thinks plausible, but which Franklin, *Das Reichshofgericht im Mittelalter*, II, 129, 160, denies; Delbrück, pp. 21-26, thinks Lambert's account one of studied mendacity. Where doctors so disagree, perhaps I may be justified in making my own conjecture. In feudal society at this time honor, originally a social conception, had come to have a legal valuation. Saxon law, in especial, shows great sensitiveness to this quality (Huebner, *Germanic Private Law*, p. 102 [trans. Philbrick; Boston, 1918]). Even impeachment of a man's honor was sufficient ground for *Ehrlosigkeit*, although actual guilt might not be proved. May not Otto's peers sitting as a jury have regarded the charge itself as sufficient to justify condemnation? Helmold (*Chron. Slavorum*, I, 27), writing a century later, says Otto was condemned *quia Saxo erat*, which is absurd.

⁵ "Beneficia quae immensa habuerat, perdidit" (*Annal. Alah. Maj.* [anno 1071]; Waitz, VI, 497, n. 5).

at his heels, stormed the castles of Hassenstein on the Werra, and Burg Tesenberg near Paderborn. With less justice he harried the Westphalian lands of Otto's wife, who had been the widow of Count Hermann of Werla. Within a short time Otto of Nordheim had a following of three thousand men who lived partly on booty and plunder of the manors of the fisc, partly upon the resources furnished by his friend Magnus Bil-lung.

The Saxon, especially the Thuringian peasantry, who hated the new and heavy taxes and tithes which had recently been laid upon them,¹ rallied around Otto, as did also many of the Saxon nobles, for reasons of their own, which were far different from those of the peasantry. The war gave vent to all the accumulated grievances of the Saxon and Thuringian people of all classes of society. It was at once a political and military conflict and a social and economic uprising.²

Meantime, humiliation and ignominy were heaped upon Otto of Nordheim. He was deprived of his duchy of Bavaria, which was given to Welf, the first of this famous house to hold the dignity.³ In Saxony the war widened to formidable dimensions, the smoldering wrath of the peasantry undoubtedly being aggravated by the hard times due to failure of the harvest during three consecutive years.⁴ Henry IV feverishly

¹ *Vita Bennonis*, chap. xiii: "Redditus inde per singulos annos exacti sunt pro quantitate agrorum." The weight of these exactions and the resentment of the peasantry were undoubtedly greatly aggravated by the successive crop failures and famine conditions which existed in Saxony in the six years between 1066 and 1072 (see graphic details in Adam of Bremen, III, 57 and 64). Wolves even penetrated into the streets of Hamburg. The hunger in 1075 noticed by Bruno, chap. liii, was not due to failure of crops but to the destruction wrought by the civil war.

² The sources abound with evidence: *Annal. Altah.* (1070); Ekkehard, *Chron.* (1070-72); *Annal. Sax.*, SS. VI, 720; *Ann. Avent.*, V, 12. Convenient extracts are in Richter and Kohl, III, 2, 75. For the Thüringerwald at this time see Kirchoff, *Mitteil. d. Geogr. Gesellschaft zu Jena* (1885), III, 18 f.

³ Welf had married Judith, a daughter of Count Baldwin IV of Flanders and niece of Matilda, queen of William the Conqueror. Her first husband had been the famous English earl, Tostig, who was exiled by Harold in 1066 and fled to Normandy. Judith brought a fortune with her into Germany. In order to marry this rich lady he put away his first wife Ethelinda, who was a daughter of Otto of Nordheim. Welf's enmity with Otto of Nordheim and his wealth undoubtedly commended him to the favor of Henry IV. He was forced to pay well for the duchy: "praediorum suorum et pecuniarum quantitatem regi donavit."

⁴ *Vita Bennonis*, chaps. xiii, xiv, xv.

pushed forward the construction of new fortresses by forced labor, even freemen being compelled to work. Bishop Benno of Osnabrück built Castle Iburg in the heart of Widukind's ancient country;¹ Otto of Nordheim fortified Burg Hasungen in Hesse, a basalt hill a mile from Cassel as his chief base.² Fruitless efforts were made to patch up a peace. Neither antagonist would trust the other. Moreover, it was apparent that Henry IV had the stronger following of the two, for Otto was only supported by local interests, while with the King were the dukes of Bavaria, Swabia, Lower Lorraine, and many bishops.³ In desperation Otto of Nordheim and Magnus turned to Adalbert of Bremen and offered to restore the manors of which he had been despoiled.⁴ Finally, when the court was celebrating the consecration of the new cathedral at Halberstadt, the two rebels came in and made submission. Magnus was promptly thrown into prison in the Harzburg for life. The outlawry against Otto was canceled, his allods restored, but his feudal lands confiscated, and he was imprisoned for a year.⁵

Henry IV seemed everywhere the master. "Tanto rex erat omnibus terrori," wrote Bruno, the Saxon chronicler.⁶ Otto of Nordheim appeared to be crushed, the Billunger seemed cowed, the peasantry in despair, and Henry's castles were rising or completed on almost every hill in Thuringia. But the calm was too furtive to endure. It was the lull before a new and greater storm. The various ingredients of enmity in Saxony were too explosive to remain quiescent. In the spring of 1072 Otto of Nordheim was released,⁷ but Magnus Billung was still kept in prison. At this juncture Duke Ordulf Billung of Saxony died (twelve days after the death of his implacable

¹ Adam of Bremen, III, 57.

² Meyer von Knonau, II, 42; Hauck, *Kirchengesch.*, III, 725; Delbrück, p. 27; Vogeler, p. 38.

³ See the list of vassals in the King's train at Liège in 1071 (Stumpf, No. 2743); cf. *Annal. Sax.*, SS. VI, 698.

⁴ Adam of Bremen, III, 39; *Annal. Alah.* (1071).

⁵ Sources collected in Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 82, n. C, and p. 93, n. E.

⁶ Bruno, chap. xviii.

⁷ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 137.

enemy Adalbert of Bremen), and Magnus became the new duke, although a prisoner in the Harzburg. Henry IV, in the flush of his success and fulness of pride, refused to recognize the succession, and seemingly with the resolution to annex the great duchy of Saxony to the crown by forfeiture, seized the Billunger stronghold of Lüneburg.¹

It was a high-handed as well as an inexpedient act. Ordulf had never been popular with his people, but young Magnus was popular among them.² The King was simply courting new rebellion, the more so as the Saxons soon found a leader in Otto of Nordheim. Henry IV's reckless conduct crystallized the widespread resentment into hard and sharp form. The enmity of the feudality because of the King's political and administrative methods, especially the revindication of the fisc and the use of *ministeriales*, the ambition and suspicion of some of the bishops, notably Burckhardt of Halberstadt, the wrongs, real and fancied, suffered by the Saxon peasantry,³ both freeborn and servile, the menace of the King's castles, the feuds with Otto of Nordheim and Magnus—all these forces and factors coalesced.⁴

The King, if we may believe Bruno, seems to have thought that holding Magnus as a hostage would avert revolt.⁵ But the surprise and capture of the garrison which had been left in Lüneburg by Hermann Billung, Magnus's uncle, made the King change his mind, and in return for the release of these seventy captives Henry IV was compelled to give Magnus his liberty, "whence the saying ran through all Saxony that one Saxon was worth seventy Swabians." Saxony was jubilant, and for a time it was thought that greater concessions were

¹ *Annal. Sax.*, SS. VI, 698; Bruno, chap. xxi.

² Bruno, chap. xix.

³ According to *Vita Benonnis*, chap. xiv, Henry IV's procrastination exasperated the nobles and peasantry to rebellion.

⁴ The *Ann. Alah.* (1073) sum up the situation thus: "Igitur per longum tempus potentes quosque rex ceperat contemnere, inferiores vero divitiis et facultatibus extollere et eorum consilio, quae agenda erant, amministrabat, optimatum vero raro quemquam secretis suis admittebat, et quia multa inordinate fiebant, episcopi, duces alique regni primores de regalibus se subtrahebant."

⁵ Bruno, chap. xxi.

in the air. But when, shortly afterward, a deputation which went to Goslar to ask for redress of grievances which still rankled, was kept waiting a whole day and then dismissed without seeing the King amid the jeers of the royal *ministeriales*, the anger of the Saxons was again stirred to its depths.¹ A rush would have been made at once upon the Harzburg by the desperate crowd if the cooler head of Margrave Dedi had not restrained them.

That night the leaders held a conference in a nearby church and resolved upon a great open-air meeting to be held at Wormsleben near Eisleben. "Illa dies et haec causa bellum primatus incipit." There Otto of Nordheim took the parole and in an impassioned speech set forth all the accumulated grievances of the Saxons. Below the medieval Latin surface of Bruno's account, deep in the fibers of the parchment, one can feel the pulse and throb of a tremendous popular movement, the kind of deep, national passion which makes Bruno's *Liber de bello saxonico* a prose epos. The *Carmen de bello saxonico*, the other contemporary account of Saxon authorship, on the other hand, is tintured with aristocratic sympathies.² The same is true of Lambert of Hersfeld. He has no real sympathy with the Saxon peasantry, but uses their grievances as a means to abuse Henry IV.

It is interesting, in the long list of grievances, to distinguish the particular *gravamina* which each writer emphasizes. The unknown author of the *Carmen* demands the leveling of the castles; the return of confiscated and forfeited estates; the exclusion of *ministeriales* from the royal council; the restoration of Otto of Nordheim to the duchy of Bavaria; amnesty for all, especially for Otto, Magnus, Anno of Cologne, Siegfried of Mainz; the integrity of ancient Saxon law; the abandonment of Goslar as a capital; justice to church and cloister; and the "return to kingly honor." On the other hand, Bruno reflects popular feeling. He demands destruction of the King's castles, relief from fiscal exactions,

¹ Bruno, chaps. xxii-xxiii. The *Annal. Altah.* (1073) are more moderate but to the same effect.

² See Roehrig, *De secularibus consiliariis Henrici IV* (Halle diss., 1886), p. 4; "Die höfische Färbung des Carmen," Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 127 n.

Saxon representation in the King's council when the court is on Saxon soil (an extremely interesting demand from the point of view of medieval law), and general amnesty.¹ This programme, while chiefly having to do with redress of grievances, yet had within it certain constructive recommendations or demands. The germ of a new and important theory of government was embodied in them.

The cleavage between the feudo-ecclesiastical party and the popular or peasant party is clear through all the war which soon followed, in spite of the confusion and apparent identity of issues. Otto of Nordheim's failure to bridge this cleavage, and to effect a more perfect union between the two factions, accounts for his downfall at last, as it also partly accounts for Henry IV's success at Langensalza. Otto was too much of a noble to be wholly trusted by the common freemen and the servile class; on the other hand, the Saxon nobles, lay and clerical, were suspicious of him because of his professions of sympathy with the peasantry—he protested too much—and his popularity with them.

In the alignment against the King were the Saxon bishops Wezel of Magdeburg, Burckhardt of Halberstadt, Hezel of Hildesheim, Werner of Merseburg, Eilbert of Minden, Immet of Paderborn, Frederick of Münster, Benno of Meissen. Among the nobles were Hermann Billung (uncle of Magnus), Dedi (margrave of the Ostmark), Ekbert of the Thuringian March, Frederick (count palatine in Saxony), Diedrich of Cadalzburg, Adalbert of Ballenstadt, and some lesser nobles like the counts Otto, Henry, and Conrad whose fiefs are not known. Lambert of Hersfeld dismisses the rest of the rebels as "a common herd."² The German episcopate as a whole adhered to Henry IV, including three Saxon bishops, viz., Benno of Osnabrück, Eppo of Zeitz, and Liemar of Bremen, as did also most of the high feudality throughout the country. The cloisters were not drawn into the struggle until the conflict with the papacy began.

Henry IV was at the Harzburg, a mile from Goslar, upon a steep hill commanding the valley of the Ocker clear to

¹ See Richter and Kohl's analysis, *op. cit.*, p. 149 n.; Vogeler, pp. 65–66.

² *Vulgus promiscuum* (Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 150).

Brunswick. For fear of being entrapped there, on the night of August 9-10, 1073, he fled through the forest, narrowly escaping his enemies who lay in wait for him along the roads, through the guidance of a hunter who took him by devious trails to Hessewech.¹ Here the ban was issued for meeting of the King's forces on the Werra at Breedingen on the seventh day after the feast of St. Michael. Meanwhile, at an assembly held at Tritburg, a hill near the Unstrutt River, the Thuringians joined the revolted Saxons and the whole country was soon in flames.²

The winter of 1073-74 was a hard one for the Saxon peasant levies, most of whom were on foot. Many of them were suspicious of the leaders, lay and clerical, who had their own axes to grind.³ The Hasenburg was taken, and the siege of Spatenburg and Volkerode begun, but the Harzburg still held out. It was impossible for the King to humiliate the valiant garrisons of these strongholds by surrendering them. The friction between the Saxon *Landwehr* and the leaders grew apace. The revolted peasants were at sea, knowing not what to do.⁴ Their inclination increasingly was to make one more effort to persuade Henry IV to moderate his policy, while at the same time the Saxon leaders thought that they might fish advantageously in the troubled waters. They were indifferent to the grievances of the peasantry if they could force the King to give them what they wanted.

The whole body of insurrectionists, accordingly, sought the King, who was at Gerstungen (February 2, 1074), and presented their demands.⁵ Henry IV quickly sensed the division which prevailed among them and played his hand deftly. The hostile forces were double his own, a fact which frightened some of his following until the King pointed out to them that many of them were peasants without horses, and bearing

¹ *Ibid.*, p. 156; Adam of Bremen, I, 13; cf. Kretschmer, p. 402.

² Bruno, chaps. xxvii-xxviii.

³ Bruno, chap. xxxii.

⁴ " . . . nulla Saxonibus viderentur satis tuta consilia" (Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 180).

⁵ Bruno, chap. xxxi.

homemade arms.¹ Henry IV suavely promised amnesty for all, relaxation of the harshness of the fisc, to choose Saxons for his advisers in Saxon affairs, not to introduce Bavarian, Swabian, or other outsiders into the land in an administrative capacity, and to level the royal castles except that the chapel and convent in the Harzburg were to be preserved, provided that the Saxon nobles also destroyed their castles.² According to Lambert of Hersfeld, the King even promised to restore Otto of Nordheim to the duchy of Bavaria within a year; and, according to the *Carmen de bello saxonico*, he gave gold to the Saxon leaders. The terms were astutely made, for Henry IV well knew that the rebellious Saxon nobles would not level their fortresses, so that he could plausibly refuse to fulfil his terms as long as his enemies failed to execute theirs.

The thousands of Saxon freemen soon discovered that they had been euchred by the King and betrayed by their leaders,³ and their fury was great—all the greater because in that spring the border Slavs had raided their country while it was without defenders, destroyed farms and granaries, and carried off some of their wives and children into captivity.⁴

The popular rage soon passed beyond all restraint by the nobles. The Harzburg was to them the symbol of Salian despotism, an emblem of the reduction to serfdom with which they felt themselves threatened.⁵ Three days later a wild rush was made upon the Harzburg by the maddened folk. The royal manors were sacked and burned, the castle destroyed with all its rich furniture by pickax and fire, the treasure of the chapel looted, the altar smashed to fragments, the tomb of Henry IV's little son and his own brother

¹ Berthold. Const. (1075) sums up the Saxon demands in a very few words, "Imprimis exoptata vitae securitas, pacis fideique non fictae, foedus inviolabile: justitiarum legumque paternarum suarum, plenaria libertas."

² Bruno, *loc. cit.*; Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 180; *Carmen*, II, 215-19.

³ According to the *Carmen*, II, 190, there were 60,000 men, mostly freemen, in the Saxon army.

⁴ Bruno, *loc. cit. ad fin.*

⁵ Lambert of Hersfeld. p. 183.

Conrad, who were buried there, torn open and their bones, together with those of a defunct abbot and the skull of St. Anastasius, a sacred relic which the King had given to the church, thrown into a ditch.¹

The sack of the Harzburg was an act of wild, popular fury for which the Saxon leaders were not responsible. Indeed, the news of it threw them into dismay, for it gave the King a ready pretext to declare that the terms of peace had been violated. The whole cause of the Saxons was compromised by it.² Moreover, the sacrilege which had been committed thrilled the people with horror, the more so because the event took place just before Easter. The wantonness shocked religious sentiment and offended the feelings of common humanity.³ Werner, bishop of Merseburg, wrote a letter of grievance, apology, and alarm to Archbishop Siegfried of Mainz⁴ which must have been intended for public circulation. It is even said that a mission was sent to Rome by the King to accuse the rebels.⁵

The Saxon rebellion now took a new departure. The entrance of the burgher class of the Rhine cities into the struggle (1074) upon the King's side is a very important political and social event.⁶ With Henry IV against the vested and political interests of the high German feudality, the rebel bishops, the Saxon peasantry—and the papacy was soon to enter the lists—were now aligned the loyal bishops, the lower feudality (including a host of *ministeriales*), the "royal" Benedictine abbeys whose inmates resented the Cluniac re-

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 184-85; Bruno, chap. xxxiii; *Carmen*, III, 1-23; Ekkehard, *Chron.*, SS. VI, 200, etc. For the tomb see Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 70; for the relics, p. 135.

² Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 184.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 185; Bruno, chap. xlii.

⁴ Reproduced in Bruno, *loc. cit.*

⁵ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 185. The statement seems doubtful since there is no evidence in Gregory VII's *Epistulae*. But see Pauli Bernried, *Vita Gregorii VII*, chap. lxiv. The alleged letter of Henry IV inserted in the *Registrum Greg. VII*, Bk. I, between Epp. 29 and 30 is a manifest forgery. It is without number and date.

⁶ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 169, 170, 186, 187, 192, 193, 280; *Carmen*, III, 199-200; Boos, *Urk. B. der Stadt Worms*, I, 47, n. 56; Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 141-46; Sudendorf, *Registrum*, I, No. 3 (Cologne); Nitzsch, II, 82-84.

form and the propaganda of the "new" papacy, and finally the burghers of the middle Rhinelands.¹

In the middle of the winter (1074) Henry IV had come to Worms to celebrate Christmas there. It happened to be the very time when the revolted Saxon princes had sent emissaries to solicit the support of the Rhine princes, especially that of the bishops of Mainz, Worms, and Cologne, and to propose the elevation of Duke Rudolf of Swabia as counter-king.² The plot stirred the burghers of Worms deeply, and when the *milites* of Bishop Adalbert tried to bar the King's entrance into the city they rose in rebellion, drove the Bishop out, and enthusiastically welcomed Henry IV. The King promptly showed his gratitude by exempting the Wormser merchants in future from all tolls in the seven royal villas (*Zollstätten*) of Frankfort, Goslar, Boppard, Dortmund, Nürnberg, Engern, and Hammerstein. By Easter week the burgher revolt had spread to Cologne, where Henry IV's intriguing foe, Archbishop Anno, also was driven out.³ The wild rumor was spread through the Rhine country that the angry Archbishop had appealed to William the Conqueror to restore him, and in spite of its absurdity it was sufficient to call the King back hastily from Bavaria, where he was upon the point of making an expedition against the Magyars.⁴

Meantime, the Cluny reform movement, since the identification of Gregory VII with it, was assuming vast proportions. The cardinal legates, Hubert of Palermo and Gerald of Ostia, with the bishops of Chur and Como, were working secretly among the Saxons and intriguing with the German bishops, while Henry IV resumed his interrupted Magyar campaign.⁵ The great conflict between Henry IV and Greg-

¹ "Heinricus rex . . . principes despicere, nobiles opprimere, inferiores sustollere . . . coepit" (Ekkehard, *Chron.* [1068]).

² Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 168-69.

³ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 169. *De unitate eccles. conservanda* (chap. xxviii; Lindner, *Anno der Heilige*, p. 85; Meyer von Knonau, II, 391 f., 805 f.).

⁴ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 195; *Vita Annonis*, II, chap. xxii; Meyer von Knonau, II, 390, n. 108; Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, IV, 568.

⁵ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 193-97. The critical notes of the editor, Holder-Egger, need to be read carefully to control the text. Cf. the critical notes in Richter, III, 2, pp. 167-72, n. A.

ory VII was impending, to add the touch of grandeur to the approaching war and inject the element of religious fanaticism into the already complex issue.¹

But before the Pope was quite ready to throw down the gauntlet to Henry IV, Saxony flamed anew into rebellion. In the spring of 1075 Otto of Nordheim, Frederick, count palatine in Saxony, and Burckhardt of Halberstadt took the field, the alleged ground of revolt being Henry IV's failure to fulfil the pact of Gerstungen. The initiative was taken by the Saxon Fürsten, but many Saxon and Thuringian freemen joined their standard.² Yet many of the peasantry hesitated, and even some of the Saxon nobles held back, especially those who held lands elsewhere in Germany, out of fear of losing them. Families were divided against one another.³

The King established his headquarters at Bredingen, in the lands of the abbey of Hersfeld, whence he sent word to the rebels saying that he was willing to confer with the Saxons in regard to their grievances, provided they put away their leaders. This firm stand was enough to cause the desertion of some of the lesser Saxon nobles to the King.⁴ Early in June, Henry IV moved his quarters from Bredingen to Langensalza on the Unstrutt River,⁵ so as to be closer to the Saxon encampment, declaring that the time for words had passed.⁶

It was a motley army which lay over against the royal host. Mingled with the Saxon nobles and their vassals, who of course were armed after the feudal manner, were thousands of freemen, "a tumultuary levy," fighting on foot, armed with homely weapons, and more used to wielding the pick and spade than a sword. There were even serfs who had been impressed into service by their masters. The King's

¹ Already the rebel bishops had worked upon the fears of the masses in Saxony and Thuringia by utilizing the sacrilege at Harzburg (see Lambert's account, p. 214).

² Berthold. Cont. (*anno* 1075), Bruno, chap. xxxix.

³ Bruno, chaps. xxxvii, xlv; Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 221.

⁴ Bruno, chap. xlv.

⁵ Berthold. Const. (1075) notices Henry IV's careful attention to military detail.

⁶ Bruno, chap. xlv.

strength was in his horse, for his army was wholly of feudal formation.¹

The charge of Henry IV's Swabian contingents² under Duke Rudolf—who was soon to turn his coat and espouse the papal cause—broke the Saxon center immediately, and the rest of the battle of Langensalza (June 9, 1075) was a rout. The very camp-followers (*plebei et rustici*) took a hand in the fray. The rebel leaders saved themselves, thanks to the swiftness of their horses, but the Saxon foot forces were slaughtered like sheep. Several thousand, it is said, perished by drowning in the river.³ Prodigious spoil fell into the victors' hands.⁴

The fratricidal nature of the battle of Langensalza, the frightful slaughter, shocked Germany. The Saxon nation was so shaken that the Archbishop of Mainz had to threaten to excommunicate the Thuringians, who had refused to pay the tithes, in order to raise new funds for the war chest of the rebels.⁵ The harrying of Saxony and Thuringia followed upon the triumph, so that the country was reduced to starvation. Men and women fled to the forests for refuge.⁶

The Archbishop of Magdeburg, after consultation with his fellow-insurgent Burckhardt of Halberstadt, in a letter to the Archbishop of Mainz and the Bishop of Würzburg, undertook to discover what terms the King would accept.⁷ Henry IV, after keeping them on tenterhooks for weeks, returned an evasive answer as to the grievances of the Saxon peasantry;

¹ *Ibid.*, chap. xxxviii; Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 216; *Carmen*, III, 97-126.

² The Swabians, in accordance with ancient German law, had the honor of the van in battle (Berthold. Const. [1075]: "ad primam coitionem ut et se lex habet Allemanica"). Cf. Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 218. The privilege is recorded in the *Schwabenspiegel*, sec. xxxii. Stahlin, *Gesch. Württemb.*, I, 393, has collected a series of passages from historians and poets in evidence of the honor.

³ See accounts in Bruno, chap. xlvi; Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 218-21; *Carmen*, III, 127-208; Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 176 n.

⁴ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 221.

⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 222.

⁶ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 221 *ad fin.*, pp. 223-25; Bruno, chaps. xlvii, liv; *Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. iii.

⁷ This letter is in Bruno, chaps. xlviii-xlix. Cf. Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 222.

but his terms were clear and hard regarding the rebel Saxon nobles. Yet hard and humiliating as they were, they were accepted. They were sentenced to six months' imprisonment and the confiscation of their fiefs, which were distributed among the King's adherents.¹ Then followed a dramatic event. On the broad plain between Creussen and Kindelbrücken near Speyer, on October 25, 1075, the whole Saxon army, bishops, nobles, and freemen, disarmed and barefooted walked submissively between the files of the King's army on either hand and laid their act of surrender at Henry IV's feet.²

Saxony was so broken and divided against itself that its complete subjugation seemed accomplished. The rebel leaders were crushed and humiliated. The mass of the people, who felt that great numbers of their class had been slain like sheep for the benefit of the feudality, were bitterly angry with the nobles, who returned the hatred.³ Many a broken noble, many an impoverished freeman, with his family, left the country and trekked to the colonial land beyond the Elbe, while other nobles sought asylum in France.⁴

Apparently Henry IV had won a conclusive victory. But the invincible nature of the Saxons was soon to belie the outward appearance. Actually the Saxons had scarcely begun to fight.⁵

The King's hand had fallen heavily on the duchy. The way seemed open now for him to realize that absolute monarchy which was the aspiration of the Salian kings. But Henry IV was not a mere tyrant, and once the opposition to his purposes was crushed he was in the mood to be just, or at least

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 232.

² Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 238-39; Bruno, chap. liv, glosses the event. Perhaps it was too humiliating for a Saxon to describe.

³ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 237.

⁴ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 233, 239, 256, 258, 259, 260; Bruno, chap. lxxxiv. For additional material on all this see Richter and Kohl, III, Part II, 186, n. F.

⁵ The author of the *Vita Heinrichi IV* (chap. iii, p. 12) writing years later, and viewing the past in perspective, appreciated this. He says: "Nam licet eos in pugna congressos vinceret, victos fugaret, fugatos persequeretur; licet bona eorum devastaret, munitiones everteret, et omnia quae victorem libet, faceret, non tamen ad deditionem cogi potuerunt."

politic. He knew that a constructive policy could not be built up upon the eternal hatred of the Saxons.

Accordingly, the chief princes of the realm were summoned to a diet at Goslar at Christmas (1075) in order to confer about the Saxon question, at which the King took the precaution to assure the succession of the Salian dynasty by securing from them (after the French royal practice) the recognition of his infant son Conrad as the heir of the throne.¹ Then Henry IV unfolded his programme for the conciliation of Saxony, Otto of Nordheim was released from imprisonment, given the royal amnesty, and formally admitted to the King's council.² Even more significant was the elevation of Otto to the position of king's viceroy in Saxony, with official residences in the Harzburg and the Steinberg.³

The sincerity of both Henry IV and Otto of Nordheim in this arrangement has been impugned by numbers of historians, who have accused the King of alienating the ablest leader of the Saxons by bribery, and have condemned Otto for selling himself. It seems to me that this is an unjust verdict in either case. We know, even from Bruno's testimony, that Henry IV had a high opinion of Otto's ability.⁴ Why may not Henry IV have calculated that the reconstruction of Saxony might be facilitated by identifying the fallen Saxon leader, who was popular with the masses of the Saxon nation, with the Salian policy? And why may not Otto have figured, now that Saxony was beaten and broken, that he could do more for the cause of his countrymen by working with Henry IV than sulking in his tent? That the policy of either the King or of Otto of Nordheim was a cynical one, it seems to me is an excess of adverse historical criticism.⁵

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 251; Bernold, SS. V, 43; Jaffé, *Mon. Greg.*, V, 100, n. 46; Waitz, VI, 30-32; Maurenbrecher, *Königswahlen*, p. 110.

² Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 261; Bruno, chap. lvii.

³ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 261. Vogeler styles him *Statthalter*.

⁴ Bruno, *loc. cit.*

⁵ Vogeler (chap. v) thinks that this arrangement was made secretly at the time of the humiliation of the Saxon army in the plain of Speyer in the autumn before. I think an evidence of Otto's sincerity is to be found in the fact that he had no secret dealings, in the early months of 1076, when the conflict with Gregory VII had begun,

Lambert of Hersfeld's accusation that Otto was secretly a willing party to the humiliation of the Saxon army in the field of Speyer, and purchased his own safety and promotion by consenting to the King's deportations and other drastic acts, seems so far fetched that it must be taken with great caution.¹

But it was not Henry IV's intention to restore Saxony to its ancient position among the German duchies. Saxony was regarded as a conquered country, which had forfeited its feudal autonomy and was treated accordingly, much as a faction in the victorious north in the Reconstruction Era declared that the southern states of the United States had forfeited their rights and were to be treated as conquered provinces. The King's intention, beyond a doubt, was to annex Saxony permanently to the crown by abolishing its ducal autonomy, and to make it, with Goslar as the capital, the keystone of the strong monarchy which he had in mind to build up, much in the same way that the French kings used Paris and the Ile-de-France in the upbuilding of the Capetian monarchy. It was the dream of all the Salian kings, it was the purpose of the dynasty, and both Henry III and Henry IV were close students of the course followed by the French kings. In the mind of Henry IV the day of German sectionalism and feudal particularism was a passing one.

Temporarily a hard government in Saxony could be the only effective government, for the country was infested with robbers and brigands, refugees and desperate men of broken fortune who haunted the thick forests, whence they plundered the farming peasantry and even the lands of the clergy.² Merely as a police measure, if not as a precaution against another rebellion, the castles in Thuringia and Saxony which had been destroyed, were rebuilt. Simultane-

with the Pope. There are numerous letters in Gregory VII's correspondence at this time with Rudolf of Swabia, Welf of Bavaria, Gozelo of Lorraine, Berthold of Carinthia, and Wratislaw of Bohemia, but none with Otto of Nordheim, who had been in Rome in 1068 (*Ann. Aliah.* [1068]).

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 261.

² Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 260; cf. Bruno (chaps. liii-lv), who is graphic upon the economic ruination of Saxony.

ously¹ the restoration of the fisc was begun. So energetic were the King's measures that although the people murmured at being compelled to work upon the castles, nevertheless law and order soon again prevailed in Saxony, and economic recovery and prosperity returned.²

So terminated the first rebellion of Saxony. No historian may pronounce with finality upon what the ultimate success of Henry IV's policy might have been. Yet to me it seems probable that Henry IV would have created a great German state coeval with Norman England and anticipating the French monarchy of Philip Augustus, if at this critical juncture the conflict between him and Gregory VII had not befallen, which tore open all the old wounds of Germany and made many new ones, and irrevocably changed the form of government and the social texture. The Pope chose the moment to open battle with the Emperor with shrewdness.

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 246, 259, 261; Bruno, chaps. lvi, lx.

² "Tanta siquidem tamque inopinata rerum prosperitas evidens" (Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 261).

CHAPTER VI

SECTIONALISM AND PARTY STRIFE IN THE WAR OF INVESTITURE

THE EPOCH of German history between 919, when the Saxon house of Henry the Fowler and the Ottos came to the German throne, and 1181, when Frederick Barbarossa rent the duchy of Saxony to shreds after his victory over Henry the Lion, is a single whole. But the period is sharply broken into two parts in the reign of Henry IV, and is intimately connected with the history of the war of investiture in Germany (1075-1122). That conflict is the most important turning-point in the history of medieval Germany between Charlemagne and the Reformation.¹ It was as important for Germany as was the Norman Conquest for England, or the Crusades for all Europe.

In that protracted triangular struggle which broke out in 1075 between Henry IV and Gregory VII, between Henry IV and his revolted vassals, and between the King and the rebellious Saxon peasantry, it is comparatively easy to understand the contention of each party separately. But to understand them in their relation, each to the other, is very difficult. For the organic compound was a very complex one. And the condition becomes all the more complex when one discovers that both the feudality and the hierarchy were divided, some nobles and some bishops adhering to the King in spite of feudal or clerical preponderance against them; that the burgher class of the Rhenish towns sympathized with the King, were hostile to the peasant revolt, and anti-feudal and anti-clerical to boot; and that the nobility, too, lay and clerical, was bitterly opposed to the cause of the peasantry. In this confusion worse confounded, the most invariable and

¹ "Seine lange, im ganzen 50 Jahre umfassende Regierung, ist ein Wendepunkt in der Geschichte der deutschen Verfassung geworden" (Waitz, *Deutsche Verfassungsgesch.*, VIII, 427).

steadfast elements were the Emperor and the Saxon peasantry.

Every ingredient in the war of investiture except that of papal participation had been in insurrection before against Henry IV. The tithe war between the Archbishop of Mainz and the Thuringians, which began in 1062 and drew into its eddies Margrave Dedi of the Ostmark and Adalbert of Ballenstadt, and which was prolonged for more than ten years, finally merging into the war of investiture,¹ the bitter feud between Archbishop Anno of Cologne and Archbishop Adalbert of Bremen, the rebellion of Otto of Nordheim and Duke Magnus of Saxony in 1070-71, the great rebellion of Saxony during 1074-75, culminating in Henry IV's victory over the Saxons at Langensalza in June, 1075—all these were preliminaries of and became factors in the struggle between the Emperor and the Pope.² The variety of issues involved in the war of investiture made it a bundle of discords. Aside from the fact that both bishops and nobles were divided into two factions, a natural bond of union between the feudality and the revolted Saxon peasantry, or between the Rhenish burghers and either the feudality or the Saxon peasantry, was unthinkable. Not even Gregory VII was ever able to reconcile them; adroit as the Pope was in choosing that particular time, when Germany was seething with discord, to challenge the imperial prerogative, the issue of the conflict between him and the Emperor proved the wisdom of the old story about Pandora's box. For the greater war gave birth to forces which neither Pope nor Emperor was able to exorcise.

The ashes of the recent Saxon rebellion, not yet grown cold, were fanned into new flame, while every dissident and ambitious noble, every adventurer who sought to mend his fortune by desperate means, every ambitious or disgruntled bishop, was given a plausible pretext to rise against the royal authority. As a result Germany was rent asunder as never

¹ This complex subject is analyzed by Dieffenbacher, *DZG*, VI, 2, 305 f.; Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb. Heinrich IV*, II, 795 f.; Holder-Egger, *Neues Archiv*, XIX, 185 f., 519 f.; Ausfeld, *Lambert von Hersfeld und der Zehnstreit* (1878); Hesse, *Thüringen im Zehnstreit* (1892). Cf. Richter and Kohl, *Annalen*, III, 2, pp. 33, 65, 66, 99, 125.

² Richter and Kohl, *op. cit.*, III, Part 2, pp. 71, 79, 81.

before in her history, and never again until the great inter-regnum and the seventeenth century. Even families were divided against one another.¹

Aside from the inflexible attitude of Henry IV through all this struggle, the only other factor in the movement which was without variableness or shadow cast by turning was the Saxons. Even Gregory VII for a long time wavered and wobbled. With the Saxons it was not the opposition of a class, but the rising of a great people against oppression and for the vindication of their popular rights. In Bruno's *De bello Saxonico* the forthrightness of the Saxon people is apparent on every page. In Lambert of Hersfeld's account, on the other hand, the Saxon cause is often confused with the other issues, and frequently misrepresented, owing to Lambert's incorrigible partisanship and remarkable mendacity.

The sincerity of the Saxons is the brightest spot in the whole bitter controversy. An incident which Bruno relates of the first Saxon rebellion of 1074-75, which Henry IV so crushed at Langensalza, is in point here, for it illustrates this sincerity. It has a ring of genuineness about it, and a pathos, too, which carries the authentic note. He tells how when Udo of Trier was preaching on Easter Sunday in the cathedral at Mainz, a messenger handed to him in the pulpit a letter in the form of a prayer in the name of the whole Saxon people, and begged the Archbishop to read it aloud. Henry IV, who was present and apparently sensed some danger, forbade him to do so, whereupon the bold envoy, in spite of the King's anger, declared the substance of the missive to the congregation.²

Otto of Nordheim's speech as reported by Bruno³ is the

¹ "Multi etiam de majoribus qui bona in utrisque regionibus habebant, ut utraque servarent, sponte sua hic relicto filio sive fratre ad regem transibant, vel ipsi hic remanentes, fratres vel filios ad regem transibant, vel ipsi hic remanentes, fratres vel filios ad regem transmittabant" (Bruno, *De bello Saxonico*, chap. xxxvii; cf. chap. xlvi, and Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* [ed. Holder-Egger], p. 221).

² Bruno, chap. xlv.

³ Bruno, chap. xxv. Every word of this speech needs to be read in order to appreciate the measure of its importance; cf. chap. xxx. In Lambert of Hersfeld the Saxon arguments are nowhere so succinctly stated, and the Saxon contentions must be pieced together by fitting many scattered paragraphs together. But the popular

clearest formulation of the Saxon demands which we have, although Otto himself is open to suspicion of the sincerity of his own professions and the charge of double dealing. In brief, the points are: that the Saxons were born free but are now being reduced to serfdom owing to the royal tyranny; that Henry IV's castles are a just ground of grievance; that Henry has violated the principle of kingship by his misrule and injustice, and that therefore the Saxons are released from any bond of allegiance to him; that he has forfeited the right to rule, even though not formally deposed.

Gregory VII acted upon this argument on February 22, 1076, when he deposed Henry IV and absolved his subjects from their oath of allegiance to him. It was the surrender of Germany to violence and anarchy, for lordship and homage, suzerainty and vassalage, were the political bonds which held a medieval state together.¹ Whether magnificent idealist, religious fanatic, or stupendously ambitious man utilizing his formidable authority for the elevation of the monarchical papacy over Europe,² the fact remains that the German people were thrown into an appalling civil war by the Pope's initiative.

By the spring of 1076 a widespread conspiracy was under way, engineered by the papal legates in Germany, the disaffected and ambitious feudality, and the Saxons.³ The

note is unmistakable throughout the whole of Lambert's account, even if it is sometimes nearly drowned by the writer's shriller declamations concerning the wrongs suffered by the church and the feudality, with whom Lambert's sympathies lay.

¹ See the text of the first deposition in Doeberl, *Monumenta Selecta*, III, No. 9, or in Jaffé, II, 223. The *Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. iii, strongly inveighs against the monstrosity of the Pope in thus dissolving the feudal bond which held society together.

² *Dictatus papae*, sec. 27, in Jaffé, II, 174; Doeberl, III, No. 6. As early as 1073 Sigfried of Mainz wrote to Rome that the German crown should be regarded as "apostolic"—"ut apostolicum non solum imperii Romani diadema, sed etiam regni Germanici coronam appellaret" (*Codex Udalrici* [ed. Jaffé], ep. 126). Gregory VII's own disclaimer of worldly ambition is in the first deposition.

³ "Facta est igitur conspiratio non modica et magis in dies roboratur" (Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 258). Cf. *Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. iii; Berthold. Cont., p. 283; Bruno, chap. lxxiv; *Hugo Flav.*, SS. VIII, 458. The papal legates were intriguing in Germany in the early months of 1076 (Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 251).

bishops Hermann of Metz and Adalberon of Würzburg, and the Dukes Welf of Bavaria, Rudolph of Swabia, Berthold of Carinthia, "and many others" held a secret meeting "to consider what should be done."¹ Some of the Saxon nobles who had been released on parole after Langensalza were absolved from their oath by Bishop Hermann.² The loyal burgrave of Meissen was assaulted in his city and barely escaped owing to the fleetness of his horse.³ Bishop Burckhardt of Halberstadt haughtily refused to perform the military service required of him against the Hungarians.⁴ The exiled Saxon nobles came trooping back across the frontier from the Wendish lands whither they had fled when the first rebellion of the Saxons was crushed, chief among whom were Dietrich and William, the two sons of Gero, count of Brelma, who were veritable sons of Zeruiah for valiancy.⁵ A guerilla warfare followed in Saxony. The King's castles were assailed, the manors of the fisc devastated. The crown officials fled the country. The fragility of Henry IV's government in Saxony was shown by its swift collapse.⁶

The real leader of the second Saxon rebellion and the brains of the insurrection was Burckhardt of Halberstadt.⁷ Unlike the first rebellion, in which there was a large popular participation, the second Saxon rebellion was primarily a feudal and ecclesiastical movement. The old catchwords of "Saxon liberties" and the old grievances were again alleged, but they had a hollow ring.⁸

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 257.

² *Ibid.*, pp. 258, 260; Bruno, chap. lxxxii.

³ Bruno, chap. lxxx.

⁴ Bruno, chap. lxxxiii.

⁵ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 260, 269; Bruno, chaps. lxxxiv, lxxxv. For the dramatic escape of two of the King's Saxon hostages see Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 265-68.

⁶ Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 261, although he exaggerates.

⁷ This is admitted by both Lambert of Hersfeld, p. 265, and by Bruno, chap. lxxxiii. Modern criticism concurs. See Leers, *Burckhardt von Halberstadt* (1894). The first edition (1892) contained a valuable bibliography omitted in the second.

⁸ ". . . pro patria, pro liberis, pro conjugibus . . . patriam libertatemque armis recuperare" (Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 260, 262; cf. Bruno, chap. lxxxiv).

But Otto of Nordheim, the leader of the former insurrection, held aloof, to the exasperation of the nobles, who needed his support more because of his hold upon the mass of the Saxon people than for his military talents. Accordingly, a deputation visited him in the Steinberg which he had recently completed at great expense, both to advise with him and to warn him. At first Otto hesitated, but either fear or self-interest finally persuaded him to join the rebellion.¹ However, according to Lambert of Hersfeld, before taking the step he had an interview with the King at Saalfeld, in which he tried in vain to induce Henry IV to moderate his policy toward the Saxons, alleging their just grounds of grievance, and only at last, when his plea failed, dramatically washed his hands of the consequences.²

Henry IV turned to the Bohemian duke Wratislaw for help to check the Saxons, and offered him the margraviate of Meissen, since the fealty of young Ekbert of Meissen was dubious.³ But Ekbert was too quick for him and withheld the city and the castle of the march. At the same time (summer of 1076), Gero's two intrepid sons, with seven thousand men, by a *coup de main* endeavored to capture the King, and probably would have succeeded if a flood in the Mulde had not given Henry IV opportunity to make his escape.⁴

In the autumn (1076) at the diet of Tribur and Oppenheim, where the hostile parties met on opposite sides of the river, Henry IV showed that he still could ride the storm. His enemies cried for his deposition; his friends, among whom was Hugh, abbot of Cluny, parried the demand, which would have been almost fatal to the King if executed, by securing a compromise judgment to the effect that Henry IV was to be suspended from his royal functions until he was released from

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 261-62; Bruno, to whom Otto of Nordheim is a hero, suppresses this fact of Otto's hesitation.

² Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 169-72; Delbrück, *Ueber die Glaubwürdigkeit Lamberts von Hersfeld* (Bonn, 1873), pp. 59-61, thinks Lambert's account mere declamation.

³ Apparently Henry IV also sought aid from the Ljutizi, too, for the *Annal. Yburg*, SS. XVI, 436, record that the Saxons raided their territory at this time.

⁴ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 272-73.

the papal excommunication.¹ Meantime, while the King was under the ban, following the Pope's instructions, his enemies wasted the crown lands.²

The dramatic act of Henry IV at Canossa absolved him from the ban and automatically made him every inch a king again.³ Gregory VII dared not refuse absolution after such a striking manifestation of repentance, and the possibility of the Pope trying Henry IV at Augsburg before his rebel vassals—which would have been the last word in royal humiliation—was removed.⁴

The chagrin of the Pope and the anger of the rebel bishops and nobles in Germany at the King's adroit stroke were great. But the Pope was cautious; the rebels were not. While Gregory VII tried to steer a middle course and fenced for time, the revolted nobles met at Forchheim in March (1077) and "elected" Duke Rudolf of Swabia to be king.⁵

¹ Text in Doeberl, III, No. 12.

² Mirbt, *Libelli de Lite*, I, 372.

³ The modern conditions of church and state are so different from what they were in the Middle Ages that it requires a conscious effort of reason to perceive the truth of this statement. In the Middle Ages the church was not a state; it was *the* state. This state had "one basis of unity denied to the modern—religion. Baptism was a necessary element in true citizenship in the Middle Ages, and excommunication was its antithesis. No heretic, no schismatic, no excommunicate, has the rights of citizenship. This principle, admitted as it was by Catholic princes and founded on the Code of Justinian, was the ground of the Pope's claim to depose sovereigns" (Figgis, *The theory of the divine right of Kings*, p. 17). Accordingly, when Henry IV recovered his status in the church he *ipso facto* recovered his position as king.

⁴ The oath which Henry IV took at Canossa guaranteeing the Pope safe-conduct if or when he wished to come to Germany, and to "do justice according to his judgment or make peace according to his counsel," was qualified by a saving clause—*nisi impedimentum*, etc.—which actually left the King's hands free (see text in Doeberl, III, No. 13 *bis*).

⁵ No confidence can be placed in Lambert's assertion (pp. 165–66) that the revolted Saxons participated in the election of Rudolf of Swabia at Forchheim. His statements are contradicted by Bruno, chaps. xvii, xxxi, xxxv, and by the unknown author of the *Carmen de bello Saxonico*, II, ll. 31–44. See, too, Holder-Egger's edition of Lambert, p. 165 n., and O. Grund, *Wahl Rudolfs von Reinfelden*, pp. 32 f. We know that that act was not an act of the German people, but of the feudality. Elsewhere, too, Lambert's statements may be checked and controlled by other contemporary observers. After reciting the grievances of the Saxons and Thuringians he asserts, like Bruno, that an oath of allegiance by a vassal is not binding toward an unjust king, and makes the distinction between a king and a tyrant; that a council of the princes has the right to investigate the charges made against Henry like a

The war now became general,¹ and the cross-graining of the rival parties is interesting and complex. Nevertheless, in spite of the confusion, certain lines of cleavage and of sectional feeling may be discerned. The German bishops, with individual exceptions, thanks to the long-established policy of the Saxon and Salian kings of elevating them as a counterweight to the power of the dukes, as a body were faithful to Henry IV.² The most hostile bishops were those of Halberstadt, Magdeburg, Merseburg, and Paderborn.³ The monasteries of the Benedictine order (except those of Fulda and Hersfeld), led by St. Gall, being as hostile as the bishops to the Cluny reform, sided with the King. The most solid provinces against Henry IV were Saxony, whose participation in the war of investiture was a war within a war, and Swabia, where the feudality was much influenced by the Hirsauer or German Cluniac monasteries.⁴ The lower feudality as a whole supported the crown, as was natural, for the Salian kings had always been favorable toward them.

The geographical sectionalism is clearer than the social cleavage. The most pronounced pro-Salian region was Franconia, the homeland of the Salian house, where all classes

high court, and finally that deposition is a lawful remedy against the abusive government of a bad prince. See the essential passages in Lambert, pp. 151-52: "... ut principibus Saxoniae, quibus sine legitima discussione . . . pro fide christiana, pro libertate etiam sua dimicatuos"; p. 165: "Cumque toto triduo . . . eligerent"; p. 166: "Et profecto Rudolfum . . . decerneretur"; pp. 177-78: "Tunc missi sunt. . . . Deo manus suas operamque nos negaret." The critical notes of Holder-Egger need to be carefully studied in connection with these passages. Carlyle, *op. cit.*, III, 113, 130-32, 155-57, has paraphrased them.

¹ "Undique igitur hujusmodi motus per provincias omnes ab utriusque partis sectatoribus promiscue . . . per totum annum illum agebantur" (Bernold, p. 434).

² Loeffler, "Die Westfälischen Bischöfe im Investiturstreit," *Mitth. d. Ver. f. Osnabrück. Gesch.*, Vol. XXXVIII (1903). The list of bishops, twenty-six in all, who signed the letter of protest of January 24, 1076, to Gregory VII, is a good index of the way the episcopate was divided. See it in Jaffé, V, 103. For other similar lists see pp. 127, 130, 133, 154.

³ Bruno, chap. xxxix.

⁴ "Mox episcopi, tam illi quos amor quam quos timor in partem regis traxerat, metuentes ordini suo, ab ejus auxilio plerique se retrahebant; quod et major pars procerum factibat" (*Vita Heinrichi IV*, chap. iii; cf. chap. viii and Richter and Kohl, III, 2, 477, n. D).

sided with the King.¹ All classes in Saxony and the upper feudality in Swabia were dead against him. Henry IV made sure of the allegiance of Bavaria and Carinthia by clever distribution of confiscated lands and the patronage of the church among the nobles there. Neither Welf of Bavaria nor Berthold of Carinthia could control their duchies.² The parish priests in most of Germany, too, sympathized with the King, for most of them were married, and they deeply resented the papal requirement that they put away their wives. In Saxony, however, the rural priests sympathized with the grievances of the peasantry.³ The most original group in support of the King were the burghers of the Rhine cities. The news of the counter-kingship was the signal for the spontaneous insurrection of the people in Mainz, Worms, and other towns.⁴

Roughly speaking, North Germany and Southwest Germany were the most hostile portions of the kingdom. Middle Germany from the far eastern border to Lorraine, and the

¹ Although written a century after the conflict the statement of Helmold, *Chron. Slav.*, I, 28, is so explicit on this point and so sustained by an abundance of contemporary evidence that it cannot be doubted: "Ceteri principum civitatesque quae sunt circa Renum non receperunt eum [Rudolf], omnesque Francorum populi eo quod iurassent Heinrico et iuramenta temerare noluissent."

² Bruno, chap. lvi; *Vita Gebhardi*, chap. vii; Waitz, VIII, 232, n. 4. The King gave Carinthia to Liutpold of Eppenstein; the patriarch of Aquileia acquired Friuli, later also Istria and Carniola, by which Henry IV kept his lines open toward Venice and the eastern trade. Control of Bavaria gave him contact over the Brenner Pass with Lombardy, from the commerce of whose cities Henry IV drew his chief supply of gold (Berthold. Cont., chap. xii, p. 299; Nitzsch, *Deutsche Gesch.*, II, 102; cf. Bruno, chap. xv). The western passes were not so much in Henry IV's hands, though Sigeb., *Chron.*, SS. VI, 364, exaggerates when he says Rudolf and Welf controlled all of them. The adherence of the Bishop of Basel was of great advantage in enabling the King to keep an open road over the western Alps. In Swabia, to counteract the influence of Rudolf, Henry gave the duchy to Frederick von Beuren, a simple knight, whose allods were at Staufen, and the hand of his daughter Agnes in marriage—a high reward for his loyal accompaniment of him over the Alps to Canossa. Frederick founded the Hohenstaufen dynasty.

³ In the *Annal. Altaich.* (anno 1071) is an interesting instance of a simple priest voluntarily giving his substance to Henry IV. It is not an isolated instance. For other examples see Meyer von Knonau, I, 93.

⁴ Berthold. Cont., p. 292; Bernold, p. 433; Sigb. *Chron.*, SS. VI, 364; Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 280–83; Bruno, chap. xcvi; Richter, III, 2, 258–60; Hegel, *Neues Archiv*, XVIII, 219 f.

territories in the valley of the Rhine from Basel to Utrecht, adhered to Henry IV. The obvious military practice of the King was to maintain possession of the zone between, and to subdue his enemies separately.¹ This accounts for Rudolf of Swabia's furious siege of Würzburg in 1077 and the double battle on the Neckar and the Streu in 1078. We see the mixed ingredients in the parties and the evidence of sectionalism in the makeup of the opposing armies in this engagement. There was friction between the nobles and the armed *ministeriales* with the King. In the battle on the Neckar the burgher force could not stand against the charge of the Swabian horse, showing that the art of war was a noble's accomplishment. On the other hand, in the simultaneous engagement on the Streu, the burghers fought well when supported by cavalry, and, elated with victory, took frightful toll of the bishops in Rudolf's defeated army, who were the first to run, and shamefully maltreated some of the nobles who fell into their hands.² Picturesque to Henry IV's mailed and mounted nobles were the swarms of Saxon peasant freemen, fighting without armor, with antiquated weapons, and on foot.³ They made good fighters in a mêlée, but showed great reluctance to fight beyond the home borders. To them the war was a Saxon affair. They were not interested in either the cause of the feudality or the papacy. It required all the influence of the papal legates to keep the Saxons in the field, and then they were not always successful.⁴

Gregory VII's policy of "watchful waiting" for three whole years so exasperated the Saxons that passionate ex-

¹ " . . . a partibus Austri-Franciae et Moinonis fluvii per Nechoram fluvium et Ezzinga oppidum ad usque Ulmam et Danubium" (*Annal. Augsb.*, SS. III, 129; cf. Gebhardt, *Handbuch d. deutschen Gesch.* [1st ed.], I, 315-16).

² The Archbishop of Magdeburg was killed; the Bishop of Paderborn plundered by the Wendish hillmen; the Bishop of Worms and Magnus and Hermann Billung were captured. Certain of Rudolf's men were castrated by the foe in derision of celibacy (Bernold, p. 435; Berthold. Cont., p. 311).

³ Bruno, chap. cxxii; Guilhiermoz, *L'origine de la noblesse en France au moyen âge*, pp. 457-58.

⁴ " . . . domi unanimiter se continuerant" (Berthold. Cont., p. 320). "Nostra multa festinatione simul et asperitate fatigati, multis in via prae lassitudine derelictis adveniunt et se . . . ad defensionem suae patriae disponunt" (Bruno, chap. cxxii; cf. chap. cxvii).

postulation was made in Rome.¹ They could not understand the Pope's long hesitation in recognizing Rudolf of Swabia, and in proportion as Gregory VII hesitated, the Saxon complaints grew more shrill.² At last the Pope acted, and on March 7, 1080, the second ban was hurled at Henry IV and formal papal recognition of the counter-king given.³ This was followed, on October 15, by the bad defeat of the King on the Elster, although Rudolf was slain in the battle. "Facile est regnum accipere, difficile tueri," comments the author of the *Vita Heinrici*.⁴ Perhaps it was Henry's own bitter reflection.

The luckless counter-king had never been anything but a partisan chief. The Saxons had never loved him, for he came from the southland, and, moreover, he was too much the creature of the great feudality to enlist any popular support.⁵ His advocacy of Saxon liberties was always regarded by the Saxons themselves as a pose, and a mere bid for support. In addition, the insatiable appetite of Rudolf's supporters for lands exhausted his resources, and compelled him, though against his will, to lay his hands upon the church lands.⁶

The war of investiture had by this time taken on a tinge of religious animosity and bitterness worse than ever.⁷ In the battle on the Elster, Rudolf's troops went into the fray singing the Eighty-second Psalm, as the Huguenots of the six-

* See the bitter letter in Bruno, chap. cviii, which describes the horrors of the civil war. Henry IV's threat to put up a counter-pope is what forced Gregory VII to act. The papal curia certainly never had an inkling of the psychology of the Saxons in the war. Petrus Crassus, the jurist of Ravenna, in 1086, exhorted the Saxons to adopt the eighth book of Justinian's *Code* as their law! (Fisher, *Mediaeval Empire*, I, 191). For Gregory VII's hatred of Germans see Meyer von Knonau, I, 140.

² Bruno, chap. xciv.

³ Doeberl, III, No. 14. For the Pope's argument for his powers so to do see *Greg. Reg.* V, No. 14; Jaffé, II, 404; Labbe, *Concilia*, XII, 637.

⁴ See Erich Topp, *Die Schlacht an der Elster* (Berlin diss., 1904). Henry IV's defeat was largely due to the enterprise of Otto of Nordheim who followed up the initial repulse, and prevented Rudolf's troops from stopping to plunder the King's camp (Bruno, chap. cxxii).

⁵ Berthold (*anno* 1077), SS. V, 295; Bruno, chap. xciii.

⁶ Berthold, SS. V, 295, 310; *De unitate eccles. conservanda*, II, 25; Waitz, VIII, 166. Only thirteen bishops supported him.

⁷ *De unitate eccles. conservanda*, chap. xvi.

teenth century and the Ironsides of Cromwell of the seventeenth were to do.¹

But although Henry IV had been badly beaten, he was not downhearted. The second papal ban had helped him more than it injured him. For many now became disillusioned as to the sincerity of the feudo-papal party; the Pope's act savored of persecution; his procrastination had made men dubious or suspicious about the sincerity of his professions; it was evident that many nobles had espoused Rudolf in order to enrich themselves by spoliation and pillage; when the lands of Henry IV's supporters and the crown lands failed them these did not hesitate to plunder and to seize the lands of the church; and, finally, the discrepancy between the popular nature of the Saxon revolt and the class interests of the feudality widened into an open breach. The Saxons felt, not without reason, that they were being exploited by the nobles, that their blood was being shed without sufficient reward to themselves, that the aim of the leaders "to carry the war into Saxony" was a selfish ruse in order that they might spare their own territories from carnage and spoliation.

The resentment of the Saxons might have been mollified if Otto of Nordheim had been chosen as counter-king after the death of Rudolf. But Otto was distrusted by all the feudal leaders. He could not live down the suspicion which he had incurred by his long hesitation before taking sides. Moreover, the nobles detested him for his real or pretended sympathy for the common people.²

But the designation of a new counter-king lay with the Pope, with whom the question of family riches availed more than any other qualification. For Gregory VII was dismayed at the price the German church was being compelled to pay in the war, since both parties seized church property to defray the costs of the conflict. The Pope wanted to find a rich

¹ Bruno, chap. cxxii. For the religio-social feeling engendered by the war see Meyer von Knonau, I, 114 f., who gives an interesting quotation from Hermann of Reichenau.

² A tentative suggestion was made to put up Henry IV's young son Conrad in his father's stead. But Otto of Nordheim blocked it with a jibe, saying: "*Ex bove malo malum vitulum vidi generatum, ideoque nec filii nec patris habeo desiderium*" (Bruno, chap. cxxv).

noble whose fortune could be made to bear the expense of the papal cause. The choice lay between Duke Welf of Bavaria and Count Hermann of Luxemburg.¹ Each was very rich; but the German nobles were intensely jealous of Welf, so the Pope's approval fell upon Hermann.²

The issue was now more sharply drawn than ever "Nisi rex deponeretur, aut papa."³ The real leader of the feudo-papal party in Germany was not Hermann of Luxemburg but Burckhardt of Halberstadt. The monks of Hirsau in Swabia contributed fanaticism,⁴ and the big feudal nobles like Welf and Berthold fished in the tumultuous waters. In these years the war lost almost every reminiscence of its original character. It became a war for aggrandizement on the part of the feudality. These were fertile times for the upgrowth of the *Grundherrschaften*. As for the mass of the common people, the wish for peace became widespread.⁵ The Truce of God became popular. In 1085 the bishops of Mainz and Bamberg each issued a decree ordaining the *treuga*.⁶ In this year Henry IV was so far victorious that Hermann of Luxemburg and Burckhardt of Halberstadt were both compelled to fly to Denmark for safety. Many of their partisans fled across the Elbe.⁷

But Henry IV was too confident. The moment he licensed his troops the refugees returned. For the King in excess of confidence made the bad blunder of releasing his army before he had carried his policy in Saxony to completion. The rebel bishops and rebel nobles determined to make a supreme effort to save their offices from forfeiture and their lands from

¹ See Hugo Müller, *Hermann von Luxemburg, Gegenkönig Heinrichs IV* (Halle diss., 1888), pp. 5-8.

² The election of Hermann estranged Otto of Nordheim from the cause. He died on January 11, 1083, of a fall from his horse (Bruno, chap. cxxxi; cf. *De unitate eccles. conserv.*, chaps. xxxviii and xlii).

³ *Vita Bennonis*, chap. xviii; Bernold (*anno* 1083), p. 439.

⁴ Müller, *op. cit.*, shows this abundantly.

⁵ Bernold (*anno* 1084); *Ann. Sax.* (1085), SS. VI, 722; *Ann. Disibod.*, SS. XVII, 9.

⁶ *MGH, LL*, II, 55; new ed. by Weiland, I, Nos. 424, 425.

⁷ *De unitate eccles. conserv.*, chap. xxviii; *Ann. Sax.*, p. 723.

confiscation.¹ Henry was compelled hastily to improvise new support for this unexpected emergency by lavish bestowals to the loyal bishops out of the crown lands,² and to promise to restore to Ekbert of Meissen the estates in Flanders of which he had been deprived³

Having thus mended his fences in Saxony at heavy cost, Henry IV moved to the relief of Würzburg, which was being besieged by Hermann of Luxemburg and a Swabian force. But his Rhenish burgher militia again was beaten by the knights at Bleichfelt (August 11, 1086). The divided condition of his foes, however, both geographically and politically, enabled Henry IV luckily to get the upper hand. Burckhardt in desperation, since now no one would serve Hermann, offered the crown to Ekbert of Meissen.⁴ Events thereafter rapidly thickened. Burckhardt of Halberstadt, who had come into Franconia to brace the anti-Henrician cause, was murdered by the infuriated burghers of Würzburg⁵ on April 7, 1088. In September, Hermann of Luxemburg died.⁶ Except for Ekbert of Meissen, who had finally screwed his courage to the point of rebellion in August, the opposition was everywhere collapsing. For two years more the war was continued in Saxony in a guerilla manner by Ekbert of Meissen and his partisans,⁷ but the peasantry took no hand in it.⁸

¹ Sigeib. *Chron.*, SS. VI, 365; Ekkehard, *Chron.*, SS. VI, 206.

² *Ann. Aug.* (anno 1086). See the charters in Stumpf, *Regesta*, Nos. 2870-78.

³ Stumpf, *op. cit.*, Nos. 2880, 2893. The estates were the Ostergau and the Westergau, and had been given to the Bishop of Utrecht in 1077 (Richter and Kohl, III, 2, 268 n.).

⁴ For his cupidity see *Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. v.

⁵ *Ann. Sax.* (anno 1088).

⁶ The *Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. iv, stingingly says of Hermann: "Nam cum Saxones de terra sua proturbaret, quicquid illud fuerit, quod eis in illo displicuit, reversus in patriam suam portans inane nomen regis, ad Herimannum Trevirensensem episcopum se contulit."

⁷ *Ann. Hild.* (1089), SS. III, 106; *Chron. Hild.*, chap. xviii, SS. VII, 854; *De unitate eccles. conserv.*, II, chap. xviii. After the death of Gebhard of Salzburg the papal party had but four bishops in Germany: Adalberon of Würzburg, Altmann of Passau, Adalbert of Worms, and Gebhard of Constance (Gerdes, *op. cit.*, II, 292).

⁸ "Saxones a fidelitate S. Petri discedentes, Heinricum quem multotiens abjuraverant receperunt" (Bernold [anno 1088]; cf. *Gesta ep. Halb.*, SS. XXIII, 100;

The land suffered fearfully from privation and devastation. Abrupt termination was brought to the war by the murder of Ekbert on July 3, 1090.¹ In the year following, Berthold of Carinthia and Welf of Bavaria made their submission. Peace at last had come to Germany to stay, after fifteen years of civil war. Gregory VII had already been dead for five years. When Abbot William of Hirsau died in 1091 the last flame of opposition to Henry IV expired.²

Out of the enormous disarray caused by the fusion of the Saxon rebellion, the revolt of the feudality, and with the war of investiture, the injection of religious fanaticism into the already complex body of issues and antagonistic forces—political, economic, social—which engrossed all authorities and all classes of society, a new Germany was born. What the fifth century had done for the Roman Empire, what the ninth century had accomplished in France, that the reign of Henry IV saw done in Germany. All the elements and institutions of Germanic life were melted as in a tumultuous laboratory, and fused in new proportions into new political and social forms. The government was altered, the texture of society changed, unwonted economic and social conditions introduced. The very psychology of the German people took on a new cast.

Materially Germany was reduced nearly to a state of ruination. Both sides in the long war had swept the land as bare as a threshing floor. The manors of the fisc, the lands of the church and the nobles, the farms of the peasants, had been devastated again and again. *Raubrittertum* was universal.³ As early as 1078 Saxony was more like a wilderness than an abode for men. Immense areas of it had gone over to

Ekkehard, *Chron.*, SS. VI, 206; *Ann. Sax.*, SS. VI, 724; *Ann. Magd.*, SS. XVI, 178). Many of the Saxons and Thuringians who had enriched themselves by the spoil of the church had become indifferent (*De unitate eccles. conserv.*, chap. xxii).

¹ *De unitate eccles. conserv.*, chap. xxxvi.

² "Sed jam aliquantulum diuturna regni discordia inter catholicos et scismaticos tepescere cepit, ut non jam bellum ad invicem, sed pacem componere sanius judicaret" (Bernold, p. 450).

³ Bruno, chap. cxxii.

bramble and brier, to the forest and the wolf.¹ Bishop Rupert of Bamberg, between 1093-95, declared that there were large parts of Saxony without inhabitants.² Frederick, count palatine in Saxony (i.e., Henry IV's chief agent of the fisc there), collected around him a band of freebooters who carried away with them or destroyed what either friend or foe had spared, and the last remnants of a plundered manor-house or homestead were taken by the desperate and hungry peasantry, itself brutalized by the brutality it had suffered.³ In the raids that time and again had swept over Saxony the Swabians were notorious for their plundering ways.⁴ Both parties, as we have seen, were compelled to buy partisans, and the only means of purchase was land. The result was the dilapidation of the domains of both the crown and the church, and the spoliation of each party's lands by the other.⁵

Hardly was the German kingdom on the fair road to recovery from this condition when the rebellion of Henry IV's sons in 1103 renewed all the former horrors.⁶ Even before the first rebellion of Saxony a distinct drift of the Saxon population eastward across the Elbe is discernible, which was seeking relief from the rapacity of the baronage and the tithes of the church.⁷ This tide of refugees and men of broken fortune who hoped to repair their losses in old Germany by finding

¹ At the diet of Regensburg Henry IV "dixit namque Saxones in proximi proelii conflictu sic esse prostratos, ut nisi de gentibus exteris agrorum cultores advenirent, Saxonica tellus in solitudinem versa bestiis silvestribus habitanda remaneret" (Bruno, chap. ciii).

² "... in vacuis illius partibus Saxoniae" (Jaffé, *Mon. Greg.*, V, 171).

³ Bruno, chap. ci. They used to sing for joy while so doing: "cum magno gaudio cantuque."

⁴ Bruno, chap. ciii.

⁵ For dissipation of the fisc see Bruno, chaps. xxxviii-xxxix, cviii, cxii; Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 201-2; *Ann. Sax.*, SS. VI, 712; *Ann. Aug.*, SS. III, 129. See, further, Richter, III, 2, p. 372, n. G; Gerdes, II, 377-89. The evidence of spoliation of church lands is even fuller; see the notes in Gerdes, II, 485-98. The letter of Sigfried of Mainz to Gregory VII may be cited as an example: "Hostili praeda et pervasione magna ex parte disperierunt res et redditus episcopi nostri" (Jaffé, V, 99).

⁶ For a vivid description of the dire condition of Germany see *Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. viii, and Jaffé, *Mon. Greg.*, V, 241-46.

⁷ Adam of Bremen, III, 49, anno 1066.

homes in the new East Germany became a flood in the latter years of Henry IV's reign.¹

Thus by breaking down within and emigration abroad the ancient integrity of Saxony disappeared more and more. The tentacles of sectionalism clutched the shattered territory. Already during the civil war Westphalia showed a tendency to separate from Eastphalia, a separation which became final in the next century when Albrecht the Bear inherited one-half of the Billunger lands and acquired Brandenburg as an independent fief in 1134, while the north and west of the once glorious duchy passed into the hands of Henry the Proud and the Welfs.

Alas for the land of the Liudolfinger, of Henry the Fowler, and Otto the Great! The nobles like a pack of wolves fed upon the carcasses of the state and the church, gorging themselves on the property of both. But they could not take or keep all the spoil, though the lion's share fell to them. For a crowd of petty lesser vassals and *ministeriales*, as hungry as their superiors, followed like jackals at the heels of the lions, and picked up what they could of the remnants. The condition of chronic local warfare which prevailed compelled every high noble, lay and clerical, to divide with his following by enfeoffing his lands in order to keep his supporters. Thus the number of the lower feudality was increased tenfold. The long war had sowed dragon's teeth which sprang up as men.²

Castles began to bristle on every hilltop. The practice which Henry III had initiated in Saxony, which Henry IV had continued in Thuringia, which the bishops and nobles has imitated, became general. The Wartburg is first mentioned in 1080.³ Castle Böckelheim appears in 1105.⁴ A writer of the twelfth century says that the castles multiplied

¹ See chap. xiv.

² Waitz, V, 475 f., Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, III, 2, 960 f., 1004 f.; Gerdes., *Gesch. d. deutsch. Volkes*, II, 410 f.

³ Bruno, chap. xcvi. The story that the Landgrave of Thuringia, while hunting, discovered the site and said, "Warte, Berg, du sollst mir eine Burg werden," of course is pure legend.

⁴ *Chron. S. Hub. Andag.*, SS. VIII, 629. For Trifels see Heintz, *Mittheil. d. hist. Ver. f. d. Pfalz*, VII (1878).

as fast as the churches had done in the eleventh century.¹ Many of these strongholds were dens of robbers.²

Henry V's policy in this strait was to play off the South German princes against the Northern—the Staufer and the Welfs against Lothar. This he was able to do the more readily since Frederick of Hohenstaufen, the duke of Swabia, was Henry V's nephew and heir. The party situation in Germany, therefore, was a triangular one, the Saxon and Hohenstaufen parties being the two greater ones, each of which fished for the support of the third, or Welf party. The sectionalism manifest in the distribution of these three parties is interesting and important. The Saxon-Lotharian party was spread over the whole north; the Hohenstaufen field was Swabia; the Welfs were centered in Bavaria. The difference in folk-ingredients, historical tradition and development, economic and social conditions, between these three regions of feudal Germany accentuated these distinctions. The analogy of the history of the United States between 1800 and 1825, when North and South and New West were clearly differentiated, will occur to an American historian. And as both North and South then angled for the support of the West, so in Germany in the twelfth century both the North (Saxony) and the South (Swabia) angled for the support of the other section (Bavaria, the Southeast). The Rhinelands stood aloof. Their interest was in trade and breaking the bishops in the cities.

The political situation in Germany when Henry V died (1125) was a tense one. For in spite of his father's and his own failure to do with Saxony as they pleased, and the inability of the Salian kings to convert the royal prerogative into an absolute one, nevertheless the power of the crown had increased so greatly that both the feudal and the clerical parties were filled with apprehension. The Concordat of Worms in 1122 had given the King the kernel of the controversy and

¹ Ekkehard of Aura, *Chron.* (1116-17), SS. VI, 252; Herbordus, *Vita Ottonis ep. Babenb.* I, 26.

² Thus the *Ann. Patherb.* (1107) relate of Henry V: "Inde [from Regensburg] per Thuringiam ad Saxoniam vadit, Radinburg [Radelburg] et Bemelburg [Boineburg in Hesse], presidia munitissima in Thuringia, propter latrocinia que inde in finitimos exercebantur, cremari precepit."

left the papacy the shell. The feudal party was in better state than the ecclesiastical, for Henry V had been signally repulsed in Saxony, while in Swabia and Bavaria the Welf and Hohenstaufen party had expanded. Even the power of the lesser Fürsten had been growing greater.

In the election at Mainz after Henry V's death the Saxon-clerical party, whose candidate was Lothar of Supplinburg, was pitted against the Salian party, represented by Frederick of Hohenstaufen. No other candidate was seriously considered. The issue was at once political, ecclesiastical, and sectional.

At the death of the Emperor precedent provided that the Archbishop of Mainz, as the German primate, should call a conference of the highest clerical and secular princes for the purpose of electing a successor.¹ In times past, however, dynastic preponderance had always been so great that the choice was practically assured in advance, and the "election" of the eldest son of the deceased monarch was a certainty. In this wise, while the German kingship was in theory an elective office, in practice its hereditability tended to obtain *de facto*.

Adalbert of Mainz was determined that in this instance the hereditary principle should be defeated. He was resolved that the freedom of the church and the integrity of the rights of the feudality and the people, both of which issues were sharply sustained in Saxony, should prevail in the coming election.²

It is important to analyze the party and sectional forces and currents which eddied around Lothar's elevation, since his election to the kingship was the confirmation of nearly everything for which the anti-Henrician opposition had fought in past years.

In the first place, Lothar was a Saxon, and by birth, tradition, and training represented the things most dear to

¹ See the monograph by Stutz, *Der Erzbischof von Mainz und die deutsche Königswahl*, and the review of the same in *Hist. Ztschft.* (3d ser.), XIV, Heft 1.

² The pertinent documents have been collected by Mario Kramer, *Quellen zur Gesch. der deutschen Königswahl* (1911). Naturally the literature upon this turning-point in the history of feudal Germany is large. The thesis of R. Niemann, *Die Wahl Lothars von Sachsen* (Göttingen, 1871), is suggestive.

the Saxon heart. He was a son of Count Gebhard of Supplinburg, his mother having been Hedwig, a daughter of Ordulf Billung. In 1106 when the Billung house expired with the death of Magnus Billung, Lothar had been reluctantly recognized as duke by Henry V, who would have been glad to escheat the duchy but dared not to do so for fear of offending the Saxons to the point of new rebellion.¹ Moreover, this influence of Lothar with the Saxon people had been strengthened by his marriage to Richsa, a daughter of Otto of Nordheim, the leader of the great revolt of the Saxons in 1075; and, finally, Saxon admiration for their new Duke was raised to a patriotic pitch in 1115, when Henry V, casting discretion to the winds, invaded the north country with an army in order to break the great lord of the north, and got badly beaten by Lothar in the battle of Welfesholz.² Lothar also had other qualities which endeared him to his people. In the winter of 1124-25 he had made a victorious campaign against the Wends, the hated enemy of all Saxons, and won a victory the like of which Germany had not seen in years.

With the feudality, too, Lothar was popular, for his own succession to the duchy of Saxony had been a triumph of collateral and female succession to imperial fiefs, a principle which the Salian kings had steadfastly resisted and for which the great dukes had as strenuously contended.

But the most decisive of all Lothar's qualifications was his popularity with the German hierarchy. If the dukes grasped at the opportunity to register their power in electing Lothar, the bishops did so even more. The extinction of the Salian house with the childless Henry V in 1125 afforded them, as well as the feudality, the chance once and for all to declare the destruction of the hereditary principle with reference to the German kingship, and to assert a genuine elective principle.³

¹ *Annal. Sax.*, SS. VI, 744-45.

² *Ibid.*, SS. VI, 750-51; Ekkehard, *Chron.* (anno 1115).

³ Carlyle, *op. cit.*, III, 151. The electoral character of the German crown is asserted frequently in the *Sachsenspiegel*, III, 52, 1; 54, 2; 55, 1; cf. Carlyle, III, 153 nn., and Sugenheim, *Gesch. d. deutschen Volkes*, II, 314. Wattenbach, in the Preface to his edition of the *Narratio de electione Lotharii*, SS. XII, 509, writes:

The call which the Archbishop sent out to the German bishops and Fürsten at this time is exceedingly interesting to analyze in the light of this purpose. Instead of being a perfectly formal document, after announcing the primary purpose of the conference, seemingly as *obiter dicta*, but really of great significance, he adds: "It is our thought then that the princes should meet and take necessary action in regard to the serious problems which confront us, viz.: the general state of the kingdom, the question of a successor, *and other matters*."¹ This seemingly casual allusion to "the general state of the kingdom" and "other matters" was artfully made.

The reign of Henry IV had established two precedents which the liberal party in Germany was not going to suffer to be lost. One of these principles was the contention that state affairs should be subjected to a general discussion by the princes;² the other was that henceforth the King had to give a reason for exacting military service of vassals, whether of lay or ecclesiastical condition, and that he might not levy troops at his pleasure.³

The Saxon party had no intention of permitting the coming conference to act, as so often before, in a merely mechanical way, and passively register the wish of the lately deceased ruler by choosing as his successor the person whom he had selected and designated to be his heir. The conference was to be a free and independent deliberative body in which the sovereignty of the German state was vested ad interim, between the decease of the late King and the election of a new ruler. No one denied that Frederick of Hohenstaufen

"Lotharii regis electio ea de causa praeipue notabilis est, quia tum primum praevaluit sententia episcoporum, qui hereditariam regum successionem tamquam simoniae cujusdam speciem abominabantur et liberam tam in regno quam in sacerdotiis electionem postulabant."

¹ Doeberl, *Monumenta Germaniae Selecta*, IV, No. 1; Jaffé, *Monumenta Gregoriana* V, 396.

² Waitz, *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte*, VI, 348. The germ of the later diets is to be found in these sessions of the German nobility (*ibid.*, pp. 321 f.).

³ Schulte, *Deutsche Verwaltungsgesch.*, sec. 74, 2; Homeyer, *System*, p. 378; *Sachsenspiegel*, *Lehnrecht*, art. 4, sec. 1.

was the personal heir of his uncle Henry V, and as such entitled to inherit his private estate. But it was meant to have done forever with the idea that the German crown was a dynastic possession and the property of a single house.

The electoral college (if one may anticipate the phrase by which the conference came in later years to be designated) was not to be a mere board of registration like the French *parlement*, but an independent body sovereign in its peculiar sphere and its particular function. A precedent was afforded for this contention in the group of bishops and Fürsten which had formerly elected Rudolf of Swabia and Hermann of Luxemburg. The principle of election was asserted in a positive way, with the corollary of a responsible crown and recognition of fixed and traditional rights pertaining to the feudality and to the people.¹ These rights were historical and legal, and the crown could not lawfully inhibit or destroy them. They were the lawful, vested rights of their possessors.

When the electoral college convened on August 24, 1125, at Mainz, all the great princes of Germany, lay and clerical, were there, each with a train of vassals and *ministeriales*. So high was the political tension and so keen the rivalry between the parties that the two groups occupied opposite banks of the Rhine. After an amount of "logrolling" and "wirepulling" at which we can hardly guess from the evidence, a nominating committee of forty was chosen, to consist of ten members from each of the four great "stems" or Germanic tribes (Saxons, Swabians, Franks, Bavarians), whose choice the entire concourse bound themselves in advance to accept. Only Frederick of Swabia refused to commit himself to this pledge—a tactical blunder on his part.

¹ This is evident from the studied manner in which the author of the *Narratio* follows the language of Berthold of Constance in his description of the assembly which elected Rudolf of Swabia. The *Narratio* reads: "... et facta seorsum principum collectione non modica, utpote qui animum jam in regnum intenderat et quasi spe certa preoccupaverat. . . ." The language of Berthold is: "Proinde episcopi seorsum et senatorius ordo seorsum pro constituendo rege diu multumque consiliati" (SS. VI, 292). Kalbfuss, *Mitteil. d. Inst. f. oesterr. Gesch.*, Band XXXI, (1911), Heft 4, has traced the genesis of the political ideas enunciated in the *Narratio*. For bibliography on this exceedingly important document see Doeberl, *op. cit.*, IV, 2 n. The *Pactum* of the *Narratio de electione Lotharii* was not an electoral regulation, but a program drawn up after Lothar's election by the bishops and legates to lay down the policy to be pursued by Lothar.

After long deliberation the choice of the forty electors¹ fell upon Lothar of Saxony, and was spontaneously applauded, not only by the greater part of the bishops and nobles, but also by the people who were present. The moral participation of the German people in this election is to be noted. While in former elections this popular approval had sometimes been manifested, it was merely incidental. But in Lothar's election in 1125 it would seem that there was some reversion to the old German method of popular election of a chieftain. For the new King was enthusiastically raised aloft upon the shoulders of his followers when the news was announced.²

That the accession of Lothar was a triumph of the principles for which the Saxons had contended during the reign of Henry IV is clear if we compare the diet of Forchheim, which elected Rudolf of Swabia in 1077, with the body that elected Lothar in 1125. The words of Bruno's *De bello Saxonico*, chapter xci, apply equally well to the event of 1125 as to that of 1077. In both cases the designation rested upon election and not upon inheritance; in both cases the validity of the customary law of the duchies and the rights of the people were asserted; in both cases the principle of limited monarchy was affirmed.

The relief which was felt throughout Germany when the result was known was great. The erudite monk who penned the account records the astonishment and gratification that a board of unlettered laymen who could neither read nor write should have manifested such wisdom.³ The tension had been very great during the interval, and Germany not im-

¹ Weiland, in *Forschungen zur Deutsch. Gesch.* XX, 303-39, has shown that the privilege of election little by little became an appanage of the great clerical and lay lords. This doctrine was favored by the popes, propagated by the *Mirror of Saxony*, and finally triumphed in the election of 1257.

² *Narratio*, sec. 4. Popular approval seems to have been really spontaneous in the election of Otto I (Widukind, *Rerum gestarum saxonicarum*, II, chap. 1. For Conrad's II election see Wipo, *De vita Chuonradi*, chap. ii).

³ "Hoc itaque magnum decus, et memorabile nec prius auditum, jam nostro tempore Dominus suae concessit ecclesiae, ut laicorum scilicet illiteratorum humilitas sanctissima ostenderit in majoribus non ambiendis, quam perniciose clericorum et literatorum in minoribus, magis tamen spiritalibus, ambicio dampnosa delinqueret" (*Narratio*, sec. 2 [ad fin.]).

probably would have been thrown again into civil war if Lothar had not been elected.¹ As it fell out, the only disgruntled person was Frederick of Hohenstaufen, who quitted the assembly in a fit of rage and soon afterward came out in open rebellion. Fortunately, however, that revolt was localized and soon crushed.

The determining factor in this happy result had been Duke Henry the Proud of Bavaria, a Welf. The balance between the two rival parties, without him, was so close that the card might have fallen either way. The Welf, or Guelph, influence was decisive in settling the issue—a fact of enormous significance in the future history of Germany. For it meant that the two greatest duchies in the kingdom, Saxony and Bavaria, the one in the north, the other in the south-east, were aligned together, and were united in support of an identical and constructive political program. When in 1127, two years later, the Welf Duke married Lothar's only child, his daughter Gertrude, the political alliance was cemented by a family one as well.²

¹ *Ibid.*, sec. 5.

² *Monumenta Welforum*, chap. xvi.

CHAPTER VII

POLITICAL THEORIES AND CONSTITUTIONAL PROGRESS DURING THE WAR OF INVESTITURE (1075-1139)¹

IN THE history of medieval Germany one does not find that continuity of monarchical policy which prevailed in England and in France. The fortunate establishment and persistence through several centuries of a single dynasty enabled the kings of England and of France to maintain a consistent monarchical policy for generation after generation. In Germany, on the other hand, we find three successive dynasties, each with a different policy. But it would be an error to assume that because the Saxon, Salian, and Hohenstaufen dynasties were short-lived when compared with the Plantagenets and Capetians, that, therefore, their political theory and their political practice made no permanent contribution to the fund of medieval political experience and political philosophy.

Long before the French Capetians were able to do more than tentatively to discuss the theory of their authority, before even those two brilliant Norman rulers, Robert Guiscard in Southern Italy and William the Conqueror in England, had laid the foundations of real monarchy by the Tyr-

¹ The literature upon this subject is extensive, but there is little in English except the Carlyles' *A History of Mediaeval Political Theory*, Vol. III. For literature on the subject of the *Libelli* consult: Mirbt, *Die Publizistik im Zeitalter Gregors VII* (1894); Giesebrecht, *Die Gesetzgebung der römischen Kirche zur Zeit Gregors VII* (1866); Bernheim, *Zur Gesch. d. Wormser Konkordats* (1878); Meyer von Knorau, *Jahrbücher unter Heinrich IV und V*; Heinzmann, *Die Farfanseer Streitschriften: Beiträge zur Gesch. d. Investiturstreites* (1904); Imbart de la Tour, *Questions d'histoire religieuse*, pp. 225 f.; Ghellinck, "La littérature polémique durant la querelle des investitures," *Revue d. Quest. Hist.*, XCIII (N.S.), 71 f.; Scharnagel, *Der Begriff der Investitur in den Quellen und der Literatur des Investiturstreites* (1908); A. Fliche, *Études sur la polémique religieuse à l'époque de Grégoire VII. Les prégrégoriens*, esp. chap. v, and his article in *Revue Historique*, CCXXV, 1-67, on "Les théories germaniques de la souveraineté." The only article on the subject in English is by Father Gnellinck, *Irish Theol. Quart.*, VII (1912), 329.

rhene Sea and across the channel, Conrad II and Henry III in Germany had felt some intimation of what the future had in store for Europe, and were the first of medieval kings to sketch the large lines of a really monarchical form of government. Conrad II laid the foundations of the new German kingship; Henry III began to build the superstructure; his untimely death not only left the edifice far from completed, but much of what he accomplished was torn down in the reaction which followed during his son's minority. When Henry IV took the reins of government into his own hands the fabric which his father and grandfather had labored to erect was so badly breached that little was left but a great tradition and an urgent necessity.

The Saxon chronicler Bruno has a wild tale to the effect that Henry IV in the year 1074 dreamed of appealing for help to William the Conqueror.¹ The story is preposterous. Yet Henry IV must have envied the untrammelled way in which William and Robert Guiscard were able to act in their dominions. For with them authority rested upon conquest and might largely made right; Henry IV, on the other hand, was not only bound by the inherited prerogatives of his office as king, but also by a mass of traditions, laws, and feudal practices which were woven into the very texture of German life, much of them unwritten and customary and difficult to modify or discard. This was particularly true in Saxony, where the conservatism of the people was very strong, and the vested interests of the feudality, both lay and clerical, very deep.

The outstanding features of Henry IV's administrative policy are the establishment of a fixed capital, the establishment of the inalienability, indivisibility, and extension of the royal domain, the subordination of the feudal dukes and the feudalized clergy to royal authority, and finally the creation of a bureaucratic form of government, that is, the administration of public affairs through a specially created and technically trained official class known as *ministeriales*, to be as the fingers of the king's hand, touching every part of the kingdom, and imbuing every activity of the administra-

¹ *De bello Sax.*, chap. xxxvi.

tion—justice, law, taxation—with the king's will. The King's design was nothing less than the creation of an absolute monarchy in Germany; not a reckless despotism, but a supreme royal authority able to put the German baronage, lay and clerical, under its feet by gradually converting suzerainty into sovereignty and hardening the royal prerogatives into an instrument able to coerce, and even to destroy, particularistic feudalism. It was to be a feudal monarchy, for the spirit of the times and the institutions of society were feudal, but every element and line of it was to be vitalized and controlled by the King's authority. This is what the Capetians in France and the Plantagenets achieved, and what Henry IV struggled to establish in Germany. If real morality is "the will to discern life," and a man is to be judged not by what he achieves, but by what he labors to accomplish, then the paradox is true that Henry IV succeeded though he failed.

Henry IV was not the man to be daunted by adverse conditions, nor dismayed by the formidable opposition he knew he must encounter if he would carry out the political designs of his house. Once legally free from the restraints of his minority, and out of the hands of the "robber gang"¹ which for years had exploited the government, Henry IV revived the monarchical policy initiated by Conrad II and Henry III, and set to work to establish the royal authority along larger lines and on a firmer foundation than ever before. Neither the design nor the policy was new with Henry IV. What was new was the energy which the King displayed, the formidable nature of the opposition, and the complications which ensued, which profoundly altered the conditions of the struggle, the most important of which was the entrance of the papacy under Gregory VII into the conflict for reasons which had to do with the tremendous ambitions of the pontificate at this time. For no sooner was the Salian principle of kingship formulated and begun to be applied than it was challenged with forthright boldness, first by the Saxons, then by the feudality of Germany, and finally and most formidably by the new papacy. The Saxons, the great dukes, and the papacy had each a different theory which each translated

¹ Adam of Bremen, III, 46; "in den Händen von Räubern," says Giesebrecht.

into practice. Out of the fusion was generated the first cogent and genuinely original political theory the Middle Ages developed.

Whence came this authority of kings? Was it of God, or was it of men? The church, arguing that all power was from God (*omnis potestas a Deo*), proclaimed the supremacy of the church over the state. With some the church was regarded as a superstate; with others the state was regarded as a man-made institution, and accordingly evil, and the right of the existence of the state was denied. The latter was the attitude of Gregory VII,¹ in his moments of extreme exaltation, or of despotic spirit, from which he sometimes sank to a lower and more practicable plane of endeavor, and admitted the right of the state to exist, though only in dependence upon the church.²

The function of authority is to administer justice. As long as the prince fulfils this duty the duty of subjects is to obey. Upon these two points the medieval political theorists agreed. But divergence appeared upon the question whether subjects were bound to obey an unjust or tyrannical prince. Some jurists, the spiritual ancestors of the future apologists of absolute monarchy, contended that the teaching of the Bible and the wisdom of the fathers was that a sovereign must be obeyed under all circumstances save in case of his heresy. During the war of investiture the imperial partisans adopted and propagated this theory.³

¹ See his letters to Hermann of Metz, *Reg.*, IV, 2; VIII, 21.

² Gregory's letters to Harold of Denmark and William the Conqueror, *ibid.*, V, 10; VII, 25.

³ So Henry IV wrote to Gregory VII: "Me quoque qui licet indignus inter Christos ad regnum sum unctus, tetigisti, quem sanctorum patrum traditio soli Deo judicandum docuit, nec pro aliquo crimine nisi a fide, quod absit, exorbitaverim, deponendum asseruit; cur etiam Julianum apostatam prudentia sanctorum patrum non sibi sed soli Deo judicandum deponendumque commiserit" (*MG. LL.*, II, 47). Otto of Freising says that he vainly searched history for a precedent for the pope to depose an emperor or any king (*Chronicon*, p. 35: "Lego et relego Romanorum regum et imperatorum gesta, et nusquam invenio quemquam eorum ante hunc a romano pontifice excommunicatum vel regno privatum"). With St. Thomas Aquinas the reserved right of insurrection and deposition of a tyrannical king passed definitely into law (Viollet, *Inst. polit. de la France*, II, 4, n. 1). The German nobles had resolved on deposition of Henry IV before Gregory VII became pope (Lambert of Hersfeld, *anno* 1073: "Eum sine magna Christianae religionis jactura non posse ulterius regnare").

The opponents of this school, on the other hand, argued that a prince who failed to do justice ceased to be a prince and became a tyrant, and as a tyrant forfeited the right to rule.¹ But if so, who had the authority to try the prince or to depose him? The church, or the prince's own subjects? It is manifest that this contractual idea contains the germ of the principle of the liability of princes, of constitutional monarchy, of the right of revolution. John of Salisbury in the next century went so far as to justify resort to the murder of a bad prince, to make assassination a principle.

Thus little by little a body of political theory was formed, a new political system, which crystallized at the end of the eleventh century, during the conflict between Henry IV and Gregory VII in the writings of Manegold of Lautenbach.

The rights of the people became the corollary of the coronation oath of the king. What guaranteed the people against abuse of princely power? The refusal of service and the threat of deposition. Neither barons, burghers, nor peasantry possessed yet the right to vote subsidies as in a later age, but the feudality could refuse to do service for the king, and the burghers and peasants could at least rebel against tyranny. The remedial process was therefore a species of feudal "strike," with the principle of revolution involved in it. The feudal tie as embodied in the coronation oath was contractual in its nature and bound ruler and ruled by reciprocal obligations of protection and obedience. "The doctrine of the social contract became the watchword of popular resistance to the growth of arbitrary despotism." It is important to observe that in this feudal society the oath of the prince preceded that of the subjects. The consequence of this anteriority of the prince's oath was that the oath of the

¹ In the diet at Oppenheim the princes practically said: Henry has been cut off from the communion of the church by the Pope's anathema. It would be folly for us now not to seize the opportunity thus afforded to accomplish that which we have been long premeditating.

"Nunc vero, cum ab ecclesiae corpore propter flagicia sua apostolici anathematis mucrone precisus sit, cum ei communicare sine communionis ecclesiasticae damno et fidei jactura non possimus, cum fidem nostram multis apud eum sacramentis implicatam, Romanus pontifex apostolica auctoritate explicuerit: extremae profecto demeritiae esset, divinitus oblatam salutis occasionem non obviis, . . . et quod diu premeditatum sit, ut *agatur tam oportuno tempore non agere, cum leges humanae et ecclesiasticae sinant.*" Lambert of Hersfeld (anno 1076), p. 280.

prince's subjects was a conditional one. If the prince broke the contract, the oath of his subjects ceased to be obligatory. This right (*securitas*) was inherent in feudal society as a right of the feudality, but until the end of the eleventh century, and more especially until the twelfth century, no precedent had extended this right downward to the lower classes of the people. The theory that the power of the ruler emanated from God, the source of all power, and that, accordingly, the sovereign was only responsible to God for his acts, could not resist the evolution of popular right. First the baronage qualified the principle of absolutism, and then the people. We have thus in the reign of Henry IV the conflict between two principles of authority, two theories of government—the idea of the absolute prerogative and the divine right of the prince, and the idea of monarchical authority tempered by the right of resistance of the nation, first by the baronage,¹ next by the burghers, and finally by the body of the people.

The germ of limited monarchy, the doctrine of popular sovereignty, and the theory of the state as a contractual social organism were potentially in these new doctrines.² It was a demand for a social organization which should rest less on force and more on law; for a system of government which would substitute contract for compulsion; which would recognize definite relations and mutual rights and obligations. If a lord, even the king, failed to do justice and to perform the services which society expected of him, what right had he to rule? If he oppressed, why continue to obey him?

In this new conception of the nature of government, the

¹ Nitzsch, II, 101, points out that the election of Rudolph of Swabia was an enunciation of a new constitutional theory, and the first "lay" election of a German king. The Fürsten identified popular sovereignty with their purposes and interests, but their democracy was a class democracy, and "popular" only as contrasted with Salian absolutism. Henry V, when prince, by uniting with the rebellious feudality against his father in 1105 was compelled to admit this contention. It comes out in his address of March 25, 1106, to the German nobles: ". . . injuria mea regni potius est quam mea; nam unius capitis licet summi dejectio, reparabile regni dampnum est; principum autem conculcatio, ruina regni est" (*Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. xiii). For commentary on this important passage see Waitz, VI, 371; Below, *Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters*, p. 184; Ranke, *Zeitalter d. Reformation* (5th ed.), I, 24.

² See Gierke, *Political Theories of the Middle Ages* (Maitland's trans.), pp. 37-67, for development of this thesis. Cf. Carlyle, *Mediaeval Polit. Theory*, III, 12-13.

church and the common people struck hands.¹ The church, for all its temporal power, intense feudalization, and plentitude of vested interests, never wholly lost sight of the dignity and authority of justice as a principle among men.² The church's greatest leaders in their best moments remembered that justice was the habitation of God's throne, that mercy and truth met together before it. Above the wrack of feudal warfare the clergy held up the doctrine of better laws, the duty of kings and nobles to judge with honor and govern with equity. Time and again, in the writings of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh centuries, we find this principle of social justice reiterated. Century after century the teaching returns, even though it be with an alienated majesty.³

One must not be deceived by terminology. Theology was

¹ Gregory's appeal to laic opinion was a thing unheard of—to subject church offices to the mob, said the opposition. Cf. Gregory's reply, *Ep. ad Rudolphum Suaviae et Bertulphum Carentanum duces*, *Ep.* II, No. 45: "Multo melius nobis videtur justitiam Dei vel *novis* reaedificare *consiliis*, quam animas hominum una cum legibus neglectis." The German bishops reproached the Pope for appeal to popular sentiment. *Conc. Worms*, 1076 (Pertz, *Leges*, II, 45): "Omni rerum ecclesiasticarum administratione *plebeio furore* te attributa." Cf. the letter of Dietrich of Verdun in Martène and Durand, *Thesaurus*, I, 218: "Legum de clericorum incontinentia per laicorum insanias cohibenda, legem ad scandalum in ecclesia mittendum tartaro vomente prolatam."

² Apropos of the church's influence in preservation of the idea of justice, and the idea of the state, a French historian has written: "Cette notion était inconnue à l'aristocratie et aux basses classes. Heureusement, la littérature orale se charge à de perpétuer chez les illétrés, nobles ou vilains, le sentiment d'une certaine solidarité entre les diverses parties dont se composait le royaume. ... Aux époques même les plus sombres du moyen-âge il y a eu une opinion publique dont les souverains féodaux ont dû tenir compte." Lot, *Hugues Capet*, p. 238 and n. 2. Gregory VII wrote to Alphonso of Castille not to hesitate to appoint clergy of foreign blood or low birth if they were capable men. (*Ep.* IV, No. 2; Mansi, XX, 341): "Quod non tam generis aut patriae nobilitatem, quam animi et corporis virtutes perpendendas adjucaverit." Hadrian IV wrote to Frederick I that there were no strangers in Rome, all men were equal in opportunity: Baronius, *Annales* 1159, sec. 3: "Ipsa enim ecclesia Romana, viros et scientia adornantos praeditos honestate et sanguinis nobilitate praeclaros, ad se libenter evocat, et eos aliunde consuevit admittere."

³ Alcuin, *MGH, Ep.* IV, No. 18; Jonas of Orleans, *De inst. regia*, pp. 3-5, Hincmar, *De ordine palatii; ad episc. de inst. Car.*, p. 7; *de regis persona*, p. 25; Sed. Scotus, *De rect. Christ.*, pp. 2, 3; Agobard of Lyons, *MGH, Ep.* V, No. 6; Hrabanus Maurus, *In Genesim*, II, chap. viii; Rather of Verona, *Praeloquiorum*, III, 1; Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. iii. Extracts from all of these are conveniently collected in Carlyle, *op. cit.*, I, 200, 203, 224, 255-56; III, 100, 108, 109. Rather of Verona said that an honest peasant deserved to be called a king (Carlyle, III, 127 n.).

the dominant, almost the only mode of medieval thought. But, it has been well said:

When this characteristic is recognized, it is found to supply not only the explanation of the distance which seems to separate the middle ages from modern times, but also a means of bridging over the interval. Men thought theologically, but when we penetrate this formal expression we discover their speculations, their aims, their hopes, to be at bottom not very different from our own; we discover a variety beneath the monotonous surface of their thoughts, and at the same time an unity, ill defined perhaps, but still an unity, pervading the history.¹

The claim made by Gregory VII of the right "to absolve subjects from their allegiance to wicked men" was based not merely on Scripture, but upon the implied pact which held feudal society together, and which entailed mutuality and reciprocity, with the reserved right of repudiation by either party for failure to abide by its terms.²

Whatever the amount of self-interest which actuated the three elements hostile to Henry IV, the rebellious dukes, the revolted Saxons, and the papacy, it is nevertheless not to be forgotten that there was a principle at stake for which they contended, even admitting that a large number of baser motives were commingled therewith. The scientific historian may not pronounce categorically either one way or the other. There were honest, sincere men on each side who acted according to conviction, even though their comrades were often knaves. It is a wise old saying that "politics makes strange bed-fellows."

¹ Lane Poole, *Illustrations of the History of Mediaeval Thought*, p. 3. To the same effect is Figgis, *op. cit.*, p. 2: "In these lectures we shall be regarding a literature without charm or brilliancy or overmuch eloquence, voluminous, arid, scholastic, for the most part dead it seems beyond any language ever spoken. Dust and ashes seem arguments, illustrations, standpoints, and even personalities. . . . Yet it was living once and effectual. . . . These men whose very names are only an inquiry for the curious are bone of our bone, and their thought, like the architecture of the middle ages, is so much our common heritage that its originators remain unknown."

² Dietrich of Verdun demanded what right Gregory had to dissolve allegiance. *Ep. ad Greg. VII* (Martène, *Thesaurus Anecdotorum*, I, 219): "Illud vero reminisci pudet, literae vestrae domini regis dispositionem continentes, ad quantum per omnium ora ludibrium circumferuntur, quomodo eis vestrae, ut dicitur, testimonium pertinaciae prolatis, nostrum et omnium pro parte vestra loqui volentium ora obstruuntur." Henry's friends declared the Pope was destroying the social order. Hugonis Flav., *Chronicon* (anno 1184), (Pertz, VIII, 462): "Jam vero si quis esset qui Gregorio communicaret, hic publice conviciis appetebatur, hic hereticus, *destructor regni*."

In Gregory VII's mind the issue was not wholly one of the supremacy of church or state; it was also the issue of righteous government, as he understood it, against tyranny. With the revolted feudal nobles in Germany likewise, some, at least, were fighting for maintenance of their rights as they understood them, for their *consuetudines feudorum*, which they honestly believed to be imperiled by Henry IV's absolutistic designs. The same was true of some of the German churchmen, even of those who did not sympathize with the Gregorian theory. While they still adhered to the belief that the German crown had a legitimate right to use the church as an instrument of government, they yet believed that the immense use of the church made by the Salian kings was an abuse. They did not believe in a free church in the state, least of all a church superior to the state. But they did think the right and natural functioning of the church was impaired by too gross use of it for secular purposes.

The case of the Saxon peasantry is similar. They believed that their ancestral liberties and immemorial customs were jeopardized by the Salian policy; that they had a right to rebel and seek to depose Henry IV because of his failure to live up to the terms of kingship, namely, to maintain the laws, to protect society, and to do justice among men. The divine authority of kingship was acutely challenged by the Saxons. The right to revolt was inherent in the compact theory of government, and this contractual theory of government not only existed in the mind of the feudality, it had become fused with the theocratic conceptions of the papacy, and at the same time gravitated downward until it filled the collective consciousness of the people too.

The war of investiture was the first issue in medieval history to excite a popular interest. To the masses it was not a doctrinal question, as so many church issues heretofore had been, but a question in which were involved far-reaching considerations and implications of morality and ethics, economic rights and wrongs, social conditions, hopes and purposes. For the first time in medieval history all classes of society from bishops and abbots and barons down to the lower classes of the people, even the servile peasantry, were interested in a common matter. It is this fact which makes the reign of

Henry IV and the pontificate of Gregory VII of such surpassing importance. The conflict between pope and emperor, at least as much as the Crusades, first awakened the common consciousness of Europe.

From the point of view of the definition and the spread throughout the consciousness of Europe of the idea of social justice the conflict between Henry IV and Gregory VII is very important to the student of social ethics. The princes and peoples of Europe watched this struggle with far more interest than we of today imagine. It was the first event in medieval Europe before the Crusades which attracted the attention of each and every class in society, and it would be an error to think that this interest was wholly due to the high position of the two combatants. It is not exaggeration to say that much of the common people of Europe, wherever the controversy between Gregory VII and Henry IV was known, felt that the Pope was battling for their rights in the church. Henry, bishop of Speyer, wrathfully denounced the Pope for having deserted the authority of the bishops and subjected the church to the madness of the laity.¹ Granting that the personalities of Pope and Emperor were great, the principles involved in the conflict were greater; it was these which made Europe at times almost breathless with attention.

The abstractions of political dreamers began to give way before the practical demands of society for the enforcement of law, for better protection of life and property, for better recognition of the rights and clearer definition of the duties of the multiple authorities which existed in feudal society. The crux of the whole argument was the nature of justice.

We see this new and more practical, positive ideal reflected in the historiography of the eleventh century.² At this same time the student of medieval law begins to detect elements in it which are neither of Roman nor of ecclesiastical origin, but which may be described as feudal. It is evident that some new and constructive ideas are beginning

¹ See the observations of H. C. Lea, *Sacerdotal Celibacy* (3d ed.), I, 276.

² Wattenbach, *Geschichtsquellen* (6th ed.), II, 6; Marie Schulz, *Die Lehre von der historischen Methode bei den Geschichtschreibern des Mittelalters* (Berlin, 1909), p. 97.

to leaven the feudal organism too. The day of anarchy and sheer brute force, of unrestrained violence and brutality such as characterizes so much of the history of the tenth century, is beginning to pass away, and a new epoch to dawn in which the mutuality of rights and duties, of privileges and obligations, will be better understood and more regarded.

Feudalism was a régime founded upon personal devotion or duty—and more still upon the contractual relations—which obtained between man and man. The form of government so constituted was the very antithesis of autocratic or absolute government; rather each noble was a ruler within his sphere or fief. But of whatever degree that power was, it was nevertheless contractual. Theoretically the members of a society established on these bases were liable only for obligations which they had voluntarily accepted. But the theory and the fact were far from coinciding. In practice the feudal régime exacted and required a compulsory relation of man with man, of the greater with the less, of the stronger with the weak, of the upper members of the secular hierarchy with the lower members—in brief, the whole feudal world was held together as in a net by the ties of lordship and homage, of vassal and suzerain.

From the point of view of political philosophy the feudal régime was, perhaps, the nearest approach to philosophical anarchy the world has ever seen, and it not unnaturally often approximated actual anarchy in practice. But too wholesale condemnation either of the theory or the practice of feudal government would be an error. For feudalism, after all, was prevailingly a constructive organism, and manifested the phenomena of social progress more than those of social decadence.

The very sensitiveness (one might almost say supersensitiveness) of the men of the feudal age to the question of justice is proof of this. The idea of justice was never less a theory and never more actual than in the feudal age. But justice implies a sanction, and this sanction must be law. Now law, for the medieval man, was the product of experience and tradition. It was custom, the accretion of generations in the past, and silently accepted by the men of the pres-

ent. Even the prince could not contravene this customary law. Customary law was the supreme law, and any modification of it had to be accepted by all, or at least, if the community were too large and too widely dispersed to make approval or disapproval possible, then it had to be accepted by the governing class, by the *major* or *sanior pars*. The prince himself was not above the law, for he was of the noble class and contributed to the formation of the law of his kind. He, too, was subject to the customary law of the land. His authority was very far from being that of a despot.

But parallel to this theory of customary law we discover another political theory running: the principle of the national state, in virtue of which a relation of subordination exists between the prince and all the people who form the nation. This new principle asserted itself more and more strongly with the legists of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. It even penetrated into a purely feudal society like that of the Kingdom of Jerusalem; from the twelfth century, the supremacy of the central or national organism represented by the prince's own person and privileged blood, i.e., by the crown, over the relations between the vassal and his immediate lord begins to be admitted. By the thirteenth century the principle is uncontested, according to the opinions of the feudal jurists, that the king has jurisdiction over all persons within the realm.

These are the principles which neutralized, and finally overcame, the centrifugal forces in feudalism. For centuries the history of the public law of Europe is the history of the struggle between these two tendencies.

All over Europe, in the late eleventh and through the whole of the twelfth century, we see this disposition on the part of the lower classes to assert, peaceably if they may, forcibly if they must, the integrity of their traditional rights (*consuetudines*), to resent abuse or deprivation of them, and to demand justice. A spirit which had lain dormant for centuries—nay, which had never existed before—in the hearts of the common people of Europe began to awake and to stare about, determined to acquire liberty and secure justice for all conditions of men, but ignorant of the ways and means by

which to obtain them. Instinctively, more than by a process of reason perhaps, the people contended that the contractual nature of the relations between noble and noble was as valid for them as for their overlords; as applicable in the seigniorial régime as in the feudal world. "These are the true seigniorial rights established by our ancestors in the interest of peace and tranquillity," writes one in the twelfth century, "but which are daily perverted to unjust practices."¹

The twelfth-century doctrine that an unjust government need not be obeyed, indeed may rightfully be rebelled against, is not so far as it seems from the modern doctrine that government rests upon the consent of the governed. The former asserted the doctrine negatively; the latter expressed it positively. In fundamental principle the two political doctrines are so nearly alike that they amount almost to the same thing.

The double rebellion in Germany of the Saxon peasantry and the high feudality, combined with the struggle of Henry IV with Gregory VII, was one of the most fruitful periods of the Middle Ages in the progress of political theory. When Henry IV labored to establish absolute monarchy in Germany he denied the validity of the nature of feudal government, which was based upon contract. When also Gregory VII deposed Henry IV he *ipso facto* assumed to sit as a supersovereign in Europe. Each in his own way challenged the form of existing government. Few periods in history, therefore, are of greater importance for the definition and the progress of political theory than the last quarter of the eleventh century and the first quarter of the twelfth.

The fact that the chief energy of the German emperors was expended in policies largely external to Germany, namely, against the papacy and the revolted Lombard cities, has diverted attention too much from the development of political thought within the German kingdom in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. The simultaneous revolt of the Saxon

¹ "Porro quia he consuetudines, cum gratia pacis et quietis a majoribus institute sunt, in pravos usus quotidie perverteruntur" (Flach, *Les origines de l'anc. France*, I, 407). So in the *Miracula de St. Privat* (ed. Brunel; Paris, 1912), p. 136, the Bishop of Mende in 1193 is made to swear: "Populum et clerum amicabiliter gubernabo et juste et juxta bonos mores et bonas consuetudines."

peasantry and of the great feudality in Germany during the strife between the Emperor and the Pope raised issues and unfolded political theories of very great significance, and quite distinct from the issue of papal or imperial supremacy. While the Pope intervened in both struggles, the issues themselves were neither imperial nor papal, but peculiar and local to Germany. The very principles and practices of medieval kingship, upon which its past policy rested and its future course was keyed, were challenged in this double conflict, and the contribution made to medieval political theory during this duplex battle is of high importance.

Wenerich, archbishop of Trier, attacked Gregory VII for absolving vassals from their allegiance and fomenting the rebellion of the Saxon peasants, and accused him of throwing a double brand of civil war into Germany;¹ Berthold of Constance said that some of the German clergy asserted that neither the Pope nor any other authority could judge a king, however unjust, except for heresy;² Duke Berthold of Carinthia is reported to have admitted the justice of the complaints made against Henry IV by the feudality, but urged that these grievances should be submitted to a meeting of the princes.³ Even the Pope was not at all times clear in his own mind as to the justice of the issues or the justice of his own course;⁴ else why did he hesitate for three whole years after the deposition of Henry IV by the rebellious nobles at Forchheim before he acknowledged the act and recognized the counter-king, Rudolf of Swabia?⁵ Why did Gregory VII for three years continue to address Henry IV as "king" (*rex*) and style Rudolf of Swabia a "pretender" (*rex dictus*)? If the Pope had been actuated solely by ambition and had

¹ *Wenricus scholasticus Treverensis, Epp.* 1, 2, 3, 6; *De unitate ecclesiae conservanda*, II, 1. Cf. Carlyle, *History of Political Theory in the Middle Ages*, III, 118-24, 163. Weneric's letters are also in Mirbt, *Libelli de lite*, I, 284-99.

² Berthold of Constance, *Annales* (1076), SS. V, 296; *ibid.* (1077), p. 297; Carlyle, *op. cit.*, III, 119, 132.

³ Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (1073; ed. Holder-Egger), p. 197. For a consideration of the constitutional issues involved in Rudolf's election see Richter and Kohl, *Annalen d. deutschen Gesch.*, III, Part II, 251-57 nn.

⁴ See the references in Carlyle, *op. cit.*, III, 94-99.

⁵ Berthold, *op. cit.*, SS. VI, 291.

played the game of practical politics he should at once have sided with the revolted baronage and the rebel Saxons. Instead he came perilously near to alienating the Saxons altogether by his delay,¹ and sorely tried the patience of the feudal party in Germany. Why did Gregory VII hesitate? Was his course one of double-dealing? or watchful waiting? or timidity? or scruple?

It was inevitable, as party lines became tauter and the issues clearer, that the rival contentions and opinions should crystallize into sharp-cut propositions. But of more interest is the rapid popular circulation of these demands. The organized nature of the propaganda of both parties is a matter of astonishment. The Cluny reform had already given birth to a widely disseminated polemical literature, but this volume was enormously increased when the struggle between Henry IV and Gregory VII broke out. By a stroke of genius Gregory VII made an appeal to the sentiment of Christendom, and his imperial antagonist forthwith followed his example. The result was the showering of Germany and Italy—France to a less degree—with a pamphlet literature of very great interest and value to the student of history. Those who were able to read were instructed to read these circulars to those who could not read. The diffusion of them was accomplished through the medium of monks and traveling priests, through pilgrims, and even through the use of itinerant merchants. The machinery of the church was far more effective for this employment than the means available to the emperor, and it is not a matter of surprise, therefore, to find Weneric of Trier, one of Henry IV's most ardent supporters, complaining of the success of the papal propaganda.² Yet, on the other hand, we find Gebhard of Constance, a devoted Gregorian, inveighing against the political activity among the people of the German

¹ Bruno, *De bello Saxonico*, chap. cxii. It is significant that the shortest chapter in his history of the Saxon rebellion is only six lines long, in which he pours out the gall of bitterness upon the papal legates whom he flatly accuses of double dealing and of taking money from both sides. As late as the summer of 1083 Gregory VII positively denied any papal element in the election of Rudolph of Swabia: "Deo teste Rodulfum qui rex ab ultramontanis ordinatus est, non nostro precepto sive consilio regnum tunc suscepisse" (*Reg.*, VIII, 51; Jaffé, II, 503-4).

² *Libelli*, I, 293-94.

bishops in Henry IV's behalf.¹ Mirbt, who has edited these controversial tracts, known to historians as the *Libelli de lite imperatorum et pontificum*, assigns eight of these pamphlets to the years 1073-85; sixty-five to the years between 1085 and 1112. The years 1076, 1080, 1081, 1084-86, 1098, and 1112 are especially prolific in the production of these *Flugschriften*. Fifty-five of the *Libelli* are of German authorship; forty-eight are of Italian origin; a few are French; and one of them is probably of Spanish authorship.

The popular nature of this controversial literature, and the manner in which it was circulated, is a striking evidence of the value and the power attached to collective opinion.² It was intended to be read not only by the clergy, but to be read to and expounded to the laity of the time, to nobles, burghers, and even the common peasantry. The pamphlets were produced in multiplied copies in abbey and cathedral schools and disseminated by priests, journeying monks, pilgrims, wandering merchants, at market places, fairs, and wherever concourses of people were met together. The high tide of the controversial literature came not during the most bitter period of the struggle, but following it; after the man who had thrown the age into a turmoil had disappeared from the scene and when vague political theory was beginning to crystallize into new law. This seems to indicate an attempt to mold public opinion.

Manegold of Lautenbach wrote that the works of an opponent were scattered through the streets and public places in many parts of the kingdom. He also speaks of calumnies about the Pope "echoed in streets and shouted in the market

¹ *Ibid.*, I, 270.

² Manegold, Preface and chap. lxviii, in *Libelli*, I, 311, 420; Siegb. Gembl., *Apologia*, chap. ii, in *ibid.*, II, 438. The wide publicity intended to be given to this propagandistic literature is evident from the language employed: "... libellus . . . undique circumfertur . . . per plateas et andronarum recessus propalatur; muliercularum textrina et opificum officinae jam ubique personant . . . ; libellis . . . longe lateque disseminatis; consiliis et cartis undique missis . . . errorem totum spargendo per orbem; quamvis undique plateae personent, muliercularum textrinae commurmurent, . . . etc." The appeal made to women in these tracts should not escape the psychologist. It is a very early evidence of the value attached to female public opinion and an appreciation of the influence of the quality of religious emotionalism so strong in women, both medieval and modern.

places, and even gossiped about by women at their spinning."¹ This is undoubtedly an exaggeration. Concerning the activities of the Hirsauer monks it is said that "they moved about through the entire country as though they were doctors craftily teaching the common masses."² Again we find the schismatic cardinals in a protest charge that their opponents' "books corrupt the earth with heresy, scattering erroneous beliefs far and wide through their followers."³ That these pamphlets were widely distributed is also evident from the fact that the polemics continually make references to one another.⁴ The technique of the production and spread of this propagandistic literature designed to sway public opinion is highly interesting.⁵

Several of the pamphlets have been found in the handwriting of different monks, showing that they were often re-copied in different countries. Manuscripts written by Italian monks were circulated extensively in Germany. Many manuscripts were also lost in transit, while others were destroyed when they fell into hostile hands. It is perhaps for this reason that the Gregorian polemics are in the majority, for the followers of Gregory were in a more favorable position to intercept.

Another means of giving the polemics a wide audience was the medieval system of instruction. Nearly every monastery, convent, and cathedral had schools of various degrees of efficiency. Some of them had instructors whose reputation in special faculties was widely known, and scholars eager in search of knowledge traveled extensively from one institution to another. The prevailing educational system gave rise to the wandering students, who often traveled from country to country. Then, too, the church, in order to hold Christendom together, had countless channels for the rapid

¹ *Libelli*, I, 311.

² Mirbt, *Publizistik*, p. 96: "qui quasi doctores discurrent per regiones, simplicum mentes versute discipientes."

³ *Libelli*, II, 406.

⁴ Ghellenick, *Revue d. Quest. hist.* XCIII, p. 82.

⁵ Mirbt, *Die Publizistik*, pp. 102-21.

conveyance of papal decisions, and other necessary information. Besides the wandering scholars, there were wandering monks, and traveling merchants, who served as convenient carriers of polemics in the interest of both Gregory and Henry.¹ In this bitter war of words calculated to influence the opinions of men we may readily believe the papacy was more successful than the secular power, although the imperial propaganda was of no mean dimension. The very bitterness of Lambert of Hersfeld's invective against it shows its efficiency.² The imperialists seem even to have employed dramatic farce imported out of Italy in ridicule of Gregory VII.³ On the other hand, the papal partisans utilized the assertion of signs and wonders and the machinery of miracles to further their ends.⁴ While much of the argument in these writings

¹ *Ibid.*, p. 108.

² "... varios sermones per populum serebat [p. 187] . . . per occultos indices . . . hostes publicos et insidiatores regni qui sub pretextu legationis mendacia sua per populum sererent ad sollicitandos animos [p. 213]."

³ This fact, although it has escaped the observation of every student of the medieval drama, so far as I know, seems to be certain. It is recorded by Lambert of Hersfeld (*anno 1075*), p. 253: "Commode quoque conficiendis tantis rebus intervenit quidam ex cardinalibus Romanis, Hugo cognomento Blancus, quem ante paucos dies propter ineptiam ejus et mores inconditos papa de statione sua amoverat, deferens secum de vita et institutione papae *scenicis figmentis consimilem tragediam*." There is a similar allusion on p. 195. No editor of Lambert has noticed these observations, nor can I discover them mentioned in either Mirbt, *op. cit.*, or Dresdner, *Sittenges. Italiens* Gregorovius, *Gesch. d. Stadt Rom im Mittelalter*, IV, 185 n., says it was "ein förmliches Pasquill," whatever he may mean by that term. Bernried, chap. lxvii, says that Cardinal Hugo came with forged letters. Hugo was an Alsatian by birth. In the time of Nicholas II he was identified with the anti-papal party in Rome and allied with the Roman nobility against the papal power. As Hildebrand's influence in the curia grew he turned his coat, and Gregory VII sent him as his legate to Spain soon after his accession. But in 1075 he was expelled from the College of Cardinals for espousing Henry IV's cause. We do not yet know enough about the culture of Italy in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. Dresdner's *Kultur- und Sittengeschichte der Italienischen Geistlichkeit im 10. und 11. Jahrhundert* (Breslau, 1890) is but a *Vorarbeit*. The history of literary relation between Italy and Germany also still remains to be worked out with fullness. Paul Bernried corresponded with Italian clerics (*Neues Archiv*, XII, 340 f.; XIV, 570 f.). Literary production in Germany was more versatile than is usually thought. There is evidence in the *Vita Godehardi*, bishop of Hildesheim (1022-38), of religious drama at the beginning of the eleventh century, and Walther of Speyer sent his work, *De passione S. Christopheri*, to Salzburg-Wattenbach, *Geschichts.*, I, 304. Organized book trade dates from the thirteenth century in Germany, and in Italy perhaps obtained right through from antiquity (Mirbt, p. 121).

⁴ See notes in Lea, *op. cit.*, I, 281.

necessarily dealt with questions of theology and canon law, and so went over the heads of the people, on the other hand there were elements in this literature which were designed to appeal to the imagination of the masses and to convince them, such as alleged signs and wonders, miracles, etc. Moreover, a note of popular appeal was struck in the commingling of a coarse, rustic humor, buffoonery, and lampooning with the language of satire and invective.

The most valuable of all these tracts for a study of the new political theory of the state as a body politic united by contract, with the attendant concomitants of popular sovereignty and right of deposition, is one in the form of an open letter entitled *Liber ad Gebehardum*, addressed to the Archbishop of Salzburg of that name and written by a young monk of Lautenbach named Manegold.¹

The historical importance of Manegold's monograph is that for the first time the whole mass of inchoate and unsettled questions was acutely analyzed and the conclusions systematically formulated. For this reason the tract constitutes a landmark in the history of medieval political theory. Manegold's conclusion may be summarized.

Briefly it was that the temporal power was of divine origin and the office of the king a sacred one, its primary function being to maintain justice; that the king's power, however, was not immediately from God though founded upon the

¹ Libelli, I, 310-430. Manegold's arguments are summarized by Mirbt, *Die Publizistik*, p. 233, and by Meyer von Knonau, III, 511-19. Miss M. T. Stead has an excellent article on Manegold in *Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XXIX (1914), 1-15, but she has missed the dissertation of G. Koch, *Manegold von Lautenbach und die Lehre von der Souveränität unter Heinrich IV* (1902), and "Manegold von Lautenbach. Ein Beitrag zur Philosophiegesch. des 11. J.," *Historisch-Politische Blätter*, CXXVII (1901), 389-401, 486-95; and the same author in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, XXV (1904), 168-76; nor does she mention some important earlier literature: Giesebrecht, "Ueber Magister Manegold von Lautenbach und seine Schrift gegen den Scholasticus Wenrich," *Sitzber. d. k. bayr. Akad. d. Wiss.*, II (1868), 297 f.; Spohr, *Ueber die politische und publizistische Wirksamkeit Gebhards von Salzburg* (Halle, 1890); Bezold, "Die Lehre von der Volkssouveränität während des Mittelalters," *Hist. Ztschft.*, Band XXXVI (1876); Endres, "Manegold von Lautenbach, modernorum magister magistrorum," *Hist. Jahrb.*, Band XXV, Heft 2 (1904); Paulus, "Nouvelles études sur Manegold de Lautenbach," *Revue Catholique d'Alsace* (1886). The most recent examination of Manegold's writings is by A. Fliche, "Les théories germaniques de la souveraineté à la fin du XI^e siècle," *Revue Hist.*, CXXV, 41. Ewald has studied the chronology of Manegold's tracts in *Forschungen zur deutschen Gesch.*, Band XVI, Heft 2.

authority of God, but was derived mediately from the people whom he ruled; that the oath of allegiance was not an obligation which must be unhesitatingly and undeviatingly obeyed by the subject, but a pact which entailed mutual and reciprocal obligations while also conferring mutual and reciprocal rights and privileges; that, in a word, duties and rights were reciprocal and that government was a two-sided relation; that the state rested upon compact, not upon absolute authority; that there is a distinction between king and tyrant, and the latter, *ipso facto*, forfeits his right to rule because of misgovernment; that either the people or the papacy, together or separately, has the right for cause to declare a king's authority void and to depose him and to put another king in his room.¹ For, in last analysis, royal authority rested on delegation by the people.

This theory of the nature of sovereignty, government, law, society, was far and away the most important result of Henry IV's reign, and the greatest and most enduring constructive emanation out of the gigantic struggle. The seminal influence of these ideas now first enunciated may be traced through the succeeding centuries clear down to the Renaissance and beyond. The greatest publicists of the later Middle Ages reflect them in whole or in part—John of Salisbury, Marsiglio of Padua, Liupold of Bebenberg, William of Ockham, Wyclif, Nicholas of Cusa. Overlaid and obscured, even suppressed, by the great monarchical papal-

¹ The salient passages in Manegold are quoted in the notes by Carlyle, *op. cit.*, III, 103, 111-12, 136, 162-66. The first English writer to treat of Manegold was Reginald Lane Poole, *Illustrations of the History of Mediaeval Thought* (London, 1884), pp. 229-32. Modern American and English historians are at fault (e.g., Dunning, *History of Political Theories*, pp. 46 f.) in thinking that the compact theory of government began with John Locke, or at most with Hotoman's *Franco-Gallia* and the *Vindiciae contra Tyrannos* in the sixteenth century. Locke owed more to the political theorists of the Middle Ages than is usually supposed. Lambert of Hersfeld is full of allusions to "natural rights," "natural law," etc. (e.g., *humana lex*, p. 99; *jus gentium*, pp. 90, 149, 159; *mos et jus*, p. 119; *lex gentis*, p. 160).

John of Salisbury in the twelfth century went farther than Manegold in the treatment of tyrannical kings, and advocated, not deposition, but assassination. "Imago deitatis, princeps amandus venerandus est et colendus; tyrannus, pravitatis imago, plerumque etiam occidendus" (*Policraticus*, VIII, 17; cf. VII, 17 and VIII, 20). See also Gierke, *Genossenschaft*, III, p. 524, n. 16, 565, n. 130; Lane Poole, *op. cit.*, p. 201. The *Policraticus* has recently been translated into English, with a valuable historical introduction, by John Dickinson, under the title: *The Statesman's Book of John of Salisbury* (New York, 1927).

ists and scholastics of the thirteenth century like St. Thomas Aquinas, nevertheless even they borrowed something from the teaching.¹ In spite of his turgidity and lack of arrangement Manegold of Lautenbach is an important figure in the history of the development of European political theory.

The dream of the Salian house of establishing an absolute monarchy in feudal Germany was ruined morally and materially² in the great struggle between Emperor and Pope. Despite the fact that the drift of things from the time of the election of Hermann of Luxemburg as new counter-king was away from the Volksaufstand idea and toward a feudo-aristocratic form of government,³ yet the essential principles of the revolution triumphed with the extinction of the Salian house and the accession of Lothar II in 1125.

The failure of the Salian house to establish a solid royal domain in Saxony, their inability to compel the Saxon nation to come into their system and accept their theory of government, ruined their aspiration to create a strong, compact monarchy in medieval Germany which, if it had been realized, might have anticipated that of Norman-Plantagenet England and that of Capetian France. Without Saxony no greater Germany was possible. With Saxony almost anything was possible.

Those historians of medieval Germany who see German imperialism as the sole axis around which Germany history revolved in the Middle Ages have been inclined to depreciate the character of Lothar II because he made the Italian interests of the crown subordinate to those of Germany, and was wise and just enough to acknowledge that the church, in spite of the portentous temporal claims of the papacy, yet contended for a principle. Lothar II was a constructive compromiser—not a weakling, but a strong man, as prudent as he was just, one who could look at both sides of an issue, who was willing to give as well as take.

¹ For proof of this proposition see Gierke, *Political Theories of the Middle Ages* (Maitland's trans.; Cambridge, 1900), sec. 6, pp. 37-60, and even more valuable, the notes, Nos. 137 and 211.

² Walraum of Naumburg, *De unitate ecclesiae conservanda* (1092), is already conscious of this.

³ Müller, *Hermann von Luxemburg*, p. 2.

He has been condemned for having renounced the "saving clause"¹ in the Concordat of Worms; for yielding to the contentions of the papacy in the matter of the Tuscan lands of Countess Matilda, who had willed them to the Holy See, but which Henry IV and Henry V had held confiscate on the ground that the Countess had been a revolted vassal of the Empire and therefore had forfeited her lands; for his general indifference to the authority and the dignity of the imperial prerogative.²

These writers (and it is significant that they are modern ones like Droysen and Sybel and Treitschke, whose laudation of Hohenzollern pretorianism finds a prototype in the imperialism of Frederick Barbarossa) fail to measure the significance of the change which brought Lothar II to the throne. Like Jefferson's "revolution of 1800" the change of dynasty in Germany in 1125 was a revolution, the triumph of new theories, new principles, and new policies of government.

To Lothar II, Italian and imperial politics were of secondary importance to those of Germany. Home affairs came first. He felt the futility and the injustice of squandering German blood and German treasure in maintenance of German domination beyond the Alps.³ Within the German kingdom he regarded the old historic and tribal duchies as separate components of one whole, but yet having reserved rights of local independence and an internal polity and economy which it was not the province of the crown to interfere with. In a word, to use American political parlance, Lothar II was a "state rights" man who believed in the preservation of the

¹ The last clause of art. 6 of the *Narratio* guaranteeing the "liberty" of the church, and entailing renunciation of the terms of 1122, is a forgery later appended (Doeberl, *op. cit.*, IV, 5 n., 17 n., 18 n.).

² See the document in Doeberl, *op. cit.*, IV, No. 6C. The alleged act of homage made by Lothar to the Pope was commemorated by Hadrian IV, who had a picture set up in the Lateran representing it, with a haughty inscription attached. This is what so irritated Frederick Barbarossa in 1155, when the "stirrup episode" occurred (see Watterich, *Pont. Rom. Vitae*, II, 327 f.; Bryce, *Holy Roman Empire* [ed. 1904], p. 169).

³ Was Bryce thinking of Lothar II when he wrote: "But the real strength of the Teutonic kingdom was wasted in the pursuit of a glittering toy: once at least in his reign each emperor undertook a long and dangerous expedition and dissipated in a costly and ever to be repeated strife the forces that might have achieved conquest elsewhere, or made him feared and obeyed at home" (*op. cit.*, p. 199)?

local sovereignty of the feudal duchies under the crown, and that historical tradition and just law alike imposed limitations upon the right of the crown to regulate the internal affairs of the feudal dukedoms. If Lothar II had lived in the United States in 1850 he would have been a statesman of the Old South and would have stood with Calhoun. If that great Southron had known the history of feudal Germany he would have found food for reflection in the political theories of the Guelfs. For the genesis of the contract theory of government goes back to the tract of Manegold of Lautenbach, the rebellion of the Saxon peasantry, the revolt of Rudolf of Swabia, and the contentions of Lothar II and Henry the Proud.

The principles of modern constitutional history go back to the Guelfs. Medieval Germany shares honor with medieval England, in this distinguished particular. The ruin of the Guelfs by Frederick Barbarossa ruined the principles for which they struggled, and thus permitted English history to snatch the glory of creating the first constitutional monarchy in recorded history. I do not wish to pit the history of medieval Germany against that of medieval England in the matter of value and importance. But in the matter of priority of constructive political development Germany certainly stands first—the first and earliest effective state that emerged out of the chaos of the ninth and tenth centuries.¹

An analysis of Lothar II's administration refutes the charge of weakness and clerical servility.² His concession with regard to the installation of bishops forbade investiture

¹ English writers are fond of attributing the honor of creating the earliest ordered government in Europe since Charlemagne to the Angevin kings. Thus Professor T. F. Tout, *France and England in the Middle Ages*, p. 20, has recently declared: "It was in the Angevin lands that the first adequately administered and ordered state was established that bridges the gulf between the Carolingian administrative machinery of the early middle ages and the beginnings of quasi-national administration in the England and France of the thirteenth and later centuries." Elsewhere (p. 64) he writes that the Angevin state was "the most orderly and effective state that western Europe had known since the Carolingian." I do not think this is so. The government of Germany under Henry II, Conrad II, Henry III, Henry IV (after the abuses of his minority had been rectified and the rebellion during the investiture strife been crushed), was as sound as that of the Norman kings. And be it noted that the reigns of all these kings except the last antedated the reign of William the Conqueror and his sons.

² See Karl Lessmann, *Die Persönlichkeit Kaiser Lothars II im Lichte mittelalterlicher Geschichtsanschauung* (Greifswald, 1912).

until the king had first been paid the homage due from the bishop's regalia.¹ His theory and his practice were the antithesis of those of the Salian emperors, but they are not to be condemned because they were different. Lothar II was not one to abate his prerogative as German king.² He bluntly told Otto of Bamberg that he would confiscate his episcopal property unless he returned to his diocese. He is the only German king who possessed any large ideas with reference to the destiny of Germany beyond the Elbe River. To every other German sovereign, both before and after him, these colonial lands were merely a region into which the German people were expanding and settling; they had no vision of the great future of Germany there; they made no effort to build up the royal fisc there. But Lothar II showed a keen interest in and an understanding of the problem of the colonial lands in the East, as his appointment of the Praemonstratensian Norbert to the see of Magdeburg and his promotion of the colonizing foundations of the monasteries give evidence.³

Lothar II had some perception of the nature of the state as an abstract political entity distinguishable from the person and authority of the ruler, a very great advance from what had formerly obtained. His treatment of the fisc shows this. Conrad II a century earlier had partly discerned this distinction. But the absolutistic theories of Henry III and Henry IV had confused the idea of the state with the man who ruled. The Salians had regarded the crown lands as private property

¹ "Nos [the Pope] igitur, majestatem imperii nolentes minuire, sed augere, imperatorie dignitatis plenitudinem tibi concedimus et debitas et canonicas consuetudines presentis scripti pagina confirmamus. Interdicimus autem, ne quisquam eorum, quos *in Teutonico regno* ad pontificatus honorem vel abbatiae regimen evocari contigerit, *regalia usurpare vel invadere audeat, nisi eadem prius a tua potestate deposcat*, quod ex his quae jure debet tibi, tuo magnificentio faciat" (*MGH, LL.*, Sec. IV, I, 168; Jaffé, V, 522; for commentary, see Friedberg, *Forschungen zur deutsch. Gesch.*, VIII, 84; Mühlbacher, *Die streitige Papstwahl*, pp. 183 f.; Bernhardi, *Jahrb. Lothar II*, p. 478).

² "... pacem . . . firmiter observari praecepit" (*Annal. Sax.* [1135]), and cf. the letter of the Emperor himself in Jaffé, *Mon.*, V, 523. The *Chron. Reg. Col.* (anno 1137) is straight to the point: "Merito a nobis nostrisque posteris pater patriae appellatur quia erat egregius defensor et fortissimus propugnator nihili pendens vitam suam contra omnia adversa propter justitiam opponere."

Vita Norberti, SS. XII; Bernhardi, *op. cit.*, p. 92.

and as pertaining to their house, and tended even to regard the kingdom as a gigantic possession with which they might do much as they pleased. This was not the case with Lothar II. The distinction between *Reichsgut* and *Hausgut*, between public and private property, was first clearly formulated by Lothar II at the diet of Regensburg.¹

The government of Lothar II and the political theories of the Guelfs were the first attempt in medieval Europe to establish a government which aimed in law to give simultaneous and due expression to the rights of the crown, to the rights of the church, to the rights of the feudality, to the rights of the great duchies, and to the rights of the peasantry. It recognized the rights as well as the duties of these different classes of medieval society. It practiced what it preached and preached what it practiced.

The Germany of Lothar II was neither a tyranny nor a rope of sand; it was not a mere agglomeration of feudal provinces given superficial coherence by the overlordship of the suzerain-king. It was an organic union of organic duchies. It was a feudo-federal monarchy. The operation and the extent of the powers of the several elements which formed this state were not defined in written form (for the "constitution," so to speak, was chiefly derived from custom and tradition), although recent events had produced a few important written instruments,² and the long conflict in the Salian epoch had developed certain principles in which the rights of the crown, the rights of the feudality, the rights of the church, and the rights of the people were acknowledged and vaguely defined.

¹ "Rege apud Radisponam in conventu principum inquirente praedia iudicio proscriptorum a rege, si juste forifactoribus abjudicata fuerint vel pro his quae regno attinent commutata, utrum cedant . . . vel proprietati regis. Judicatum, potius regiminis subjacere ditioni quam regis proprietati" (*Ann. S. Disibod.* [1125], SS. XVII, 23; cf. *Ann. Sax.* [1127], SS. VI, 765), and see Below, *op. cit.*, 185 f.

² It must be kept in mind that the German people in the twelfth century were yet largely a rude peasantry, unused to a highly developed or abstract law, and tenaciously adhering to their traditional rights and customs. With them law was almost wholly customary, and they looked with suspicion upon written instruments. ". . . nec aliis legibus utuntur, sed nec eidem recte utuntur, tanquam gens agrestis et indomita" (*Chr. Ursperg.* [1187], SS. XXIII, 361). "Denique vetus consuetudo pro lege aput Francos et Suevos inolevit" (Rahewini, *Gesta Frid.*, II, 46).

CHAPTER VIII

GUELF AND GHIBELLINE

ONE of the greatest, most critical, most penetrating historical controversies waged in the nineteenth century was that between the eminent Prussian historian von Sybel and the equally eminent Austrian scholar Ficker.¹ Before its conclusion many of the ablest German medievalists had been drawn into the current, and the controversy gave rise to a large amount of new and stimulating historical literature.²

The intellectual genealogy of this famous controversy, now become of classical importance in modern historiography, may be briefly summarized. The battle of Austerlitz on December 2, 1805, gave the death-blow to that venerable and desiccated medieval antiquity known as the Holy Roman Empire of the German nation, which Voltaire had already in the eighteenth century wittily described as "neither holy nor Roman nor an empire." Then had come the German war of liberation in 1813 and the fall of Napoleon. The effect of this event upon German historiography was great. As Mr. Herbert Fisher has written: "The Napoleonic wars in the realm of fact, and the romantic movement in the realm of fancy, set men seeking for the history of the Germans."³ The roots of the history of new Germany began to be sought for in the soil of past centuries. Raumer's brilliant *Geschichte der Hohenstaufen* was the first product of the new historical spirit. Later Giesebrecht, who had come out of Ranke's seminar, began to issue volume after volume of his monumental *Geschichte der deutschen Kaiserzeit*. With vast erudition and

¹ For a discussion of this controversy see G. von Below, *Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters* (1914), pp. 353-57; E. Fueter, *Gesch. der neueren Historiographie*, pp. 539 f.; Gooch, *History and Historians in the XIXth Century*, pp. 122-27.

² Below, p. 353, n. 6, cites the important literature upon the subject. But see also Herbert Fisher, *Mediaeval Empire*, Vol. I, Introd.

³ Fisher, *op. cit.*, I, 3.

an almost magic pen—a qualification rare among German historians—Giesebrecht wrote the history of Germany's most glorious and most potent period.

But his eloquent panegyric of medieval German imperialism was not universally accepted. The nineteenth century pulsed with a spirit which had been dormant before 1789—the new spirit of nationality. The Poles, the Bohemians, the Danes, the Magyars, protested vigorously against Giesebrecht's assertions that the border nations of Germany owed all their civilization and culture to medieval German teaching and example.¹

But far more important than this protest of minor nationalities was von Sybel's attack upon Giesebrecht. The latter had argued that the union of the German kingship with the imperial crown had been a beneficent event from which both Germany and Italy had derived benefit. Sybel challenged this interpretation, declaring that the effect had been to work injustice to and was disastrous for both peoples; that the event of 962 had diverted the national history of the German people out of its natural orbit, stimulated a false ambition in the minds of the German kings, and entailed the expenditure of an enormous amount of German blood and treasure beyond the Alps to no profitable use. Owing to this vicious tradition the German kings were drawn into the disastrous strife with the papacy, and the German Fürsten encouraged to rebellion against the crown, with the ultimate result that the Hohenstaufen lost the rule of Germany, nor were able to acquire Italy.

The Austrian scholar Ficker flew to the rescue of Giesebrecht in a lecture delivered at Innsbruck entitled "The German Nation in Its Universal and National Relations," in which he argued that the restoration of the Holy Roman Empire was both a medieval necessity and a great historical benefaction.² Not Lombardy, but Sicily, destroyed the Ger-

¹ Lepar, *Ueber die Tendenz von Giesebrecht's Geschichte* (Prague, 1868). For literature upon the influence of German feudalism upon Poland, Bohemia, Hungary, etc., see Below, *op. cit.*, p. 335 n.

² J. Ficker, *Das deutsche Kaiserreich in seinen universalen und nationalen Beziehungen* (1862). It was this famous controversy which first suggested to the late

manic kingship. It was Henry VI's mad dream for Mediterranean imperialism which ruined Germany and the Empire together.

Unfortunately this controversy acquired a polemical character owing to the strained relations between Prussia and Austria at this time. But the fundamental question it raised, namely, the worth and merit of medieval Germany's *Kaiserpolitik*, still remains a live and unsettled issue. Unfortunately for the discovery of historical truth, in more recent years and since the initial controversy, the development of German *Weltpolitik* and the influence of the so-called "Prussian school of historians" represented by Droysen and Treitschke took the German Clio captive, and Hohenstaufen imperialism was so construed as to give validity to Hohenzollern pretensions. The Guelfs were represented as factious partisans and Henry the Lion as a rebel because of his opposition to the imperialistic ambitions of Frederick Barbarossa.

It is high time now to reevaluate this historical verdict of the nineteenth century. In the dimming of the lights of modern kaiserism the great Duke of Saxony is now beginning to stand forth in true focus, and seen to have been one of the very greatest of medieval German statesmen, with the exception of Henry IV probably the greatest German between Charlemagne and Luther. Superficial opinion too often lightly assumes, when the weaker goes to the wall in a great struggle, that his cause was a bad one and deserved to fail. But reflection not infrequently proves that the victory of the strong is sometimes morally a barren triumph, and that the real virtue inheres in the vanquished.

The Germany which emerged from the civil wars of the reign of Henry IV, like the United States in 1865, came out of the conflict with certain new principles of government and of

Lord Bryce the idea of writing *The Holy Roman Empire*. See my article on "Bryce's *Holy Roman Empire*," *Historical Outlook*, XIII (Philadelphia, 1922), 125 f. For further reading see H. Finke, *Weltimperialismus und nationale Regungen im späteren Mittelalter* (Freiburg im B., 1916); Below, *op. cit.*, pp. 353 f. and his most recent work: *Die Italienische Kaiserpolitik des deutschen Mittelalters mit besonderem Hinblick auf die Politik Friedrich Barbarossas* (Munich, 1927); J. Harttung, *Die Lehre von der Weltherrschaft im Mittelalter* (Halle diss., 1909); F. von Kampers, *Kaiserprophetien und Kaisersagen im Mittelalter* (1895).

law, which had before been nascent and inchoate. Even though the "constitution" was an unwritten one, there was a body of recognized principles and postulates which together formed a new politico-social organism, a state which, as Burke said of the American colonies, was "in the gristle, if not yet in the bone." The feudal duchies were conceded to have certain intraducal rights which the crown had hitherto refused to admit; in other words, a "states-rights" theory of feudal government had been dimly evolved,¹ and a "strict construction" of the constitution recognized. The field of operation of the powers, both central and local, was defined as never before, and the principle of limitation of the royal prerogative asserted.²

The test of the new government came soon after Lothar II's election. Frederick and Conrad of Hohenstaufen were not long in raising the standard of rebellion.³ They could not dispute the legality of the election. But they put forward a claim, as the heirs of Henry V, not only to his personal property, but also to those lands which had been acquired by the Empire during the whole Salian period.⁴ Already the

¹ Witness this remarkable utterance of Henry II given in *Adelboldi Fragmentum de rebus gestis S. Henrici II imperatoris*, chap. xv (Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CXL, 94): "... Hezelo, Bertholdi filius, quem tempore ducatus sui ultra omnes comites regni hujus ditaverat, legatos quos in ipso exercitu meliores eligere poterat, ad ipsum transmisit [et] ut Bavariensem ducatum sibi concederet, inconsulte rogavit. Sed inconsultae quaestioni consulta paratur responsio, et festinanti petitioni, ponderata monstratur deliberatio. Patienter enim audita legatione ait: Quos semper praecipimus inter omnes gentes, habui quosque semper toto mentis affectu amavi, hos adepta benedictione regali, in lege sua nec deteriorare volo, nec deteriorari patiar, dum vixero. *Legem habent et ducem eligendi potestatem ex lege tenant*: hanc ne dum ego frangam; quicumque frangere tentaverit me inimicum habebit. . . . Expectet ut in Bavariam redeam: ibi, si illum eligerint, eligo et laudo; si renuerint, renuo. Nec etiam existimo illum esse tantae insipientiae ut ex meo dedecore honorem suum quaerat amplificare." Cf. Thietmar, *Chron.*, V, 8.

² I think that as much as this may be inferred from a reading of Otto of Freising, *Gesta Friderici*, I, 20-21, and his *Chronica*, VII, 17-18. Niemann, *Die Wahl Lothars von Sachsen*, p. 18, says: "Wir müssen des halb den Wert dieser Nachricht sehr hochschätzen, zumal Otto, wenn auch ein Verwandter und Verehrer der Staufer, doch durchaus kein Feind Lothars war, sondern diesem und seiner Regierung die höchste Anerkennung zollt."

³ It was not until 1127 that Conrad, Frederick's brother, raised himself as counter-king (Richter and Kohl, *op. cit.*, III, 2, 657).

⁴ "Utrum cedant ditioni regiminis, vel proprietati regis" (*Ann. S. Disob*, SS. XVII, 23). "Fridericus namque, dux Sueviae, et frater ejus Conradus. . . .

widowed Empress Matilda, who was a daughter of Henry I of England, had managed to spirit away the imperial crown jewels to England as if they were her own private property.¹

The formidable nature of this claim of the Hohenstaufen may be appreciated when it is said that, if allowed, it would have given them for their own all the feudal lands of the late Countess Matilda in Tuscany, the city and castle of Nuremberg, besides all other lesser domains which had been escheated to or confiscated by the crown during the one hundred and one years of rule of the Salian house.² Such a claim, if made today by a prince, would be sufficient to send him to a madhouse. It would be as if the heirs of President McKinley had claimed Porto Rico and the Philippines in 1898 as their inheritance.

Yet monstrous and fantastic as this claim seems to us today, it was not so absurd in the twelfth century. For the Hohenstaufen claim was simply an assertion of the old traditional right of the grosser feudal age which fused *Hausgut* and *Reichsgut* together.³ As we have already seen, it was only very slowly that this distinction had been made, and the principle was not clearly asserted until the Hohenstaufen forced decision of the issue at the diet of Regensburg. How hardly the older, feudal conception died is manifest. It was far from being obsolete in 1125, although the claim was an anachronism in the light of the progress which the idea of the state, of government, of law, was making.

The war which ensued was of the nature of that "struggle for rights" which characterizes so much feudal strife.⁴ In

Heinrico imp. decedente, plurima castella et multa alia regii juris sibi vindicantes temeraria potestate, sub principatus sui conditionem hereditario jure usurpaverunt" (*Ann. Sax.*, VI [1125], 765; Otto of Freising, *Chronica*, VII, chap. xxiv).

¹ Roger of Hoveden, I, 181; *Ordericus Vitalis*, XII, 43; Stubbs, *Introd. to Rolls Series*, p. 190; Otto of Freising, *Gesta Friderici*, I, 16; Freeman, *Norman Conquest* (3d ed.), V, 200.

² *Monumenta Welforum*, chaps. xvi, xxiv; Otto of Frising, *Chronica*, VII, chaps. xxiv-xxv; Waitz, *op. cit.*, VIII, 40.

³ Toesche, *Heinrich VI*, p. 20.

⁴ *Monumenta Welforum*, chaps. xvii-xxiv. For a brilliant elucidation of this theory of much warfare in the feudal age being a "struggle for rights" see Stubbs, *Seventeen Lectures on Mediaeval and Modern History*, chap. ix.

order to understand it aright one must remember that in twelfth-century Europe law was not written, but was customary; and tradition was susceptible of various interpretation. Moreover, the distinction between what is public and what is private in the feudal age was not clear, and the very idea of the state a hazy conception.

It requires an effort of historical imagination to appreciate the incredible uncertainty and indefiniteness which prevailed in the feudal period with reference to the nature and extent of political rights.

Every kind of power took on a personal aspect. It was easy to say that the empire had acquired a territory; but where was the empire? When the emperor died, what became of the rights which he had held in his hands? There was no permanent machinery of administration, such as we think of as essential to the existence of a state. There were frequently long intervals in which the imperial title lay in abeyance. The very idea of an imperial possession was obscure. Matilda had become a vassal of the emperor. Did that mean of the empire? If so, where was the person to whom her lands should offer their service?¹

The new monarchy of Lothar II weathered the storm of the Hohenstaufen reaction. But it could not survive the event of Lothar II's death in 1139. The Guelf principles of government had hardly sprouted and begun to bear fruit before they were cut down and destroyed. The growth and development of those principles depended upon the establishment of hereditary monarchy in the Guelf house. By that alone could they be guaranteed stability and permanence. The continuity of the principles, the application of the practices, was contingent upon the continuity of the house which represented them. As in feudal France the evolution of the absolute monarchy was achieved through the establishment of primogeniture, so in feudal Germany the nascent form of state for which the Guelfs stood depended for its endurance upon the hereditability of the dynasty which incarnated those ideas. For the elective character of the German crown gave room for the assertion of personal, particularistic, and reactionary interests not only capable of compelling each newly elected king to compound with them, but even to ac-

¹ Emerton, *Mediaeval Europe*, p. 276.

quire possession of the crown and so throw the government back again upon the old rails.

Lothar II perceived this peril and felt that the security and success of the Guelf ideas depended upon establishing hereditary succession of the Guelf house. Therefore, so far as he was able to do, he designed and designated his son-in-law Henry the Proud to be his heir to the throne. With Saxony and Bavaria in Germany, and Tuscany in Italy in the hands of Henry the Proud as king,¹ the rule of Germany might have been stabilized and the new principles firmly grounded. Upon two such anchorages as Saxony and Bavaria the superstructure of a new Germany might have been erected as strong, as permanent, as the French crown, though a government of different principle and different form.

But fate determined the history of Germany to be otherwise. The Hohenstaufen succession to the throne in 1139 was a reaction against the Guelf political ideas, a reversion to the older feudal type of state, "red in tooth and claw" once more.

The medieval German kingdom was the first constructive state which appeared above the welter into which Europe was thrown by the break up of the empire of Charlemagne in the ninth century. The first dynasty which ruled it, that of the Ottos in the tenth century, put the kingdom upon its feet. The second, or Salian house, that of the Henrys, anticipated the French monarchy in unfolding a program and a policy working toward the establishment of an absolute monarchy. But the great rebellion of the Saxons and the revolt of the high feudality in 1075 (two separate and distinct movements in origin, but which more or less coalesced), combined with the gigantic struggle between Henry IV and Pope Gregory VII, which synchronized in time with those two rebellions and partially fused with them in project and policy, destroyed the Salian dream of German absolutism. Out of the *Sturm und Drang* a new theory of government and a new polity gradually emerged and took more than inchoate form in the reign of the Emperor Lothar II (1125-39).

¹ ". . . Princeps . . . potentissimus . . . a mari usque ad mare, id est a Dania usque in Siciliam" (Otto of Freising, *Chronica*, VII, 23).

This political theory was that the German kingdom was a union of historically different but equal feudal duchies, each of which possessed a body of intraducal or "states-rights" (*consuetudines*); that within each duchy these rights were sovereign rights; that though customary and unwritten, these rights were the law of the land within each duchy, and inviolable by the crown. From these historical conditions it was argued that the German kingdom was not rightfully, nor could be, an absolute monarchy. Instead, the tradition of the past and the drift toward the future pointed toward the formation of a monarchical federation, a federal feudal kingdom¹ under a king not with absolute but with limited prerogatives. In terms of political science it might be defined as a *Staatenbund* with a king as sovereign, united by compact or contract.²

I do not mean to say that these political ideas were either as clear or as cogently expressed as I have defined them. But they were more than implicit in the Germanic organism. For under Lothar II the German kingdom actually was organized on the lines of, and governed in harmony with, these political ideas. But in order to make the new form of government permanent, the hereditary succession of the dynasty which represented them had to be assured. For only by hereditability could continuity be secured. Lothar II had no son to follow him, and accordingly endeavored to make his son-in-law Henry the Proud, of the famous Guelf family, his successor.

¹ Waitz, *Abhandlungen zur deutschen Verfassungs- und Rechtsgesch.* (ed. K. Zeumer), p. 315, truly says: "Die Verfassung [des Lehnstaates] erhält mitunter etwas von einem föderativen Charakter." For further reading on the federative elements inherent in feudalism see Schröder, *Rechtsgesch.*, pp. 78 and 869; Hinze, *Tschft. f. Politik*, VI, 488; Below, *op. cit.*, pp. 279, 323-24.

² "In Germanic law there was a simple ideal of keeping the peace, of satisfaction of the social demand for general security put in its lowest terms. . . . The middle ages . . . thought of the end of law as maintenance of the social status quo by enforcing reciprocal claims and duties involved in relations established by tradition and maintained by authority" (Pound, *Interpretations of Legal History*, pp. 30-31). "In the middle ages natural law protected the nations against the caprice of princes and papal power, defended German from Roman law, and upheld the demands of what was reasonable in the face of what had become historical. . . . *It was vitalized . . . with the contractual theory of the state*" (Josef Kohler, *Philosophy of Law*, p. 6).

Unfortunately this purpose failed to carry. In the election which followed Lothar II's death in 1139 reaction triumphed, and the former Salian dynasty, under a new name,¹ that of the Hohenstaufen, got the throne, and Germany was thrown back upon the old course. Before the Guelf principles had had time to develop and harden they were thrown into the discard. Unfortunately, the new dynasty, for all the ability its kings displayed, had neither the imagination to understand nor the ethical sense to appreciate the fact that the twelfth century was the dawn of a new epoch in European history.

Conrad III (1139-52) in order to break the Guelf preponderance in Germany sheared off Brandenburg from Saxony and Austria from Bavaria, thus resorting to the old tooth-and-claw policy of the Saxon kings, and thereby imperiled, if he did not ruin, the power of the Guelfs, the only house in Germany with large and constructive ideas of rule.

Worse still, counting upon the land hunger of the lower baronage to support him if there were prospect of spoil for them, Conrad III maneuvered through the *Reichstag* held at Würzburg an *ex post facto* act² prohibiting the possession of more than one duchy by any duke. The law manifestly aimed to cut the power of the Guelf to the bone. Henry the Proud was given his choice of retaining either Saxony or Bavaria; he might not have both. When he refused to do so and appealed to the sword he was broken.

His defeat was more than a personal humiliation. For Henry the Proud was not only the private heir of Lothar II; he was the heir of his political ideas. But the principles did not utterly perish, and were the issue in the tremendous conflict between Henry the Lion, the proud Duke's son and successor, and Frederick I, Barbarossa, the second of the

¹ Otto of Freising, *Chron.*, VIII, 23; *Historia Welforum*, chap. xxiv. The Saxon party made a futile effort in the diet at Bamberg in May, 1138, to save the situation (Cont. Cosmas, SS. IX, 144; Jaffé, *Ep. German Fürsten to Archbishop Conrad of Salzburg*, V, 529). Ranke, *Weltgesch.*, VIII, 140, bluntly says: "Für das Reich bedeutete Konrads Erhebung ein öffentliches Unglück. Wenn es die Absicht gewesen wäre, einen unauslöschlichen neuen Krieg in Deutschland anzuzünden, so konnte man es nicht besser anfangen." See also the trenchant comments of von Below, *op. cit.*, p. 354, and D. Schäfer, *Deutsche Gesch.*, I, 273.

² *Hist. Welf.*, chap. xxiv.

Hohenstaufen. And although the weaker again went to the wall in 1181 as in 1139, defeat did not vitiate the principles for which the vanquished fought, nor triumph justify the victor. Then, as so many times in history, might did not make right.

What his uncle impaired Frederick I ruined,¹ for his was a "rule or ruin" policy. Infatuated with the grandiose idea of medieval imperialism, he strove to unite more firmly than ever before Germany and Italy, whose destiny really lay along different lines.² The Emperor's attempt so to do revived the ancient feud between pope and emperor, and involved him in the bitter and exhausting struggle with the Lombard cities. His ambition cost the German people untold blood and treasure. Frederick I's failure to read some of the most manifest signs of the time seems like stupidity. But his defect was not that. It was a colossal egotism which so warped his brain that he had not the intelligence to understand, the sympathy to tolerate, the new political philosophy, the new economic conditions, the new social transformations which Europe was undergoing. His obstinate adherence to obsolete prerogatives, both in Germany and Italy, his obdurate determination "to maintain the honor of the empire which from the foundation of Rome has been glorious and undiminished,"³ in a time when the whole drift of European political development was away from the older medieval idea and toward nationalism—all this conduct makes Frederick I, in spite of his brilliant talents and strict enforcement of justice,⁴ a dangerous anachronism; but unfortunately he was

¹ Simonsfeld, in an article on the election of Frederick I, *Bayer. Akad. d. Wiss.* (1894), Heft 2, has shown that the Archbishop of Mainz vainly attempted to secure the election of Conrad's minor son instead of his nephew Frederick, in the hope of perpetuating the principles of Lothar II's reign.

² A. Cartellieri, *Neue Heidelberger Jahrbücher*, Band XIII, Heft 1, argues that Frederick I's Italian policy was necessary in order to reduce the pretensions of the papacy, and defensive of the interests of Germany. I cannot so read history.

³ "... Ne honorem imperii qui a constitutione Urbis et christianae religionis institutione ad vestra usque tempora gloriosus et imminutus extitit . . . (Manifesto, Oct., 1157, *Doeblerl.*, IV, No. 35B).

⁴ Cf. Hauck, *Kirchengesch. Deutschlands*, IV, 197. It is little wonder that when the anarchy of the great interregnum prevailed the people idealized the stern justice of Frederick I.

not a lean and solemn phantom as anachronisms usually are, but a power terrible to pervert the present and to maim the future.

He came to his imperial duties without any exact knowledge of the difficulties which awaited him, and without any guiding principles beyond those which were afforded by the code of knightly honour and the romantic legends of the empire. To do justice, to keep troth, to humble the rebellious, to protect the weak, to honour the church were honourable ambitions, but insufficient rules for the guidance of a statesman. . . . Even in 1154 when powerfully re-enforced by Henry the Lion, Frederick could only muster 1,800 knights for Italy. Funds for hiring mercenaries were not available; without the service of the princes he was helpless; and though he had the legal right to demand service under pain of the imperial ban, we only know of two Saxon prelates, out of all his contumacious vassals, against whom he ventured to launch the ban in 1154, and these happened to be mortal enemies of the Saxon duke, his chief supporter. That he was prepared to purchase troops for the Romfahrt at the cost of extravagant concessions is clear from his treaty with Berthold IV of Zähringen concluded in the first weeks of the reign. Not only did he cede the Burgundies as a fief to the Zähringen, but he even promised to assist in reducing them, provided that Berthold would furnish a substantial contingent for the Italian war. . . . The military assistance of Berthold was eventually secured at a lower price and Frederick obtained Upper Burgundy for himself by a marriage of convenience. . . . The grant of the Slavonic bishoprics to Henry the Lion is another instance of the recklessness with which Frederick purchased aid for his Italian expedition . . . though he found a subsequent opportunity of revoking the compact. . . . But the most decisive proof of Frederick's preoccupation with Italy is afforded by his settlement of the dispute regarding Bavaria. To perpetuate the union of Bavaria with Saxony was in itself a blunder; bad was made worse by the compensation given to Henry Jasomirgott under the Privilegium Minus which created an exceptionally privileged duchy of Austria and gave a precedent for promiscuous claims of the Landeshoheit on the part of the princes.¹

Frederick Barbarossa little deserves the consecrated shrine which he has found in the hearts of the German people. From Henry IV to Frederick I the German people, strongest in Saxony, had been slowly and painfully, often blindly and intuitively too, for institutions develop unconsciously, working toward the formation of a government which would give simultaneous and due expression both to the rights of the

¹ H. C. W. Davis, review of Simonsfeld, *Jahrbücher unter Friedrich I* (1152-58), in *English Historical Review*, XXIV, 770.

crown and to local rights, the latter being represented by the historical, traditional customs of the several duchies, which actually were each an organic historic entity, and each older than the kingdom, save Lorraine and Carinthia.

Frederick I's caesaristic madness¹ and his mania for application of the Roman law was destructive of the best political traditions of medieval Germany. It is ineffectual argument for his admirers to claim that he never had any intention of introducing the Roman law into Germany, and to cite the decision of 1181 as evidence thereof.² For the same man had earlier, in 1165, repudiated German law in the face of the bitter opposition of Worms on the ground of the decrees of his "predecessors." And whom did he mean by the word? Constantine and Valentinian, whose "sacred laws" he venerated as "oracles."³

The crowning wrong perpetrated by Frederick Barbarossa was the destruction of Saxony, the greatest and strongest state in feudal Germany, the real cornerstone on which a new Germany in harmony with the spirit of the age and the conditions of the time might have been founded, and representative through the Guelf duke, Henry the Lion, of the new, constructive ideas of government. By the time of Henry the Lion the nascent principles of his house had acquired clarity and substance; they were no longer inchoate political ideas, but practicable realities. He was against abortive and expensive campaigns in Italy, wars waged for the achievement of purposes which were false and ideals which were meretricious. He believed that the great deeds of the German people should be accomplished in Germany, not beyond the Alps. He believed in a forward-looking government, not one that looked backward to ancient Rome or even to Charlemagne for its sanctions. He believed that the feudal state, like all feudal society, was held together by compact; that a king was not of right an absolute monarch, but

¹ See Goette, *Zeitschrift f. Kulturgesch.*, Band II, Heft 5 (1895), for the history of this development.

² Schäffner, *Das römische Recht in Deutschland*, p. 56.

³ Weiland, I, No. 227

that he was bound by the rights and liberties of his subjects; that his prerogative was a limited one, and that misgovernment or tyranny justified rebellion. He believed in states-rights for the historic duchies which composed the German kingdom. Finally, as no king in Germany ever had, Henry the Lion possessed a vision of the great destiny of the German people in the New East (like our own New West in 1830) beyond the Elbe River, and labored for its expansion and settlement.¹

Henry the Lion was not a political theorist nor a metaphysician, in these contentions, like Calhoun. But his political policies have kinship with those of that famous statesman of the Old South. One may find a concrete illustration in his doctrine (if it may be called by so formal a term in the twelfth century) of the preservation of ducal rights, or what I have denominated "states rights" in this feudal age.

The regalia of the dukes represent an example of these rights. The administration of civil and ecclesiastical matters within the German duchies pertained to the duke alone, save in case of counts palatine and bishops, and control of the so-called "royal abbeys." The vassals in each duchy were responsible, as a military force, to the duke; their obligation lay to him and not to the crown. In the matter of the law-making power, Henry the Lion contended that the local *Landtage* had the right—and should have the power—to make all laws necessary and proper for the immediate internal welfare of the duchy.²

A conspicuous instance of the difference between the

¹ Otto of Freising, though uncle of Frederick Barbarossa, and in general a supporter of Hohenstaufen policy, was too honest a historian not to recognize that the Guelfs in Germany represented a principle. Wilmans well says in the Preface to his edition of Otto's *Chronicle*: "Videmus Ottonem quamvis Stoffensibus imperatoribus arctissimis familiae vinculis obstrictum, tamen medium ut ita dicam inter illam et Welficam gentem obtinuisse locum, ut jure Aeneas Sylvius dicere posset in ipso neque cognationem veritati neque cognationi officisse."

² We have clear reference to the Saxon *Landtage* for the year 1138, and the Guelf policy of favoring them: "Imperatrix Richenza indixit conventum principum in festo purificatione sancte Mariae Quedilingsburg," *Annal. Patherb.* (1138); cf. *Ann. Sax.* and *Ann. Col. Reg.* for the same year. One of the complaints which the Fürsten made against Henry IV was his opposition to convening public assemblies, and his disposition to administer through a group of officials.

Guelf and the Hohenstaufen view of government is afforded by the question of the *Landfrieden*. Henry the Lion claimed that its enforcement was a matter of ducal and feudal jurisdiction; Frederick I claimed that its enforcement was a prerogative of the crown alone. Another example of difference: Frederick I tried to make Swabian law (his own ancestral law) the supreme law of the land, and to beat down or nullify the traditional and historic law of the several duchies. Yet Saxon law, Bavarian law, Salian law, Swabian law, were each equally old, had obtained for centuries each in its own sphere and among its own people; and each, one might think, had as valid a right to exist in its own region.

On the pretext that the Guelf house was remotely of Swabian origin, although Henry the Lion was of pure Saxon lineage on his mother's side, and the Guelfs though not originally of Bavarian stock had nevertheless been resident in Bavaria for five generations, Frederick Barbarossa contended that Henry the Lion was under Swabian law—a contention which, aside from the fact that the argument was a violent distortion of all precedent, would have put the Saxon Duke utterly at the mercy of his formidable antagonist. It was the old trick of Henry IV, who had tried to practice the same method on Otto of Nordheim; the old ruse which the Hohenstaufen brothers had tried to play in 1125 when they claimed the lands of the fisc as their own as the heirs of the personal estate of Henry V.

All these claims made by the Guelfs, which were of the very cortex of German legal and institutional history, Frederick I either traversed or crushed.

The question of Goslar was an added source of friction between Guelf and Hohenstaufen. It was the key to Saxony. In the hands of Frederick it was a menace to everything for which the Saxon nation had struggled in the time of Henry IV, for everything which Lothar II had saved, for everything for which Henry the Lion contended.¹

It would be an error, no doubt, to assume that these

¹ The close student of modern German history perhaps may detect the persistence of the Guelf traditions in the history of Hanover. He will hardly fail to perceive the parallelism between Staufenism and Hohenzollernism.

theories and rights for which the Guelfs struggled were always clearly and sharply defined. But they were more than inchoate, flabby principles, and of real force and actuality. Unfortunately, the Guelf cause had not such skilful publicists as the Hohenstaufen had, and one has sometimes to determine the nature of it by examining the negative side of Frederick I's positive action, by studying his conduct, by judging what he did of what he had no right to do, by analyzing the Guelf protests, occasionally by a resort to inverse reasoning and calculating the probable yet indistinct from the known. Henry the Lion may frequently have been as much prompted by instinct as by the logic of the law or the weight of historical tradition. But even when admitting so much, it is not saying that the brief for the defendant is a piece of special pleading and the evidence *ex parte*.

An examination of Frederick Barbarossa's policy toward the Lombard cities may help to illuminate German history at this juncture. For it is in analyzing the Emperor's Italian course that we get the clearest light upon his conception of his prerogative, since both the documentary and narrative material is more abundant for the history of Italy than for that of Germany. Moreover, the difference between the issue in Germany and the issue in Lombardy is not so great as to make a comparative study of them unjust.

At bottom the Lombard cities and Henry the Lion were fighting for much the same principles. Henry fought for the local sovereignty and the historical rights of the German duchies. The wish of the Lombard cities was to be assimilated to the status of grand vassals of the crown as collective or corporate urban feudatories. South of the Alps, as north of them, the test of the rival principles of Guelf and Hohenstaufen was made. The issue was much the same after all allowance had been made for difference in local traditions and in milieu. Henry the Lion and the Lombard cities were the advocates and representatives of genetic and progressive political and social principles sprung from the womb of feudalism—a self-developing and constructive adjustment of European society to changed conditions. Frederick I, on the other hand, insisted upon the public law of Europe as it had been

in the time of Charlemagne, Louis the Pious, and Otto the Great, which was equivalent to a denial of the traditional rights and the new liberties for which both the Guef and the communes asked recognition.¹

It is not necessary for our purpose to enter into a consideration of the thorny question of the origin of the Lombard towns. We can see the vague lineaments of them as far back as the beginning of the German domination in Italy in 962. When Otto I appeared in the peninsula the nobles, lay and clerical, there as elsewhere in feudal Europe, had usurped the whole body of regalian rights which had once pertained to the Italian crown in the time of the Carolingians. Before the German intervention the whole kingdom was in a state of ruination, and the petty princelings of Northern and Central Italy were quarreling over the spoil and remnants of it.

Otto I made no effort to restore the Carolingian system in Italy any more than in Germany. He was content with regulating the feudal condition he found there, but he did not fundamentally change the régime. In so doing he rendered immense service to Italy. The public order established by the German kings naturally promoted the welfare of the Lombard towns, already beginning faintly to show the influence of the stimulus of commerce and trade. But the Saxon emperors took no hand in the evolution of the towns. They held aloof almost completely from the communal movement. That was an issue between the feudal nobles, ecclesiastical and secular, and the unfree population of the towns. Unless, as at Pavia in the time of Henry II, the townsmen did violence to the prerogatives or the property of the crown (i.e., the local lands of the fisc), the emperors did not interfere, but left the nobles to fight their own battles out by themselves with their rebellious subjects.² The Salian emperors, except

¹ "Sed cum ea quae vicissim petebantur, ad imperatoris notitiam referrentur, ipse in cunctis modum nimis excedens, et ab ecclesia in spiritualibus postulavit, quod nulli umquam laico inveniretur concessum, et a Lombardis ultra quod Carolus et Ludovicus atque Otto imperatores contenti fuerunt, exegit" (*Vita Alex. III papae*, Migne, *Pat. Lat.* CC, col. 44).

² Frederick I complained bitterly of this policy of his predecessors: "Haec [Longobardia] quia propter longam absentiam imperatorum ad insolentiam declinaverat, et suis confisa viribus aliquantum rebellare coeperat, nos animo indignati,

Conrad II in 1037, had been too busy, especially Henry IV and Henry V, with the question of investiture to intervene in Italy, even if they had been so inclined, so that the Lombard cities continued to develop without royal or imperial restraint.

True to the Saxon-Guelf policy Lothar II had not interfered with this state of things. In a diet held at Roncaglia (1136) he impliedly recognized the legality of the consular institution of the Lombard cities, and referred the case of Landulf of St. Paolo to the College of Consuls (*coetus consulum*) at Milan. In the Emperor's eyes the consular colleges in the Lombard cities formed courts of first instance from which an appeal lay to the imperial tribunal. Conrad III had never appeared in Italy, and during his reign the Lombard cities, from the point of view of the public law of Europe, had acquired a status as legitimate as customary law could give them.

Thus when Frederick Barbarossa came to the imperial throne a complete revolution in the political condition of North Italy had taken place. It would tax the ability of a modern historian better to describe this condition than did Otto of Freising. His account is as sound and fresh and clear today as when it was written:

Almost the whole country pertains to the cities, each of which forces the inhabitants of her territory to submit to her sway. One can hardly find, within a wide circuit, a man of rank or importance who does not recognize the authority of his city. . . . They surpass all other cities of the world in riches and power; and the long-continued absence of their ruler across the Alps has further contributed to their independence. . . . Although they boast of living under law, they do not obey the law. . . . Among all these cities Milan has become the leading one. . . . The bishop of Asti and William, marquis of Montferrat, a noble and great man [are] almost the only princes in Italy who have kept themselves independent of the cities.¹

A careful analysis of this excerpt will make evident that the Lombard communes were the product of a slow, double

etc." (*Proem. Gesta Friderici*). "Deinde [the allusion is to the second diet of Roncaglia] super justitia regni et de regalibus, quae longa tempora seu temeritate pervadentium seu neglectu regum imperio deperierant" (Radevic, II, 5).

¹ *Gesta Friderici*, II, 13-15.

revolution. In a socio-economic sense these townsmen had risen out of serfdom and become freemen, burghers, through increase of wealth accumulated by industry and commerce. In a political sense the Lombard cities had emerged out of the débris of the ancient count administration, assumed the prerogatives and functions of those vanished officials of the Carolingian time, and established and practiced self-government. The key to this change is found in the office of the consuls in each city. This elective office was the keystone of their municipal structure; it was the palladium of their liberties.

The communes energetically asserted the right of self-government in this particular, and Frederick I as energetically denied it. From the point of view of ancient law Frederick I was theoretically right, if one goes back far enough. He stood upon the letter of the law. But the cities stood upon the new spirit, the new condition born out of that spirit, the new tradition which in their eyes had supplanted the older tradition. They based their claim upon custom, alleging what was quite true, that they had enjoyed the right to elect local magistrates since the time of Henry III and Henry IV.¹

But there was no room in Frederick Barbarossa's political or social philosophy for these city republics of burghers, who claimed the right to be recognized as corporate feudatories of the Empire. Both the principle raised by the new condition and the magnitude of it shocked him. How could descendants of serfs become vassals when the very status of vassalage implied nobility of birth? How could a collective group become a feudatory? Personal vassals Frederick could understand. Group or corporate vassalage was beyond his perception. It is true that already in Germany there were some free burghers, but not free cities, to say nothing of whole provinces, as in Lombardy, composing city republics

¹ Muratori, *Ant. Ital.*, IV, 261A (oath of the Lombard League); *MGH*, IV, 169 (*Pacta Placentina, petitio societatis*); *MGH*, *LL*, II, 151 (peace overture of the cities, Art. 2); *ibid.*, IV, 175 (Peace of Constance, Arts. 1 and 22, *consuetudines*). Frederick's total incapacity to understand the real issue in Lombardy is shown in his appeal (1155) to the German princes (*ibid.*, *Leges*, II, 99): ". . . Quia Mediolanum superbia jamdiu caput contra erexit imperium, ne gloriam nostram plebs improba usurpare vel conculcare valeat."

and a thronging urban population capable of putting a formidable army of town militia into the field.

Noluimus hunc regnare super nos, nec Teutonici amplius dominabuntur nostri ("We will not have him to reign over us, nor the Germans to rule us more"), declared the towns. *Maluimus honestam mortem inter hostes* ("Better a brave death among enemies than that"), declared Frederick.¹ Neither peace nor compromise was possible between two such antipodal points of view.

After years of wasting war, in the Peace of Constance in 1183 the Lombard cities finally won recognition of themselves as grand corporate vassals of the imperial crown. The oath of the Lombard delegates was a feudal oath; the investiture of their consuls a feudal investiture; the communes henceforth had the status of the great feudal duchies, as sovereign states with local, internal sovereignty under the crown. Their form of government differed from that of the duchies, but their legal relation to the Empire was identical with that of the duchies. The principle of states rights had triumphed in them. The Lombard cities won in Italy the principle for which Henry the Lion vainly struggled in Germany, and as the victory of the former spelled progress for Italy, so the defeat of Henry spelled reaction and retard for Germany.

But we have not yet reached the term of consideration of this issue between Guelf and Hohenstaufen. Even if we admit the legitimacy of Frederick Barbarossa's contention respecting the sovereignty of the crown, the degree of that sovereignty and the conditions of its exercise still remained a fair subject of debate in Germany, unless it be admitted out of hand that the crown was a 100 per cent absolute monarchy, which would not be true either in law or in fact and would make Henry the Lion nothing but a mere rebel. Positive law may be legitimate in principle, but the degree of acceptance of that law yet be subject to definition.

In a justly organized state both sovereignty and liberty require definition, guaranties, and sanction. Frederick I offered no guaranties, no sanctions, as security for the justice

¹ *Curia Roncaliae* (1159), *MGH*, IV, 116.

of the state against the power of the state. Sovereignty to him was the supremacy of his independent, unhampered will. His clemency was the only security of the subject against his power. Frederick I took his stand on the revived Roman law, which tended toward absolutistic concepts of royal prerogative. Henry the Lion appealed to the traditional, active, living feudal law of his time, which fostered liberty and the recognition of individual rights.

How vital was the principle at stake between these two, between the Guelf and the Hohenstaufen parties, may be seen by a glance at English history at this time. The struggle between English customary, traditional liberties and Norman-Plantagenet tendency in the twelfth century offers a parallel to that which was happening in Germany. Stephen stood for the maintenance of old English liberties; Henry Plantagenet, for Roman absolutism.¹ For Roman civil law, introduced into England by the canonists after 1066, within little more than a generation had become so great a menace to English traditional rights and liberties that Stephen silenced Master Vacarius, the chief teacher of it, and suppressed his books.² It was as Liebermann describes:

The political instinct of the English government, influenced more than ever before or after by the lay baronage, stood up for the Teutonic feudal law of the Anglo-Normans against the decrees of Roman popes and emperors. The foreign foe . . . opposed systematic jurisprudence to unwritten customs. It was neither the first nor the last time that the barons replied to canonistic pretensions. *Noluimus leges Angliae mutari.*³

In essence Henry the Lion was struggling for the same principle for which the barons contended with John at

¹ "The writer of the *Tractatus Eboracensis* under Henry II developed a theory of royal omnipotence by divine right as complete if not as systematic as that which we shall have to consider later" (Figgis, *Political Thought from Gerson to Grotius*, p. 13).

² John of Salisbury, *Policraticus*, VIII, 22. For this instance, and the general subject of the introduction of Roman law into England at this time, see Liebermann, "Master Vacarius," *English Historical Review*, XI, 305 f.; Holland, *ibid.*, VI, 244; and his article on Vacarius in *Dict. Nat. Biog.*, LVIII, 80 f.; Pollock and Maitland, *History of English Law*, I, 99; Rashdall, *Universities*, II, 335 f.

³ Liebermann, *op. cit.*, p. 310. For Lanfranc's instrumentality in promoting these absolutistic influences by means of forged documents see Boehmer, *Die*

Runnymede. A reference to the twelfth and fourteenth articles of Magna Carta will help to make this clear. That instrument is a summary and definition of the political franchises of the English people. The barons admitted the king's right to levy aids and impose scutage, but the charter adds:

No scutage or aid shall be laid on our realm except by the common counsel of our realm. . . .

And to have a common counsel of our realm on assessing an aid . . . we will cause to be summoned archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls and greater barons singly by our letters, and we will also cause to be summoned in general by our sheriffs and bailiffs, all those who hold of us *in capite*, at a certain day, to wit, at least forty days after, and a certain place; and in all letters we will express the cause of summons, and when the summons is made the business assigned for the day shall proceed according to the counsel of those who are present, though not all who are summoned come.

These were the guaranties. The barons were faithful to English feudal traditions as Henry the Lion strove to be loyal to German feudal traditions, which Frederick I, deeply imbued with the theories and the practices of the Roman law, aimed to suppress and efface. The English King was compelled to give guaranties for the exercise of his sovereignty. The German King refused to do so. He was obdurate and evasive in the matter of sanction, and without sanction law and liberty are whimsical or arbitrary. But in Magna Carta we find that sanction; Articles 39 and 40 read:

No freeman shall be seized or imprisoned or disseized or outlawed or exiled or injured in any way, nor will we enter on him, or send against him except by the lawful judgment of his equals or by the law of the land. . . . We will sell to no one or deny to any one or put off right or justice.

If Henry the Lion had been backed by the bishops and princes of Germany in the cause for which he fought as the English baronage and bishops were united in support of English traditional rights and liberties (*consuetudines*), as they had grown up out of feudalism, Germany would have laid

Fälschungen Erzbischofs Lanfranks von Canterbury, pp. 82 f. For John of Salisbury's argument for the superiority of intelligent, reasoned law over customary law see *Policraticus*, V, 16.

the foundations of a future constitutional monarchy in 1181 as England did in 1214.¹

But fate determined otherwise. The German bishops and small nobles had been so long fed on the spolia of the church and the regalia which the Hohenstaufen had bartered away in order to purchase their support, that their hunger for lands knew no limit. When Frederick Barbarossa offered them the spoil of the Guelf lands, the whole of the great duchy of Saxony as the price of their assistance against Henry, the ravenous pack charged upon the Lion and dragged him down. He was a noble quarry, and the depth of his fall is measured by what the ruin of his ideas meant for Germany, by what the partition of Saxony entailed for Ger-

¹ The *Sachsenspiegel* even asserted that the Pope could not issue decretals in prejudice of local laws and institutions (Lea, *History of the Inquisition*, II, 349). It hardly need be said that in instituting this comparison with Magna Carta I am regarding that instrument in the light of its own time and not as the palladium of liberty which the legists of Coke and his school represented it to be, who in their conflict with the Stuart kings attributed to it a constitutional importance which it did not possess. The practical effects of Magna Carta did not extend beyond the fourteenth century. Article 39 insisted not so much upon a particular form of judgment as upon the necessity of protection against the arbitrary acts of King John which violated the customary law of England; it was of interest not only to the barons, but to all *liberi homines* who invoked the common law and demanded strict observance of the *consuetudines* of Englishmen by the crown. The guaranties exacted of the King by the barons in 1215 are precisely of the nature of those for which Henry the Lion struggled and failed to secure. He asserted the right of revolution against royal tyranny exactly as Magna Carta asserted it. Frederick I, like King John, claimed to rule as an absolute sovereign—a claim which both in England and Germany was declared to be contrary to "the law of the land." The difference lies in the fact that in Germany the effort failed, while in England it succeeded. A comparative study of the constitutional development of Germany and England in the twelfth century is very instructive. I borrow the subjoined quotation from a review by Mr. H. C. W. Davis (*Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XXIV, p. 772) of Dr. Simonsfeld's *Jahrbücher unter Friedrich I*: "The Landfriede ordinance in fact is chiefly valuable as a record of the new legal principles which were shaping themselves in the minds of German statesmen at this period . . . for example, the idea that the legal rights and duties of the knightly class ought to be distinguished from those of the peasants, but that no such distinction need be drawn between the free and the unfree. Following a hint of Jastrow-Winter, Dr. Simonsfeld suggests that the Landfriede edict may profitably be compared with the English law of the same period. He might with advantage have followed up this train of inquiry. The 6th art. of the Landfriede edict anticipates to some extent the measures of Henry II against criminous clerks just as the imperial constitution of 1157, restraining appeals to Rome, anticipates another clause in the Constitutions of Clarendon. The 7th art., which provides for the extradition of criminals who escape from public justice by fleeing into a seignorial borough, reminds us of the powers given to the sheriff in the Assize of Clarendon,

many. The splendid duchy was torn into a tangled mass of jarring clerical and petty lay principalities. The last chance for achieving the unity of Germany was lost.

Frederick I's "kaiserism" ruined Germany and destroyed the most progressive and constructive political ideas to which feudal Germany gave birth in the Middle Ages. Like all shortsighted politicians, he won the point for which he aimed. But it was not worth fighting for. He staked everything on it, and Germany was all but ruined by his victory.

History has done tardy justice—if so much—to the aims and purposes of Henry the Lion. When the "New Germany" now on the way comes to re-read her past history Henry will come into his own. Instead of the slow realization of a federal feudal monarchy, based upon institutions vivid and helpful, the expressions of the essentially healthy things which were in feudalism, medieval Germany fell into chaos in less than a century.

To one who feels the greatness of the history of medieval Germany and realizes that the destruction of Henry the Lion and the dismemberment of the glorious duchy of the north at the hands of Frederick I entailed the loss of Germany's political unity, the reckless waste of German blood and treasure, the perversion of her rightful destiny to wrong ends, the wrenching of her out of her natural historical orbit into a path strewn with dragon's teeth and incumbered with thorns, the territorial reduction of the kingdom to a thing of shreds and patches, the tyrannical rule of a swarm of petty

although the German measure characteristically shows greater respect for the lord's privilege. The 11th art., empowering counts to fix the price of corn at the Nativity in each year, after consultation with seven men of good report, may be compared with the English Assize of Bread. The 12th art., if understood to prohibit the wearing of arms by men of the non-feudal classes, corresponds to the edict of Henry II 'that no man should carry arms on this side of the river Severn.' Dr. Simonsfeld, it is true, thinks that the German law forbade the *possession* no less than the wearing of arms, in which case the difference between the views of the English and the German legislator would be as great as we can imagine. . . . It is not to be supposed that these coincidences, remarkable though some of them appear, are due to deliberate imitation on the part of English lawyers. But they may serve to remind us that English legal development cannot be understood without the employment of the comparative method. The principles which we associate with the name of Henry II were in the air before he entered upon his career of legislative reform."

feudal barons as narrow and brutal as they were politically incapable and morally ignoble—when one realizes, I say, that all these things were poured out like a witches' broth on Germany because of Frederick I's exaggerated egotism, which brooked no opposition, tolerated no other ideas than his own, then one is divided between sentiment of wrath for the victor and sympathy for the vanquished.

Frederick I and the late Kaiser Wilhelm were fellows of the same school, and had much the same psychology. The latter's speeches ring curiously like those of Frederick I as found in Otto of Freising and the Lombard chronicles. Egotism, megalomania, *Weltmacht*,¹ obsessed them both—and both in the event ruined the Germany which they ruled.

The fall of Henry the Lion in 1181 not only marks the passing of the last of the great historic duchies of feudal Germany; it marks further the last chance which Germany had of becoming a strong national monarchy, which might have spared her the anarchy of the interregnum in the thirteenth century and the praetorianism of Prussia in the twentieth century.²

Modern German historians, imbued with Hohenzollern imperialism and fascinated by Hohenzollern praetorianism, have exalted the merits of Frederick I and depreciated those of Henry the Lion. The time has come for Germany to re-evaluate her past history. When she does the Lion of Brunswick will come into his own and tardy reparation will be done his memory.

The lower nobles of the land, some of them of parvenu origin, who had been raised to power by the Salian policy,

¹ O. von Heinemann, *Braunschweigisches Magazin*, Vol. I (1895), makes much of Henry the Lion's opposition to the establishment of universal monarchy as an element of Frederick I's hatred of Henry the Lion. The rebellion of Saxony in 1193 against Henry VI was rooted in this feeling (Bloch, *Forschungen zur Politik Kaiser Heinrichs VI in den Jahren 1191-1194* [Berlin, 1892]).

² Arnold of Lübeck opens the third book of his *Chronica Slavorum* with the verse in Judg. 21:25: "In those days there was no king in Israel: every man did that which was right in his own eyes," and follows it with a picture of anarchy which anticipates that of the interregnum. If the words put in the mouth of Frederick I by Arnold of Lübeck [II, 1], were truly said to Henry the Lion, then the brilliant Hohenstaufen added hypocrisy to his other faults, although it is difficult to believe that insincerity was one of Frederick I's vices. For Frederick was usually forthright, and not given to deception. The issue between the two was a clear-cut and definite one, and neither was disposed to hedge or to compromise.

or had usurped it during the anarchy of Henry IV's reign, saw in Henry the Lion the menace to their own selfish ambitions. The clergy, especially the bishops, who had become princely in station since 1122 and had been fed upon the strong meat of secular power, were hostile to him. Henry the Lion's power and great wealth were his undoing. He had been confronted at different times by coalitions of the nobles and bishops against him, the most formidable of which was that in 1166 headed by Rainald of Dassel (archbishop of Cologne), Archbishop Hartwig of Bremen, Wichmann (archbishop of Magdeburg), and Bishop Hermann of Hildesheim.¹

The intervention of Frederick I had saved him then, for his support was necessary to the Emperor and Henry had participated in Frederick's Italian campaigns, though his judgment was against them. Whether Henry did or did not withdraw his vassals from the battle on the day of Legnano is of little matter. Henry's doom was sealed the moment the Italian question was settled. After the Peace of Venice in 1177 and Frederick's reconciliation with the Pope, the Emperor had no more use for Henry. He had tolerated and even protected Henry when it was expedient for him to do so. When the hour for his use had passed, Frederick ruined him. Henry the Lion was the victim of an imperial theory imbued with the madness of caesarism, of an almost criminal political ambition, of envy of his great wealth, of personal malice toward him.

No event in the history of medieval Germany is so charged with the elements of tragedy as the fall of the Guelf house. The drama has the imaginative fire and the tremendous scale of *Die Götterdämmerung*. Henry the Lion is the Siegfried of German history, without the loyal vassals which that hero possessed who silently raised the body of the fallen leader and bore it on their shields across the distant hills. The Volsung-motif, the sword-motif, and the Siegfried-motif are all in the drama, if only one reads aright the pages of history and has the spiritual discernment to hear the deep undertone amid the percussion of conflicting ideas and the clangor of arms. Wagner's *Twilight of the Gods* may well be regarded as a funeral oration in music over Henry the Lion.

¹ Helmold, *Chron. Slavorum*, II, 6-7.

But—one may say—was the Guelf solution possible? Could Saxony have extended her sway over the rest of Germany, imposed her will upon reluctant duchies, ruled all Germany, and at last molded the kingdom into a new and national form? Of course no absolute answer can be given to this objection, for the reason that the Guelf experiment was never fairly or fully tried. It was hardly given form before it was ruined.

Feudalism had its weaknesses as well as its virtues. It may be that the weaknesses inherent in German feudalism might have militated against the firm establishment of the Guelf form of government. History shows that in spite of its admitted virtues, feudalism was incapable of founding a state upon the bases of fidelity and the sense of justice of the seignior. Justice and law had to have higher authority and a different sanction. The ideals of chivalry and the chansons of the troubadours might laud in vain the feudal state as the perfect state, feudal society as the perfect social structure.¹ Unfortunately, the men of the feudal age were not abstract paragons of virtue, but flesh-and-blood human beings whose virtues (when they had them) were traversed by their vices and their wickedness. It is easier to found a state in which all shall be subject to the will of a single prince than to hold a society together by ties of mutual right and mutual privilege—in a word, to establish a state without a strong central authority, but based on mutual contract. Perhaps this is the reason why the French monarchy succeeded and the German monarchy failed.²

The problem of all government is to give simultaneous and due expression to the aspirations, the rights, and the needs of the central and the local interests.

¹ The following passage illustrates the utopian nature of German chivalry: "Cujus mors genti Teutonicorum omnibusque Germanie populus lamentabilis sit in eternum quia aliarum terrarum divitiis eos claros reddidit, terroremque eorum omnibus in circuitu nationibus per virtutem bellicam incussit eosque prestantiores aliis gentibus nimirum ostendit futuros" (SS. XX, 328).

² See the exceedingly wise and keen observations of Lot, *Hugues Capet*, p. 236, n. 2, and p. 245, nn. 1, 2, 3; cf. Luchaire, *Manuel*, pp. 219–34. The feud of the Abbot of Fulda and the Archbishop of Cologne at the great diet of Mainz in 1184 shows the emptiness of Frederick I's pretensions to power and authority. See Arnold, *Chron.*, III, 8. The passage is translated in Fisher, *op. cit.*, I, 339–40.

CHAPTER IX

GERMAN FEUDALISM

WHILE the roots of the history of feudal Germany may be traced as far back as the time of Charlemagne, and beyond, it is unnecessary for the purpose of this chapter to go farther back than the dissolution of the Carolingian Empire in the ninth century. In the awful crucible of that age, a period of vast disintegration of political and social institutions within, combined with attack from without by formidable enemies like the Norsemen and the Magyars, Central and Western Europe was transformed. A new polity and a new society emerged out of the vortex.

But the process of change was not simultaneous in France and Germany; it was not accomplished in equal degree everywhere, nor did it result everywhere in establishing identical conditions. While feudalism became universal in medieval Europe, the local variations and differences between French feudalism, English feudalism, German feudalism, and Italian feudalism are often so great that the four forms may usually be studied more profitably by contrast than by analogy.

Roughly speaking, the process which began in France as early as 814 affected Germany but slightly until 887, except in the lower Rhinelands. The deposition of Charles the Fat in 887 and the accession of Arnulf was the real turning-point of German history. From that date forward the old Carolingian régime rapidly dissolved, and a new, more feudal form of government and structure of society took its place. This process of transformation may be said to fill the reigns of Arnulf and his son, Ludwig the Child (d. 911), the last eastern Carolingian; the abortive reign of Conrad I (911-19); and the reign of Henry I (919-36), the first Saxon king, by whose time a new Germany had been formed, a new kind of government, a new social texture, which harmonized with the spirit and the condition of the new age.

The enormous disarray which characterized the history of Western Europe in the ninth century was less ruinous to Germany than to France. The German kings were made of sterner stuff than those across the Rhine. The invasions of the Norsemen had only menaced the lower Rhinelands, and were not nearly so prolonged in Germany as in France. The chief danger was along the eastern border, where Slavonic and Magyar pressure, even before the notable military reforms made by Henry the Fowler, had their influence upon the development of predial serfdom and the growth of feudal practices.¹

Germany in the ninth century had a solidity which France did not possess. Actual anarchy such as prevailed in France almost continuously from the time of Charles the Bald (840–77) to the time of Louis VI (1108–37) is not found in Germany except during the minority reign of Ludwig the Child.² It is true that the reign of Conrad I, his successor, was fraught with violence; yet the power of the church and the strength of the great dukes in some measure compensated for the weakness of the crown.³

Germany being less exposed to attack from the outside and possessed of a firmer texture within than France, German feudalism did not become as hard and set a system as was French feudalism. "Old" France crumbled away in the ninth and tenth centuries; "old" Germany, anchored to the ancient duchies which remained intact, retained its integrity. The tribal dukes recognized the office of the king, but they did not admit that they held their duchies of the crown, or that they held their lands of the king, even when such lands had the aspect of fiefs. The German nobility always included a large number of landed nobles who regarded their possessions as huge allods which they might partition as fiefs when it so pleased them; but they rhetorically called their

¹ Waitz, *Jahrb. Heinrich I*, p. 63; Hauck, *Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands*, II, 686, n. 6; Sommerlad, *Die wirtschaftliche Tätigkeit der Kirche in Deutschland*, II, 226.

² Waitz, *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte* (2d ed.), V, 59 ff. Cf. the elegy upon Salomon, bishop of Constance, in *Mittheil. der Antiq. Gesellschaft in Zürich*, XII, 233, vss. 117 f.

³ Waitz, *DVG*, V, 65–66.

own great fiefs *Sonnenlehen*, or "sun fiefs," in order to express their complete freedom—they held only of the sun.¹ Fiefs of the sun (*Sonnenlehen*) were originally allodial seigniories, and it was because of the penetration of feudalism everywhere that they were thus assimilated with fiefs.

The power of the great German dukes had been formed during the troubled times of Arnulf and his son. The separate German "nations," Franks, Swabians, Bavarians, which had developed into dukedoms under the Merovingians (Saxon ducal development originated in Charlemagne's time), and had been suppressed but not extinguished by Charlemagne, rose again into newness of life. With the break-up of the Empire came a recrudescence of ancient tribal consciousness. The grouping of the various German "nations" was instinctive and pronounced.²

The rise of the stem-dukes whom Charlemagne had so coerced was the result of the instinctive and spontaneous rally of the German people, owing to the stress of the time, around their natural and historical tribal representatives.³ In Saxony especially the ducal movement was strong, for

¹ Later these *Sonnenlehen* came to be called *Fahnlehen*, or "banner-fiefs," because investiture was conferred by a *vexillum*, or "banner." At first only the duchies were of this rank, then margraviates, and finally any princely fiefs. Its gift conferred the right to levy military service of vassals, hence the saying: "*Es erhöhet nichts des Mannes Schild denn Fahnlehen.*"

² Arnold of Bavaria assumed the title of "duke by the grace of God"; *Vita Oudalrici*, chap. iii (MGH, SS. IV, 389). Under Henry I the dukes coined their own money, convoked assemblies, administered justice, and controlled the church within their territories (Waitz, V, 72; Hauck, *op. cit.*, III, 8-9; Lamprecht, *Deutsche Geschichte* [3d ed.], II, 127). When Conrad I put Adalbert of Babenberg to death in 906 his people were furious (Regino, *Chronicon* [anno 906]). The position of the great dukes in the tenth century really represented a reversion to the type of duchy which prevailed in Merovingian times. The dukes had then exercised all the rights of sovereignty as dukes, and not as Frankish officials, although they depended upon the Merovingian crown. Royal confirmation was mingled with popular choice and quasi-hereditary right. In Swabia and Thuringia the dukes had to pay tribute and to follow the king in war. The fall of Tassilo in 788 ended this ancient status, and during the reign of Charlemagne the duchies were practically administrative provinces of the Frankish empire. When the empire went to pieces the duchies emerged and resumed their old condition once more. See Bornhak, *Forschungen zur Deutschen Geschichte*, XXIII, No. 3.

³ Henry II in 1002 recognized this local feeling in the German duchies when he refused the demand of Henry, count of Schweinfurt and margrave of the Bavarian Nordgau, that he be made duke of Bavaria. The King said: "Nonne scitis . . . Bawarios ab initio ducem eligendi liberam habere potestatem; non decere tam subito

there the ancient Germanic tradition was less impaired than elsewhere.¹ The stem-dukes were only able to reappear after the collapse of the Carolingian system. The same thing is true of the German nobility, which had disappeared during the sixth and seventh centuries and been supplanted by Frankish officials. When the latter vanished, the old nobility came up.

At this moment when the old German duchies arose once more the territory of Germany was not divided into a swarm of petty sovereignties as in France. The power of the great dukes still rested upon a considerable body of freemen who cultivated the soil in person, upon some vassals without fiefs, upon certain local officials such as counts and *centenarii*. In a word, in Germany until the end of the ninth century much of the Carolingian régime persisted. In France, on the other hand, all the ancient political and social bonds were loosed and new ones had to be formed in order to save the country from utter dissolution.²

When the power of the crown was reduced to impotence under Charles the Bald private enterprise or usurpation stepped in and performed the functions of government.³ When the cry arose for protection against invading Norsemen in the north and foraying Saracens in the south, the land of France began to bristle with feudal castles. By the year 1000 the horizon of every province of France was fretted with looming bastions profiled against the sky.⁴

eos abicere neque constitutionis antike jus absque consensu eorum frangere? Si voluisset expectare usque dum ipse ad has regiones venirem, cum communi consilio principum eorundem ac voluntate sibi libenter in hoc satisfacerem" (Thietmar of Merseburg, *Chron.*, V, 14).

¹ Waitz, *Jahrb.*, p. 9; *DVG*, V, 43.

² For details of this history see Guilhiermoz, *L'origine de la noblesse en France au moyen-âge*, p. 143 and notes; Flach, *Les origines de l'ancienne France*, Vol. II, Book III, chaps. vi-viii; and my article on "The Commerce of France in the Ninth Century," *Jour. Pol. Econ.* (November, 1915).

³ "Damit ist das Staatswesen feudalisiert" (K. von Amira, *Grundriss d. German. Rechts* [3d ed.], p. 156). "Von den letzten Karolingern an datiert die Verfassung die wir als Feudalstaat bezeichnen" (Below, *Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters*, p. 350).

⁴ See the striking descriptive paragraph in Ferdinand Lot, *Hugues Capet*, pp. 236-37.

Inchoate feudalism first crystallized in France into a form of government and a structure of society by the union of the benefice or fief with vassalage, and adoption of the principles of recommendation and homage.¹ In Germany the benefice was long unknown.² Great lay and ecclesiastical proprietorships were first developed in France, especially in old Neustria.³ In Germany both forms were chronologically of later origin, and when formed were technically different from the French practices. In France feudalism was rapidly militarized as the result of chronic conditions of warfare. In Germany the old German *Heerban* survived for centuries, and when the art of war at last became feudalized, the conditions were very different from those prevailing in France. The earliest instances of the delegation or seizure of the sovereign power of the state, which is of the very essence of feudalism, by public officials or vassals, occur in France, not Germany.⁴ The partibility of fiefs appeared in France long before the practice became manifest in Germany. In France the principle of the heritability of fiefs was old when it was yet new

¹ Brunner, *Deutsche Rechtsgeschichte*, II, 262; Guilhiermoz, *op. cit.*, pp. 77, 127.

² The *Historia Welforum Weingartensis*, chap. iv, relates an incident of Eticho, one of the founders of the house, which, however legendary it may be, yet illustrates this spirit of allodial pride and indisposition to recognize the drift toward feudalism. Eticho, the father of Empress Judith, was filled with anger when his son Henry accepted a benefice from his brother-in-law, Emperor Louis the Pious; that a man of noble blood would renounce such proud condition and become a vassal was too much for the old conservative—it was demeaning his class.

“Heinricus cum ad militares annos pervenisset et sue voluntatis compos fieret, ignorante patre ad imperatorem se contulit. Cumque illi summa familiaritate sociaretur et totius imperii vires terminos ejus circueundo et pertranseundo cognosceret, tandem consilio principum et maxime ipsius imperatoris instinctu hominium ei et subjectionem fecit, et in beneficio quatuor milia mansuum in superioribus partibus Bajoarie ab eo susceptit.”

As late as the second half of the twelfth century, when Frederick I passed through Thun a local magnate, instead of saluting the Emperor after the feudal manner merely raised his hat in courteous greeting. The act piqued Frederick, who upon inquiry found that the Baron of Krenkingen was so old, so free, and so noble that he owed neither homage nor service to any man (Grimm, *Deutsche Rechtsalterthümer*, p. 279).

³ Brunner, *op. cit.*, II, 226; Guilhiermoz, p. 77.

⁴ Brunner, II, 253-55; Waitz, VII, 10; R. Schröder, *Lehrbuch der Deutschen Rechtsgeschichte*, III, 128.

in Germany.¹ The ancient French maxim, "*Nulle terre sans seigneur*," never became universal or anything like it in medieval Germany, and allodial ownership was far more widespread in feudal Germany than in feudal France.² Feudalism transformed aristocracy of race into aristocracy of function. Government pertained to the most capable. But if superiority conferred rights it also imposed duties.

It is a fallacious belief that medieval society was divided into close and hard castes; that all the privileges were with one class and all the obligations with the other. In reality the fief was, if not a servitude, at least a service; it was as noble as distinguished from an ignoble service. Like serfs, vassals too were given away, sold, bequeathed by will by their overlords.³

The military reforms made by Henry the Fowler, remarkable as they were, did not make that radical and immediate change in institutions or social texture usually attributed to them. Military feudalism was of relatively late appearance in Germany when compared with France. Indeed, until the twelfth century, anything approaching the régime which prevailed in France was foreign to Germany, except along the French border.

As a whole, both administratively and socially, medieval Germany until the end of the Salian period was predominantly Carolingian. What the ninth century did for France in transforming her into a feudal country was not done in Germany until the civil wars of the reign of Henry IV, and even then the process was less complete and very different in result. Feudalism, at least in the French sense of that term, neither deeply permeated the German military or administrative system, nor saturated the land and society so fully as in France. When feudalism at last became "formed"

¹ Heritability of fiefs began to prevail in Italy in the eleventh century, and in Germany in the twelfth (Guilhiermoz, p. 241). The Italian word *capitaneus* ("vassal") penetrated into Swabia, but not elsewhere in Germany (Waitz, V, 464).

² Lamprecht, *op. cit.*, II, 87-88, 109-111; Brunner, *Forsch.*, I, 39, and his *Rechtsgeschichte*, II, 246-47, 250, 255 ff., 265 ff., 273 ff.; Maurer, *Einleitung zur Geschichte der Mark-, Hof-, Dorf- und Stadtverfassung*, p. 214.

³ Guerard, *Polypt.*, I, 422 and n. 5.

in medieval Germany the contrasts between its institutions and those of France are more striking than the analogies. As for feudal identities they hardly may be said to have existed.

The benefice system in Germany, except in the case of church lands, was not widely spread. Vassalage in France was primarily a military relation. In Germany it was chiefly an economic one until the time of the Hohenstaufen.¹ In France, outside of Auvergne, where freemen were still in preponderance as late as the eleventh century, to cultivate the soil in person implied loss of status and often loss of liberty.² In Germany, and above all in Saxony, agriculture did not condition status until the twelfth century. By that time the general rebellion of the German feudality in the west and south, combined with the revolt of the peasantry in Saxony, had so nearly ruined the land that freemen everywhere were depressed, great nobles, lay and clerical, had become greater, and a swarm of parvenu nobles had come into being, all of whom rose upon the débris of the Salian system.

In France warriors without fief, living in the château of the lord and doing his service, were yet noble. In Germany castle-guard and similar services were performed by ex-serfs, i.e., *ministeriales*.³ In France, at least in theory and in principle, every noble had a château and a fief. In Germany the lord rewarded his vassals with gifts, as horses, arms, etc.; suzerainty and vassalage were largely an economic and social relation.⁴ In the *Ruodlieb*, one of the earliest of medieval

¹ Lamprecht, II, 106; Brunner, II, 248, 262 ff.; Roth von Schreckenstein, *Ritterwürde*, p. 59; Guilhiermoz, pp. 197 (n. 5), 265, 298. Even in the thirteenth century the *Sachsenspiegel* represents the tradition of early practice, i.e., that the fief is the wage of a function or service—"Das Lehn ist der rittere Sold" (Homeyr, *Sachsenspiegel*, II, 314).

² Guilhiermoz, p. 115 and notes; Lamprecht, *Études sur l'état économique de la France pendant la première partie du moyen-âge* (trans. Marignan), p. 199; Levasseur, *Histoire des classes ouvrières*, I, 162.

³ Guilhiermoz, p. 114, n. 28.

⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 143 (n. 20), 165 (n. 77), 242-43. In Ottonian times the real nobility of Germany was composed of counts who were paid out of the public domain (Gerdes, *Geschichte des Deutschen Volkes*, I, 404). Rear-vassalage was stimulated in its development both by the evolution of the *ministeriales*, who came, as they rose, to be looked upon as the vassals of their lord, who was in turn a vassal himself, and by

German poems, being of the eleventh century, there is no mention made of fiefs in the enumeration made to the hero of the advantages which will arise from his entering the king's service.¹ Not until the twelfth century does the reward of a German vassal regularly take the form of a gift of fief.² In the eleventh century almost all the instances of benefices conferred upon condition of military service occur in the border lands adjacent to France, as Lorraine and Burgundy.³

Even then these German feudatories but slightly resembled their French congeners, for they were checked on every hand by the counts, the bishops, and the counts palatine, who were strictly royal functionaries; they could not indulge the right of war as in France without peril, nor coin money nor administer anything save simple justice. They had few political attributes, and no sovereignty.⁴ In brief, German vassalage was simple and curtailed when compared with the institution as it prevailed in France.⁵ The strong hand of the German kings prevented the growth both of a tyrannous higher feudality and the nuisance of a petty feudality until the war of investiture and the rebellion of

the disintegrating effects of the war of investiture which drove small nobles to larger ones for protection, or who else, owing to the collapse of the royal authority, lost their direct relation with and protection by the crown and were reduced to vassalage by the strong. See Below, *op. cit.*, pp. 239-42, and literature cited in notes (pp. 276-78).

¹ *Ruodlieb*, Frag. I, vss. 97 ff.; Waitz, *DVG*, VI, 44. Edited by F. Seiler, *Der älteste Roman des Mittelalters* (Halle, 1882), the *Ruodlieb* has been usually regarded as of German origin (near Tegernese) and dated about 1030. But Wilmotte, *Romania*, XLIV, 373 f., assigns it to Northeastern France (valley of the Meuse between Namur and Liège) and to the early twelfth century. However, the fact that the *Ruodlieb* seems not to have had any influence on subsequent German poetry argues for its earlier date as probable.

² Ficker, *Vom Heerschilde*, p. 165; Guilhiermoz, p. 163, n. 4. The conservative nature of the benefice in Germany is shown in the *Constitutio* of Lothar II in 1136 (*MGH, Leges* [N.S.], IV, 176); the grant is still Carolingian in character. Cf. Guilhiermoz, p. 114, n. 26 *ad fin.* Even as late as the thirteenth century German law carefully distinguished fiefs formed from allods from the older type of benefice (Guilhiermoz, *ubi supra*, and pp. 265 [n. 30], 298-301).

³ Thietmar, *Chron.*, VI, chap. xxxvi; *Vita Meinwerki*, chaps. lxxii-lxxvi; *Chron. Laureshamense* (Lorsch) (anno 1066) (SS. XXI, 415, 434-35); Dronke, *Codex Diplomaticus Fuldensis*, p. 359, No. 749.

⁴ Gerdes, I, 396; Schröder, pp. 536-37.

⁵ Brunner, II, 273-74.

Saxony threw all Germany into confusion and anarchy, the effect of which was to relax the power of the crown and profoundly to alter the institutions of feudalism and the texture of society.

Personal vassals, i.e., vassals without fief, are to be found in Germany as late as the *Sachsenspiegel*, although by that time they were an exception to the general condition.¹ This archaic form of vassalage especially survived in Saxony, but even in North Germany much of the old order of things passed away during the reign of Henry IV.² Then strong freemen became nobles and were bound to higher lords by ties of vassalage and homage, while weaker freemen went down to serfdom under the stress.³ The Saxon and Thuringian peasantry rebelled against Henry IV in 1075 just because they were free and determined to preserve their freedom when the peasantry almost everywhere else in Germany had already sunk, or were sinking, to serfdom. As a whole, in Germany the tie of vassalage evidently was not a political and social principle strong enough to maintain the necessary political cohesion of the social body without force to sustain or coerce it. The history of feudal France illustrates this necessity.

As it was with vassalage so also was it with rear-vassalage or subinfeudation. French law never imposed a limit upon the number of successive subinfeudations. In Germany subinfeudation itself was a late practice as feudal origins go, and never reached the meticulous degree that obtained in

¹ Homeyer, *Sachsenspiegel*, I, Part II, 159; Guilhiermoz, p. 236, n. 2 *ad fin.*

² Thus Adam of Bremen, *Gesta Hammaburg. Eccles. Pontif.* (III, 35), says of Adalbert, the archbishop: "cum omnes qui erant in Saxonia sive in aliis regionibus clari et magnifici viri adoptaret in milites, multis dando quod habuit, ceteris pollicendo quod non habuit. . . ." Farther on (III, 48) he writes, again of Adalbert: "cum tyranno [Magnus Billung] fedus pepigit ut, qui hostis erat, miles efficeretur, offerens ei de bonis ecclesiae mille mansos in beneficium et amplius." Lambert of Hersfeld abounds with details about Henry IV's Saxon policy and its effects, but see especially *Annales* (ed. Holder-Egger), pp. 238, 260.

³ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 141, 146-48; Bruno, *Liber de Bello Saxonico*, chaps. xvi, xxiii-xxv, cxxvii. The symbolic procedure employed had a relation of significance to the rights or privileges granted. Thus the use of a piece of turf indicated that the vassal received land, the ring and crozier signified the collation of a bishopric, the scepter implied that the vassal secured his regalian rights, etc. The study of feudal ceremony is valuable for the light it casts upon the nature of fiefs.

France. Until the time of the Staufer, Germany had a powerful nobility, but that nobility was not oppressive, while France as late as the reign of St. Louis exhibits many of the phenomena of feudal anarchy. In their relations with the king the German nobles had more liberty than English and Norman barons under the Angevins, but it was a liberty preserved only through allegiance to the king's law.

In Germany, as compared with France, the proportion of great nobles was small, and the number of lesser nobles not nearly so large as in France.¹ On the other hand, there were many more freemen in Germany than in France—at least until the late twelfth century. Aside from the bishops and abbots of the “royal” monasteries, of whom military service was rigidly exacted in virtue of the vast landed possessions which the largess of the Saxon kings had conferred upon them, there were relatively few real military vassals in the strict sense of that term, i.e., nobles who held fiefs subject to military service, and most of these were to be found along the French border. In Germany field service and castle-guard were sharply distinguished until Hohenstaufen times; in France there is close relation and often confusion between the practices.²

In medieval Germany “the art of war was a necessary episcopal accomplishment” to a far greater degree than in either France or England. Feudal France produced few bishops like Adhemar of Puy and Philip of Beauvais. The latter accompanied Philip Augustus to the East on the Third Crusade, faced the furious charge of the Turkish horse at Arsuf, and shared in the repulse at Acre; his bloodstained hauberk was sent to the Pope with the message: “This we have found. Know now whether it be thy son's coat-of-mail or no.” As for English fighting bishops, who does not know Richard of Cornwall's famous letter to his brother Edward in 1257 from Cologne? “Lo,” wrote Richard, “what mettlesome and warlike archbishops are in Germany. It would be a

¹ The children of small nobles were often pledged to the service of the larger ones. For examples see Ruotger, *Vita Brunonis*, chap. xiii; Thietmar, IV, 15, 22, and VI, 52.

² Guilhiermoz, pp. 298 ff.

fine thing for you if you could create such archbishops in England."¹ The barons' war in England in the thirteenth century might have had another issue if the crown had possessed such fighting clergy as feudal Germany possessed.

As far back as the reign of Otto the Great the Saxon policy had engrossed the bishops and "royal" abbots within the German military hierarchy. But the provisions of the Concordat of Worms in 1122 formally made the princes of the German church also princes of the German kingdom, and at this moment the great bishops and abbots officially entered into the military hierarchy with papal consent.² This status once established, in proportion as the ecclesiastical princes entered into the feudal life and institutions of Germany, the differences which had formerly distinguished them from the great lay nobles tended to blur together. Their office alone distinguished them from the secular feudality. In blood, in policy, in psychology, they were wholly feudalized. But this observation would not justly fit the high clergy of either France or England in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. It is this difference of historical process and condition which enabled medieval Germany to produce such fighting bishops as Rainald of Dassel and Christian of Mainz, and not possess such churchmen as Becket, Grosseteste, John of Salisbury, Ivo of Chartres, Maurice de Sully, and Jacques de Vitry.

¹ *Annals of Burton* (SS. XXVII, 480). The author of the tract entitled *De unitate ecclesiae conservanda*, chap. xviii, written during or soon after the war of investiture, says of the bishops of that time: "quales scilicet episcopi non essent pastores ecclesiarum sed ductores bellorum, non custodes dominicarum ovium, sed ut graves lupi persecutores earum, interfectores animarum pariter et corporum."

² See Heinrich Schaefer, *Pfarrkirche und Stift im Deutschen Mittelalter* (1903). A sharp distinction must always be made between church and lay fiefs; the former were always conferred with ring and staff, the latter with the banner and the sword. Yet in one particular the two kinds became one in nature, for a distinction developed between great or princely fiefs and fiefs of lower rank. Both bishoprics and great territories became regalian fiefs and hence of the same degree. In proportion as the bishops became of greater and greater importance in the feudal world the differences which distinguished them from great lay nobles become blurred. By the beginning of the thirteenth century the two classes are much alike. A new insignia appears among the ecclesiastical princes. It is the banner (*die Fahne*), which, at first a symbol of the right of high justice, ends by signifying actual right of sovereignty. The requirement of personal appearance before the Emperor soon disappeared. The princes, whether lay or clerical, contented themselves with sending their ambassadors.

In Germany feudalism became politically sovereign. In France the growth of the royal power gradually deprived the feudality of power and authority, and reduced it to a social caste. In England the opposition of the baronage and liberal bishops became a constitutional opposition and developed one of the most remarkable and beneficent institutional and political processes in history. In Germany bishops, abbots, and barons were bitterly divided against one another after 1197, when the strong hand of the Hohenstaufen was removed, and in the end they wrought the ruin of the German kingdom. In France clergy and nobles alike were made to bend to the king's will. Yet what happened in England might have been achieved in Germany, too, in the twelfth century (a full hundred years before Edward I and Simon de Montfort) if the Guelf programme could have triumphed. The Hohenstaufen emperors were as self-willed and absolutistic as the Capetian kings, but they could not make their will prevail over Germany as the French kings did in France. The dream of the Guelf house was to establish a federal feudal monarchy in Germany composed of a union of the separate duchies, each of which was to preserve its local "states rights"—to establish a form of government which would have given simultaneous and due expression to the rights of the crown and the rights of the duchies. But this great and constructive programme was ruined by the despotic policy of Frederick Barbarossa, and the fall of Henry the Lion in 1181 dragged ducal Germany down with Saxony. Never again in German history did the great old duchies play an important part. Upon the débris of the great duchies a swarm of petty particularistic feudal states arose and Germany, which in the twelfth century hovered upon the verge of creating a wholly new kind of state in Europe, a federated feudal and limited monarchy, drifted in the thirteenth century into the anarchy of the interregnum. By destroying the Guelfs the Staufer ruined the only element in feudal Germany capable of accomplishing something like what the barons accomplished for English liberty at Runnymede. The germ of constitutional limited monarchy was implicit as much in the Guelf programme as in the demands of the English barons in 1215.

If now we turn from things feudal to a consideration of things servile and manorial in medieval Germany, again we find marked variations and differences from similar conditions west of the Rhine or in England.

The distance which separated the lord of the manor from his servile dependents in Germany was wider than the same kind of separation in France. In the latter country the necessity of protection threw nobles and peasantry more closely together than in Germany. In France the villages were often, even usually, in close proximity to the castle, crowded against the cliff on which the château stood, or huddled at the foot of the hill within the shadow of the keep. In Germany, on the other hand, we find few castles until late in the eleventh century. The nobles lived as country gentlemen upon their estates, moving as necessity bade from one to another. The villages of the peasantry were rambling hamlets, often widely scattered. In consequence of these different conditions the German noble lived more aloof from the lower classes than the French noble; he knew less of them and their life; he was less familiar with them. But, on the other hand, owing first to the fact that thousands of freemen survived in Germany until as late as the twelfth century, whereas this class in France had long before this date diminished almost to invisibility; and, second, owing to the further fact that predial serfdom was late in development in Germany and slow in its spread, the German noble did not have that contempt for the lower classes which is found in medieval France, nor did the German peasantry as a class exhibit that servility which characterized the French peasantry in the eleventh and twelfth centuries.

The growth of proprietorship—or, to use the convenient German term, *Grundherrschaft*—and of serfdom was both slower and later in Germany than in France. Moreover, the manorial régime which resulted in Germany never had that systematic character which is attached to French manorialism, nor was it ever so universal. *Systemsucht* has been too much a disposition of recent German historical writers in this particular. On the other hand, the contention of Gerhard

Seeliger¹ that too much economic determinism has been introduced into the interpretation of medieval German serfdom, it seems to me, errs in the other direction.

Until relatively late in medieval Germany, as compared with medieval France, a German baron's² daily life was not unlike that of an English squire. He was more a proprietor farming his ancestral acres with the labor of a free peasant population than a feudal chieftain with a rout of men-at-arms and retainers always around him, and all living on the forced toil of a servile peasantry. This was especially true in North Germany. His possessions were likely to be surrounded by the outlying farms of free peasants who were his neighbors. His life was "rustic." In the *Ruodlieb* the chief occupation of the baron is to work his fields.³ He is more concerned about the state of the weather and the condition of his crops than about politics and war; he has few vassals, or none at all, and they are personal vassals without fiefs; a handful of *ministeriales* is enough for house-guard.⁴

A few castles began to creep into the country in the tenth century, but they were simpler and ruder erections than those of France, and most of them were in the west near the French border.⁵ Until the war of investiture and the

¹ *Die soziale und politische Bedeutung der Grundherrschaft im früheren Mittelalter* (Leipzig, 1903).

² The word *baro* was rarely used in the eleventh century, and not common even in the twelfth. I have not found it in Lambert of Hersfeld. It occurs six times in Otto of Freising, *Chronica*. Frequently a qualifying adjective is employed with the word, as *liber baro*, the Latin equivalent of *Freiherr*. Cf. Guilhaumez, p. 158, n. 54.

³ Frag. IV, vss. 15 ff.; Zoepfl, *Deutsche Rechtsgeschichte*, p. 351.

⁴ Seifrid Helbling, I, vss. 826-29; Ottokar, *Reimchronik*, vss. 30727-55. Cf. Haupte, *Zeitschrift für Deutsches Altertum*, IV, 164.

⁵ Regino, *Chron.* (anno 892); Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 1297, 1316, n. 6; Dubrille, *Cambrai*, pp. 2-3. Castle-building was a typical phenomenon of the ninth century, and a concrete evidence of the breakdown of the central authority. Castles were first built as places of protection against the inroads of the Northmen in France. As such they were mere blockhouses erected on some natural escarpment or artificial *agger*, and surrounded by a palisade and a ditch. In Parmentier's *Album Historique*, I, 100, may be seen a picture of the château of Ste Eulalie-d'Ambarès (Gironde), of the late ninth or early tenth century. An earlier and still simpler one is in Grégoire and Gaillard's *Histoire du moyen âge* (Paris, 1895), p. 312. Taine, *Ancient Régime*, p. 7, has a striking description of this age of castle-building. They first appear, as has

rebellion of Saxony, with the ensuing anarchy, all castles in Germany were regarded as "adulterine" save the citadels pertaining to the crown, most of which were in the towns, as Frankfort and Regensburg.¹ But as German life partook more and more of feudal ways of living, as institutions tended to crystallize and the structure of society to harden, individual castrametation gradually developed and the German nobles began to build castles of their own.² First they converted a favorite *Pfalz* into a walled or moated grange (*curtis*); from this the transition was made to a more formidable edifice.³ But until the last quarter of the eleventh century there were comparatively few independent châteaux in Germany. Such structures were "adulterine" in the eyes of the Saxon and Salian kings and were usually destroyed or else forfeited to the crown.⁴ Only royal officers might

been said, in the north of France. Cf. *Vita S. Romani*, chap. xiii (*AASS Boll.*, V, [May], 158); *Cart. de St. Père*, I, 6; Hincmar, *Annales* (862, 866, 869); *Annal. St. Vaast* (885). In 862 Charles the Bald enjoined the erection of private castles as a means to defend the country, but rescinded—or attempted to rescind—the edict in 864 owing to the fact that these strongholds became rendezvous of robbers (*MGH, Leges* [N.S.], II, 86). Thenceforth castle-building increased rapidly; every castle-owner defied the crown. See Regino, *op. cit.* (879); *De Gestis Abbat. Laub.*, chap. xvi; *Hincmarus ad Carolum Calvum*, in Migne, *Patrol. Lat.*, CXXV, 954; Flach, *Les origines de l'anc. France*, II, 82–86, 301 ff. Richer, *Historiarum Libri IV*, is full of vivid details in regard to early castles, e.g., I, 19, 27; II, 7, 8, 9; III, 20 (the first mention in 964 of the famous château of Coucy), 103 (Verdun); IV, 17 (Laon), 76 (Melun). Until the eleventh century the castles were chiefly, even entirely, made of timber, and part-wooden, part-stone castles are even met with in the twelfth century, as Sugar's *Vita Ludovici Crassi* shows. But Richer, IV, 27, indicates that stone towers and battlements were in use by the middle of the tenth century. Besides the word *castellum*, the words *oppidum*, *municipium*, *castrum*, and *arx* were employed in the same sense. The art of castrametation was much more advanced in France than elsewhere, and the ability of the French in building castles astonished both the Germans and the Italians. *Mon. S. Gall.*, II, 17; Richer, II, 10; III, 106; Flodoard *Annales* (938); *Mirac. S. Bened.* (ed. Soc. de l'Hist. de France), p. 245. The counts of Anjou excelled in this kind of engineering (Halphen, *Le Comte d'Anjou au XI^e siècle*, Part II, chap. ii).

¹ E.g., *MGH, Dipl.* (N.S.), I, 169, l. 14; 232, l. 8; 242, l. 35; 499, l. 27.

² "Nobiles in villis turres parvulas habuerunt quas a suis similibus vix defendere potuerunt," quoted by Schulte (*Hofleben*, I, 124). Waitz, VIII, 203–4, has a striking paragraph on this evolution.

³ Waitz, VIII, 200; Maurer, *Geschichte der Frönhöfe*, I, 126, 136.

⁴ Waitz, VIII, 201.

legally have castles, and then they were emanations of the king's authority and often citadels garrisoned and munitioned by government.¹ Before the twelfth century most of the so-called "castles" of the German dukes with whom the kings were continually struggling were not actual castles but merely fortified manor-houses.²

Even the German kings before Henry IV were without real castles, except for their citadels, which, as said, were provincial police headquarters. All the Saxon monarchs and the first two Salians, Conrad II and Henry III, lived much as Charlemagne had lived, as described in the *Capitulare de villis*, that is to say, in a great low-roofed, rambling manor-house, or *palatium*, leaving what castles they possessed to garrisons who were usually armed *ministeriales*.³

Wood was the universal fabric of castle construction for years in Germany, until French building technique and engineering introduced stone construction. Even the Wartburg in 1080 had two wooden towers.⁴ The genuine feudal castle crept gradually into Germany from Lorraine.⁵ Already by the eleventh century in France military engineering had become a profession and the names of some of these architects are known.⁶ But the first German castles were cruder constructions than those found in France at the same time, al-

¹ For examples see *Annal. Hild.* (971) (SS. III, 62); Thietmar, *Chron.*, V, 9; VI, 36; *MGH, Dipl.* (N.S.), I, 169, 232, 242, 499. Cf. Otte, *Baukunst*, pp. 134-35; Nährer, *Kunst und Alterth. in Württemb.*, III, 150.

² See Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. xxii; *Vita Oudalrici*, chap. x; *Vita Balderici*, chap. vii; *Vita Deoderici Mett.*, chap. xii.

³ Waitz, VIII, 205-7; Heyne, *Wohnungswesen*, p. 139; Lamprecht, *Deutsches Wirtschaftsleben*, I, Part I, 544; Schulte, *Hofleben*, I, 42. For Belgium see Kurth, *Notger de Liège*, p. 301, n. 5; Pirenne, *Histoire de Belgique*, I, 128.

⁴ Otte, *Baukunst*, p. 269. For description of such a wooden castle see *Gesta Abbatum Trudonensium* (SS. X, 243).

⁵ Kurth, *op. cit.*, pp. 25-27. For instances see Regino (*annis* 903, 906); Flodoard, *Annales* (951, 960, etc.); Herimann of Augsburg, *Chron.* (1044) (castle Böckelheim). Yet even in Henry IV's time the castle of Zabern was still of wood, *arca ex tabulis ligneis confecta* (SS. XI, 669, l. 25).

⁶ Ordericus Vitalis, *Hist. Eccles.*, VIII, 24; X, 5; Bouquet, XII, 528; V. Mortet, *Recueil de textes relatifs à l'hist. de l'architecture*, Introd., sec. 22. Lambert of Ardes, *Hist. Comitum . . . Ardensium*, chap. lxxvii, has preserved a vivid description of the erection of a castle early in the twelfth century.

though they were sometimes capable of making a long resistance against siege. Henry III lay for three months before Hammerstein before he was able to take it.

The backwardness of German siegecraft before Frederick I's experiences in Lombard Italy, when improved siege engines began to be introduced into Germany, made even simple fortresses formidable. Fire was commonly the most effective means to reduce a castle, since most of them were really little more than timbered blockhouses. Early German castles were without bastions, portcullis, pontlevis, all of which devices were imported from France. Even the donjon was not a "keep," but the *Gross Turm* in which the lord dwelt.¹

The real castle age in Germany began during the reign of Henry IV, when castles arose, first in Thuringia and Saxony, but soon were to be found all over the land as if raised by an enchanter's wand.² Then appeared the Wartburg, *nomen omen* among such frowning citadels, Trifels, Kyffhausen, Drachenfels, Wolkenburg, the last two having been erected by Frederick of Cologne.³ Ambitious *ministeriales* soon followed the example set by rebellious barons, and on all sides the châteaux of these upstarts began to rival the towers of the barons. Henry V, in spite of his power, never was able to suppress them.⁴ Frederick of Swabia, the Emperor Lothar II's arch-enemy, sowed castles from Basel to Mainz. It was said of him that he dragged a castle at his horse's

¹ G. Köhler, *Entwicklung des Kriegswesens*, III, Part I, 351-52; Piper, *Burgenkunde*, pp. 168, 218, 228 ff., 279, 284; Heyne, *op. cit.*, p. 134. According to Köhler (*op. cit.*, p. 402) the donjon first appeared in Swiss Burgundy. There is an interesting article by Leo in *Hist. Taschenbuch*, Vol. VIII.

² "Montes omnes colliculosque Saxoniae et Thuringiae castellis munitissimis" (Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* [anno 1073; ed. Holder-Egger], pp. 140-41; Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, III, Part II, 1221 ff.; Henne am Rhyn, *Kulturgeschichte des Deutschen Volkes*, I, 20 ff.). The Wartburg is first mentioned by Bruno, *Liber de Bello Saxonico*, chap. cxvii, in 1080; Trifels is first mentioned in *Annal. Paderb.* (1113).

³ Stein, *De Fred. Archiep. Colon.*, p. 27.

⁴ See the vivid description of the anarchy in Germany in 1116 by Ekkehard of Aura (SS. VI, 252) and cf. *Recens. de Annal. Paderb.* (1107); *Chronica Regia Coloniensis* (1107); *Vita Heinrich IV*, chaps. viii, ix, xiii; Herbordus, *Vita Ottonis ep. Bab.*, I, 25.

tail.¹ In the reign of Frederick I Swabia bristled with castles of the Zähringen.² By the next century Germany was as thickly studded with castles as France, and their occupants were far bolder in depredation, for the royal authority in Germany then was rapidly collapsing.³

The burgher population in the German towns, especially in the Rhinelands, where town life first appeared and was most developed, because it was numerically strong enough within the towns to overpower the bishops and was protected from the baronage without by the town walls, weathered the storm of the civil war in Henry IV's reign. But the rural population of feudal Germany had no such defenses, nor did they possess that compact organization which the burghers had, to enable them to resist the pressure of the time and the violence of the age.⁴ Thus insecurity, tyranny, poverty, famine, reduced the free class, even in Saxony, to serfdom, and thrust those already unfree down to lower social depths.⁵

In social texture feudal Germany before the reign of Henry IV was quite different from France. Except the clergy and some of the official count class, at the beginning of the Saxon epoch there were few who were very rich. Great lay properties were slow to accumulate in Germany. The *Grossgrundherrschaften* surrounded by a nimbus of vassals and retainers were not widely known until the last half of the twelfth century.⁶ In Saxony the old blood nobility of the German tribes, like the free peasantry, persisted long after it had disappeared everywhere else.⁷

¹ Otto of Freising, *Gesta Friderici I*, I, 12; Heyne, *Wohnungswesen*, p. 333; Gebhardt, *Handbuch der Deutschen Geschichte* (1st ed.), I, 226.

² *Chron. Otto S. Blas.* (1165) (SS. XX, 311). For the Wartburg in Barbarossa's time see *Gesta Frid.*, I, chap. iv.

³ Raumer, *Geschichte der Hohenstaufen*, I, 208; Piper, *Burgenkunde*, pp. 122 ff.

⁴ Gerdes, *op. cit.*, II, 305-6, 577 ff.

⁵ For the effect of famine see Curschmann, *Hungersnöte des Mittelalters* (Leipzig, 1900).

⁶ Cf. Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 713, and n. 6 (*anno* 1198).

⁷ Wazo of Liège, *Gesta Episcop. Leod.* (SS. VII, 225), writing to Henry III in 1047, strikingly shows the contrast, for he says: "Rarus apud nos miles et securus agricola." The primitive Germanic solidarity of kindred is another evidence of

The feudal tendency toward heritability of fiefs affords an interesting contrast in the cases of France and Germany. While the old idea is now exploded that the famous capitulary of Kiersy in 877 established the general heritability of fiefs in France, it yet remains true that in practice the inheritance of fiefs obtained in France from the end of the ninth century; that deviation from this tendency was the exception, not the rule.

On the other hand, in Germany this form of transmission long remained an act of grace on the part of the overlord.¹ While the succession of the eldest son was probably customary,² it was far from invariable. The ancient Germanic law of equal inheritance of the sons survived in many quarters of Germany for centuries—indeed, it never entirely became obsolete—and along with partibility of fiefs other liberal practices gradually were legalized also, as protection of the rights of widows and the right of female succession or inheritance through the female line.³ Often, in fact, designation of the heir was made in advance by the possessor.⁴ If, however, the possessor was a vassal who had died without having made a will providing for the succession, or the act of infeudation had not so provided, then the suzerain had the right to dispose of the inheritance among the heirs as he chose.

the persistence of early social conditions. This was especially persistent in Ditmarsch where in the eleventh and twelfth centuries the dikes were built by the *Schlachte*, or agnatic clans (cf. R. S. Philpotts, *Kindred and Clan*, pp. 103, 125). Hugo of St. Victor's homesickness for Saxony perhaps reflects this simplicity of Saxon life: "Ego a puero exsulavi, et scio quo moerore animus arctum aliquando pauperis tugurii fundum deserat, qua libertate postea marmoreos lares et tecta laqueata dispiciat" (*Didascalicon*, III, 20 [Migne, CLXXVI, 773]).

¹ Thietmar, *Chron.*, I, 7; Lambert of Hersfeld (*anno* 1075; *ed. cit.*), p. 232.

² The *Continuator of Regino* (ed. Kurze), p. 164, records it as an unusual fact that Otto I permitted a count to divide his fiefs upon his deathbed among his sons.

³ Waitz, VI, 88-89; Homeyer, *Sachsenspiegel* (3d ed.), Part I, p. 371, and I, Part II, 143-44. The most notable instance of female succession is in the case of Saxony in 1106 when the Billunger house expired and Lothar of Supplinburg forced the succession in his own favor, his mother having been a daughter of Duke Ordulf Billung (*Annal. Sax.* [SS. VI, 744-45]).

⁴ Lambert of Hersfeld (*anno* 1071), p. 121.

It is true that from the moment of their appearance the stem-duchies tended to become hereditary. But numerous examples of revocation and dispossession occur in Saxon and Salian times. Not until the Hohenstaufen epoch did heritability of the duchies become an accomplished fact.¹ The Ottos regarded the ducal office as a function of the crown. Only from Henry IV's time forward does the idea of the ducal prerogative as a strictly dynastic possession of a local family become preponderant. Then the Guelfs in Bavaria, the Hohenstaufen in Swabia, and Lothar of Supplinburg in Saxony strongly manifest this inclination.²

Conrad II in 1037 recognized the principle of primogeniture for Lombardy.³ But this act had no binding force in Germany, where the church long resisted primogeniture in protection of younger sons and collateral heirs.⁴ Even at the end of the twelfth century Henry VI was unable to establish primogeniture after the French and Plantagenet practice.⁵ The truth is that in medieval Germany no uniform and invariable law of succession ever triumphed to the exclusion of any other form.⁶ As to "relief," that feudal institution was unknown in Germany until late in the eleventh century, and uncommon before the twelfth.⁷

In France as early as the ninth century to be a "noble" was to sit a horse and to bear arms; such a person was a *miles*, or "knight," and belonged to the *ordo pugnatorum*.⁸

¹ But already in Henry II's reign the heritability of countships had been admitted (Giesebrecht, II, 70, 284, 594, 625).

² H. A. L. Fisher, *The Medieval Empire*, I, 321-25.

³ MGH, *Const.*, I, 90. For the popularity of the act see Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, II, 6.

⁴ See *Chron.* of Lorsch for the years 1066 and 1119 (SS. XXI, 415, 534-35) *Codex Udalrici*, Ep. 103, in Jaffé, V, 190; Homeyer, *System des Lehnrechts*, sec. 42.

⁵ Gervase of Tilbury, *Otia Imperialia*, II, 19.

⁶ Frederick I's decree at Roncaglia in 1158, which probably was meant to apply to Germany as well as Italy, while it declared duchies, counties, etc., indivisible, did not prescribe a rule of inheritance.

⁷ Waitz, VI, 35 ff.; Guilhiermoz, pp. 338 ff., nn. 52, 53.

⁸ Guilhiermoz, pp. 388-89; cf. Richer, I, 5, 57; II, 3, 5, 28, 39, 54; III, 71, 88, 93; IV, 11, 28.

The right to wear arms and armor distinguished him from the unarmed peasantry.¹ Per contra, personal cultivation of the soil implied a servile condition. In France in the eleventh century—perhaps even in the tenth century—it was necessary to be knighted to be a chevalier, to be a noble. Nobility and knighthood were two sides of the same coin. In Germany neither knights nor knighthood were known before the twelfth century. The term *ordo militaris* (or *equestris*) first appears in France in the pages of Richer; and the context of the various passages shows that already before the year 1000 the French nobility was a closed order and had become a caste.² In Widukind, on the other hand, although he uses a similar term, *ordo equestris*, the context shows that it applies only to the great dukes³ and it seems more like a rhetorical flourish than a historical description, for it is used in connection with Widukind's account of the grand banquet in Charlemagne's palace at Aachen after Otto I's coronation in 936. In France the nobles early became a hard-and-fast privileged group divided into classes by somewhat inflexible lines of partition, while in Germany the nobility remained for two centuries after the beginning of the feudal régime merely the upper stratum of German lay society, not sharply divided from ordinary freemen nor antagonistic toward them, and loosely held together more by family tradition than by pride and prejudice. In France the gulf became wide and fixed between even the lowest noble and the servile class; a mere *châtelain* with nothing but a single castle and a few roods of land was nevertheless a noble.⁴ In Germany, on the other hand, the social distinction was less a cleavage than a gradual shading off of the nobility, through the intermediate grade of the *ministeriales*, into the serf class. German feudal society hardly even approximated the condition of French feudal society before the twelfth century. For two hundred years

¹ Guilhiermoz, pp. 379-80.

² Lamprecht, *Études sur l'état écon. de la France* (trans. Marignan), p. 199 and notes.

³ Waitz, VI, 265.

⁴ Guilhiermoz, pp. 143-44. Hence the excessive subdivision of fiefs in France. In Flanders, Picardy, Poitou, the Orléannais, and Normandy we find *demi-pairies*, *demi-fiefs*, *demi-fiefs de haubert*, and even fractional *roncins de service*, less than half (Guilhiermoz, pp. 190-92).

the meticulous differences and the social prejudices which had characterized the French noblesse since the ninth century were almost unknown in Germany.

In France, when compared with Germany, chivalry developed early and rapidly. In Germany knighthood and chivalry did not blossom until the middle of the twelfth century. One of the earliest examples, possibly the very first, is the knighting of the Hungarian king by Conrad III in 1146 in imitation of the French practice with which he became familiar while on the Second Crusade.

Freehold or allodial tenure persisted longer and was much more general in Germany than in France, and freemen were much more numerous, particularly in the north.¹ Even as late as the battle of Bouvines (1214) many Saxon freemen fighting on foot were still to be found in the German army of Otto IV, and probably had taken an oath of loyalty to him as in Charlemagne's day.² But what was true of Saxony was not true of the rest of Germany then or earlier. For, as has been pointed out, by the time of Henry IV most of Germany had become feudalized, though not after the French form. During the civil war the Lorrainer and Swabian horsemen of Henry IV were astonished to find in Saxony freemen still cultivating their own fields and fighting as their ancestors had fought, on foot.³ When their free position became difficult to maintain, many of these freemen became *ministeriales*,

¹ Lamprecht, *Deutsche Geschichte*, III, 93-96; Schröder, *op. cit.*, pp. 407, 458-59; Waitz, V, 185, 325, 393 (n. 1), 386, 430; Below, *Entstehung der Deutschen Stadtgemeinde*, p. 13; Walter, *Deutsche Rechtsgeschichte*, sec. 451. These freemen were the *liberi viri*, the *frīman*, the *frīgebur*, or the *schoppenbarfreye* of the *Sachsenspiegel*, who acted as jurors and made up the *Heerban* when it was called out. This class was especially abundant in the north of Germany (Lamprecht, III, 93). It is significant that in the west, particularly in Lorraine, where French conditions prevailed more, donations to the monasteries were chiefly made by nobles, whereas in Bavaria until late, and in Swabia and Franconia until relatively late in the feudal age they were made by freemen and *ministeriales* (Waitz, V, 431). These freemen had the same *wergeld* and the same *fredum* as the *Ritter* class. The *Sachsenspiegel* (III, sec. 1) puts them on the same plane as the *ministeriales*, who at the time the *Mirror of Saxony* was written had become a petty nobility (Schröder, pp. 458, 591; Walter, *loc. cit.*).

² Waitz, VIII, 122-23; Schröder, p. 525; Lamprecht, *DG*, III, 96; cf. Rigord, X, 686.

³ *Carmen de Bello Saxonico*, II, vss. 118 ff., and III, vss. 94 ff.; Lambert of Hersfeld (*anno* 1075); Bruno, *op. cit.*, chap. xxxi.

and thus escaped the rigors of serfdom.¹ The real noble class in Germany, in the legal sense, under the Saxon and first Salian kings, was composed of the counts and dukes. But their prestige from Henry IV's reign onward was more and more compromised by the elevation of men of servile origin to church and lay offices—men who had everything to gain by the cultivation of parvenu practices and parvenu virtues.²

In France the early Capetians were compelled by the feudal drift of the times to enfeoff public offices like lands. In Germany enfeoffment of public offices does not occur until after 1100, when its appearance is a manifestation of the rapid growth of feudalism as a result of the upheaval and collapse of things during the war of investiture and the Saxon rebellion. Thenceforward the swift extension of the practice of enfeoffment of offices, in the words of Huebner, "made futile in Germany the hope of such growth of royal power as resulted in France and in England."³

In France the ownership of land early became an index of social position. Yet in Carolingian times poverty did not entail loss of liberty or degradation of class,⁴ and it is not until late in the eleventh century that we begin to detect in Germany a sentiment of contempt for the poor who were well born, who have the misfortune either not to own land or to have lost the land which they once possessed.⁵

¹ Waitz, VI, 41; Dümmler, *Geschichte des Ostfränkischen Reiches* (2d ed.), III, 635.

² Gerdes, I, 404; Schröder, pp. 441 ff.; Zallinger, *Ministeriales und Milites* (1878), pp. 58 ff.; Lamprecht, *DG* (4th ed.), III, 103. Ekkehard of St. Gall's comment on the rise of the *ministerialis* class is very illuminating: "Majores locorum de quibus scriptum est 'quia servi si non timent, tument,' scuta et arma polita gestare incoeperant; tubas alioquam caeteri villani clanculo inflare didicerant" (*Casus S. Galli* [SS. II, 103]).

³ Huebner, *Germanic Private Law* (Eng. trans.), p. 340.

⁴ "Quamvis pauper sit, tamen libertatem suam non perdat nec hereditatem suam" (*Lex Baiuvariorum*, in *MGH, Leges*, III, 298). Cf. *Trans. S. Magni* (ca. 850), chap. xv (SS. IV, 426): "quamvis pauperculus tamen ex bonis parentibus natus."

⁵ "Erant duo cujusdam Geronis comitis filii, satis quidem edito loco nati, sed propter inopiam rei famularis inter principes Saxoniae nullius nominis vel momenti" (Lambert of Hersfeld [*anno* 1076; ed. Holder-Egger], p. 260). Cf. *ibid.*, pp. 233, 256; Bruno, chaps. xcix, cxvii. Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 1162, cites other examples.

In France the lapse of royal authority and the upgrowth of a violent baronage resulted in the universal prevalence of private war. In Germany private warfare was unusual and soon crushed. The commonest kind of local violence was the persistence of the old German *faida* among the peasantry.¹ When private war is found in feudal Germany it usually occurs along the French border in Flanders, Lorraine, and Burgundy.² Germans looked with mingled horror and contempt upon the "French" anarchy. To maintain the king's peace was the first duty of a German sovereign.³ In theory a *faidosus* was subject to the death penalty; in practice, however, the offender was commonly banned and his property confiscated and devoted to church endowment.⁴ Ludwig the German asserted the best tradition of Carolingian times with reference to enforcing law and order in the realm.⁵ The principle lapsed temporarily during the minority of Ludwig the Child and the weak reign of Conrad I. Yet even then Adalbert of Babenberg was cited before the diet of Tribur, and when he failed to come was besieged in his castle, taken, and sent to the scaffold.⁶

In the eleventh century, an age of intense religious emotionalism, the idea of the Truce of God began to spread from France into Lorraine and Burgundy. It mattered little to its enthusiastic advocates that what might be good, even necessary, in France, was unnecessary in Germany. Henry III, too sensitive of the royal prerogative and too proud openly to approve of a movement which in its very nature

¹ For the curious complaint and regulations in the legislation of the Bishop of Worms governing his *familia* in the year 1023 see MGH, *Leges* (N.S.), I, 640, art. 3. Cf. Nitzsch, *Ministerialität und Bürgertum*, I, 366-76. The time-honored judicial duel lingered in Franconia until the sixteenth century (Zimmermann, *Hist. Taschenbuch* [1879]).

² See the interesting work by Dubois, *Les assurances au XIII^e siècle dans nos villes du nord; recherches sur le droit de vengeance* (Paris, 1900). Charlemagne's efforts to stamp out the ancient German feud were successfully continued by the German kings (Schröder, pp. 353 ff.; Lamprecht, *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft*, VII, 8-9).

³ Waitz, VI, 522-23.

⁴ *Dipl.* (N.S.), I, 303, 434, 447; *Continuator of Regino (anno 958)*.

⁵ Dümmler, II, 416; Gerdes, I, 525.

⁶ Regino, *Chron.* (902, 906).

implied the inability of the crown to maintain law and order, endeavored to compromise by instituting the *Landfrieden* instead, which attempted to effect the purposes of the *treuga* but saved the honor of the crown.¹ For the extension of the Peace of God in Germany was due to psychological and religious contagion, not to necessity as in France.²

Legally the *Landfrieden* was a revival of the old Carolingian ban reinforced by ecclesiastical penalties.³ No more formidable police power can well be imagined than the exercise of this double-shotted authority by a sovereign like Henry III. Almost any infraction of law under its provisions was capable of being construed as a violation of the "peace," and the culprit could be condignly dealt with. As subsequent history was to show, in the hands of the German kings the *Landfrieden* became a means of coercion powerful enough to break the greatest of foes, as Frederick Barbarossa's employment of it against Henry the Lion illustrates. Herimann of Augsburg was not far wrong when he declared the "new peace" a *pacem multis saeculis inauditam*.⁴ The chief defect of the law was that its enforcement was so dependent upon the personal presence of the king.⁵

The Archbishop of Cambrai introduced the *Landfrieden* into his dominions in 1032; the Bishop of Worms soon followed.⁶ In 1041 Henry III confirmed it in Burgundy in spite of his suspicion of the bishops.⁷ But the Peace of God did not acquire a firm foothold in Germany until 1081, when the

¹ Cf. Giesebrecht, II, 366 ff.; Stenzel, *Geschichte Deutschlands*, I, 89; Hauck, *Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands*, III, 581; Schröder, I, 669; Nitzsch, II, 39.

² See Rosenstock, *Herzogsgewalt und Friedensschutz* (Breslau, 1910).

³ Richter and Kohl, *Annalen der Deutschen Geschichte im Mittelalter*, III, Part II, 341, n. a, and 351, n. g, have collected quotations from the sources pertinent to history of the *Landfrieden* at this time. For the spread of the Truce of God in France see C. Pfister, *Études sur le règne de Robert le Pieux*, chap. iv; Luchaire, *Manuel des Institutions Françaises*, pp. 231-33, with bibliography.

⁴ Herimannus Aug., *Chron. (anno 1043)* (SS. V, 274).

⁵ "Nam [rege] recedente justicia terras reliquit, pax abiit," bitterly wrote the unknown author of the *Vita Heinrici IV* (ed. Wattenbach, *in usum scholarum*, 1876), chap. i.

⁶ Nitzsch, II, 36-38.

⁷ Richter and Kohl, *Annalen*, III, Part I, 337, 351.

anarchy of intestine war promoted it. Henry of Liège was one of its earliest exponents. Sigwin of Cologne soon imitated his example in 1083.¹ But Gerard of Cambrai was violently opposed to the movement.² In 1084 the counter-king Hermann ordained the peace in Saxony.³ In the same year the synod of Bamberg took a similar measure.⁴ At the diet of Mainz in 1085 Henry IV extended the provisions of the Peace of God to the whole kingdom. Warfare was forbidden on four days in each week and certain classes of persons, as clerks, merchants, the peasantry, women, and children, declared inviolable at all times.⁵ Thenceforth peace legislation is the capital element in German legislation.⁶

This brings us to a brief consideration of the legislation of the German kings in the Middle Ages. The contrast between their legislative energy and the lassitude of the Capetian kings of France before Philip Augustus and Louis IX is very striking. While there are only 12 diplomas of Hugh Capet for the nine years of his reign, we have 425 for that of Otto III. And if we go back into the earlier history of the Saxon house we find the same display of energy. There are 43 diplomas of Henry I, 434 of Otto the Great, 317 of Otto II. Yet much of the energetic legislation of the Saxons got nowhere, for it was all of a special, particular nature. It lacked co-ordination and the organic quality of real law.

With the accession of the Salian emperors this defect began to be remedied. Conrad II's legislation, though not large in volume, is singularly constructive in quality,⁷ and Henry III's legislation had a unity and directness which is in harmony with the absolutistic purposes of that monarch.

But all the intelligent designs of the Salian house were

¹ Aegidius Aureaevalensis, *Gesta Episcoporum Leodiensium*, III, 13 (SS. XXV, 89); Ekkehard, *Chron.* (SS. VI, 206); *MGH, Const.*, I, 602; Hauck, III, 843; *Forschungen zur Deutschen Geschichte*, XXIII, 134 ff.

² *Gesta Pontificum Cameracensium*, III, 27, 52.

³ *Annales Bernenses* (1084); Hauck, III, 843.

⁴ *MGH, Const.*, I, 605.

⁵ *Ibid.*; Ekkehard, *Chron.* (SS. VI, 205); *Annal. Bern.* (1085); *Annal. Augustani* (SS. III, 131); text in Doeberl, *Monumenta Germaniae Selecta*, III, No. 17.

⁶ Schröder, p. 669.

⁷ Nitzsch, *Deutsche Gesch.*, II, 26.

frustrated when the rebellion of Saxony and the war of investiture broke out. Then, with the enormous progress of feudalism, sectionalism gained the upper hand, the courts lost their connection with the crown, the German baronage and the princely bishops and abbots established their power, freemen lost their freedom, and serfdom became the general condition of the lower classes. The one redeeming feature in the transformation of German society is the rise of the burgher class. Except for them the triumph of the *Landeshoheit* was nearly complete.

Nothing is more melancholy and more futile than the legislative activity of Frederick Barbarossa. In spite of the "new legalism" introduced by the revived study of the Roman law during his reign, in spite of Frederick I's own organizing ability and tremendous energy, the evidence of Frederick's futility is spread over all his works. Otto of Freising, fond as he was of his brilliant nephew, was too honest a historian to gloss the truth.¹ By Hohenstaufen times feudalism was in the saddle and the great feudality, lay and clerical, not Frederick, really ruled Germany.

So far as the reign of law is concerned, in Germany the triumph of feudalism prevented the spread of any single, uniform system of law. This is exactly opposite to the tendency in France, where the growth of the crown gradually reduced, and even effaced, the law of the provincial dynasts, and the *établissements* and *ordonnances* of the French kings became more and more the law of the realm.

Not only the ancient Germanic codes but the Carolingian capitularies also became obsolete in Germany by the tenth century. Few traces of them are manifest in legislation or other sources.² When we meet with such terminology as *jus* or *lex Francorum*, *Alamannorum*, *Bajuwariorum*, *Saxonum*, the allusion is not to the old codes, but to a body of local,

¹ Otto of Freising, *Gesta Frid.*, II, 28, and the remarkable evidence in Weiland, *Constitutiones et Acta Publica*, I, No. 198. For the anarchy in North Germany after Henry the Lion's death see Weiland, II, No. 10.

² The most notable mention of the validity of former capitularies is found in *Const. Francofurtana* (951) (*MGH, Leges* II, 26). Cf. *Concilium Triburiense* (895), chap. i, and see Waitz, V, 149; VI, 407; also Schulte, sec. 57.

customary practices.¹ The German kings, whether of Saxon, Salian, or Swabian birth, always "lived" Frankish law.² But the tendency of legal development in medieval Germany was toward heterogeneity and away from homogeneity,³ exactly opposite to the drift of law in France, where the growth of the monarchy made toward unity. This particularistic tendency in feudal Germany finally obliterated all conception of general law. The more feudalism won, the more the law became local, particularistic, sectional. By the thirteenth century the law of Germany had become the will of petty dynasts commingled with the débris of the past. There was greater drift toward uniformity of law under the Saxon and Salian kings than under the Hohenstaufen. The appeal made to and the use made of the petty feudality by the Swabian rulers during the conflict with the Guelfs canceled the progress legal development had made under their predecessors, cheapened their own legislation, and consecrated at last the vicious principle of the supremacy of local lordship law.

While Frederick I and his son Henry VI wasted the blood and substance of Germany in bootless campaigns in Italy, Germany slipped more and more out of their hands into the hands of the feudality. The old bonds of government and so-

¹ The *Lex Salica* apparently was still in force in the ninth century (Hincmar, *De Divortio Lotharii et Teutbergae*, interrog. 5). But Otto of Freising's mention of it in 1158 is extremely hazy (*Chronicon*, IV, 32). Cf. Schulte, sec. 23. Henry II took an oath "not in any point to corrupt Saxon law" (Thietmar, V, 16-17; Giesebrecht, II, 24, 593). A vestige of the ancient Allemannic code comes out in 1077, when Welf of Bavaria and Berthold of Carinthia were condemned by the papal partisans for espousing the cause of Henry IV (*Annal. Augustani* [SS. III, 129]; cf. Heyck, *Deutsche Geschichte*, I, 36). Schröder (*Forschungen z. Deutschen Geschichte*, Vol. XIX) has a monograph on the diffusion of the Salian Franks and shows the persistence of Salic law in Hesse. Schultz, *Zeitschrift des Vereins für Thüringische Geschichte und Altertumskunde* (N.S., 1878), Band I, has studied Frankish immigration into Thuringia and the spread of the *jus Francorum*. Karl von Amira, *Die Handgebärden in den Bilderhandschriften des Sachsenspiegels*, has examined the illustrations in manuscripts of the *Mirror of Saxony*, for the attitudes and motions of the principals in a case at trial were of technical importance and are interesting for the light cast upon juridical processes in feudal Germany.

² Otto Sanblasianus, *Chron.*, chap. li.

³ "Secundum legem et ritum gentis . . . secundum judicium et legem patriae" (Lacomblet, *Urkundenbuch*, Nos. 192, 309).

ciety dissolved, and the new ones which were formed were of a wholly different nature. They had neither the genius nor the binding force of those which they supplanted.

The partition of Saxony in 1181 ruined all prospect or possibility of German political and territorial unity, for Saxony was the premier duchy and the very cornerstone of the kingdom. Its ruin, combined with the triumph of the feudality and the breakdown of the ancient German noble class, owing partly to the power of the kings,¹ partly to the rise of the lesser nobility and *ministeriales* to higher place,² and partly to the incurable habit of the great families to commit family suicide by permitting so many members of their families to enter the church,³ finally ruined Germany.

It is a defect of German historians that they have too exclusively studied the Italian policy of the Hohenstaufen; their attention has been too much fixed upon the conflict with the pope and the Italian cities. Accordingly, they have failed to appreciate the enormous significance of the interior changes in Germany, in ideas and especially in institutions. The rising of the nobles in 1193 marked a reaction against the policy of the house of Swabia, and is the more important because it took place when Henry VI's eyes were fixed on the conquest of Norman Italy and Sicily, while he believed that he had established order in Saxony and the Rhinelands. With Henry VI the center of gravity of the Hohenstaufen house

¹ This breakdown of the old nobility was reached in Saxon times: "Multi . . . nobiles in paupertatem et magnam miseriam devoluti" (*Vita Adalberonis II Mettensis* [written ca. 1000], chap. xxvii; cf. Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 1163).

² See a striking paragraph in Lamprecht, *op. cit.*, p. 1063, and cf. p. 1029.

³ Aloys Schulte, *Der Adel und die Deutsche Kirche im Mittelalter* (Stuttgart, 1910), p. 278, has the appended statistical table to illustrate the gradual extinction of the great families of Germany between 900 and 1500.

Men	{	Fürsten	69 per cent married, 31 per cent celibate
		Grafen	64 per cent married, 36 per cent celibate
		Freiherren	50 per cent married, 50 per cent celibate
Women	{	Fürsten	74 per cent married, 26 per cent celibate
		Grafen	68 per cent married, 32 per cent celibate
		Freiherren	65 per cent married, 35 per cent celibate

There is a review of this book in *Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XXVI, 164-65.

was definitively transferred from Germany to Italy, and Germany more and more drifted into the whirlpool of the great interregnum.

The history of Germany from the time of the Hohenstaufen onward proves that feudalism had no ethnic ingredients, but was the product of social and economic conditions played upon by political purposes. Germany in the late twelfth and thirteenth centuries (from 1193 to 1273) repeated the history of France of the ninth and tenth centuries. The German kings and the German feudality, dukes, margraves, counts palatine, and burgraves were the victims of the same psychological phenomenon that had so weakened and reduced the last Carolingians and first Capetians in France, namely, the detachment of the vassal from the overlord, and rear-vassals in their turn from their suzerains. This centrifugal tendency finally was carried so far that Germany, territorially and politically, like France earlier, was reduced to a rope of sand, and the kingship became a lean and solemn phantom.

The history of England is essentially the history of the rights and liberties of the people; that of France is the history of the development of the rights and the power of the kings; that of Germany the history of the triumph of feudal particularism over monarchy and people. In Germany feudalism was less a constitutional system than the dissolution of all public power. From the twelfth century the principalities were regarded much more as patrimonial territories than as fiefs of the Empire, and the triumph of the principle of heredity transformed these lordships into sovereignties. This transformation was essentially the result of a combination of fief with function. It gave birth to a body of diverse rights which gradually reduced the former rights of the crown to mere suzerainty.

I have deferred until the close of this chapter extended treatment of the *ministeriales*, for the reason that this influential class was a unique group in German feudal society, with slight counterpart in either France or England. On the continent outside of Germany proper, the class is only to be

found in the provinces bordering upon France, like Flanders and Lorraine.¹

In theory medieval society was supposed to be divided into three classes: clergy, nobility, and the common people.² "*Nunc orant, alii pugnans, alique laborant,*" ran the proverb.

But, as so often happens in history, close examination of social evidences has proved that the theory and the fact were far from coinciding. We know that feudal society never was truly tripartite and that the sharp line of division between the classes upon which the legists laid so much emphasis never actually existed. Bishops and abbots were both priests and nobles; they had a dual status. The Knights Templar, the Knights Hospitaller, and the Teutonic Knights were no less chevaliers because they enjoyed benefit of clergy. As the condition of the two privileged orders blurred at the upper edges, so at the lower edge the noble class shaded off into the servile through obscure gradations of *minores*, *minores*, *mediocres*, upon whose status Du Cange and all the rest of the great expounders of medieval institutions have not a word.³ Similarly, the decline of serfdom and the burgher revolution split the masses into three classes, bourgeois, free

¹ The *colliberti* of French cartularies are the closest French analogue to the German *ministeriales* (Lamprecht, *op. cit.*, Part I, pp. 820 ff., 1128 ff., 1167 ff., and his *Études sur l'état économique de la France* [trans. Marignan], p. 214 and notes). But remnants of a rudimentary *ministerialis* condition are to be found in Normandy and Brittany as late as the twelfth century (Guilhiermoz, p. 114 and n. 28). Chevaliers-serfs, or knights of servile extraction, were not uncommon in Flanders (Kervyn de Lettenhove, *Histoire de Flandre*, I [1846], 215-16, 349-50, 365). The most remarkable illustration is in the Hacket family in the time of Charles the Good (d. 1127). See Galbert de Bruges, *De Multro, Traditione, et Occisione gloriosi Karoli Comitis Flandriarum* (ed. Pirenne), esp. chap. vii, and cf. van Houtte, *Essai sur la civilisation Flamande au commencement du XII^e siècle* (Louvain, 1898), pp. 42-43; Hansay, *Étude sur la formation et l'organisation économique du domaine de l'Abbaye de St. Trond* (Ghent, 1899), pp. 62-63.

² For larger treatment of this social attitude see Guilhiermoz, pp. 357-58, 370-74, but to the literature there cited add Rather of Verona (Migne, *Patrol. Lat.*, CXXXVI, 236); *Gesta Episcoporum Camerac.* (SS. VII, 485); Garreau, *L'état social de la France au temps des Croisades*, pp. 215-16; Luchaire, *Social France at the time of Philip Augustus* (Eng. trans.), p. 391, quoting John of Salisbury; Mary M. Wood, *The Spirit of Protest in Old French Literature* (New York, 1917), chap. i.

³ Cf. my article in *Amer. Hist. Rev.*, XVIII, 500; Hessels, "Medieval Latin." *Jour. Phil.* (London), XXXI, 474, 480, 486-88, 538, 561-68.

villains, and serfs. Neither legally nor historically are the three groups identical.¹

These variant conditions and these social and economic changes were common to all Europe in the Middle Ages; but the degree of the transformations differed widely in different countries. France remained always socially the most aristocratic country, with England next, thanks largely to the operation of the law of primogeniture. In Lombard and Tuscan Italy the triumph of city states suppressed the political power of the feudality, and even the blood of the nobility was largely absorbed by the bourgeoisie. The victory of the Guelf party almost everywhere in Northern Italy by the end of the thirteenth century destroyed forever the domination of the nobility. Henceforward it was often true, as Salvemini has written: "Scratch a knight and you find a burgher."² In medieval Germany, on the other hand, in spite of the great number of the towns there, the burghers never suppressed the baronage. The two classes never fused together as in Italy, but lived side by side in permanent hostility.

A cardinal social fact in the history of medieval Germany is the degradation of the nobility from below by the penetration of men of servile birth and condition upward into the privileged plane. This phenomenon is the rise of the *ministeriales*. There are isolated and rare instances of the same thing in French and English history, but they occur early in the feudal age, never later when feudal society had become more crystallized. But in medieval Germany the elevation of

¹ Chivalry was not a nobility but a function; it could not be a closed class, for its privileges were not hereditary. It was recruited from below as much as from its own social level. Otto I raised a simple warrior to dignity of knighthood (Wid. III, 44). The Hohenstaufen regularly employed its reward as a means of recruiting followers (Otto of Freising, *Gesta Frid.* I, p. 18; Petrus de Vineis, *Epist.*, VI, 17). As warfare, especially the Crusades, thinned the ranks of the aristocracy the void was filled from below. The *Contin. Will. Tyr.* says: "Il n'avait adonc à la cité que deus chaveliers qui estoient eschappés de la bataille. Lors fit Belin d'Helin cinquante fils de borgois chevaliers" (Martène, *Amplissima*, V, 209). In a few generations all memory of origin of these families was lost.

² Salvemini, *La Dignità Cavalleresca nel Comune di Firenze* (1896). Cf. *Eng. Hist. Rev.*, XII, 552.

men of servile condition to the rank of a petty nobility took place on so large a scale that the result approximated a social revolution. The formation of the *ministerialis* class is a historical development unique in German history and not found elsewhere.¹

In its origin and inception the rise of the *ministeriales* is to be found in the economic conditions of the manorial system. Originally the *ministeriales* were a preferred class of serfs employed for service instead of for labor, who were not bound to the glebe except theoretically, but were installed in administrative and military offices of inferior responsibility, and rewarded by stipends derived from manors.²

Officials of such lowly origin are to be found in Charlemagne's *Hof* and upon the estates of the Carolingian fisc, where they acted as managers or stewards of the property.³ But in a day when lands and public offices both tended to become fiefs it was difficult—and in Germany impossible—

¹ Ashley, *Surveys*, p. 245, however, cautiously says: "Such a class of *ministeriales* certainly does not stare us in the face in the English sources, but we should possibly find them if we looked for them, even if they do not play with us quite the leading part ascribed to them in Germany."

² Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 902; Wittich, *Die Grundherrschaft in Nordwestdeutschland*, p. 75; Guérard, *Polyptique de l'Abbé Irminon* (proleg.), pp. 801-2, 819-20; Fürth, *Die Ministerialen*, p. 34; Hansay, *op. cit.*, p. 63, n. 4. The diversion of servile tenures for support of the *ministeriales* naturally increased the economic burden upon the serfs (von der Goltz, *Geschichte der deutschen Landwirtschaft*, I, 112). The literature pertaining to the origin of the *ministeriales* is voluminous. The chief matter of debate is whether the class first appeared upon ecclesiastical or secular lands, and whether it was primarily used for domestic or military service. The servile origin of the *ministeriales* is almost universally admitted. But Heck, *Beiträge zur Gesch. der Stände im Mittelalter* (2 vols.; Halle, 1905), and "Der Ursprung der sächsischen Dienstmanschaft," *Vierteljahrschrift f. Soz.- und Wirtschaftsgesch.*, Band V (1907), with whom Wittich agrees, in *ibid.*, IV, No. 1 (1906), and Ganzmueller, in *Westdeutsche Zeitschrift*, XXV, No. 4 (1906), have recently contended that at least in Saxony the *ministeriales* developed out of free and not servile condition. Schulte, *Der Adel*, app. 1, and Bode, *Der Uradel in Ostfalen*, both argue against this theory, which cannot be more than a thesis. Cf. *Hist. Zeitschrift*, CXIV, No. 1. The best and most recent discussion of this intricate subject is Keutgen, in *Vierteljahrschrift für Sozial- und Wirtschaftsgeschichte*, Band VIII, a series of four articles. For Flanders and Lorraine see F. L. Ganshof, *Étude sur les ministeriales en Flandre et en Lotharingie* (Brussels, 1926). The second section surveys all the literature on the general subject.

³ *Capit.* 789 (ed. Krause), Vol. I, chap. iv, p. 88; *Capitulare de villis*, chaps. x, 1; Waitz, II, 174 and notes; Nitzsch, *Deutsche Geschichte*, I, 237; Lamprecht, *DG*, II, 101.

to prevent these stations of humble authority from being assimilated to the condition of fiefs. For both lay and ecclesiastical lords often preferred, rather than enfeoff their lands in order to secure vassals, to recruit men-at-arms from among their dependents.¹ The *ministeriales* thus became armed domestics. The practice was both cheaper and safer. These preferred servitors, who were usually managers of farm properties, became messengers, stood castle-guard, acted as a bodyguard for the lord when he traveled, and on a pinch performed actual military service either afoot or *à cheval*.² The last duty was so privileged a one that Charlemagne in 789 ruled that a *ministerialis* performing genuine military service was *ipso facto* made free.³ The *ministerialis*, while personally remaining a serf, thus came to enjoy the honors and emoluments of a petty noble. He had the privilege of a liegeman without a social status.

The inchoate beginnings of the *ministerialis* class are discernible in the Merovingian period,⁴ but the hardening of the occasional practices of that epoch falls within the ninth and tenth centuries. The stages of development are relatively clear and rapid. At first the position and the privilege of this class within a class was an informal one, and varied accord-

¹ They are the *milites agrarii* of Widukind (*Rerum Gestarum Saxonicarum*, I, 35), and the *milites gregarii* of Wipo (*Vita Chuonradi II*, chaps. iv, xxxiv). The term first occurs in Alcuin's *Epistola*, 174, (ed. Jaffé), VI, 623: *gregarios, id est ignobiles milites*. See also Waitz, V, 439 (in his dissertation at the end of this volume on the *ministeriales*), and cf. II, 42 (n. 4), 390 (n. 3); IV, 126 (n. 2), 488. It should be added, however, that although the passage in Widukind, I, 35, is usually interpreted as meaning *ministeriales*, since the rise of the "garrison theory" of town origins some recent German historians like Varges, *Zur Entstehung der deutschen Stadtverfassung* in Conrad's *Jahrbücher für Nationalökonomie*, LXI, 175, and Keutgen, *Untersuchungen über den Ursprung der deutschen Stadtverfassung*, do not regard these *milites agrarii* as armed serfs, but as freemen keeping castle-guard. The former calls them *wehrhaftige, heerpflichtige Dorfbewohner*; and the latter, *heerbannpflichtige Bauern*. Buecher, *Die Entstehung der Volkswirtschaft*, p. 45, is to the same effect. For a discussion in English of the garrison theory see F. W. Maitland's famous essay of that title, and W. J. Ashley, *Surveys*, pp. 188-93. Dietrich Schaefer, "Die agrarii milites des Widukind," *S. B. Berliner Akad. d. Wiss.*, XXVII (1905), 577.

² Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 713 (n. 4), 880, 1313 (n. 4); Schulte, *Rechtsgeschichte*, sec. 83, 4; Guilhiermoz, pp. 108-9, 462.

³ *MGH, Leges* (ed. Krause), I, 67. This privilege fell into decay after Charlemagne (Guilhiermoz, p. 458).

⁴ Zallinger, *Ministeriales und Milites*, pp. 3-20.

ing to the liberality of the lord. Gradually, however, this position and privilege became fixed and a body of *ministerialis* "rights" was formed, not recognized in written charters, but sanctioned by practice and custom.¹ In this evolution the *ministeriales* of the crown first developed as farm managers, bailiffs, or stewards upon the lands of the fisc; they next appear in the same capacity upon the lands of the church;² and, finally, we find them in the courts of the great nobles.³ For uncertain of the allegiance of their vassals, the upper feudality, lay and clerical, more and more inclined to rely upon *ministeriales* as soldiers, and rewarded them with lands and honors.⁴ The practice was an old one, but it acquired enormous extension during the Salian period.

But the rank of *ministerialis* was not open to serfs of every condition. A distinction obtained, and only those called *dagewardi* or *fiscalini* were eligible to ministerial degree. Omitting the lowest variations of class among the lowly, the upper serfs in medieval Germany may be said to have been divided into two groups, viz.: the *fiscalini* (or *fiscalini*) and the *dagewardi* or *dageweirten*, the former being the higher in social scale; they had a share in the *wehrgeld* of their kindred, were not compelled to render services except of specified kind,

¹ Waitz, V, 337-38, 341-42; Schröder, p. 448; *Bamberger Dienstrecht*, in Jaffé, V, 51.

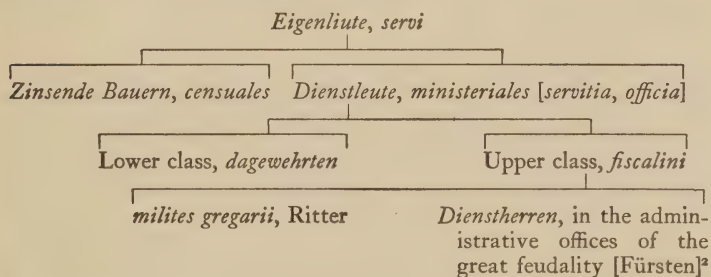
² For the large employment of the *ministeriales* by the church see Nitzsch, *Ministerialität und Bürgertum*, I, 371-74; II, 24. The distinction between *ministeriales* engaged in agricultural economy and those employed in the industrial arts first appears on the manors of the church.

³ In *Annales Fuldenses* (880) is an account of an invasion of Lower Germany by the Norsemen. In the battle two bishops, twelve counts, and eighteen *satellites regii* (*ministeriales*, *milites gregarii*) fell. The names are very interesting, for they clearly indicate the base origin of the bearers of them. In *Annales Alahenses Majores* (1042) Adalbert, margrave of the Ostmark, encountered the Hungarians "cum parvissima manu militum et servitorum, quippe nec triginta habentes scutorum."

⁴ Gerdes, II, 386 f.; Waitz, V, 343 f., 386-87. Lambert of Hersfeld describes the method (*anno* 1074), p. 198: "Sed alii temporis angustias, alii rei familiaris inopiam, plerique quod opes suae bello Saxonico nimium attritae fuissent, item alii aliud excusationis genus obtinentes, omnes pariter miliciam detrectabant. Ipse tamen, ne tantum reipublicae commodum casu oblatum sua ignavia corrumpetur, gregario tantum ac privato milite contentus, etc." Bruno, chap. lxxviii, gives the king's *ministeriales*, with justice, an evil reputation for tyranny: "Nam familiares praedicti Henrici qui ab omni regno infamia notantur, etc."

or in certain departments of the lord's household, and could inherit and devise property. It has been inferred from these facts that their ancestors had once been freemen and had become bondmen for the sake of protection. This is Wittich's contention. If true at all, it is truer for North Germany than for the South and truer of northwest Saxony than of the northeast. The *fiscalini*, at least those who dwelt on lands of the bishops, seem to have been divided into two classes—those who lived in the town, who no doubt were artisans and craftsmen, and those living in the country, who were peasant farm laborers.¹ If a *fiscalinus* married a *dagewarda* or a *dagewardus* married a *fiscalina* their children belonged to the status of the parent who was the lower of the pair. Usually, if not invariably, the *ministeriales* were recruited from the *fiscalinus* class of serfs.

The development of the *ministerialis* class has been illustrated by the appended diagram:



The formation of the *ministerialis* class may be said to have become completed by the twelfth century, by which time the performance of military service, the supreme dignity of a noble, had become theirs, and the status in fact, though not in law, become a hereditary one.³ Certain servile tradi-

¹ The classic document illustrating the condition of episcopal *ministeriales* is the law for the *familia* of Burchard of Worms (1023) (MGH, *Leges* [N.S.], I, 640 ff.; Altmann and Bernheim, *Ausgewählte Urkunden*, No. 62, esp. secs. 9, 13, 16, 22, 29).

² From Paul's *Grundriss der Germanischen Philologie*, XI, 122; also in Schaufler, *Quellenbuch zur Kulturgeschichte der Deutschen im Mittelalter* (Leipzig, 1894), p. 130.

³ By the twelfth century a *ministerialis* is often qualified as "noble." Waitz, V, 500, *Chron. Ebersheimense*: "Familia ministerialis . . . adeo nobilis et belli-

tions, however, still clung to the position of the *ministerialis* which it was their constant effort to obliterate.¹

Tempted by the advantage of the position many freemen sought to become *ministeriales*, and, of course, to rise to the level of one was the supreme ambition of many a serf, to whom emancipation by economic change was a desperately slow one and too much for his patience, while emancipation by revolt was impossible.²

In this wise the armed domestic and petty bureaucrat became constituent elements in the social fabric of feudal Germany. Kings, dukes, bishops, and abbots were surrounded by a crowd of *Hofdiener*.³ The clergy in particular were partial to the formation of this class. For although the heaviest landowners they were the least willing to enfeoff their lands, a course in which the crown sustained them, since the Saxon and Salian kings drew vastly more upon ecclesiastical sources for men and money than upon lay sources. Instead of sending real vassals to the army the bishops and abbots sent

cosa." The *Vita Bennonis II, Episcopi Osnabrugensis*, chap. i (he died in 1088), illustrates the position to which the *ministerialis* class had risen at the end of the eleventh century. Benno was born of this class, yet he reached the episcopate and became one of Henry IV's greatest ministers: "ejus parentes non nobiles quidem sed tamen plebeam conditionem transgressi." He was the first German bishop of *ministerialis* class (Schulte, *Der Adel und die Deutsche Kirche*, p. 72; Schulte, *Schriften für Geschichte und Naturgeschichte der Baar*, V, 142).

¹ The "rights" of the *ministeriales* were first legally recognized in the ecclesiastical principalities (Steindorff, *Jahrbücher Heinrichs III*, II, 342; Jaffé, V, 51). The earliest effort to formulate them is found in the *Hofrecht* of Burchard of Worms in Henry II's reign (*Urkundenbuch der Stadt Worms*, I, 40), and in the *Bamberger Dienstrecht* of Bishop Gunther (1057-64) (Gerdes, II, 441). In the *Sachsenspiegel*, *Dienstmann* is glossed with *puer* (MGH, *Const.*, I, 88). In the letter of the law the rights of a freeman were denied to a *ministerialis*. He could be bought and sold with the land like a serf (Kluckheim, *Zeitschrift für Deutsches Altertum*, LII, 135 ff.; Waitz, V, 358); marriage with a free woman was forbidden; he could be beaten (MGH, *Leges* [N.S.], IV, 609). But these disqualifications by the twelfth century, and even before that, were really obsolete for many of the *ministeriales*, and their presence in the codes merely illustrates the conservatism of the law which preserved old, time-worn dicta which had long since become anomalous and out of date.

² Lamprecht, DG, III, 67.

³ Waitz, V, 323. It is apparent from Wipo, *Vita Chouonradi*, chap. iv, that by the time of Conrad II freemen were a negligible quantity around the court, and that the officials were either clerics, nobles, or *ministeriales*.

bodies of armed domestics.¹ Such men were far more tractable than vassals and less dangerous also to intrust with power.² Serfs were meant to obey, and in spite of the parvenu aspirations of the *ministeriales*, the tradition of obedience and servility was still strong among them. When the expedition was over they returned to their former occupations, contented with their "service fiefs," which did not entail homage but were servile tenures of magnified dignity.

In the reign of Henry I and the Saxon epoch in general, the *ministeriales* seem chiefly to have formed small mounted contingents.³ But the great cost of the Italian expeditions⁴ of the medieval emperors and the reluctance of many of the German vassals to do service so far away gradually induced the emperors to make larger and larger use of *ministeriales* instead of vassals. It is evident from Wipo's *Life of Conrad II* (1024-39) that feudal service in Italy had much declined by the first quarter of the eleventh century.⁵ Henry V in 1124 had great difficulty in getting vassals to serve in France "quia Teutonici non facile gentes impugnant exteras."⁶ A

¹ The evidence is abundant and some of it very interesting. See *Gesta Abbatum Trudonensium*, IX, 12; *Vita Godehardi*, chap. xxxi; *Chron. Gosec.*, chaps. i, ii, xxvii. The sarcasm in Henry IV's speech, as related by the author of the *Vita Heinrici* (ed. Everhard), chap. viii, p. 29, in announcing the unpopular ordinance of 1103 to the discontented nobles is manifest when it is remembered that their following was chiefly made up of armed domestics: "Reddite agris quos ex agro deputastis armis, coequate numerum satellitum ad mensuram facultatum." Cf. Waitz, V, 325, 328.

² For examples of the hazard in using regular knights as bodyguard see Thietmar, VIII, 14, and cf. Guilhiermoz, p. 253, n. 23.

³ Widukind, I, 38; Thietmar, IV, 28; Cosmas of Prague, II, 9.

⁴ See *Constitutio de Expeditione Romana* (cited by Waitz), V, 373. The war of investiture greatly multiplied the number of *ministeriales*, for each side made much use of them, rewarding them out of the spoliated lands (Waitz, V, 332; Schröder, p. 448; Lamprecht, *DG*, III, 68). From some military statistics for the years between 1096 and 1146 it would appear that vassals formed 71 per cent of the army. But between 1147 and 1191 this proportion drops to 23 per cent; and between 1191 and 1250 the figure declines to 3 per cent. The balance of the troops, i.e., 29, 77, and 97 per cent, were composed of *ministeriales* (Kluckhohn, *Die Ministerialität in Süd-Deutschland* [Göttingen, 1909]). However, it must be remembered that these figures pertain to South German contingents only.

⁵ *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. xxiv.

⁶ Ekkehard of Aura, *Chron.* (SS. VI, 262); Waitz, VIII, 103, n. 5.

large portion of the army of Conrad III on the Second Crusade was made up of *ministeriales*.¹

It was always difficult for the Salian emperors to make Saxons serve in Italy, and even Henry II, though a Saxon, had trouble.² Accordingly, *ministeriales* were increasingly used for military service. Conrad II's legislation in 1028 for the Weissenburger *ministeriales* (if genuine) marks an epoch in the evolution of this class.³ Henceforward military *ministeriales* took an oath similar to that of the feudality. One of the grievances of the Saxons against Henry III was his large use of *ministeriales* for garrison duty in the citadels of the crown in Saxony. Their swaggering ways and their base origin angered the pride of the Saxons.

There was nothing essentially new in the use of *milites gregarii* or armed domestics by the Salian kings. The Ottos had done the same; they merely extended the employment of *ministeriales* for military service. What the kings of the Salian house are remarkable for is the introduction of this class into the civil offices of the crown. Occasional instances of favorite *ministeriales* near the person of the king may be found in the Saxon period. But Conrad II was the first German sovereign who created the "royal" *ministeriales*, as a class, and organized them into an executive staff of officials. Werner was his chief *ministerialis* and the earliest secular minister in the history of medieval Germany. In his capacity of supervisor of the fisc he was a kind of chief intendant or comptroller general.⁴

Henry IV pushed the Salian policy of employing *ministeriales* in the administration of the fisc so far that almost all

¹ Bernhardt, *Konrad III*, Part I, p. 598, nn. 18, 19; for high Hohenstaufen times see Otto of St. Blasius (ed. Hofmeister), pp. 26, 27, 68.

² For Henry II's difficulty see Helmold, *Chronica Slavorum*, I, 14.

³ There is much division of opinion in regard to this document. Giesebrecht (4th ed.), II, 633, thinks it genuine; Riezler, *Geschichte Bayerns*, I, 441, n. 1, wholly rejects it. Waitz, *Forschungen*, XIV, 32, and DVG, V, 334; Bresslau, *Konrad II*, I, 252, n. 1; II, 379; Steindorff, *Heinrich III*, I, 415; Zallinger, *Ministeriales und Milites*, p. 4, and other historians think it genuine, but glossed or corrupted by later additions.

⁴ Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. iv: "Werinharîi militis, quem rex longe ante cautum consiliis, audacem bellis, frequenter secum experiebatur."

such officials in his reign seem to have been *ministeriales*,¹ the chief of whom was Eberhard of Nellenburg. These hated tax-gatherers and counselors were the persons for whom the hostile chroniclers reserved such opprobrious epithets as *parasiti*, *scurrae*, *facinorum ipsius* (Henry IV), *conscii et fautores*, etc., and whom the Fürsten detested as *obscuri et pene nullis majoribus nati*.²

The arrogance and petty tyranny of this parvenu class made the *ministeriales* detested by the peasantry, and feuds between the *ministeriales* of one lord and those of another were frequent, for they readily took up the causes of their patrons.³ Even the Bambergers complained of Henry IV's *ministeriales*, although Bamberg was the favorite seat of the Salian emperors.⁴ Barefaced seizure or compulsory secularization of ecclesiastical lands to the profit of *ministeriales* in the employ of the church was common all through Germany during the strife between Henry IV and the rebel partisans of the Pope and the revolted Saxons.⁵

For during the Saxon rebellion and the war of investiture

¹ See the dissertation of Roehrig, *De Secularibus Consiliariis Heinrici IV* (Halle, 1866). Waitz, VI, 292, is very brief. But see Nitzsch, *Historische Zeitschrift* (N.S.), IX, 200. Lambert of Hersfeld voices the aristocratic protest against them: "Quod, remotis a familiaritate sua principibus, infimos homines et nullis majoribus ortos summis honoribus extulisset, et cum eis noctes perinde ac dies in deliberationibus insumens, ultimum, si possit, nobilitati exterminium machinaretur" (*Annales* p. 277).

² For all his large use of *ministeriales*, the sight of them in the ranks of the enemy angered Henry. In 1103, when a new rebellion was on his hands, he cried out sarcastically to the army against him: "Reddite agris quos ex agro deputastis armis, coequate numerum satellitum ad mensuram facultatum recolligite praedia vestra quae stulte sparsistis, ut multos armatos haberetis, et redundabunt omnibus bonis horrea et cellaria vestra" (*Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. viii).

³ The history of the strife of Bishop Salamon of Constance (d. 871) with the Kammerboten Erchanger and Berchtold has been unraveled by Baumann in *Vierteljahrshefte für Württemb. Geschichte* (1878). It was almost legendary by the time of Ekkehard of St. Gall (see *Casus S. Galli*, chap. i) and gave rise to some of the earliest German ballad literature.

⁴ Jaffé, V, 395. The famous ordinance of Bishop Embricho in 1128 for the government of the Bamberger *ministeriales* must have been called out by this abuse. Cf. Fürth, pp. 509-10; Gengler, *Beiträge zur Rechtsgeschichte Bayerns*, IV, 153-54. Fisher (*Medieval Empire*, I, 80) has translated part of the ordinance.

⁵ Cf. Martiny's study in *Mittheilungen des Ver. für Geschichte von Osnabrück*, Band XX (1895). By the twelfth century we find *ministeriales* assuming titles from landed possession like nobles (Ficker, *Vom Reichsfürstenstand*, I, 77).

the power of the *ministeriales* enormously increased. Both sides recruited their fighting men from among this class of armed servitors and created new members for the express purpose of warfare, in so much that the boldest of the *ministeriales* succeeded in converting their service tenures into real fiefs, and even demanded benefices as the price of their services.¹ "*Dienstmann ist nicht Eigen*" was their slogan.

Yet it would be an error to assume that military service was the predominant function or activity of the *ministeriales*. It was the most distinguished but the rarest form of service. Most of them were employed in small administrative capacities upon the crown lands, the manors of the clergy and nobles, as stewards, or bailiffs, and in household offices. Writing in 1135 and describing the monastery community of Zwifalten in Swabia, Ortlieb takes pride in the obedience and humility of the *ministeriales* who belonged to the abbey. He writes:

Among our men some owe service of this kind, namely, when the lord abbot, prior, provost, or others among the brethren would travel anywhere, these men with their horses do accompany them and minister to them. And in order that this service may be rightfully required of them they are granted certain benefices. They assuredly rejoice to be honored by this distinction because they have the right to have under them men whom we call *clientes* or *ministeriales*. Yet in spite of this, no man of ours has ever become so perverse or so haughty that he presumed to ride with us, in military array, or refused to carry the wallet of any of our monks upon his pack-horse. The founders of our monastery did not intend to give us such men, and we have not consented to receive any one who might prove troublesome to us or to our successors.²

Farther on in this interesting chronicle of Zwiefalten, Ortlieb quotes the caution given the monks by Count Liutold, one of the monastery's benefactors, lest the monks let the *ministeriales* in the service of the abbey increase too much,

¹ *Annal. Hild.* (1103) (SS. VIII, 202); Walter, *Rechtsgesch.*, sec. 210; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 881. For a remarkable instance of the boldness of a *ministerialis* in the time of Frederick I see *Gesta Frid.*, II, 3. For the misconduct of Conrad III's *ministeriales* in Saxony see SS. XVI, 82, and Bernhardt, *op. cit.*, Vol. I, p. 162. By 1200 we find these parvenu knights as "wandering knights" in Germany; Gislebertus Montensis, *Chronicon Hannoniae* (ed. Pertz, *in usum scholarum*), p. 66; "milites . . . in imperio Theutonicorum gyrovagantes."

² *Ortliebi Zwifaltensis Chronicon* (SS. X, 78).

a warning which shows some of the inconveniences, and even dangers arising from the ambitious pretensions of this parvenu class.

He told us that *ministeriales* were the greatest factor in the decay of monasteries, and the chiefest cause of their penury and poverty. He used to say that monks who had *ministeriales* never had peace and tranquillity and were never without fret, trouble and turmoil. Moreover the *ministeriales* acquired the property of the monastery for themselves and consumed that of others by strife, warfare, fire and sword. How could unarmed and unwarlike monks withstand such pretentious and quarrelsome upstarts whom neither the very nobles nor even tyrants can control?¹

Only the most ambitious and the most fortunate of the *ministeriales* succeeded in rising into the *Ritter* class and became noble. Such were those who had shown distinguished prowess in war.² It was rare in France, if not impossible, for a serf to become a chevalier. But in feudal Germany it was not unusual, even if not common. When this transformation was reached the *ministerialis* acquired the status of a petty noble. He had entered—albeit his foot was on the lowest rung of the ladder—the blue-ribbon membership of the *Heerschild*,³ assumed a title, was lord of a castle and a mano-

¹ "Dixit etenim, milites maximam occasionem destructionis monasteriorum et quietis monachorum perturbationis fore, maximam penurie et paupertatis causam milites esse. Monachi, inquam, qui milites habent semper pace et quiete carent, numquam sine ira, rixa et disceptatione manent. Insuper res monasterii inter se dividunt, alia rixando, bellando, igne ferroque consumunt; et quomodo inermes monachi et imbelles his possunt resistere, quibus proprii domini vel ipsi etiam tyranni vix et vix possunt imperare?" (MGH, SS, X, 100, chap. vi).

² The first instance of the knighting of *ministeriales* is of those of the Archbishop of Mainz in 1126 (Boehmer, *Fontes*, III, 278, 328). The practice first obtained in the Rhinelands (Waitz, V, 397).

³ In its original, primary sense the *Heerschild* was the royal host. The king himself, as a noble, was the first degree (*Sachsenspiegel*, chap. lxxi, sec. 6, ed. of Homeyer, I, 286). The first clear definition of the *Heerschild* is in *Chron. Lauresh.* (SS. XXI, 415, 434-35). Ficker's book, *Vom Heerschild*, is a classic. Cf. Guilhiermoz, p. 264, n. 27. "The Thuringian family of Reuss, which has maintained its independence to our own day, springs from the imperial *ministeriales* who administered the Voigtland, or district of Weida, Gera, and Plauen. The peculiar interest of its history lies in the fact . . . that it attained its rank not through any noble connexion or in virtue of the office of *Graf*, but solely through reliance upon the position of imperial *Vogt*. The family was 'unfree,' and was in part subject to the landgraves of Thuringia. By means of their judicial rights, which, as imperial officers, they retained over the small territory which came to them, the various members of this house gradually founded a claim to be immediate vassals of the empire. Assisted in the

rial proprietor, adopted a heraldic device, and aped the courtly fashions of the age of chivalry.¹ By the time of the Hohenstaufen a considerable proportion of the German noblesse, especially the knights, were composed of former *ministeriales*. But we find counts, dukes, and bishops risen from this class.² The poets and minnesingers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries all arose from this class, as did many of the heroes of whom they sang. Their technical feudal language, when it is not of French troubadour origin and often used in order to air their "culture," betrays their parvenu ancestry.

To all these forces which have been enumerated, which tended to break down the old German feudal aristocracy, should be added the democratizing (or shall one say the corrupting?) influence of the new monastic orders like the Cistercians and the German Cluniacs or Hirsauer monks, whose brotherhoods were far less aristocratic than the older orders were. In addition to hundreds of lay brothers or *conversi*, these two orders developed *ministeriales* to an unprecedented degree.³

The social practice of feudal Germany in thus elevating domestic serfs to the rank of small nobles gave a banality to the late medieval German aristocracy which one does not find in the English or French nobility. The German nobility of the thirteenth century lacked the culture, the grace, the urbanity, and the pride which one so habitually associates

thirteenth century by the emperors who were opposed to the house of Wettin, the family of Reuss finally received a golden bull from Lewis of Bavaria in 1329, and were legally established in their princely rank" (review of W. Finkenwirth's *Die Entwicklung der Landeshoheit der Vorfahren des Fürstenhauses Reuss, 1122-1329* ["Jenaer Historische Arbeiten" (Bonn, 1912), Band II], in *Engl. Hist. Rev.*, XXVIII, 603).

¹ Moeser, *Osnabrückische Gesch.*, II, 105, says the rush to become *ministeriales* was so great that "liberty almost became an indignity."

² Roth von Schreckenstein, p. 335; Waitz, V, 385; Köhler, II, Part II, 63; Gerdes, I, 482-83; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, Part II, 1173; Kluckhohn, *Zeitschrift für Deutsches Altertum*, LII (1910), 135 ff.

³ Aloys Schulte, *Der Adel und die Deutsche Kirche im Mittelalter* (1910), has shown by abundant evidence that in the early period of the Middle Ages the high offices of the church in Germany were very largely filled by men of noble family, but that in the later period men of unfree birth and ministerial condition invaded the very highest grades of the hierarchy.

with the aristocracy of England and France. Birth and blood always counted in France and across the channel. But in Germany by the twelfth century these qualifications, while not unimportant, had lost the unique quality they preserved elsewhere. The distinction between real knight and *ministerialis* was a blurred social difference, not a sharp cleavage.¹

By 1134 we find mention of the *ordo equestris major* and the *ordo equestris minor*, the one composed of real nobles, the other formed of *ministeriales*. But by 1152 even this distinction has disappeared and the two orders have fused into one. The law of 1187 shows the hardening of the process; the two groups were welded socially and politically.² Even before this development was reached the *ministeriales* of the crown and of the great nobles had forced their way into the diets and courts of the realm,³ where they sat as proudly as real princes, and in Saxony only does their arrogance seem to have been regarded as effrontery.⁴

When we reach the reign of Frederick Barbarossa we find that the most ambitious of the *ministeriales* have blossomed

¹ Thus the *Chronica Regia Coloniensis* (ed. Waitz, *in usum scholarum*), p. 60, writing of the year 1122: "orta seditio inter armigeros *de re modica*, uti sepe fit, usque ad *milites armatos* pervenit." The former are genuine knights; the latter, *ministeriales* who have become knights. Cf. *ibid.*, pp. 144, 249. Struben, *Nebensunden*, IV, 424 f.; V, 250 f., says most of German nobility actually were of servile or bourgeois origin by the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.

² Waitz, V, 453; Köhler, III, Part II, 35; Schröder, p. 458; Roth von Schreckenstein, p. 291; Lamprecht, *DG*, III, 182; Schauffler, p. 131. Otto of Freising twice uses the term *ordo militaris* (*Chronica* [ed. Hofmeister], pp. 74, 175), and once the words *militares viri* (p. 88).

³ *Chronica Regia Coloniensis* (1142), p. 78.

⁴ *Annales Palidenses* (1146) (SS. XVI, 82): "Hoc anno res mira et hactenus inaudita in regno exorta est. Nam *ministeriales* regni et aliarum potestatum, non jussi ad colloquium sepius convenientes, inconsulto tam rege quam ceteris principibus justiciam omnibus interpellantibus se judiciali more fecerunt." Werner of Bolland possessed 17 castles in the time of Frederick Barbarossa and had 1,100 knights in his service (*Chron. Hanoniense* [ed. cit.], p. 145). His *Stammtafel* is given by Schulte, *Der Adel und die Deutsche Kirche*, pp. 312-13. For the high position of *ministeriales* around Frederick I see *Gesta Frid. Imp.*, II, 3; Arnold of Lübeck, *Chron. Slav.*, II, 17. For those in Germany during Frederick II's reign see Huillard Bréholles, *Historia diplomatica Friderici Secundi*, Intro., p. clx. In general, see Gudenatz, *Schwäbische und Fränkische Freiherren und Ministerialen am Hofe der deutschen Könige, 1198-1272* (Bonn, 1909).

into full-fledged nobles,¹ and many of them among the *Ritterschaft*. Externally nothing distinguishes these parvenus from the old aristocracy except their low-born speech and rude manners. They, too, boasted title and assumed escutcheons like the real nobility, and their dynasties were recorded in the medieval *Almanach de Gotha*, the book of the names of those privileged to be included in the *Heerschild*, at the apex of which stood the king-emperor.²

And yet it must not be forgotten that these fortunate climbers who thus attained knighthood and nobility were, of course, proportionately few compared with the vast number of the *ministeriales* in all Germany. The great majority of the class, still in the twelfth century, as before, continued to be found in managerial capacities upon the lands of the fisc, of the church, and of the nobles.

The evolution and importance of this new class in medieval German society, a blend of serfdom and knighthood, constitutes one of the most striking differences between German feudalism and French or English feudalism. France, by taking a different and more aristocratic road from that of Germany, eliminated the débris of those Carolingian institutions which were the residuary legacy of the Frank Empire to both, while Germany retained it. Such indifference to social distinctions, such slight stress put upon ancestry, and such lack of class pride as feudal Germany displayed were unthinkable in feudal France in the twelfth century. There the law of primogeniture was a selective process which kept out upstarts and social climbers. Germany did little of the kind, and the result was that the ancient German nobility was undermined by the lower classes, its authority weakened, its prestige debased. The French noble was by ancestry and remained a *gentilhomme*—he was gentle born. The German noble class became filled with parvenus, men of low birth,

¹ By the charter granted by the Archbishop of Cologne to his *ministeriales* in 1154, art. 1 required that they take an oath of fidelity like any noble; art. 12 specifically calls the lands they held "fiefs" (text in Altmann-Bernheim, No. 70). On the assimilation of ministerial benefices to fiefs see Walter, *op. cit.*, sec. 210.

² Ficker, pp. 51 ff.; Schröder, p. 452; Lamprecht, *DG*, III, 97; Gebhardt, *Handbuch* (1st ed.), I, 465.

without family pride, and actuated by grossly materialistic motives and ambitions, without the culture and the idealism of the French noblesse. "As cheap as a German baron" was an adage as far back as the twelfth century. One has only to read the puzzled and critical comments of Suger and Gilbert of Mons to discover this.¹

¹ Suger, *Hist. Ludovici VII* (ed. Molinier), chap. ii, p. 148; *Chronicon Hanoniense* (SS. XXI, 538); Guilhiermoz, pp. 258-59.

CHAPTER X

THE CROWN LANDS IN FEUDAL GERMANY¹

IN AN age when *Naturalwirtschaft* was almost universal, and when even kings had to "live of their own" in large part, that is to say, from the resources of their house and crown lands, and when, too, little distinction was made between public revenue and private fortune, a feudal monarch could have no fixed capital. He was compelled to be forever on the road traveling from one royal domain to another. This is true of the medieval kings of England, France, and Germany. Neither London nor Paris became permanent seats of the English and French governments before the end of the twelfth century.

In Germany, owing to three changes of dynasty, fixation of capital was even less possible. The Saxon house manifested a preference for residence in Saxony when the exigency of the time permitted; the Salians sojourned in the middle Rhinelands when they could; the Hohenstaufen in Swabia. But the crown lands of Germany (the fisc) were scattered in patches and parcels in every duchy. Among the *villae* or *curtes* (*curiae regales*) there was a certain number which were called *pertinentes ad mensam regis*, which were exploited after practices laid down by Charlemagne in the *Capitulare de villis*. In time the custom grew up of fixing a set number and kind of commodities exacted from these, as beef, animals, pork, beer,

¹ Waitz, *Deutsche Verfassungsgesch.*, Vol. VIII, chap. xv, has 200 pages. The best detailed study of the fisc is Eggers, *Der königliche Grundbesitz im 10. und beginnenden 11. Jahrhundert* (Weimar, 1909) (see important reviews of this work in *Hist. Viertelj.* [1910], No. 4; *Goettingische . . . Anzeiger* [March, 1911]; *Mittheil. d. Inst. f. oesterr. Gesch.*, Band XXXIII, Heft 1 [1912]); Frey, *Die Schicksale des königl. Gutes in Deutschland unter den letzten Staufern* (1881); M. Stimming, *Das deutsche Königsgut im 11. und 12. Jahrhundert* (Ebering, *Historische Studien* [Berlin, 1922], No. 149); B. Heusinger, "Servitium regis in der deutschen Kaiserzeit," *Archiv. f. Urkundenforschung*, VIII, 26-159. Niese, *Die Verwaltung des Reichsgutes im 13. Jahrhundert* (1905), deals with the dissipation and dilapidation of the fisc in the thirteenth century.

wine. But vegetables, grain, flour, and forage were expected as a matter of course. This condition was a transition stage between direct kingly exploitation and lease.

We have a few sources of uncertain value in regard to the expenses of the court of Otto I (936-73). According to these data, about 30 pounds of silver were required, per diem, for support of the king's *Hof*, or about 10,000 pounds per annum. Most interesting are the daily demands of the court in *naturalia*, which show the predominantly agricultural character of the economy, and the enormous rout of officials, counts, palsgraves, guardsmen, vassals, both lay and clerical in attendance, besides visiting guests of the king, *ministeriales*, etc., by whom the king was perpetually surrounded. According to the *Saxon Annals* (*anno* 968), Otto the Great's entourage daily consumed 1,000 swine and sheep, 10 *Fuder*, or 2,700 gallons of wine, the same amount of beer, 1,000 measures of grain, 8 oxen, chickens, ducks, geese, eggs, vegetables, fish, etc.¹ Of course, not all of these supplies came from the crown lands. The king "lived of his own" when it was convenient for him to do so. But as king and liege lord, he and his suite were entitled to hospitality from vassals in whose territories he was temporarily, or through whose lands he was passing. This right of hospitality often became a serious grievance of the feudality, who looked upon its exaction as a heavy burden.²

The revenues of the fisc, which were almost all in kind (*naturalia*), were supplemented by other resources which were fixed by the customary law of the manorial régime, such as tolls, *corvées* and fines and court fees payable to the king as a manorial proprietor. The most important of these impositions was the *Zins* (Fr., *cens*), a tax upon immovable property and nearly approaching in nature the later rent. The amount of the *Zins* varied according to the importance of the locality. In regions where the population was fairly dense and trade of some magnitude, it might be paid in money. In sparsely peopled regions of a backward economy,

¹ See Waitz, VIII, 223-25. For modern money equivalents, p. 223, n. 2.

² Waitz, VIII, 226-29.

it was usually paid in produce of the land or the forests. In any case, the revenues were not different from those collected by every feudal lord from his domains.¹

The very fact that the fisc was formed of a widely scattered complex of domains, whose administration differed in no whit from the management of the surrounding and neighboring manors of the great proprietary class, exposed it to constant depredation by the latter. Moreover, counts and other local officials were prone to abuse the trust reposed in them and expropriate both lands and revenues to their own aggrandizement. Even Charlemagne was compelled at least once to institute a "revindication" of the fisc.²

In the ninth century the royal domain both in Germany and France was much reduced owing to the weakness of the kings, who were compelled to purchase from their rebellious vassals by grants from the fisc a support which they were unable to compel, or else the royal domains were boldly seized by the feudality, lay and clerical—barons, bishops, abbots. Louis the Pious seems to have made a weak effort to restrain such spoliation,³ but the first effective check in Germany was imposed by Ludwig the German, in 852, who instituted the earliest reclamation or "revindication" of the fisc of which we have record.⁴ The results, however, must have been unsatisfactory, for eight years later at Coblenz we find the King still complaining of rapine and depredation.⁵

¹ Waitz, IV, 113-20; Richter and Kohl, *Annalen d. deutschen Gesch.*, II, 1, 569-71; Nitzsch, II, 14.

² In the *Capitulare de justitiis faciendis*, chap. vii, we read: "Ut non solum beneficia episcoporum, abbatum, abbatissarum atque comitum sive vassalorum nostrorum, sed etiam nostri fisci describantur" (Boretius, *Capitularia regum Francorum*, I, 177). In *Vita Ludovici*, by the Astronomer, chap. vi (MGH, SS. II, 610), there is mention of this revindication, which was probably of the year 795. As Bloch says: "Nous sommes en présence d'une de ces vastes révisions des aliénations domaniales comme plus tard la royauté capétienne en fournira tant d'exemples" (*Revue Historique*, CXLIII, 49).

³ Boretius, *Capitularia regum Francorum*, I, 288, sec. 7; 291, sec. 22.

⁴ "... possessiones videlicet ab avita vel paterna proprietate jure hereditario sibi derelictas, quas oportuit ab iniquis pervasoribus justa repetitione legitimo domino restitui" (*Annal. Fuld* [anno 852]; cf. Mühlbacher, *Regesta*, No. 1403; Dopsch, *Wirtschaftsentwicklung der Karolingerzeit*, I, 174).

⁵ "... rapinas ac deprædationes quas jam quasi pro lege multi tenent per consuetudinem" (MGH, *Leges*, I, 472, art. 6). See also Bourgeois, *Le capitulaire de Kiersey*, p. 257, n. 7.

When Ludwig died, in 870, the spoliation of the crown lands went on apace under his successors.¹

When the house of Charlemagne expired in Germany in 911, nothing but tattered remnants and scattered fragments of the former great patrimony of the Carolingians remained. At the accession of the Saxon dynasty in 919, it has been calculated that there were left only 83 crown lands in Franconia,² 50 in Swabia, 21 in Bavaria, 12 in Thuringia, 5 in Saxony, and 5 in south Friesland³—in all, about 375 square miles (Ger.) of farm lands once subject to the intelligent management laid down in the *Capitulare de villis*.⁴ Of this heritage, the Franconian estates were the richest and most compact, and represented over 20 square miles (Ger.). The bishops in this rich Rhineland region had very largely succeeded in getting possession of the crown lands in the vicinity of their sees by the end of the Carolingian period. But there were still many old royal *Pfalzen* along the Rhine; of which Tribur, Coblenz, Boppard, Wesel, Oppenheim, and Hagenau were the most important.⁵

When the Saxon dukes became kings of Germany in 919, these scattered crown lands were united with their own ducal domains in Saxony, the whole forming the new fisc. After the extension of German rule to Italy in 962 by Otto I, these royal *Pfalzen* extended from the Harz to the Apennines in a long, ragged line, the denser complexes being in Saxony and

¹ Regino, *Chronicon* (annis 885, 887, 906).

² A considerable block of these, however, were not of Carolingian origin, but were the lands confiscated from the Babenberger by the government of Ludwig the Child in the time of the regency of Hatto of Mainz. Regino (906): "Facultates et possessiones ejus [Adalbert of Babenberg] in fiscum redactae sunt et dono regis inter nobiliores quosque distributae." The church, though, got the lion's share of this spoil. See Dümmler, *Forschungen*, III, 327-30.

³ Inama Sternegg, *Grundherrschaft*, p. 26; Lamprecht, *Deutsche Wirtschaftsleben*, I, 718, n. 1; Kerl, *Ueber Reichsgut und Hausgut der deutschen Könige des früheren Mittelalters* (Tübingen, 1912). Some of these domains, however, were remnants only, and mere *Meierhöfe*.

⁴ For literature on Charlemagne's management of the crown lands see Gareis, *Die Landgüterordnung Kaiser Karls des Grossen* (Berlin, 1895), being the best text of the *Capitulare de villis*, with notes and commentary. It is evident that registers or rolls of receipts and expenditures were required by Charlemagne (Pirenne, *Mélanges Julien Havet*, p. 745).

⁵ Wenck, *Hessische Landesgesch.*, I, 35-36.

Franconia.¹ The Saxon kings also further increased their revenues by taking the richer abbeys, whose landholdings were immense and which accordingly excited the cupidity of the baronage, under their protection,² and using a large portion of the revenues arising from them for secular purposes. Conrad II, the first king of the Salian house, even assimilated the lands of the royal abbeys with the lands of the fisc. In 1002, there were eighty-five "royal" abbeys carried on the ledgers of the kings. Partial compensation was made to the monasteries for this diversion of their funds to secular purposes by generous grants of toll and market rights to them.

Some additions were made from time to time to the fisc by escheat, confiscation, or forfeiture,³ but the latter practices were not very effectual as a means of punishment of rebellious nobles, except in Franconia and other older parts of Germany where the manorial system was well established, population denser, and cultivation somewhat intensive. Along the eastern border, where land was cheap and agriculture cruder and extensive in its application, confiscation or forfeiture did not penalize a culprit baron to any serious degree.⁴ In fact, Otto III actually bought off rebellious vassals by gifts of land from the fisc.⁵

The Saxon kings had the thriftless way of not letting their left hands know what their right hands did. While they sometimes saved at the spigot by living at the expense of their subjects and eked out the revenues of the crown lands with those of the royal abbeys, at the same time they reck-

¹ For the number and extent of these domains see Waitz, *Jahrb. Heinrich I*, 193. The *Reichsgüter* in the Harz originally pertained to the Liudolfinger. For the fisc in Italy see Darmstädter, *Das Reichsgut in der Lombardie und Piedmont* (568-1250), and a review of same in *Archivio Storico Lombardo*, Vol. XXIII, fasc. 11 (1896); C. W. Previté-Orton, *History of the House of Savoy*, pp. 233, 239, 254, 368, 429-30; Gregorovius, *The City of Rome in the Middle Ages*, III, 453-55.

² Nitzsch, *Deutsche Gesch.*, I, 556-67.

³ Waitz, VIII, 252-55; Inama Sternegg, *DWG*, I, 283; II, 112-16. For a remarkable instance see Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. xxv.

⁴ Lamprecht, *DG*, III, 93, 117-18; Inama Sternegg, II, 113, n. 4; Schröder, *Rechtsgesch.* (4th ed., 1902), p. 531; Eggers, p. 102.

⁵ "... regendo, indulgendo, largiendo et remunerando" (*Annal. Qued.* [anno 1000]).

lessly squandered the royal domains in lavish gifts to the church, especially the bishops. Otto I is said to have given one-fifth of the crown revenues in Saxony to the Archbishop of Magdeburg and other sees in Saxony; Otto II gave away seventy-one manors of the fisc in ten years. The disastrous defeat of this king in Italy in 982 and his death the next year, to be succeeded by his infant son Otto III, was a turning-point in the history of the fisc. For then began a general spoliation of it by the bishops and the feudality which the empress-mother as regent was unable to stop.¹ Henry II, most lavish of all the Saxon kings, endowed his pet bishopric in North Germany, Merseburg, with all the royal manors in Saxony and Thuringia which the Ottos had not disposed of already, and what was left of the fisc in Franconia he divided between the bishoprics of Würzburg and Bamberg.² The coronation of the kings always cost them dear in presents, in Rome more than at Aachen, and many of these donations were made at the expense of the fisc.³

Thus the fisc was unequal to the drains made upon it and steadily decreased.⁴ With colossal shortsightedness the Saxon kings made no attempt to reserve for the crown certain portions in the "colonial" lands east of the Elbe River,⁵ as the United States government reserved for its use enormous tracts of federal land in our Great West, but let the hungry bishops, abbots, and feudality engross the whole of it. Yet it was just there that, with a formative policy, the enlargement of the royal domain might have been provided for. The splendid expansion of the German people eastward was a wasted opportunity so far as the German crown was con-

¹ Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen* (5th ed.), II, 75.

² Thietmar, *Chronicon*, V, 39; VI, 43; *Vita Heinrici*, I, chap. iii, in Migne, *Pat. Lat.*, CXL, 115.

³ Waitz, VIII, 233-35, 236, nn. 1-4.

⁴ For these dissipations, in addition to Waitz, *loc. cit.*, see Eggers, pp. 97-112; Gerdes, *Gesch. d. deutschen Volkes*, I, 447-51; Gengler, *Beiträge zur bayerischen Gesch.*, IV, 81.

⁵ The few crown lands in this region are discussed by Kurze, *Gesch. der sächsischen Pfalzgrafschaft* (Halle, 1886), pp. 24-31. See Lamprecht's poignant words in DG, IV, 14.

cerned. The kings had nothing to do with it and got nothing from it. The Saxon kings had no constructive policy in the matter of economic administration; they formulated no laws like Charlemagne's famous capitulary for management of the crown lands. A few fragmentary registers or surveys of some of the monasteries have been preserved, and that is all.¹

The same indifference and wastefulness also characterized the history of German forest management under the last Carolingian and all the Saxon kings. Legally, all forest lands pertained to the fisc, and only the king could make appropriation therefrom to private persons or corporate foundations like bishoprics and monasteries. But the coil of private proprietorship had tended, even from late Merovingian times, more and more to be thrown around the forests. Bishops, abbots, nobles, sought to add land to land and to exploit the peasantry by forced labor. The monasteries in particular, which, economically speaking, were often huge ranches, coveted thousands of acres of forest for stock-raising purposes. In Saxony after the Frankish conquest, in Wendish Hesse and the middle and upper Main Valley, the real or suspected persistence of pagan practices in the depth of the forests was made a pretext for extending ecclesiastical control over them, and what the clergy did with some show of church authority, the feudality did by sheer usurpation.²

Yet the forests of medieval Germany were so vast and the population so slight in comparison that it was centuries before private engrossing of the forests became a popular grievance. The period of the Ottos was one of lavish concession of forest privileges to the lay and clerical feudality.³ Thietmar, bishop of Merseburg, gratefully records the gift by Otto II in 974 to Bishop Giseler of the great forest between the Saale and the Mulde, which covered almost the whole of

¹ Waitz, VIII, 223, 235-36; Eggers, p. 99; Fisher, *Medieval Empire*, I, 259.

² Von der Goltz, *Landwirtschaft*, I, 139; Roscher, *Ackerbau* (11th ed., Stuttgart, 1885), sec. 191, n. 1. It was Justus Moeser who first pointed out that Charlemagne deforested the forests in the bishopric of Osnabrück "cum collaudatione potentium istius regionis." So also in England, Canute's forest legislation was largely in the interest of the church (Roscher, sec. 193).

³ Gerdes, I, 340; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 473.

the two counties of Siusili and Plisni, in which the conquered Sorben were held down by six *Burgwarde* garrisoned with Saxon soldiery.¹ It was a princely gift. For two hundred years the servile peasantry of the bishops of Merseburg were employed in clearing it. The place-names today in this region—Wolfeshain, Ammelshain, Lindhart, Holzhausen, Fuchshain, etc.—show where the sites of those ancient forest villages were located.

Otto III and Henry II were even more lavish than their predecessors in gifts of forest tracts to the bishops, grants which carried with them the right not only to exploit the raw materials of the forest as timber, pitch pine, charcoal, etc., but also the power to establish markets on the edges of the forests or within them, to make roads through them and impose tolls thereon, and to tithe and to tax the villagers in them.²

The effect of these vast proprietary grants was to deprive the free German peasantry of their last place of asylum from manorial extortion, and, since hunting privileges went hand in hand with everything else, to take cheap meat out of their mouths by forbidding them to kill the game in the forests.³ By the end of the Saxon epoch (1024), things had gone so far that the kings practically required the consent of the proprietors of a region before declaring it under forest law.⁴ Certain indications point to the fact that an important change took place about the time of Otto III in the management of the fisc. The decline in resources owing to heavy largesses of crown land to the church compelled the kings more and more to depend upon the resources of the abbeys and the episcopal fisc. Henry II seems, if not the first who introduced the practice of utilizing abbey resources, to have been the king who first developed the practice, at the expense of ecclesias-

¹ Hauck, *Kirchengesch. Deutschlands* (3d ed.), III, 97; Thietmar, *Chronicon*, III, 1. The grant has been preserved, *DO*, II, 90 (August 30, 974).

² Friedrichs, *Burg und territorial Grafschaften* (Bonn, 1907), pp. 15-19.

³ Karl Roth, "Ueber die Entwicklung des Jagdrechtes in Deutschland," *Allgem. Forst und Jagd Zeitung*, Suppl. VII (1869), pp. 118-39; Begiebing, *Die königlichen Pfalzen als Jagdhufenhalte der Salischer Kaiser* (Bonn, 1904).

⁴ Schröder, *Rechtsgesch.* p. 521.

tical patrimony. The tenacity with which the German kings resisted the claims of ecclesiastical investiture is explained by this economic transformation. And their fiscal interest was not less than their economic.¹

When the first Salian king, Conrad II, was elected in 1024, the dilapidation of the fisc had gone so far that only scattered remnants of the crown lands still pertained to the crown.² They were reduced to less than in the time of the last Carolingians.³ In the colonial lands along the east border there was no imperial property at all. The Saxon kings had bestowed everything upon the new sees created in this region, or else upon the Billunger and Babenberger. It was absolutely necessary for the crown to husband its slender resources.

The feudal policy of the first Salian monarch is exceedingly interesting to analyze and very valuable for understanding the nature and conditions of government in the feudal age. We are here concerned, however, with only one particular feature of that administration, namely, Conrad II's management of the fisc. The reckless waste of the crown lands by his predecessors gave the King much anxiety, and he resolved upon a drastic policy of "revindication." In 1027 at the diet of Regensburg, the Emperor ordered a survey to be made of all the crown lands in Bavaria to the end of discovering what portions of them had been unlawfully or covertly appropriated. Whether this inquisition was extended to other duchies is not certain, but it seems probable.⁴ For the diplomata of his reign discover considerable acquisitions or re-

¹ There was a difference between exactions imposed on abbeys and on bishops. The former were chiefly assessed for material supplies. The bishops' obligations mainly consisted in the exaction of *gîte* or compulsory maintenance of the court when traveling. This exaction, which became less a private right than a public law, fell most heavily upon the bishops owing to the fact that their palaces were situated in the cities and more convenient for royal sojourn than the abbeys, which were often located in rural regions. The itineraries of the German kings furnish valuable information as to these *servitia regalia*. A comparison between the itineraries of the Saxon and those of the Salian kings proves that in the tenth century the kings lodged chiefly in their royal *villae*. But in the twelfth century they generally lodged in episcopal palaces.

² Gerdes, I, 446-47.

³ Eggers, p. 97.

⁴ Voigt, *Klosterpolitik Conrads II*, p. 7; Waitz, VIII, 244 and n. 2; Richter and Kohl, III, 2, 285, n. C; Inama Sternegg, *DWG*, II, 112, n. 3; Bresslau, *Konrad II*,

acquisitions of the fisc in Swabia, Franconia, Saxony, Lorraine, and even in Italy.¹ Because much of it was lost later, the number and amount of these reclamations are difficult to trace. It would be interesting to know how much property Conrad II's queen, Gisela, brought him as dowry, since special mention is made of the magnitude of her landed wealth.

Conrad II's great program for the revindication of the fisc was as statesman-like as it was unpopular. For it aimed to recover for the crown the huge number of manors and great tracts of forest land which logically appertained to the crown, but which had been appropriated without royal consent, and to put the administration of them in the hands of royal *ministeriales*, i.e., men of servile origin, technically trained in administrative practices, who had everything to gain by loyal service to the government.² As the result of Conrad II's vigorous policy of redemption and conservation of the fisc, the material condition of the German monarchy when he died in 1039 was greater than it had ever been.³ It is this Emperor's special claim to distinction that he perceived the economic side of the problem of government and intelligently labored for its solution. He was the first German king (and save for Henry IV and Lothar II the only one) who had a constructive fiscal program.

The distinction between the private property of the sovereign and the fisc of the crown was first made by Conrad II in Italy,⁴ when he went there to punish Pavia for revolt after the death of his predecessor, in the course of which

I, 214; Nitzsch, II, 22-24; Hauck, III, 544; Gerdes, II, 50-57. Schröder (p. 517) contends that the Nürnberger *Salzbuch* (ed. Küstler) is a fragment of the Bavarian survey instituted by Conrad II.

¹ Bresslau, II, 359-65.

² Bresslau, II, 364, 507-9. In addition to Waitz and Bresslau, already cited on Conrad II's revindication of the fisc, see also Nitzsch, I, 22-24; Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, II, 709; Lamprecht, *DG*, III, 330; Gerdes, II, 50; Richter and Kohl, II, 2, 271 and notes; Fisher, I, 217-18, 260.

³ Bresslau, I, 6 f.; Steindorff, *Heinrich III*, I, 58; Häusser, *Gesch. d. rhein. Pfalz*, I, 29 f.

⁴ Inama Sternegg, II, 112; Waitz, VIII, 244, 388; Nitzsch, I, 20-23.

undertaking the imperial castle in Pavia was destroyed. The Pavians pleaded that they were not guilty. "Whom have we offended?" they said. "We served the late Emperor with fidelity and honor until his death. Now that he is dead, how shall we be accused of having destroyed his castle?" Conrad II's reply to this typically medieval technicality of law is a notable one. "I know that you have not destroyed the palace of the king" he said, "since at the time it was destroyed there was no king. But if the King dies the kingdom yet remains, just as a ship endures whose pilot has been lost. They were *public* buildings, not private."¹

Conrad II's economic policy was not one of mere retrenchment, though he was saving in cost of administration to the point of parsimony. His was a sound and constructive policy. He partially identified the management of the lands of the royal abbeys with the fisc, and contemplated—or was said to have contemplated—the assimilation of the episcopal lands also with the fisc, a policy which became part of the great Salian administrative program, and accounts for the distrust of the bishops of Henry III and Henry IV, although not all the bishops, for example, Adalbert of Bremen, were hostile to it.² He also endeavored to increase the incomes from the royal domains by instituting improved methods of local administration of the crown lands. Perhaps taking a hint from the practice of the church which worked to consolidate its scattered holdings into more compact groups, Conrad II likewise tried to do the same with the estates of

¹ "Dicebant Papienses: Quem offendimus? Imperatori nostro fidem et honorem usque ad terminum vitae suae servavimus; quo defuncto cum nullum regem haberemus regis nostri domum destruxisse non jure accusabimur. E contrario rex: Scio inquit, quod domum regis vestri non destruxistis, cum eo tempore nullum haberetis; sed domum regalem scidisse, non valetis inficiari. Si rex periit, regnum remansit, sicut navis remanet cujus gubernator cadit. Aedes publicae fuerant, non privatae" (Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi*, chap. vii). The distinction was not finally made and defined in law until the time of the Hohenstaufen (Waitz, VIII, 243, n. 2, quoting Gerhoh of Reipersburg, *De Aed. Dei*, chap. x). The figure of the state as a ship and the ruler thereof as a pilot is common in classical literature (Sophocles *Oedipus Tyrannus* 104; Cicero, *Oratio in Pisonem* ix. 20; Horace *Carmina* i. 14; Quintilian viii, chap. vi, sec. 44) whence it passed into the Middle Ages (Agobard of Lyons, *Opera* [ed. Baluze], II, 52; *Forged Decretals* [ed. Hinschius], pp. 34, 67; Asser, *Life of Alfred the Great*, chaps. xxi, lxxiii, xci; cf. Stevenson's ed., p. 331).

² See Nitzsch, II, 60-65.

the crown by trading remote and isolated tracts for others more conveniently located, or by selling them and purchasing new domains adjacent to possessions of the crown. This Emperor, too, was far more rigorous than his Saxon predecessors in enforcing escheats and forfeitures.¹

The exaggerated piety of Henry III wasted again what his father had recovered and conserved of the fisc. The clergy were not slow to perceive that the young Emperor's weakness could be exploited. Accordingly, when the infant Henry IV became king of Germany in 1056, "what the palmer worm had left the locust had eaten; and that which the locust had left the cankerworm had consumed; and what the cankerworm spared the caterpillar had devoured." Henry III endowed his favorite church at Goslar with one-ninth of all the revenues of the royal domains in the Harz.² So reduced to penury was he at one time that he had to borrow 20 pounds of gold and 200 pounds of silver from the Bishop of Worms, pledging a portion of the crown lands as security; on another occasion, he was compelled to pawn the crown itself.³

Like Louis the Pious before him, Henry III alternately was emotionally "pious" and recklessly lavish in gifts to the church, and again absurdly inflated when he considered the pretentious dignity and authority of his imperial position. In the latter mood, he was prone to furious acts of punishment, as when he forced Godfrey, the rebel duke of Lorraine, "to labor like a serf" in order grossly to humiliate him. In a word, Henry III's fiscal policy, his inquisitions and his forfeitures, were as ill considered as his father's course had been wise and well ordered.⁴

During the long minority of Henry IV, the crown lands

¹ Bresslau, II, 366 f.; Waitz, VIII, 246-52, cites many examples.

² Waitz, VIII, 224, n. 4.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 238. This is one of the earliest instances of mortgage-broking by the bishops. In the thirteenth century the practice was general among them. In the time of Otto IV and Conrad IV, who governed Germany for his father Frederick II, from 1237 to 1253 the fisc was recklessly mortgaged and dissipated by foreclosures. The whole subject has been treated by Küster, *Reichsgut zwischen 1273 und 1313*, and Werminghoff, *Die Verpfändungen der mittel- und niederrheinischen Reichstädte*; H. Niese, *Die Verwaltung des Reichsgutes im 13. Jahrhundert (1905)*.

⁴ Nitzsch, II, 51.

were appallingly wasted and stolen by the bishops and nobles. Force¹ and fraud went hand in hand.² The clergy were adepts in forging false charters of alleged donation. The greatest number of these spoliations were in Thuringia and Saxony, where the largest block of crown lands was located. The restitution of the fisc was the most pressing necessity of the crown when Henry IV attained his majority and recovered his freedom.³

But the young King had larger and more constructive ideas of administration than merely salvaging his own. The Harz country, where a considerable block of the crown lands lay, and Saxony, where the forest rights of the crown were extensive, were among the most backward parts of Germany in an agricultural way.⁴ Henry IV resolved to make the lands of the fisc in these regions more productive and, to accomplish that end, sent down trusted *ministeriales* from Goslar to superintend the management of the Saxon and Thuringian crown lands.⁵ Simultaneously, he planned to recover those portions of the fisc which had been stolen or acquired by means of forged charters during his minority.

Henry IV had his grandfather Conrad II's passion for efficiency and economical administration. He was the sole

¹ "... heredes circumvenient vi praedia tollent," Bruno, *de bello Saxonico*, chap. xxvi; cf. chaps. xviii and xcvi; *Annal. Palat.* (SS. XVI, 70); Marianus Scotus, *Chronicon*. (1075); Vogeler, *Otto von Nordheim*, pp. 41, 44-45; Schaumann, *Gesch. des niedersächsischen Volkes*, p. 190; Sudendorff, *Reg.*, II, No. 17.

² Burckhardt of Halberstadt, Hezil of Hildesheim, Werner of Magdeburg, and Siegfried of Mainz were notorious for their spoliation of the fisc. Dedi, margrave of Lausitz, was the chief lay offender.

³ Waitz, VIII, 429-31. The reader will hardly fail to see, in this history of the spoliation of the German crown lands in the Middle Ages and Henry IV's attempt to recover them, a parallel with the history of federal lands in the United States. The vested interests of those days were represented by bishops, abbots, and the great feudal nobles. Times have changed, but men have not changed with time. American timber "barons," coal "barons," "oil kings," "railroad kings," water-power and ranching "interests" have repeated the history of Germany in the feudal age, and like the barons of old seized, appropriated, and wasted the resources of the government. Roosevelt's conservation policy has its medieval prototype in that of Henry IV.

⁴ Gebhard, *Handbuch*, I, 310-12, 326.

⁵ Henry IV kept a flock of sheep at Goslar (Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* [ed. Holder-Egger], p. 171).

medieval German king who systematically surrounded himself with a corps of royal *ministeriales* who were trained as farmers-general or intendants.¹ The management of the royal domains was put into the hands of this class, more intensive methods of exploitation introduced, and a larger proportion of produce exacted from every farm. At the same time the King revived the almost obsolete right of the crown to unappropriated forest tracts, and began to inclose them; put his foot down upon further private inclosures; stopped the practice of forest donations either to corporations or to individuals; and made forest proprietors prove their titles.

Of a piece with Henry IV's forest policy is that dealing with streams, which closely touched the traditional fishery rights of the Saxon people. The streams, too, were included within the new regulations, forbidden free use of, made "ban waters," and subject to license fees with punishment for trespass.²

It is in his system of bureaucratic administration, which Henry IV planned to establish through the *ministeriales* of the crown, and in his fiscal policy, that one sees the largest evidences of the Salian program. Until this time in medieval history, no administrative class of technically trained officials such as Henry's *ministeriales* were, was to be found any-

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 145, 148, 151, 154, 257; *Annal. Alah.* (1072); Bruno, chaps. xiv, xvi, xxxi; cf. Waitz, IV, 111; VI, 292; Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb. Heinrich IV*, II, 153 f.; Inama Sternegg, II, 150; Roerhig, *De secularibus consiliariis Heinrici IV* (Halle, 1866); Lamprecht, *DG*, III, 118-20. The index to Lambert's *Annales* under the words *familiares*, *auricularii*, *consilarii*, *consulatores*, etc., may be profitably consulted for information on this head.

² The *Sachsenspiegel*, II, 29, sec. 4, sharply protests against this practice; cf. Lamprecht, *DG*, IV, 239; V, 76.

"The starting-point of the German law of fisheries was the principle that the right to fish belonged to every member of the folk, as regarded the greater streams and lakes, and to every mark-man as regarded the water-commons of the mark associations. . . . When a 'stream' regality had developed . . . the rights of fishery in these, as 'ban-waters,' also became a regality of the crown. The king could either exercise them himself or convey them to the territorial princes; in later times they were generally regarded as regalities of the territorial rulers, and in many cases were conveyed by them to manors, cloisters, communes, mills, etc., in return for rents or services. . . . As regards the water-commons of mark-associations, the right of free fishery was maintained much longer than free hunting, since the princes and manorial lords attributed much less value to fisheries than to the chase" (Huebner, *Germanic Private Law*, p. 286).

where in feudal Europe. Henry IV was a pioneer monarch. Suggestions of this sort of a class are to be found in the *missi dominici* of Charlemagne and the *Pfalzgrafen* of Otto I. But the method of paying these officials in landed incomes or endowments was disastrous, for it too closely identified them with the feudality. In many cases, they actually converted these stipendiary rights into hereditary benefices, as the evolution of the counts palatine into feudal nobles no whit different from dukes and margraves shows.

A money economy, a *Geldwirtschaft*, was a condition precedent to the effective creation of such a body of officials. The output of the great Rammelsberg mines near Goslar fortunately provided Henry IV with the one indispensable resource necessary for his administrative emancipation, for they supplied him with the bullion required for a government keyed upon a money economy instead of a *Naturalwirtschaft*.¹ At the same time, also, an auxiliary resource was available in the increasing development of commerce and trade in Germany, signs of the awakening of which, at this time, are very interesting.

Besides reparation and improved administration of the fisc, Henry IV may have designed to put the control of all the crown lands in the hands of a single minister, as Conrad II once contemplated putting the management of all the royal abbeys in the hands of Poppo of Stavelot. Furthermore, there is ground to believe that Henry IV planned to establish a fixed capital for the German kingdom at Goslar. At least, it is not without significance that, in the historical sources of his reign, the word *palatium* is continually used to designate the royal court at Goslar (*königlicher Hof*), and the word *curtis* employed, instead, when the court is found elsewhere.²

The result of Henry IV's passion for administrative efficiency—and quite apart in origin from his conflict with the pope—was a widespread conspiracy of the clergy and feudality in North Germany, whose "vested interests" were jeopardized by the King's policy. In this rebellion the Saxon

¹ Schulte, *Deutsche Staats- und Rechtsgesch.*, sec. 80, 5; Nitzsch, II, 45, 51, 55.

² Eggers, pp. 104-5.

and Thuringian peasantry also joined because they were deprived of their time-honored rights of cutting firewood and timber in the forests, of fishing freely in the forest streams, of hunting, of feeding their swine on the beechnuts and acorns there.¹

In this disastrous rebellion, Henry IV's splendid designs were destroyed. He was compelled to buy partisans by grants out of the crown lands to clergy, nobles, and *ministeriales*; and his enemies, when victorious, spoiled or seized the crown lands as they could.² When the civil war ended in 1092, having lasted for seventeen years, his dream to establish a permanent capital at Goslar, to centralize the administration there, had gone to ruin like a broken cloud.³ The crown lands were reduced to shreds and patches.

What was left, Henry IV tried again to salvage when peace came and to reorganize the management. Perhaps owing to the fact that he had a French mother, the King had always manifested appreciation of the administrative methods of the kings of France. Indeed, his fiscal policy bears a remarkable analogy to that of Philip I of France.⁴ It is not without significance that in 1105 when the German feudality again rebelled—a rebellion in which his own sons Conrad and Henry joined the enemy—throwing Germany once more into civil war, Henry IV wrote a long letter to the French King recounting his new trials and justifying his policy, a letter in which he emphasized the new spoliation of the crown lands.⁵

¹ Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 141, 146, 147, 148, 154, 270; Bruno, chaps. xxx, xlii, lxiii, cviii; *Carmen de bello sax.*, I, ll. 42-46.

² Bruno, chaps. xxv, xxxviii, xxxix; Lambert of Hersfeld, pp. 201-2.

³ Below, *Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters*, p. 331, rightly says that Henry IV failed because of his inability to impose taxes, as the English and French kings succeeded, because of their successful imposition of the taxing power. For this failure, however, Henry IV was not to blame. For a discussion of the largeness and constructive nature of his financial and taxation policy see Below, *op. cit.*, p. 87, n. 2; pp. 290, 339 f.; and Zeumer, *Die deutschen Städtesteuern*, pp. 161 f.

⁴ "Rex [Philip] autem videns dominium suum per insolentiam praedecessorum suorum esse diminutum et fere adnihilatum, cupiensque illud reaugere" (*Chron. de Morigny*, Bouquet, XI, 157-58; cf. *ibid.*, p. 394: "pro augendo dominium suum"). For the whole subject see Luchaire, *Inst. Mon. de la France* (2d ed.), I, 88-99; II, 246.

⁵ "Sic spoliatum et desolatum, nam et castella et patrimonia, et quicquid in regno conquisieram, eadem vi et arte sua extorserunt a me" (Jaffé, *Mon. Bamb.*, V, 246). The whole letter is of great importance. It covers five pages.

An inquiry into the causes of this second rebellion throws light on the difficulty a medieval ruler had in maintaining a firm administration of the crown lands. The bane of every feudal government was the tendency for its lands, its offices, and its revenues to become enfeoffed. Not the least of offenders in this particular were the King's own sons. Rebellion of sons against fathers, because the latter resisted such tendency and refused to permit royal offices and crown lands to become perquisites of their children, is a chronic phenomenon of the feudal age.

When the Saxon rebellion and the conflict with the papacy was over, Henry IV determined that the crown lands which were left should be administered by the crown alone, for the benefit of the crown. It was the French practice. When his son, Prince Henry (afterward Henry V), was crowned as junior king at Aachen in 1099 (again the French practice of co-optation), it was especially provided in the act of settlement that all and every one of the crown lands were to be excepted from his son's control during his father's lifetime. This had been the grievance of his elder brother, Prince Conrad, before, and the motive which had led to his espousal of his father's enemies in the second feudal rebellion. It was shortly to become the grievance of young Henry, too, who also soon rebelled against Henry IV.¹

The revolt of Henry V was a repetition of the anarchy of the first civil war. The crown lands which Henry IV had labored so hard to rehabilitate were wasted, squandered, sacked, destroyed, until again nothing but scattered fragments remained.²

The shrinkage of the royal domains partly accounts for Henry V's desperate endeavor, in 1115, to acquire Saxony for the crown when Magnus Billung, the last of his house, died. But the Salian kings were too much hated in Saxony

¹ " . . . imperator minorem filium . . . heredem regni constituit; a quo ne et ipse abiret in viam fratris sui, iurjurandum accepit videlicet ne umquam se vel de regno vel de praediis patris, eo vivente, nisi forte ex consensu ipsius, intromitteret" (*Vita Heinrici IV*, chap. vii *ad fin.*).

² Ortlieb, *Chron. Zwifalt.*, chap. v (SS. X, 75); cf. *Chron. Petri Erford.* (anno 1105), and Gerdes, II, 381.

for him to accomplish the feat, and the chagrined King had to let Lothar of Supplinburg, who had married the daughter of the last Saxon Duke, inherit the great fief of the north. Henry V was unable to escheat the fief on the ground that the male line of dukes in Saxony was extinguished, and for the first time in German history (indeed, there is but one other earlier instance, and that in Tuscany) the principle of female succession was admitted.

Too late, Henry V realized that wise economy and intelligent management of the crown lands was the only royal road to power and prosperity. He had played with fire in siding with his father's foes and was sorely burned. Henry V had not his father's moral force but he inherited Henry IV's administrative ability, and when compelled to it, revived and applied his predecessor's fiscal policy.¹ He energetically undertook the rehabilitation of the crown lands, and so efficient was his administration of them that he was credited with the intention of instituting a Domesday Survey in Germany after the manner of William the Conqueror in England.²

But much of the lands of the fisc had been lost beyond recall. Even the *ministeriales*, in imitation of the nobles, began to build castles for themselves on the crown lands which they had seized, a step initial to their emergence later into the lower ranks of the nobility.³ Yet reduced as the crown

¹ For details see Meyer von Knonau, *Jahrb.*, Vol. VII, app. 3; Waitz, VIII, 399-400; Gerdes, II, 381.

² "Omnibus itaque bene compositis consilio soceri sui regis Anglorum totum regnum vectigale facere volens multum in se optimum odium contraxit"—Otto of Freising, *Chron. anno 1124*; (ed. Hofmeister, 1912, p. 332; cf. *Ann. Rod.* (1114) (SS. XVI, 698); *Ann. Pegau.* (1115), *ibid.*, p. 251; Ekkehard of Aura (1125) (SS. VI, 265); Waitz, VIII, 400 and n. 2. It is to be remembered that Henry V was the husband of Matilda, daughter of Henry I of England, the youngest son of William the Conqueror; cf. Freeman, *Norman Conquest* (3d ed.), V, 185, n. 4, on this rumor reported by Otto of Freising. The pearl of the imperial fisc then was Nuremberg (Begiebing, *op. cit.*, p. 41). Most of the royal income, however, was derived from the bishoprics and "royal" abbeys (*Mon. Welforum* [ed. Weiland], chap. xvi, p. 25).

³ Henne am Rhyn, *Deutsche Kulturgesch.*, I, 208. In the twelfth century an imperial *ministerialis*, Werner of Bolland, owned 17 castles, a widespread complex of manors, and claimed the homage (!) of 1,100 knights. He was a typical petty prince (Gislebert, *Chron. Hanon* [SS. XXI, 540 (1184)]; Lamprecht, *DWL*, I, 2, 1307, n. 5; Köllner, *Gesch. der Herrschaft Kirchheim-Bolland*).

lands had become by 1125, Henry V's policy of rehabilitation must have been somewhat effective. At any rate, they were sufficiently extensive to excite the cupidity of the Hohenstaufen brothers when the Emperor died, and they laid claim to the crown lands as the nephews and heirs of their uncle.

This famous claim of Frederick and Conrad of Swabia is a landmark in both political and legal history.

The Swabian brothers had set up the astonishing theory that as the heirs of Henry V they were entitled not only to his private property, but also to those lands which during his reign had been *acquired for the empire*. This would have given them for their own the whole of the countess Matilda's possessions [Tuscan Italy], the city and fortress of Nuremburg and numerous other valuable holdings.¹

No better illustration of the essentially personal nature of government in the Middle Ages can be imagined than this incident, which so clearly shows how concrete men's minds were, and how little the abstract idea of the state existed. Moreover, it exemplifies the difference between the medieval idea of personal law and the modern conception of territorial law.

Just a century after Conrad II's notable legal distinction between the private property of the Emperor and the imperial fisc, Lothar II, Henry V's successor, at the diet of Regensburg made an even more definite and explicit pronouncement to the same effect.²

Nevertheless, in spite of this definition, theory of law and actual fact failed to coincide. During the reign of Lothar II (1125-39), the crown lands were assimilated with his own *Hausgut*, and considerable portions of them seem to have passed to the Guelfs, whose leader was the Emperor's son-in-law, Henry the Proud.³ Indeed, one of the many grounds of

¹ E. Emerton, *Mediaeval Europe*, p. 277. Nuremburg is first mentioned in the *Annals of Altenheim* in 1050, when Henry III stopped there. By Hohenstaufen times its importance exceeded that of Bamberg.

² "Rege apud Radisponam in conventu principum inquirente praedia iudicio proscriptorum a rege, si iuste forifactoribus abjudicata fuerint vel pro his quae regno attinent commutata, utrum cedant . . . vel proprietati regis. Judicatum, potius regiminis subiacere ditioni quam regis proprietati" (*Annal. S. Disibod.* [1125], in *MGH*, SS. XVII, 23; cf. *Annal. Sax.* [1127], in *ibid.*, VI, 765).

³ Bernhardi, *Lothar II*, p. 55.

feud between the Hohenstaufen and the Guelfs was just the attempt of the former when kings (Conrad III and Frederick I, Barbarossa) to recover these ancient remnants of the fisc which Henry the Proud, like the Swabian brothers before, now seems to have regarded as part of his own (or his wife's) family possessions.¹

Although Conrad III failed to recover all the parts of the royal domain which the Guelfs withheld, it still would have been possible for the Hohenstaufen kings to build up a new royal domain out of their own *Hausgut* in Germany, if Frederick Barbarossa had not been more interested in realizing prodigious aspirations beyond the Alps, instead of devoting himself to the extension and consolidation of the royal power in Germany. Frederick I sold or gave away the crown lands for an elusive and superficial domination in Italy, whereas, if he had devoted himself to the upbuilding and consolidation of the royal domains in Swabia, the county of Burgundy, the Rhenish Palatinate, and the Pleisner land in the northeast,² a substantial German monarchy might yet have been erected. A consolidated royal domain was essential in Germany, as in France, to substantial royal authority.

Unfortunately the Hohenstaufen kings, like the Saxon and unlike the Salian, had no constructive economic policy. In war, diplomacy, politics, they were experts, but they had no sound grasp of public economy. In an age when *Naturalwirtschaft* was fast disappearing before the trade and commerce of the rising towns, the Hohenstaufen were no farther

¹ After the coronation of Conrad III, Henry the Proud reluctantly surrendered the regalia, "sed ad ea que ulterius inter eos tractanda erant dies ei . . . prescribitur. . . . Mediatores ad hanc causam prenominati . . . nichil profecerunt. Rex enim non aliter compositionem fieri voluit, nisi dux quedam de his quae a Lothario imperatore susceperat ac possederat, resignaret" (*Mon. Welforum*, chap. xxiv, p. 32).

² For a particular statement as to the location and extent of the Hohenstaufen lands see Toesche, *Heinrich VI*, p. 20. There is record of a Degenhard of Hellenstein as *procurator per omnia regalia praedia Suevie* between 1173 and 1178 (Niese, *Die Verwaltung des Reichsgutes im 13. Jahrhundert* [Innsbruck, 1905], pp. 22, 268), but by that time Frederick had spent a goodly part of his resources in Germany on his wars in Italy. The fragmentary inventory in *Ann. Aquisenses* (Boehmer, *Fontes*, III, 397 f.) may possibly be of Hohenstaufen time though some writers attribute it to the reign of Henry IV, and Boehmer, *Vorrede*, p. lix, thinks it of the thirteenth century. Consult Waitz, VIII, 231, n. 1.

advanced in their economic theory than the Saxon kings. They had no perception of the new economic revolution of the twelfth century.¹ Yet their economic resources were immense. They possessed whole blocks of crown land on the lower Rhine, in Saxony and Thuringia, extensive allodial and feudal holdings in Alsace and Swabia, besides a huge array of ecclesiastical *avoueries*. A system of fortresses bound all these territories together as in a net, the fortresses being garrisoned by armed *ministeriales* under the command of a local burgrave.²

The translation of the chief seat of Hohenstaufen residence and activity to Southern Italy and Sicily by Henry VI in 1190, and more still the double election of 1198 which created two emperors, was the culminating disaster for the fisc.³ In the furious factional strife which followed, both Guelf and Ghibbine bought partisans by largesses out of the crown lands, while the strong and ambitious everywhere laid their hands upon them when and where they could.

Henry VI recalled the margraviate of Meissen. It is his only distinguished effort in behalf of the wasted substance of the crown. His brother, Philip of Swabia, auctioned off blocks of the royal domain in his abortive effort to buy partisans against his rival.⁴ The waste went on during the "reign" of Otto IV and the minority of Frederick II, who, half Italian in blood and wholly so in spirit, at last bartered away what was left of the crown lands of Germany to bishops, abbots, nobles, for the best price he could get for them. The regency of Conrad IV, who governed Germany for Frederick II between 1237 and 1253, saw the final pillage of the fisc.⁵ In this

¹ See Nitzsch, II, 279 f., and Karl Weller, *Zur Organisation des Reichsgutes in der späteren Stauferzeit* ("Festschrift Dietrich Schaefer," p. 211).

² Frey, *op. cit.*, esp. pp. 175, 220 f., 230, 285 f., 296 f., 305 f., which are separate appendixes dealing with the fisc in each region of Germany.

³ Waitz, VIII, 243 and n. 2.

⁴ Abel, *Philipp von Schwaben*, p. 320, and with it compare Philip's wailing letter to Innocent III in *MGH, Leges*, II, 210, and *Ann. Marbac*, *MGH. SS.* XVII, p. 168.

⁵ See the extracts from the sources cited by Huillard-Bréholles, *Introd. à l'histoire diplom. de l'empereur Frédéric II*, p. ccxii n.; also Raumer, *Gesch. der Hohenstaufen*, III, 274, 410; IV, 124, 191, 339; V, 65, 362, 377, 383, and esp. K. Weller, *Zur Organisation des Reichsgutes in der späteren Stauferzeit* ("Festschrift f. Dietrich Schaefer" [1915]).

way the fisc was almost utterly dissipated. The last remnants of it were swept away during the interregnum.¹

Lamprecht has written this epilogue upon the fate of the crown lands in the last days of the Hohenstaufen:

In area it was about equivalent to three-quarters of the margraviate of Brandenburg. It lay scattered in the region around the confluence of the Main with the Rhine, between the Neckar and the Danube, and between the Danube and the Lech. To this we may add the landgraviate of Lower Alsace, portions of the Upper Palatinate and the Saxon Vogtland, together with the Burggrafschaft of Altenburg. Pitiably fragments were they of the old property in the motherland. In the colonial lands there was as good as no crown land. And yet it was just there that with determined effort a new territorial basis of the imperial power might have been found, as the achievements of a later time show.²

¹ The *Sententia de non alienandis principatibus* of 1216 (*Leges*, II, 227) was too late and too impotent to arrest the process of dissipation. For the period of the interregnum see Küster, *Reichsgut zwischen 1273 und 1313*. Toesche, *op. cit.*, p. 481, pertinently says, "Das schutzlose Reichsgut war die nächste und beste Beute aller Angriffe."

² *Deutsche Gesch.* (4th ed.), IV, 14.

CHAPTER XI

THE SENTIMENT OF EUROPE TOWARD THE GERMANS IN THE MIDDLE AGES¹

MEDIEVAL EUROPE did not love the Germans. The Italians hated them, the French admitted their courage, but detested their manners, the English were jealous of them, the Slavs both feared and hated them, while the Germans despised and contemned the Slavs.² Rodolph Glaber, a Burgundian monk who lived in the first half of the eleventh century, described Germany as a land of confused nations of unheard-of ferocity.³ German speech and German manners are often the butt of French ridicule in the *chansons de geste*. They are *pute gent, gent defface, laide gent*.⁴ Eustace Deschamps declared that the Germans were compelled to learn the language of other nations because no one would—or could—speak theirs.⁵ Even the Mohammedans paid their respects to the Germans. An Islamic traveler in Germany early in the eleventh century wrote that the language sounded like the growling of dogs.⁶

The root of this general resentment is to be found in the

¹ For literature on this subject see Steinhausen in *Deutsche Rundschau* (December, 1909; January, 1910); Körtum, "Ueber den Charakter und die Bestimmung der christlichen Hauptnationen des Mittelalters, nämlich Italiener, Deutschen und Franzosen," *Zeitschrift f. Geschichtswissenschaft*, V, 439 f.; Kern, "Der mittelalterliche Deutsch in franz. Kultur," *Historische Zeitschrift*, CVIII (1912), 237.

² For German contempt of the Slavs see Fredegarius, *Chronicon*, IV, 68; Monachus Sangall., II, 12; Thietmar, *Chronicon*, III, 17; Adam of Bremen, *Gesta episcop. Hammaburg.*, II, 45; Cosmas of Prague, *Chronicon*, I, 40; Helmold, *Chronica Slavorum*, I, 16.

³ *Historia*, IV, 8.

⁴ Cf. Zimmermann, *Roman. Forschung.*, XXIX (1911), 257 f., 306 f. For instances see Wace, *Roman de rou*, I, 3214; *Galeran de Bretagne*, 5613 f.; *Aymeri de Narbonne*, 2464 f.; *Parthenopeus*, 8753 f.; *Saisnes*, 441 f.

⁵ *Soc. Anc. Textes Fr.*, VII, 61–62. Napoleon said the same thing of the Dutch and the Russians.

⁶ Jacob, *Ein Arabischer Reisender aus dem X. oder XI. Jahrhundert*, p. 13.

important historical fact that the German kings and the German people were politically and legally the dominant state in medieval Europe. They were the recognized heirs of Charlemagne and the Roman Caesars, knew themselves to be such, and were so recognized by Europe. Yet however much the Holy Roman Empire might be recognized as "a great tradition and a present necessity,"¹ the sense of German superiority rankled in the heart of Europe. The Holy Roman Empire of the German nation possessed actual sovereignty over Germany, Italy, the Low Countries, the Two Burgundies; suzerainty over Bohemia, Poland, and Hungary; and a theoretical lordship over France, England, Spain, Denmark, and Scandinavia.² In the twelfth century, under the Hohenstaufen, German imperial pretensions were also extended to Byzantium and the Latin Orient during the Crusades.³ From first to last the Holy Roman Empire was an international, not a national, monarchy.⁴

In political theory the Holy Roman Empire was fundamentally of Roman origin. But the Germanic element in it was strong, although many historians have failed to perceive the parity which existed between Roman and German tradition. It is a mistake to think that even with Frederick Barbarossa the German tradition was obliterated or effaced by the Roman tradition. The Germanic character of medieval imperial authority was no less vital than the Roman. The ancient German office of *herzog*, or "war-leader," underlay the imperial office as it underlay the kingship. Even the idea of the *comitatus*, or "war-following," persisted. Before the

¹ Fisher, *The Mediaeval Empire*, II, 255.

² See Waitz, *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte*, V, 134-35, and Gierke, *Political Theories of the Middle Ages* (Maitland's trans.), n. 56, pp. 126-27, for source citations.

³ Leopold von Ranke, *Weltgeschichte*, VIII, 246, speculates on what might have happened to Europe in the twelfth century if Frederick Barbarossa had acquired Constantinople after the dethronement of Isaac Angelos, and regrets that he failed of getting the prize. "Es war ein Moment das nicht so leicht wieder kommen konnte."

⁴ This idea is reflected in the *Sachsenspiegel*, III, 71, secs. 1, 2, and in the Golden Bull of 1356, art. 30. Heyck, *Geschichte der Hohenstaufen*, exaggerates the *national* sentiment of the Germans in the time of the Hohenstaufen. It was *international*.

rise of the towns created a new social class, the word *populus* (people) in medieval chronicles meant the warrior class, that is to say, the feudal nobles bound to performance of military service. Widukind of Corvey shows that the sovereignty of Otto the Great was consecrated, not by the coronation of 962, but by the acclaim of the German army on the battlefield of Augsburg in 955. The army made the emperor.¹ The same conception appears in the Hohenstaufen period in Otto of Freising and other writers of the twelfth century, for whom the coronation of Charlemagne in 800 was nothing but a confirmation of power already vested in the German king as supreme military commander.²

Certain of the publicists of the fourteenth century, notably Lupold of Bebenburg (bishop of Bamberg, 1297-1303) and Henry of Hervord, a Dominican of Minden (d. 1370), declared, in opposition to the papacy, that the military power of Charlemagne was the *ratio ultima* of his sovereignty.³ One finds this conception consecrated by a formula of the *Sachsenspiegel*, in a gloss of the commentator Johann von Buch, who founded the imperial law on power.⁴ The king, he argued, was elected to the kingship, but imperial authority was fundamentally a war-power! *Dat keiserrike irwirvet hei mit stride!* Stengel finds the origin of this formula of Buch in the phrase, *exercitus imperatorem facit*, embodied in the Code of Gratian, but derived from an epistle of St. Jerome.⁵

¹ This is what Stengel has so clearly established in his book, *Den Kaiser macht das Heer* (Weimar, 1910).

² A gloss of Johannes Teutonicus upon the (unprinted) *Summa* of Huguccio, probably composed during the pontificate of Gregory VIII (d. 1187), chap. xxiv, dist. 93, "quomodo si exercitus imperatorem facit," reads: "Quomodo: id est sicut in presenti; eligit quidem populus imperatorem, sed non consecratur nisi a papa; et credo quod ex electione populi et principum sit imperator, licet non sic appelletur antequam coronam a papa" (Mario Kramer, *Quellen zur Gesch. d. d. Königswahl* [Leipzig, 1911], p. x).

³ On Lupold see Lorenz, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen* (ed. 1870), pp. 317-19; for Henry of Hervord see *ibid.*, pp. 123-26. Other literature in Potthast, *Bibliotheca medii aevi*.

⁴ See Schulte, *Deutsche Staats- und Rechtsgesch.*, sec. 62.

⁵ The phrase in this form was a gross perversion of the original phraseology. What Jerome said was that the bishops of the early church were elected "quomodo si exercitus faciat imperatorem."

According to this argumentation the emperor owed this authority to his sword and the army back of him; the army was the political people.

The German state was the first state in Europe to rise out of the wreckage of the Carolingian empire with a coherent and effective government. With Henry I, law and order obtained throughout Germany.¹ Less formidable criminals than rebel dukes were sent to the east border in squads, there to do military service against the Wends.² Under Otto the Great, after the rebellious dukes were subdued, the interior peace of Germany was complete. "The world was fortunate while Otto held the sceptre," says a contemporary chronicler.³ Even Lorraine was quiet.⁴ Thietmar of Merseburg described the reign of Otto I as "an age of gold." His justice became almost legendary in later times.⁵

In the tenth century Germany was a land of law and order and prosperity compared with the condition of France or Italy. Leibnitz said with reason that the century which was an iron age for other countries for Germany was an age of gold.⁶ Neither duke nor count nor bishop had immunity from the king's justice. Otto I's own brother Henry, his son Ludolf, Eberhard of Franconia, Frederick, archbishop of Mainz, Bishop Ruthard of Strasburg, and a Count Wichmann were all imprisoned for violating the peace. The dukes themselves were compelled to obey, and to make their own

¹ *Contin. Reg.* (920); Franklin, *Das Königl. und Reichshofgericht*, IV, 465.

² Widukind, II, 3.

³ Hauck, *Kirchengesch.*, III, 394-95.

⁴ *Gesta abbat. Lob.*, chap. ii; *Vita Deod. Mett.*, chap. vii; Hirzel, *Abt Heriger von Lobbes* (Greifswald diss., 1910), chap. ii.

⁵ Grimm, *Deutsche Sagen*, II, 169 f.; Simrock, *Walther von der Vogelweide*, II, 159. The statement of Gobelinus, *Persona Cosmodromii Aetas*, VI, xlvii, regarding Otto I, "Bi Ottenbarde he moth barden schmecken," has the ring of veritability about it. The anecdote seems genuine.

⁶ "Neque Germania sibi comparata unquam magis bello et pace, armis et moribus et si novissimas binas annorum centurias demas, quibus mutata est facies generis humani etiam literis floruit, quam seculo Ottonum, id est decimo, quod aliae gentes ab hodiernis suis moribus diversis, Galli torpore, Itali etiam probis infame fecere" (*Annales Imperii*, III [ad annum 1002], 802).

vassals obey.¹ Eberhard of Franconia, for having stormed a castle belonging to one of his vassals, burning it and massacring the garrison, was summoned, fined a hundred marks silver, and thrown into prison. Henry of Bavaria lost the Bavarian Nordgau for his contumacy.² Otto II punished the Duke of Carinthia and the bishops of Freising and Augsburg. In 979 he beheaded Count Gero at Magdeburg. Henry II either hanged, exiled, or imprisoned offenders of public order. Thietmar says that in his reign Saxony was the seat of "security and fertility."³ Another contemporary writer says: "Under his protection everything prospered. The peasant joyfully did his necessary labor in the fields as the priest in the sanctuary. Poverty increased to riches under his aegis."⁴

Wipo, the biographer of Conrad II, says that "he powerfully surrounded his states with peace and protection."⁵ No person in the kingdom was too lowly or too humble to be refused prompt justice at the hands of the King. The historiographer of Cologne was justified in boasting, in 1137, that no German king had ever let justice sleep.⁶ Swift and popular justice for all, rich and poor, was the pride of a German king.⁷ Conrad II stopped his coronation procession to

¹ Rosenstock, *Herzogsgewalt und Friedensschutz. Deutsche Provinzialversammlungen des 9-12. Jahrhundert* (Breslau, 1910). The sources abound with instances, both as to dukes and bishops: *Gesta Camer.*, II, 7; *Chron. S. Hubert*, chap. xxxi; cf. Waitz, *op. cit.*, VII, 126; Schröder, *Rechtsgeschichte*, 567; Roth von Schreckenstein, *Die Ritterwürde*, p. 458.

² Widukind, II, 6.

³ Thietmar, *Chronicon*, VII, 5, 36, 37; cf. *Annal. Qued.* (1019); Alpertus, *De diversitate temp.*, chap. xvii (SS. IV, 717).

⁴ *Epp. Bamb.* (ed. Jaffé), VI, 419.

⁵ *Vita Chuonradi*, chaps. vi, xviii, xxiii, xl.

⁶ "Merito a nobis nostrisque posteris pater patriae appellatur quia erat egregius defensor et fortissimus propugnator nihili pendens vitam suam contra omnia adversa propter justitiam opponere" (*Chron. Reg. Col.* [1137]).

⁷ "Nam publice armis rem incipere, metus imperatoris prohibebat" (Alpertus, *De. div. temp.*, II, 7). The *Cologne Chronicle* (1107) says of Henry V: "Inde Merseburg postea Goslariam adiit omnibus super causa sua eum pulsantibus regia more judicans." Frederick Barbarossa's pledge to the Pope shows the same spirit (Weiland, I, No. 137). Frederick II declared the right of the poorest to appeal to the king (Huillard-Bréholles, VI, 158).

hear the petitions of a serf of the Archbishop of Mainz, an orphan and a poor widow.¹

The feudal anarchy which prevailed in the half-French neighboring kingdom of Burgundy under King Rudolph was regarded as scandalous in Germany. The condition in French Lorraine shocked the Germans, who were not used to that sort of thing.² The German clerks who compiled the *Gesta* of the archbishops of Cambrai regarded the anarchic propensities of the French feudality—"those Carlenses!"—with scorn and contempt.³ When Henry II, attempted to introduce the Peace of God so popular in France into Germany, the act both puzzled and irritated his subjects, who regarded it as an unjust reflection upon public law,⁴ and Bishop Gerard of Cambrai protested against it.⁵ Henry III rigidly enforced law and order throughout Germany.⁶

¹ Wipo, *Vita Chuonradi* chap. v. Cf. the pictures of Henry II, his predecessor, administering justice, which are preserved in *Adelboldi frag. de rebus gestis Henrici*, chaps. xxii, xxix, liv.

² "Tempora dissensionibus nimis, regnum hac illac quoque sibi trahente fluctuant. . . . Transrhenena interim quietim manebant" (*Vita Johan. abbat. Gorz.*, chap. civ; *Gesta abbat. Lob.*, chap. xxv; *Gesta abbat. S. Trud.* [SS. X, 304]).

³ "Indisciplinati mores Carlensium" (SS. VII, 466). So in Book III, chap. xl, there is a scoff at *Karlensibus custumiis*. To the same effect is the stinging comment of Gerard, author of the *Miracula S. Adalhardi abbatis Corbeiensis in Gallia*: "Talis quippe consuetudo naturaliter innata est regno Galorum ut praeter ceteras nationes semper velint exercere rabiem bellorum. Sed quidmodo? non necesse est velle mori in bello quia catervatim moriuntur famis et pestis gladio" (Bouquet, X, 378). Abbot Siegfried of Gorze laments the "ignominiosa Franciscarum ineptiarum consuetudo"—quoted by Steindorff, *op. cit.*, I, 191, n. 4. Cf. Pirenne, *Histoire de Belgique*, I, 69, n. 1. In the middle of the twelfth century Otto of Freising (*Gesta*, proem.) condemns the *Gallicana levitas* of the French. M. Ferdinand Lot, *Hugues Capet*, p. 236, n. 2, however, justly makes the observation that "cette indiscipline avait des causes sociales et non ethniques; plusque deux siècles plus tard l'anarchie avait passé en Germanie et presque abandonné la France."

⁴ Thietmar, VII, 5, 36, 37; *Ann. Qued.* (1019); *Epp. Bamb.* (ed. Jaffé), VI, 419.

⁵ *Gesta episc. Camer.*, II, 27 (SS. VII, 474).

⁶ Waitz, VI, 428, n. i; VIII, 204, n. 2. In 1047, after Henry III had crushed the formidable rebellion of Duke Godfrey of Lorraine, he commuted the public whipping and clipping of his hair for a money payment, and so reduced his humiliation. But he still compelled him in person "to labor like a serf" in rebuilding the church at Verdun which he had destroyed: *Sed post modicum facti in tantum poenituit, ut publice se verberari faceret et capillos suos, ne tonderentur, multa pecunia redimeret, sumptus ad reaedificandum ecclesiam daret et in opere caementario per se ipsum plerumque vilis mancipii ministerio functus deserviret* (Lambert of Hers-

Imperial feeling and tribal sentiment were strong among the Germans, but national self-consciousness never developed among them as among the French and English. The German people was an agglomeration of tribes—Franks, Saxons, Bavarians, Swabians, Thuringians, etc.—of a common blood and similar language and institutions, but actuated more by tribal traditions and feeling than by a higher national sentiment. The persistence of the idea of the personality of law in German history long after it had become obsolete elsewhere in Europe is a proof of this condition. The sentiment of local folk-right was strong; the sense of a common and national law was weak.¹

In medieval times the Germans almost always thought of themselves in either a tribal capacity, as Saxons, Franks, Swabians, Bavarians, etc., or as citizens of the Holy Roman Empire.² Widukind of Corvey and Bruno, both eminent Saxon chroniclers, are deeply imbued with sectionalism. On the other hand, Thietmar of Merseburg is vaguely imperialistic, calling the Germans *Teutonici* in distinction from non-Germans within the Empire.³ The word *Deutsch* was applied only to the German language and not to the German people until the eleventh century, and even then was infrequent. The term *patria Teutonici* first occurs in 1079.⁴

feld, *Annales* [ed. Holder Egger], p. 60; cf. *Laurentii Gesta ep. Virdun*, chap. ii SS. X, 492; Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit* [5th ed.], II, 444, 669).

¹ "The foreigner of old German law is the man who has a different *Hantgemal*, or legal home; who has not been domiciled to the folk-right of the region into which he has wandered" (H. Fisher, *Mediaeval Empire*, I, 275).

² See Thietmar, *Chronicon*, II, 28. In the middle of the ninth century when the Frank race was running to seed, the Franks manifested an inflated sense of their own importance, and contempt for not only the Saxons, but the rest of the German peoples also. For contempt of the former see Rabanus Maurus, *De oblatione puerorum*; Mabillon, *Ann. O.S.B.*, II, 732. The Monk of St. Gall, *Gesta Karoli*, I, 10, says: ". . . By reason of the glory of Charles, Gauls, Aquitanians, Aeduan, Spaniards, Germans and Bavarians thought no small honor was paid to them, if they were thought worthy to be called the servants of the Franks." The same haughtiness is in Adrevald, *Miracula S. Ben.*, chap. xxvii (SS. XV, 491).

³ It may be doubted if Thietmar distinguishes the *patria* and the *regnum nostrum* to which he refers from the Empire. Cf. *Chronicon*, Introd. to Book I.

⁴ Waitz, V, 8, 32; Grimm, *Deutsch. Gram.*, I, 15; Gerdes, I, 354. The word "Theodiscus" (Deutsch) first occurs in 786 and is then applied to the language, not to the country or people. See Michael, *Gesch. d. d. Volkes*, I, 8, n. 2.

It is impossible to think of medieval Germany dissociated from its imperial power and claims. Viscount Bryce well described the Holy Roman Empire as "an institution or system, the wonderful offspring of a body of beliefs and traditions." These beliefs and traditions were of triple origin, partly derived from Rome, partly from the church, and partly from the Frankish kingship. "The race of the Germans," wrote Emperor Louis II in 871 to Basil of Byzantium, "has brought forth the most abundant fruits to the Lord. . . . For as God was able of stones to raise up children like Abraham, so from the barbarism of the Germans He has been able to raise up successors to the Roman emperors."¹

The history of Central Europe in the feudal age is the history of the efforts of the German people to expand the borders of their *Regnum Teutonicum* to East, West, North, South, not in the interest of mere conquest, but in obedience to the influence of a great idea. The German kings of the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth centuries made a supreme endeavor to realize the unitary dream of the Middle Ages by political expansion over every frontier, by permanent Germanization through colonization and conversion of the peoples in the territories beyond the Elbe and the Oder rivers and in the bend of the Danube; by the effort to keep alive in Italy (then but a geographical expression) a great tradition; by the promotion of the ancient Latin culture; by great economic development.

It is easy to criticize the Holy Roman Empire; easy to charge the rulers of the Saxon, Salian, and Staufer houses with abandoning the substance for a shadow, in being jealous to preserve a chimerical power, in being tenacious of an illusory title, the effect of which was to mutilate the natural historical development of Italy, to divert the normal history of Germany out of its natural orbit, and to waste untold blood and treasure in fruitless wars with popes and Lombard cities.

But such adverse criticism fails to understand not so much the weight of tradition and the influence of great historical facts as the profound political philosophy and deep psy-

¹ Bouquet, VII, 573. Kleinclausz, *L'Empire Carolingien*, pp. 441-57 contests the authenticity of this letter.

chology which motivated such aspiration. With justice has M. Ernest Lavisse written:

Je recommande le Saint Empire Romain avec son cortège d'idées et de sentiments aux critiques que prétendent plier l'histoire aux règles d'une science exacte. Ils y verront qu'il existe une action de l'invisible et qu'elle ne peut être ni constatée certitude ni jugée avec équité. ... Le Saint Empire, comme l'Empire Romain, a été une tentative pour organiser l'humanité. ... Et c'est parce qu'aujourd'hui nous ne savons plus définir l'humanité que nous trouvons une charme étrange à l'histoire d'une institution fondée sur le croyance en l'unité paternelle du genre humain sous la paternité de Dieu.

A vague and traditional desire for universal rule was at the bottom of medieval German history. This was the result of the imposition of the Carolingian political ideal upon the Saxon, Salian, and Hohenstaufen kings. Henry II was saluted as "lord of lands and seas"; Henry III was called "the head of the world." These encomiums were not effusive flattery or fantastic pretension in the eleventh century, but a manifestation of "that reverence for the glories of the past whereon rested the idea of the mediaeval empire."¹

With Germany's tremendous political preponderance and territorial sway over the center of Europe, interest in the ways and manners of the German nation bulked large in the mind of the rest of Europe.

The physical and moral characteristics of the German people received interested attention from their neighbors in the Middle Ages. As specimens of physical manhood the medieval German, like the ancient German, was tall and strong,² and even handsome, on the word of his enemies. In the Middle Ages, when a man was unusually tall, he was

¹ The *Sachsenspiegel*, III, 44, sec. 1, traces the idea of empire from Babylon to Persia to Macedon to Rome to Germany. J. G. Robertson, *History of German Literature*, p. 35, writes: "*A Spiel vom Antichrist* from the monastery of Tegernsee . . . reflects the national spirit of the German Empire under Barbarossa, for it is a German kaiser who here rules over the earth at the end of things." See Fr. Kampers, "Kaiserprophetien u. Kaisersagen im Mittelalter," *Beitrag z. Gesch. d. dtshn. Kaiseridee*. (1895).

² The Suevi mocked at the small height of Caesar's troops (*De bello Gall.* ii. 30). For Roman appreciation of the German physically see Tacitus, *Annales* ii. 14; Josephus, *Antiq.* i. 15.

taken for a German.¹ The *chansons de geste* frequently allude to the tallness of the Germans.² A proverb ran that the prettiest women were to be found in Flanders, the handsomest men in Germany, the tallest men in Denmark. William of Apulia speaks of the high stature of the Germans he saw in Italy.³ Albert of Aix, who met with Germans on the First Crusade, represents them as handsome of face and figure.⁴ When the Bishop of Bamberg went to Palestine in 1065 his beauty made such an impression that the people ran to see him, and even routed him out of his lodgings that they might behold him.⁵ Adalbert of Bremen and his great political rival, Anno of Cologne, were both remarkably handsome men.⁶ A Saxon historian, in relating the massacre of a company of warriors under command of Burckhard of Halberstadt, the fiercest fighting bishop of his century, expresses astonishment that men of such physical perfection could have been overcome.⁷ Bishop Udo of Trier, and Bruno, a successor in the same see, both were men of singular physical comeliness.⁸ Abbot Guntram was tall, strikingly handsome, and with a melodious voice which yet could ring like a trumpet. William, abbot of Braunweiler, was so handsome that one might think him an angel.⁹

The German warriors in the Middle Ages gloried in their physical strength and beauty. The Monk of St. Gall in the ninth century tinges with romance the army of Charlemagne which conquered the Lombards of Italy in 772.¹⁰ The same author tells of one of Charlemagne's doughtiest warriors, a

¹ Tobler, *Mitth. aus altfranz. Handschriften*, I, 23.

² Zimmermann, *Roman. Forschungen*, XXIX (1911), 235 f.

³ *Historicum poema. . . . de rebus Normannorum*, Book II, chap. v (SS. IX, 255).

⁴ *Historia Hierosolymitana*, Book I.

⁵ Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* (anno 1065).

⁶ Adam of Bremen, *Gesta eccles. pontif. Hammab.*, III, 2; Lambert of Hersfeld, *op. cit.* (1075).

⁷ *Annal. Sax.* (1088) (SS. V, 724).

⁸ *Gesta Trever.*, chap. ix.

⁹ *Vita Wolfhelmi*, chap. iv (SS. XII, 183). ¹⁰ *Monachus Sangal.*, II, 17.

man of Thurgau named Eishere, "who was so tall that you might have thought him sprung from the race of Anak, if they had not lived so long ago and so far away." Before the battle of Civitate in 1053, the German knights in the papal army derided their Norman adversaries for their small stature—and Normans passed for tall men in Europe then.¹ In 1107, when the envoys of Henry V of Germany and those of the Pope met at Châlons-sur-Marne to discuss the peace of the church, the physical beauty and hauteur of the German ambassadors, especially of Archbishop Bruno of Trier and Duke Welf of Bavaria, deeply impressed the French. The elegance of figure, the pleasantness of demeanor, the natural eloquence and good sense of the Archbishop aroused the admiration of Abbot Suger of St. Denis, the French King's chief envoy. But the big, burly figure, loud voice, and ubiquitous sword of Duke Welf nettled him.²

As to the bravery of the Germans in the Middle Ages opinion is unanimous.³ At Civitate they fought to the last man. Albert of Aix, a hard critic of them in the time of the Crusades, never belies their courage. Across the annals of medieval Germany the record of their feats of arms abounds on every page. In 1044 a little troop of Germans under Henry III opposed a whole Hungarian army on the Repcze.⁴ In 1050 a handful of Germans withheld the fortress of Hainburg against attack after attack of Hungarians.⁵ In 1060 a combat took place which has a Homeric ring about it between two German knights and a whole host of Hungarians in the narrow defile of Theben, the famous gateway from Austria into Hungary.

The Germans had been intercepted in the pass and badly

¹ "Teutonici quia caesaries et forma decoros
Fecerat egregie proceri corpore illos,
Corpora derident Normannica quae breviora
Esse videbantur."

Guill. Apul., Book II, *MGH. SS. IX* (p. 255).

² Suger, *Vita Lud. Crassi* (ed. Molinier), chap. ix, p. 27.

³ So far as I know the sources, Petrus Diaconus, IV, chap. xxxix, is the sole Italian historian who has accused the Germans of weakness. The extract is cited in Gregorovius, *Rome in the Middle Ages*, IV, 2, 345 n.

⁴ *Annal. Alah.* (anno 1044).

⁵ *Ibid.* (anno 1050).

routed. William, the margrave of Thuringia, and a German knight named Poto bravely covered the rear and put up such a resistance that if Germany at this time had been as sensitive to romantic impulses as France the memory of their feat of arms would have rung down the ages like the *Chanson de Roland*. The *Annals of Altenheim* run:

For these two, when the others were slain, took their stand upon a knoll and laid about them with such slaughter that the deeds of the very bravest men of former ages seem small in comparison. From evening until sunrise, standing back to back and facing the foe on every side, they fought, nor could they be overcome even by the thousands against them. They refused to surrender until King Bela [of Hungary] gave his word of honor to spare them.¹

Ever afterward Poto was known as "the Brave." Forty years later the German chronicler Ekkehard of Aura wrote of him: "Truly was he believed to have sprung from a race of ancient giants."² In 1115, Count Otto of Ballenstadt, with 60 German warriors, fought 2,800 Slavs, of whom 1,700 were left dead on the field!³ In the terrible battle of Monte Porzio, May 29, 1167, although the Germans were as 1 to 20 against the Romans, victory rested on their banners.⁴

The *chansons de geste* abound with gallant appreciation by the French of the bravery of the Germans.⁵ Bernard of Clairvaux, when urging the Second Crusade upon the Germans, wrote to the Archbishop of Cologne and other prelates of Germany: "Your land is fruitful in brave men, and is known to be full of robust youth, your praise is in the whole world, and the fame of your valor has filled the entire earth."⁶

The Italians, like the Slavs, were not capable of militarily resisting the Germans. This is admitted by medieval Italian

¹ This famous day is described by many chroniclers: *Annal. Altah.* (1060); *Berth. Annal.* (1060); Lambert, *Annal.* (1060).

² Ekkehard, *Chronicon* (1104).

³ *Annal. Sax.* (1115).

⁴ For an account of this engagement, with citations from the sources see Gregorovius, *op. cit.*, IV, 2, 579-81.

⁵ See the passages collected by Zimmermann, *Roman. Forsch.*, XXIX (1911), 236 ff.

⁶ Bernh. Clarv., *Ep.* 363; cf. Otto Fris., *De gestis Friderici*, I, 41.

historians time and again.¹ The German rule of Italy was not successfully resisted until the Lombard victory at Legnano in 1179. In battle French and Italian chroniclers agree that their strength, courage, and ferocity were so great that the Germans could neither be reduced nor disarmed.² "In battle they are men of iron," said an Italian annalist.³ Falco of Beneventum compared the shouting of the Germans in battle to the roaring of lions.⁴

The German belief that "money talks," and in the power of gold to influence or corrupt, was proverbial.⁵ German avarice was as notorious as German prowess. "*Terra bellicosa et quaestuosa*" was said of medieval Germany. The spoil out of Italy enriched Germany.⁶ Lombardy especially, because of the commercial prosperity of its towns, was heavily taxed.⁷ Rather of Verona⁸ and Otto of Vercelli⁹ bitterly inveighed against the brutality, violence, and spoliation practiced continually by the Germans upon the Italians. The complaints of Italy in the Middle Ages against these practices are repeated century after century.¹⁰ Benedict of Soracte in 966, in crabbed medieval Latin, pronounces a threnody over Rome in the hard grip of Otto I.

¹ *Amatus de Mont. Cass.*, VII, 12; *Annal. Sax.* (1137). Petrus Diaconus, IV, chap. xxxix, picturesquely and untruthfully says: "Habent enim aliquid simile cum nivibus suis; nam statim ut tacti calore fuerint, in sudorem conversi, deficiunt, et quasi a sole solvuntur."

² Ekkeh., *Chron.* (1099, 1117); Odilon, *Epith. Adelh.*, chap. iv (SS. IV, 639).

³ Bened., *Chron.*, chap. xxxvi (SS. III, 710); cf. Brunon, *Vita Adalb.*, chap. x (SS. IV, 599).

⁴ *Falc. Benev.*, II, 225.

⁵ Otto Fris., *Gesta Frid.*, III, chap. xxi; Adam Brem., *op. cit.*, IV, chap. xxi; Berthold, *Annal.* (1077); Zwifalt. *Chron.*, chap. xlv.

⁶ Roswitha, *ad Oddonem*, I, vs. 6. Otto of Freising, *op. cit.*, II, 13, calls Italy "a garden of delights"—*deliciarum hortus*.

⁷ *Annal. Palid.* (955); *Annal. S. Disibodi* (SS. XVII, 29); Benzo, I, chaps. v-vi; III, chap. i; Jaffé, *Biblioth.*, III, 691; *Annal. Qued.* (1014).

⁸ Folc., *Gesta abbat. Lob.*, chap. xxvii.

⁹ *Polypt.*, chap. xi.

¹⁰ Ryccardus (SS. XIX, 334); *Annal. Ver.* (SS. XIX, 10); Otto Morena (SS. XVIII, 619).

Woe unto thee, O Rome, who art oppressed and trodden under foot by so many nations; who hast even been taken prisoner by a Saxon king, and thy people put to the sword and thy strength reduced to naught. Thy gold and thy silver they carry away in their purses. Thou wast mother, now thou hast become daughter. Thou hast lost that which thou once possesst. Long hast thou fought against foreign foes. On all sides thou didst once conquer the world from the North unto the South. . . . Alas, thou wast all too fair.¹

An Italian traveling in Germany in Saxon times wrote of German music at this time:

These men on the other side of the Alps, when they let the thunder of their voices rise rumbling to the sky, never are able to attain any sweetness of modulation. . . . The roughness of their wine-guzzling throats is barbaric, and whenever they try, by lowering and then raising their voices, to express a melodious softness, Nature shudders, for it sounds like the creaking of cart-wheels over frozen earth.²

The difference of language accentuated and aggravated the political resentment between the Germans and the Italians. In the *Vita S. Goaris*, chapter xi, by Wandelbert, as far back as 839, there is a remarkable tirade of a German noble against all the people using the Romance tongue.³ The Germans despised the Italians as the Italians hated the Germans. Thietmar of Merseburg wrote:

Neither the climate nor the people of Italy suit our countrymen. Both in Rome and Lombardy treason is always at work. Strangers who visit Italy expect no hospitality; everything they need must be paid for on the

¹ The passage is quoted at length in Gregorovius, *City of Rome in the Middle Ages* (Eng. trans.), III, 365-66. He goes on to describe the Germans as the Huns were described by Roman writers in the fifth century. The original may be seen in *MGH. SS.* III, 719. Yet in contrast with this note of sorrow and resentment we have a poem upon the death of Otto III in 1002 and the accession of Henry II in exactly the opposite tone (Dummler, *Anselm der Peripatetiker*, pp. 72-82):

"Regnorum robur periit quando Otto cecidit.
Dum Otto noster moritur, Mars in mundo oritur.
Mutavit caelum faciem et terra imaginem."

² "Alpina siquidem corpora vocum suarum tonitruis altisone perstreptentia susceptae modulationis dulcedinem proprie non resultant . . . quia bibuli gutturis barbara feritas, dum inflexionibus et percussionibus mitem nititur edere, cantilenam, naturali quodam fragore quasi plaustra per gradus confuse sonantia rigidas voces jactat" (quoted in Hattemer, *Denkmale*, I, 420).

³ "Cum omnes Romanae nationis ac linguae homines ita quodam gentilitio odio execraretur, ut ne videre quidem eorum aliquem aequanimiter vellet, ac si

instant, and even then they must submit to being over-reached and cheated, and not infrequently to be poisoned in addition.¹

"Itali sua superbia elati et velut natali odio Teutonicorum dedignati," writes the annalist of Altenheim in 1068.²

From the time of Conrad II, Italian hatred of the Germans was deep and concerted. Landulf of Milan, the Italian chronicler of the eleventh century, abounds in passages and epithets which disparage the Germans.³ Gregory VII heartily hated all Germans, and distrusted even his own partisans there.⁴ Pope Pascal II refused to set foot in Germany alleging "the barbarous manners of the people."⁵ The violence of Conrad III (1139-52) drove many Germans into exile, and numbers of them sought refuge at the Norman court of Roger of Sicily, "who might have received more of them" records the *Historia Pontificalis*, except that the Germans were a race whose barbarism he could not endure.⁶

The Italians, while incapable of governing themselves, hated the German rule over them.⁷ We catch the refrain of wounded pride in Buoncompagno's history of the siege of Ancona in 1174,⁸ and in the fiery addresses of the Lombard deputies and the Pope in 1177, as recorded by Romuald of Salerno.⁹ The conflict of the Lombard cities against Frederick Barbarossa between 1155 and 1183 liberated the Po Valley from German thralldom. But not until 1200 was German influence expelled from the administration of Rome, then from the Tuscan towns and the Marches, by Pope

quos forte ex eadem familia comprehendere potuisset crudeliter nonnumquam afficeret" (cited by Ebert, *Gesch. d. Lat. Lit. im Mittelalter*, II, 190).

¹ *Chronicon*, VII, 3.

² SS. XX, 89.

³ ". . . gulositatem et animos vino deditos saevissimi Theutonici qui nesciunt quid sit inter dexteram et sinistram" (*Mediol. Hist.*, II, 22). He describes the German speech of Lothar II, whom he heard at the diet of Roncaglia, as *verba barbara* (*ibid.*, II, 44).

⁴ Meyer von Konau, *Jahrb.*, I, 140. Old Benedictinism in Germany regarded Clunyism as "French mores" (Hauck, *Kirch. Gesch.*, III, 512).

⁵ Ekkehard, *Chron.* (1107) (SS. X, 105). ⁶ SS. XX, 538.

⁷ "Animi Italarum semper avidi novarum rerum" (Lambert of Hersfeld, *Annales* [1052]).

⁸ *De obsidione Anconae Liber*, chap. iii.

⁹ SS. XIX, 445.

Innocent III. German rule over Italy was strong for centuries, but the Germans never were able to impose their civilization upon the country. Germanic *Kultur* never was anything but a gloss in medieval Italy. The remnants and the tradition of Latin culture were far too old and too strong to be dislodged or obscured.¹

The "burden of empire" is no new thing in history. The thought may be found in Otto of Freising's *Chronicon*. When stripped of their medieval husk of language Otto's reflections have an almost startling modern ring. The kings of Germany in the twelfth century regarded the half-barbaric and semi-anarchic condition of Poland in their time much as an American regards the condition of Mexico, or the Britisher looks upon the native population in many of his colonies.² The frightful anarchy prevailing in Italy just before Frederick I's intervention there, even if exaggerated by Otto of Freising, baffles belief. Venice was at war with Ravenna; Verona and Vicenza with Padua and Treviso; Pisa and Florence with Lucca and Siena. "The atrociously warring factions deluged all Italy with blood, fire and pillage. . . . Castles, villages, fields, were devastated with fire and sword."³

The study of law did not imbue the Italians with a respect

¹ Ficker, *Forschungen*, II, 278, has gathered together some valuable evidence on this point; cf. Fisher, *op. cit.*, II, 256 f.

² "Haec mala nostris diebus in vicinis regnis pullulare cognoscimus, quanta vero ex remotis et transmarinis regnis in dies audiamus, pro fastidio vitando ad presens subprimimus. Tanta enim sunt quod nisi sanctorum quorum per Dei gratiam magna nunc copia est, meritis et suffragiis staret mundus, in brevi omnino eum perituro timere cogeremur" (*Chronicon*, VII, 21 end): cf. the same thought in VII, 34, end of second paragraph. Helmold, *Chronica Slavorum*, I, 1, writing at almost the same time, expresses much the same sentiment of contempt for the Poles and Bohemians.

³ *Chronicon*, VII, 29. Landulf of Milan admits the necessity of imperial authority in Italy whose people seemed incapable of governing themselves. *Hist. Mediolanensis*, II, 22; Pertz, VIII, 58: "Cum Conradus imperator Papiae [Pavia], circumstante exercitu, consedisset, universis qui ecclesiarum beneficia invaserant, aut qui homicidia injuste commiserant, aut orphanorum aut viduarum praedia devastando contriverant, et omnibus qui injuste a perfidis hominibus per aliquam causam cruciabantur, ut sui imperii vigor exigebat secundum legem facere humanam et judicare decrevit." The internecine wars of the Lombard cities ruined the country: "Magis silva ferarum videbatur quam agricultura" (Galvaneus Flamma, *Chronicon de antiq. Mediol.*, chap. cclxv). The Lombards tortured Italian prisoners while sparing those who were German (Ottonis S. Blas., *Chron.* chap. xiv).

for it. "The Italians," said Muratori,¹ "highly prized their new liberty, but it only operated to make them more unfortunate." Otto of Freising expressed the same sentiment with more energy: "Barbaricae fecis retinent vestigia, quod cum legibus se vivere gloriantur, legibus non obsecuntur."² Similar turmoil and incapacity in the kingdom of Jerusalem elicits similar reflections from Otto of Freising, and from all that we know of the condition of this dependency of Latin Christianity in the Orient between 1144 and 1187, Otto of Freising's condemnation is amply justified.³ It was not chauvinism that led him to depreciate the incapacity of the Romance races in Europe for government. Only in Norman England and in Norman Italy, outside of Germany, did any large peace and order and protection of life and property obtain. To medieval Italy, where civil war was endemic, Roncaglia's permanent military camp of Germans in Lombardy,⁴ the sharp discipline of the German armies in Italy,⁵ and the effective administration of Christian of Mainz as Frederick I's viceroy in Italy must have been a revelation.

Quite naturally, with the possession of these qualities for rule the German of the time of the Ottos, the Heinrichs, and the Friedrichs developed intellectual and moral characteristics which rasped the feelings of the non-German peoples

¹ *Annales*, VI, 478.

² *Gesta Frid.*, II, 13. Against these harsh verdicts, however, should be set the gentler opinion of John of Salisbury, *Policraticus*, IV, 11: "Hospitem meum Placentinum dixisse recole, . . . hoc in civitatibus Italiae usu frequenti celebrimum esse quod, dum pacem diligunt et justitiam colunt et perjuriis abstinent, tantae libertatis et pacis gaudio perfruuntur, quod nichil est omnino quod vel in minimo quietem eorum concutiat."

Savigny, *Gesch. roem. Rechts im Mitt.*, IV, 210, n. 4, mistakenly takes this as evidence of Italian zeal for Roman law. Not Roman law but communal liberties and free local justice are meant.

Elsewhere (III, 8) John of Salisbury relates a conversation with Pope Hadrian IV illustrative of the polite manners of the Lombards: "memini me audisse Romanum pontificem solitum deridere Lombardos, dicentem eos pilleum omnibus colloquentibus facere, eo quod in exordio dictionis benevolentiam capient, et eorum cum quibus agitur, capita quodam commendationis demulceant oleo."

³ *Chronicon*, VII, 28, 33.

⁴ *Gesta Friderici*, II, 12.

⁵ *Ibid.*, III, 28. There is a remarkable description of the organization and discipline of the army of Henry VI in Italy (1194) in Otto of St. Blasien, *Chronicon*, chap. xl.

with whom the Germans came in contact.¹ The revived study of the Roman law inflated the imperial pretensions of the Hohenstaufen, and lent tradition and historical actuality to the former vague idea of *Weltmacht*² embodied in the claim to *dominium mundi*. With Frederick I the antiquity of the Holy Roman Empire was pushed back to the very founding of Rome itself. He is *Divus Augustus*; his authority, though, dates from Romulus; he ascended the throne eighteen hundred years *ab urbe condita*.³ When he summoned the Council of Pavia in favor of his anti-pope, Victor, Frederick I reminded the bishops of "the example of Constantine, Valentinian and Justinian."⁴

Yet protest must be made against absurd exaggerations attributed to the Hohenstaufen by their enemies in Europe. Wilkins⁵ long ago challenged the authenticity of the alleged

¹ The *Chronicon* of Otto of St. Blasien abounds with self-flattering moral characterizations of the Germans: "ferocitas Teutonicorum" (chap. xiv); "Teutonica animositas" (chap. xx); "audacia Teutonicorum," (chap. xxiii); "Germaniae animositas et fortitudo" (chap. xxxv). Cf. Dummmler, "*Ueber den furor Teutonicus*," *SB. d. Akad. d. Wiss. Berlin* (1897), pp. 119 f.; Schulttheiss, *Gesch. d. deutschen Nationalgefühles*, I, 221 f. (1893).

² For the progressive development of this idea of *Weltmacht* see Gierke, *Genossenschaftsrecht*, II, 572 f.

³ Radevic, I, 6, 12, 20; II, 76, etc. Otto Fris., *Gesta*, II, 1; Godefr. Colon., *Chron.* (ed. Boehmer, *Fontes*), III, 427; Doeberl, *Monumenta Selecta*, IV (an admirable collection of Frederick's *diplomata*).

⁴ *Conc. Pap.* (MGH., IV, 121). In spite of his pompous imperialistic pretensions and fondness for quoting Sallust and the *Corpus juris*, Frederick I had slender knowledge of Latin. ("Scripturas et antiquorum gesta sedulo perquirat . . . Latinam [linguam] vero melius intelligere quam pronunciare" [Radevic, II, 76].) At Besançon in 1157 Rainald of Dassel translated the famous letter of Hadrian IV into German, sentence by sentence, as the language flowed from the lips of Roland, the Pope's chancellor (Ficker, *Rainald von Dassel*, p. 15). We possess the text of Frederick's discourse at Roncaglia on November 14, 1158, but although it is larded with scraps of Roman law and a quotation from Sallust, it was nevertheless pronounced in German (Radevic, I, 46 [MGH., SS. IV, 110]; *Curia Roncaliae: oratio imperialis*). During the negotiations at Venice in August, 1177, with Alexander III and the deputies of the Lombard cities, Frederick made a harangue in German which Christian of Mainz translated into Italian (*vulgariter*), Romuald, *Chron.*, MGH. SS. IV, 155. Otto Morena (*anno* 1158) relates that one day the Emperor was walking at Roncaglia between two legists and asked them if they believed that he was lord of the world. One said "Yes." The other said the Emperor had the title but not the proprietorship!

⁵ *Gesch. d. Kreuzzüge*, IV, 52.

letter of Frederick I to Saladin preserved in Matthew Paris, in Hoveden, in Ralph Diceto, and in the *Itinerarium regis Ricardi*, in which the Emperor is made to claim Persia, Syria, Ethiopia, and Mauretania as parts of his Empire, and boasts that he will come into the East and recover those provinces conquered by Crassus and Anthony, "generals of my predecessors." I have no doubt that this epistle is a fraud and probably originated as a school exercise at St. Albans or elsewhere. It certainly excites suspicion that no mention of such a letter is made by any German or Italian writer.

Frederick Barbarossa seized upon the Third Crusade in 1190 as a means to extend German domination not only over the Holy Land and Syria, but Byzantium too, if possible. When his host entered the territory of the Byzantine Empire it was compelled to fight its way through. In Bulgaria the inhabitants fled on all sides at the German approach, obstructing the roads with fallen trees. It was necessary to take Trajan's Pass by assault. When the German army arrived at Phillipopolis it found the city deserted.¹ Frederick, in wrath, deluged the environs with fire and blood, and seriously contemplated attacking Constantinople. He wrote to his son Henry to attempt to persuade the Pope to preach a crusade against the Greeks.² "Over remote Eastern lands, where Frankish foot had never trod, Frederick Barbarossa asserted the indestructible rights of Rome, mistress of the world."³

Henry VI gave sharper definition to his father's purposes. He demanded an indemnity from Constantinople for the injury inflicted upon Frederick's army. When the Byzantine emperor, Isaac Angelos, soon afterward was dethroned by his brother Alexius III in 1195, Henry VI's attitude became more menacing. He adroitly married Irene, a daughter of the exiled Emperor, to his brother, Philip of Swabia, hoping thus to create a German pretext to claim the throne of the Byzantine Empire. At the same time that he planned to conquer Constantinople, Henry VI also dreamed of establishing his

¹ *MGH. SS. XVII*, 509-10.

² Prutz, *Friedrich I*, I, 131; Winkelmann, I, 447.

³ Bryce, *Holy Roman Empire*.

sovereignty over Syria and Palestine, and began that policy which later under his son Frederick II was to transfer to the Holy Land the feud of emperor and pope. The conquests of western Christendom in the Orient hitherto had been considered to be the patrimony of the church. But Barbarossa's lawyers developed the theory that there could only be one supreme and universal authority in the world, that of the German Caesar. While one expedition, therefore, was sent to Palestine, Henry VI himself in 1197 undertook the task of conquering Byzantium. His sudden death in September of that year ruined the double plan. For the second time Constantinople and the Orient eluded the attempt of the Hohenstaufen to seize them. Henry VI's sudden death ruined the prospects of German imperial power in Constantinople and the East.

One may be tempted at first to mock at the Staufen pretensions as expressions of the madness of caesarism. But it would be an error so to do. The Holy Roman Empire was not only a German institution; it was also a universal institution—at least in theory; it represented a great tradition; it was a superstate in which all the states of Christendom were vaguely comprehended. On no other hypothesis can the ascription to its supremacy made by Henry II of England in 1157 be understood. That ascription was not extorted from the English king by force, but was the voluntary recognition of a sovereign intellectually the peer of Frederick I himself.¹

It were impossible for language to be plainer. But there is no servility in it. It is merely moral homage which Henry II attributes to the office of Holy Roman emperor—to the office, not the man. The ascription had no practical political application, and was not supposed to have. The medieval empire was a great political constellation in which the Germano-Italian state was the central sun and the other states as stars around it. Thus interpreted, the Holy Roman

¹ "Regnum nostrum," wrote the Plantagenet, "et quidquid ubique nostrae subicitur dicioni vobis exponimus et vestrae committimus potestati, ut ad vestrum nutum omnia disponantur, et in omnibus vestri fiat voluntas imperii. Sit igitur inter nos et populos nostros dilectionis et pacis unitas indivisa, commertia tuta, ita tamen ut vobis, qui dignitate preminetis, imperandi cedat auctoritas, nobis non deerit voluntas obsequendi" (*Gesta Frid.*, III, chap. vii).

Empire was a utopian conception which had the virtues and the weaknesses every utopia necessarily has.

Next to Italian resentment against the Germans was that of the French. The Cluny reform, which the German kings resisted, and the Crusades were the chief factors in instigating this feeling. Pignot has related a literary conflict between a French poet and a German Benedictine which casts curious light upon the amenities of literature in the twelfth century. Pierre of Poitiers, an ardent Cluniac and admirer of the great Abbot Peter the Venerable, wrote an exceedingly laudatory panegyric of him. The critic accused the poet of fulsome adulation, saying caustically that such praise of a living man was unseemly, since even the saints themselves were so praised only after their decease. This retort stung the French writer to the quick, and he retaliated with a violent and abusive characterization, not only of his antagonist, but of German culture itself.¹

About the same time that this was written Henry V of Germany, in order to make a diversion in the interest of his father-in-law, Henry I of England, who was warring in France against Louis VI, invaded France through Lorraine. The response of the French vassals to the King's call to arms is evidence at this time (1125) of a feeling of national antagonism against the Germans.²

When Norbert became archbishop of Magdeburg his enemies circulated the rumor that he and "his Frenchmen" were stealing the relics and robbing the church treasury.

Until the cult of Charlemagne arose in France in the time of the Crusades there was no national feeling between the

¹ Pignot, *Histoire de l'ordre de Cluny*, III, 462-63

"Non habeo mirum, te nobis frendere dirum,
Nam quod sic saevis, proprium solet esse Suevis.
More tuae gentis de nostro carmine sentis.
Quid laus, quid carmen, quid vitae dulce levamen,
Quid pax, quid pietas, quid virtus, quid sit honestas,
Barbare, tu nescis; ideo livore tumescis.
Ergo tace, . . . etc."

² Suger, *Vita Ludovici Crassi* (ed. Molinier), p. 102; cf. Ekkhard, *Chron.* (SS. VI, 262). Walter Map (*De nugis curialium* [ed. Camden Soc.], Part V, chap. v, p. 219) relates that Louis VI repudiated the terms which Henry V haughtily demanded as *tpwrut aleman* [*trop allemand*].

French and the Germans. The counterclaims to Lorraine were wholly dynastic and political. But the Crusades greatly stimulated French national sentiment. The different blood groups in France—Franks, Picards, Normans, Gascons, Poitevins, Provençaux—in contact with one another and in contact with the Germans through whose country they passed to the Holy Land developed an acute feeling toward the Germans unknown before.

Lorraine was the only German duchy which displayed enthusiasm for the First Crusade. The rest of Germany viewed the movement with either astonishment or contempt.¹ Guibert de Nogent with reason entitled his history of the First Crusade *Gesta Dei per Francos*—"an unpretending title," he writes, "but which will serve to honor our nation." In Book II, chapter i, of this work Guibert tells how, meeting an archdeacon of Mainz who mocked at the French as crusaders, he replied:

If you think the French so weak and such cowards, and believe yourself able to wound with ridicule a name whose celebrity extends to the Indian Ocean, tell me to whom was it that pope Urban II appealed for aid against the Turks if not the French? If the French had not by their strength and courage opposed a barrier to the Turks, not all your Germans whose name is not even known, would have been of use.²

During the Crusades there was much friction between the French and the German troops. Godfrey de Bouillon, who was half-French and half-German, and who had imbibed a large amount of the courtesy of French chivalry, is said to have apologized to the French for the uncouth manners of the Germans in the host of the First Crusade.³ Odo of Deuil has a long passage denunciatory of the Germans in the Second Crusade.⁴

¹ *Annal. Aug.* (1096); Ekkehard, *Chron.* (1099); Bernoldi, *Chron.* (1096).

² Cf. B. Monod, "L'éveil du sentiment national en France au XI^e siècle," *Le moine Guibert et son temps* (Paris, 1903), pp. 235 f., and G. Bourgin, *Guibert de Nogent: Histoire de sa vie* (Paris, 1907), Introd., pp. xxii-xxiii.

³ Wackernagel, *Altfranz. Lieder und Leiche*, pp. 194-95, but I cannot trace his reference.

⁴ Book III. For collected information on this head see Steinhausen, *Gesch. der deutsch. Kultur*, p. 238; cf. F. Kern, "Der mittelalterliche Deutsche in französischer Ansicht," *Hist. Ztschrift.*, CVIII, 237.

John of Würzburg who visited Jerusalem between 1160-70 inveighs against the French claim to the leading part in the First Crusade:

For though Duke Godfrey is honoured for himself, yet the taking of the city is credited to him and his Germans [they were mostly Flemings] although they had no small share in that exploit; but it is attributed to the French alone. And some dispraisers of our nation have even scratched out the epitaph of the famous Wigger [of Swabia] because they could not deny that he was a German, and have written over it the epitaph of some French knight or other. . . . No part of Jerusalem, not even the smallest street, was set apart for the Germans.¹

French epic literature is cleverly satirical in allusions to Germans. The *Ecbasis* and the *Ysengrinus*, which are interesting bestiaries, give French names to the finer kinds of animals and German names to the wolf, the ass, etc. The wolf in *Ysengrinus* questions the lamb in German speech.² The epic literature of the Hohenstaufen period resented the French pretensions to courage. In the *Pilatus* the people of Rome are represented as not daring to punish a German who had killed a Frenchman because they so feared the Germans and contemned the French as degenerate "Carlingiens." Elsewhere the French kings of Jerusalem are styled *welsche*, and even a Norman knight is described as trembling at the very name of the German Emperor.

The Second Crusade disillusioned the Germans as to the alleged effeminacy of the French, but it did not add to the good feeling between the two nations. The French ridiculed the arms and armor used by the Germans as old-fashioned, and laughed at their foot forces, for in France every man was a mounted knight.³ There were many complaints on both sides and not a few pitched fights between the troops. The Second Crusade is a turning-point in Franco-German relations in the Middle Ages, and the Third Crusade (1190) when

¹ Beazeley, *Dawn of Modern Geography*, II, 193-94. This outburst is in chap. xiii of John of Würzburg's account.

² V, vss. 549-50; VI, vss. 379-82.

³ Guillaume le Breton, *Phillippide*, X, 680. For German arms and armor at this time and the French technical superiority see Kohler, *Die Entwicklung des Kriegswesens*, I, 152-53; Delbrück, *Kriegskunst*, III, 312.

Philip II and Henry VI bitterly quarreled accentuated still more this international resentment.¹

The pretentious claims to imperial authority made by Frederick Barbarossa, united with his ambitious political purposes, soon aroused the apprehension and resentment of Europe. John of Salisbury, whose pet aversions were monks and Germans, voiced this sentiment in the famous interrogation: *Quis Teutonicos constituit iudices nationum?* ("Who has made the Germans judges of the nations?")² This was said in 1160. If John of Salisbury may be believed, the great Hohenstaufen Emperor regarded all the kings of Europe as *reges provinciales* and said that Louis VII of France was a *roitelet*.³ By 1162 there seems to have been a *haro* in Europe against Frederick I—a half-formed European coalition composed of France, England, Hungary, Byzantium, Sicily, Venice.⁴ William, bishop of Pavia, in 1167 wrote that the Germans were still "barbarians."⁵ John of Salisbury, about 1160, inveighed against the *furor Teutonicus*, and rejoiced exceedingly over the Emperor's defeat at Legnano in 1179.⁶ If his statement is true regarding the attitude of superiority assumed by German students in Paris—*loquuntur grandia, minis tument*—there must have been many a clash between the "nations" of students in Paris.

Yet when all has been said or written, how much weight may be attached to these sentiments? Does any nation ever understand another? Are not the judgments which one

¹ Godfrey of Viterbo, *Pantheon* (ca. 1184-91) is redolent of this animosity (SS. XXII, 225-28; cf. Lot, *Hugues Capet*, pp. 329, 331).

² Giles, *Joannis Saresburiensis epp.*, I, No. 59, p. 164; also in Doeberl, *Monumenta Selecta*, IV, No. 40B, p. 190. Giesebrecht (*Forschungen*, XXII), has endeavored to clear up two of John's letters about Frederick I (Nos. 130 and 138).

³ *Ep. 185*: "impudenti scurrilitate regulum appellare." Cf. Ficker, *Rainald von Dassel* (1850), p. 48.

⁴ See Kap-Herr, *Abendl. Politik Kaiser Manuels*, pp. 72, 85-92, and Exkurs 4; Reuter, *Papst Alexander III*, II, 247; Giesebrecht, *Kaiserzeit*, V, 496 f., 641.

⁵ Bouquet, XVI, 55.

⁶ "Vidimus, vidimus hominem qui consueverat esse sicut leo in domo sua . . . latebare quaerere. . . . Illum, illum imperatorem qui totius orbis terror fuerat, utinam vidissetis ab Italia fugientem cum ignominia semptierna." *Policraticus*, Book IV, chap. xi, ed. Webb, I, 274.

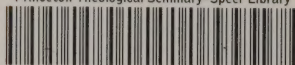
people has of another almost always shallow and unjust? It is so today. How much more must it have been so in the Middle Ages, which were without our modern means of rapid and frequent material intercourse and thought transference?

DATE DUE

JUN 15 1974			
GAYLORD			PRINTED IN U.S.A.

DD126 .T47 v.1
Feudal Germany

Princeton Theological Seminary-Speer Library



1 1012 00133 7775